

UC-NRLF



\$B 303 531

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.  
GIFT OF

*Pres. Martin Kellogg.*

Received *Sept.* 1895.

Accessions No. *60786*. Class No.

3-18

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

A

PROGRESSIVE SERIES

OF

INDUCTIVE LESSONS

IN

LATIN,

BASED ON MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CLASSICAL  
SOURCES, ESPECIALLY FROM CAESAR'S  
COMMENTARIES.

BY

JOHN TETLOW, A.M.,

MASTER OF THE GIRLS' LATIN SCHOOL, BOSTON.

---

*The mind should be introduced to principles through the medium of examples, and so should be led from the particular to the general—from the concrete to the abstract. . . .*

*Children should be led to make their own investigations, to draw their own inferences. — HERBERT SPENCER'S ESSAY ON EDUCATION.*

---

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY GINN, HEATH, & CO.

1884.



60786  
Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1884, by  
JOHN TETLOW,  
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.



PA2087  
T484

## PREFACE.



**T**HIS manual is the result of an attempt to apply the inductive method to elementary instruction in Latin. The value of this method as an instrument for developing and strengthening the mental faculties has long been recognized and will probably not be questioned. As applied to Latin, it brings the pupil into immediate contact with classical examples, teaching him to view these, rather than the rules of the grammarian, as the original sources of knowledge and the final test of correctness; and it leads him, through the observation and study of such examples, to the discovery of the syntactic laws which underlie them. In a word, it trains the pupil in the methods required for original investigation.

But, while the value of the inductive method will not be denied, there will probably be various opinions as to what constitutes a successful application of it, and equally various standards by which a given application of it will be judged. Practical teachers, who know from daily experience in the class-room that the undeveloped powers of youth are extremely feeble, are inclined to view with distrust any method of instruction which undertakes to make the pupil a discoverer rather than a learner; while, on the other hand, the mere theorist demands that the pupil be told nothing, but that he be led to discover everything. It will not be necessary for me to state in detail the principles which have guided me in determining how much or how little the pupil should be aided in the work of discovering and formulating rules from examples; these principles may be readily inferred from an examination of the method of exposition adopted in any one of the lessons, taken at random, in which the laws or usages of the language are treated. I have striven to keep constantly in view the mental immaturity of the pupils for whom these lessons are intended, and the limitations as to time by which their teachers are necessarily

restricted. Keeping these in view, I have felt that it would be safer to err on the side of affording too much rather than too little help.

From the character of the material used in the exercises and reading lessons of this manual, it will be seen that I do not agree with those who think that the pupil should be introduced to the study of Latin through the medium of entertaining stories written by modern Latinists. On the contrary, that method seems to me the best which takes the pupil by the shortest road into the domain of classical antiquity, and which, by bringing him into direct contact with the subject-matter, the modes of thought, the forms of expression, and the choice and arrangement of words peculiar to the classical writers, most thoroughly equips him for the intelligent study of the acknowledged masterpieces of Latin literature. Accordingly, I have drawn not merely the examples used for purposes of exposition, but also the short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions, and the longer passages selected for connected translation, from classical sources.

The short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions are arranged in separate sets entitled respectively "Exercises" and "Supplementary Exercises." Of these two sets, the Exercises will probably in most cases furnish ample material for the grammatical work of the first year; the Supplementary Exercises, which are somewhat more difficult, may be drawn upon for additional practice or for periodical reviews, or they may be reserved for the second year, to be studied as progressive exercises in Latin composition in connection with the first author read.

The material provided for connected translation consists of easy anecdotes from Cicero, and of those passages from Caesar in which the usages of the Druids and the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans are described. The latter, owing to their intrinsic value and interest, and to their comparative freedom from the constructions of indirect discourse, seem especially suited to the needs of the beginner. The plan of the book also contemplates the early introduction of the study of the simpler modes of word-formation as an aid to the development of power to read at sight. Special suggestions relating to the lessons on word-formation and the anecdotes from Cicero will be found in the notes introduced at pages 74 and 224.

In the special vocabularies of the earlier lessons, in the lessons



on word-formation, and in the general Latin-English vocabulary, English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in SMALL CAPITALS; whereas English words or parts of words that are *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in *Gothic Italic*. This distinction, the use of which was suggested to me by a similar distinction in Professor White's excellent *Greek Lessons*, I have tried to render as serviceable as possible by confining the differences in type just mentioned to those letters of the English word which alone mark its relationship to the Latin. Thus, *cōsulātus* is translated *consulship*, and *peditātus*, *foot-soldiers*. I have not, of course, meant to imply by this method of printing that the exhaustive study of the origin and history of English words should form a part of the first year's work in Latin; but rather to supply material for occasional excursions in this direction. For example, the connection between the Latin *veniō* and the English *COME* is not so obvious that it can easily be made clear to beginners; and, unless some bright boy or girl whose curiosity has been excited by the silent suggestion of the change in type should ask for an explanation, the teacher should pass over this word without comment. On the other hand, the operation of Grimm's law in such words as *pater*, *FATHER*, *frāter*, *BROTHER*, and *māter*, *MOTHER*, is so interesting, and at the same time so easily made clear, that the teacher may profitably use these and similar examples as a means of leading the pupil to a recognition of the general law which they illustrate.

As it was a part of my plan to introduce a few simple lessons on word-formation, and, in the etymological part of the general vocabulary, to trace complete words to the stems from which they are formed, it seemed desirable that, in dealing with the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, I should devote some attention to stems. Accordingly, besides pointing out the stems of the several paradigms of declension, I have also called upon the pupil to explain the formation of the nominative, referring him to the grammar for the necessary information and guidance. The paragraphs in which these references to the grammar occur are, of course, comparatively unimportant for the beginner, and they may, at the discretion of the teacher, be postponed or omitted. They are numbered as follows: **121, 162, 188, 195, 197, 250, 266.**

It will be seen that, in giving the principal parts of verbs, I have taken the liberty to deviate slightly from established usage. In place of the *supine* in **-um**, which is generally given as the fourth of the principal parts, I have substituted the *perfect participle*. The necessity of a reform in this direction was first recognized and pointed out by Professor Lane, who introduced this substitution many years ago in his teaching, and has also incorporated it in the Latin grammar which he is preparing for publication. When word-formation was so little understood that the supine was thought to be the source from which the perfect and future participles, and primitives in **-tor**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-tūra** were derived, there was an obvious propriety in recognizing the supine as one of the principal parts of the verb. Clipped of final **-um**, it yielded a base—the so-called supine stem—which was seen to be common to all these forms. As, moreover, identity of base was supposed to indicate community of origin, the forms just enumerated were naturally viewed as offshoots from this parent stem. As a matter of fact, however, the perfect and future participles, primitives in **-tor**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-tūra**, and the supines in **-tum** and **-tū** are all simply parallel formations from the root or from the verb stem. Thus, the participles **cultus** and **cultūrus**, and the primitive substantives **cultor**, **cultūra**, **cultus**, and **cultiō**, are formed directly from the root **col-**, *till*; in like manner, the participles **auditus** and **audītūrus**, and the substantives **audītor**, **audītus**, and **audītiō**, are formed directly from **audī-**, *hear*, the stem of **audiō**. While then there is, in a restricted sense, a *real* supine stem ending in **-tu-**, which lies at the foundation of two verbal forms, the former and the latter supine, the *so-called* supine stem ending in **-t-**, euphonically **-s-**, is purely a figment of the grammarians.

Again, although our dictionaries, in giving the principal parts of verbs, record more than 2500 supines in **-um**, Richter has shown, in his contributions to the study of this form of the verb, that only 236 such supines are to be found in the texts of the Latin writers from the time of Plautus to the early Christian centuries.

It is clear then that the supine, instead of being a principal part of the verb, is a very insignificant part. On the other hand, the perfect participle is found in all the passive tenses for completed action; it is, indeed, in these tenses the only essential part, for the auxiliary is often omitted. Moreover, if a mechanical

base must be recognized as an artificial help to the pupil while he is committing to memory those forms of the verb that have certain letters in common, the perfect participle yields this base as readily as the supine. A reference to sections 136 and 137 will show that the treatment of the perfect participle as one of the principal parts of the verb renders easy and natural the application of the inductive method to a subject which must otherwise be left unexplained.

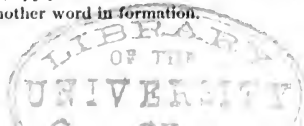
It has been the prevailing practice in Latin dictionaries and special vocabularies to account for the form and meaning of words whose etymology is given, by referring them to other complete words from which they are not directly formed, but with which they are merely connected in formation. This loose and inaccurate way of explaining the derivation and meaning of words must soon give place to a sounder method. One special vocabulary<sup>1</sup> has already appeared in this country in which the subject of etymology is differently treated, and other works founded on the same principles are in preparation. In harmony with this tendency, and in the hope of developing right habits of thought in the pupil from the outset, I have been careful to refer the words whose etymology is explained in the general vocabulary, directly to the roots or stems from which they are formed.<sup>2</sup> Lest this mode of presentation should seem obscure to the learner, who in his actual reading meets not stems, but complete words, I have thought it best, in the case of formation from stems, to add in parenthesis the complete word to which the stem belongs.

The vocabulary of an introductory book does not call for much in the way of pictorial illustration; but what it does call for, it calls for imperatively. Such words, for example, as *scūtum* and *signa milltāria* cannot be understood by the pupil without the aid of a picture. Expressions of this kind, therefore, for which illustrations from the antique were available — eleven in number — I have thought it best to illustrate. The cuts used for this purpose have been taken from Rich's *Dictionary of Antiquities* and Guhl and Koner's *Leben der Griechen und Römer*.

In conclusion, I desire to express my grateful sense of obligation

<sup>1</sup> Greenough's *Vocabulary to Virgil*.

<sup>2</sup> This statement does not, of course, apply to those instances in which a word is said to be merely "connected with" another word in formation.



to the friends who have kindly read and criticized this book as it has been sent to them in sheets from the press. I am especially indebted to Professor George M. Lane of Harvard University, who has not only placed at my disposal such of his manuscript and printed collections as would be of service to me, but has critically examined the proof-sheets, and aided me by corrections and suggestions that have added to the value of the book in every part. I am also under special obligations to William C. Collar, A.M., Head-master of the Roxbury Latin School, for valuable notes and criticisms.

Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose supervision this book has been printed, has, by his unflinching patience and courtesy, and by his suggestive skill, materially lightened the labor of carrying the sheets through the press.

JOHN TETLOW.

BOSTON, May 1, 1884.

# CONTENTS.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
INTRODUCTORY: Alphabet, Syllabication, Quantity, Accent . . . .	1-7
I. The Four Conjugations . . . . .	7-8
II.-III. Present Indicative Active: Conjugations I.-IV. . . . .	9-12
IV. Substantives: First Declension . . . . .	12-13
V.-VI. Ablative with Prepositions. — Subject Nominative. — Accusative of Direct Object . . . . .	13-16
VII. Substantives: Second Declension . . . . .	16-17
VIII. The Preposition <i>In</i> . — Genitives: Possessive, Sub- jective, Objective . . . . .	18-20
IX. Adjectives: First and Second Declensions . . . . .	21-23
X. Adjectives: Attributive and Predicate. — Dative with Adjectives . . . . .	23-26
XI.-XII. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of Both Voices . . . . .	26-28
XIII. Ablatives: Means or Instrument and Voluntary Agent,	29-31
XIV. Substantives of the Third Declension: Mute Stems . .	31-33
XV.-XVI. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of Both Voices. — Principal Parts . . . . .	33-37
XVII.-XVIII. Agreement of the Participle in Compound Tenses. — Dative of Indirect Object . . . . .	38-42
XIX. Substantives of the Third Declension: Liquid and <i>s</i> - Stems . . . . .	43-44
XX.-XXI. Imperatives of Both Voices. — The Vocative . . . . .	45-49
XXII. Substantives of the Third Declension: Vowel Stems,	49-51
XXIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension: Vowel Stems . .	51-53
XXIV.-XXV. Apposition. — Predicate Agreement. — Accusa- tive with Prepositions . . . . .	53-57
XXVI. Substantives of the Third Declension: Stems Appar- ently Consonant. — Adjectives of One Termina- tion. — Present Participle . . . . .	57-60
XXVII. Ablative of Specification. — Ablative of Time When,	60-63
XXVIII. Third Declension: Gender . . . . .	63-66
XXIX. Substantives: Fourth Declension . . . . .	67-69
XXX. Adjectives: Regular Comparison . . . . .	69-71

# PROCEEDINGS OF THE

## CONFERENCE

For the purpose of providing a forum for the exchange of views and information on the subject of the conference, the following members of the committee were appointed:

I



# INDUCTIVE LATIN LESSONS.



## INTRODUCTORY.

NOTE. — The Latin alphabet, which for the vowels is phonetic, is here introduced for the convenience of those teachers who aim to secure a correct quantitative pronunciation. As success in this direction depends on a right beginning, it is recommended that the pupil be taught the Latin names of the single letters and diphthongs at the outset, and that, until right habits have been established, these Latin names be used in occasional exercises in oral spelling.

### I.

#### 1. LATIN ALPHABET.

	CHARACTER.	NAME.	PRONUNCIATION OF NAME.
	{ a . . . . .	a . . . . .	<i>āh</i>
	{ ā . . . . .	ā . . . . .	<i>āh</i> <sup>1</sup>
	b . . . . .	be . . . . .	<i>bay</i> <sup>2</sup>
	c . . . . .	ce . . . . .	<i>kay</i> <sup>2</sup>
	d . . . . .	de . . . . .	<i>day</i> <sup>2</sup>
	{ e . . . . .	e . . . . .	<i>ě</i> (as in <i>met</i> )
	{ ē . . . . .	ē . . . . .	foregoing sound prolonged. <sup>1</sup>
	f . . . . .	ef . . . . .	<i>ef</i>
	g . . . . .	ge . . . . .	<i>gay</i> <sup>2</sup>
	h . . . . .	ha . . . . .	<i>hah</i>
Vowel:	{ i . . . . .	i . . . . .	<i>ě</i>
	{ ī . . . . .	ī . . . . .	<i>ē</i> <sup>1</sup>
Consonant:	j . . . . .	i . . . . .	<i>ee</i> <sup>3</sup>
	k . . . . .	ka . . . . .	<i>kah</i>
	l . . . . .	el . . . . .	<i>el</i>
	m . . . . .	em . . . . .	<i>em</i>
	n . . . . .	en . . . . .	<i>en</i>

	CHARACTER.	NAME.	PRONUNCIATION OF NAME.
Vowel:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} o \\ \bar{o} \end{array} \right.$	<b>o</b>	$\ddot{o}$ (as sometimes heard in <i>whole</i> , i.e., the continental short <i>o</i> , not so broad as the <i>o</i> in <i>not</i> )
		<b><math>\bar{o}</math></b>	foregoing sound prolonged. <sup>1</sup>
	<b>p</b>	<b>pe</b>	<i>pay</i> <sup>2</sup>
	<b>q</b>	<b>qu</b>	<i>koo</i>
	<b>r</b>	<b>er</b>	<i>e</i> as in <i>met</i> ; <i>r</i> trilled.
	<b>s</b>	<b>es</b>	<i>ess</i>
	<b>t</b>	<b>te</b>	<i>tay</i> <sup>2</sup>
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} u \\ \bar{u} \end{array} \right.$	<b>u</b>	$\ddot{u}$
		<b><math>\bar{u}</math></b>	$\bar{u}$
	Consonant:	<b>v</b>	<b>u</b>
	<b>x</b>	<b>ix</b>	<i>eeks</i>
	[ <b>y</b>	<b>ü</b>	like French <i>ü</i> or German <i>ü</i> ]
	[ <b>z</b>	<b>zēta</b>	as in Greek]

## 2.

## LATIN DIPHTHONGS.

<b>ae</b>	<b>ae</b>	<i>ai</i> <sup>1</sup> (as in <i>aisle</i> )
<b>au</b>	<b>au</b>	<i>ou</i> <sup>1</sup> (as in <i>house</i> )
<b>oe</b>	<b>oe</b>	<i>oi</i> <sup>1</sup> (as in <i>toil</i> )
<b>ui</b>	<b>ui</b>	<i>oo-ee</i> <sup>1</sup> (rapidly uttered)
<b>eu</b>	<b>eu</b>	<i>eh-oo</i> <sup>1</sup> (rapidly uttered)

<sup>1</sup> The diphthongs and long vowels should occupy twice as much time in utterance as the short vowels.

<sup>2</sup> The sound here represented by *ay* is approximate only; the true sound of Latin "e" has no *ee*-vanish.

<sup>3</sup> *ee* here represents the pronunciation of the letter "j" used by itself; e.g., in

oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "j" has the power of "y" in *yēs*.

<sup>4</sup> *oo* here represents the pronunciation of the letter "v" used by itself; e.g., in oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "v" has the power of "w" in *wē*.



## II.

## SYLLABICATION.

## 3. EXAMPLES.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Au'-di-ō, <sup>1</sup> <i>I hear.</i> | 3. Proe'-li-um, <i>battle.</i>       |
| 2. Ge'-ner, <i>son-in-law.</i>           | 4. A-mī-ci'-ti-a, <i>friendship.</i> |

4. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *single consonant* stands between two vowels (see: **d**, Ex. 1; **n**, Ex. 2; **l**, Ex. 3; **m**, **c**, and **t**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is it joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

## 5. EXAMPLES.

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. An'-nus, <i>year.</i>   | 3. Bel'-lum, <i>war.</i>  |
| 2. Mit'-tō, <i>I send.</i> | 4. Ag'-ger, <i>mound.</i> |

6. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *consonant is doubled* between two vowels (see: **n-n**, Ex. 1; **t-t**, Ex. 2; **l-l**, Ex. 3; **g-g**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is each consonant joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

## 7. EXAMPLES.

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A'-sper, <i>rough.</i>      | 5. Bel'-gae, <i>the Belgae.</i> |
| 2. Frā'-trēs, <i>brothers.</i> | 6. Am'-plus, <i>ample.</i>      |
| 3. Jū'-stus, <i>just.</i>      | 7. Lin'-gua, <i>tongue.</i>     |
| 4. Rō'-strum, <i>beak.</i>     | 8. Ar'-ma, <i>arms.</i>         |

8. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in the foregoing examples *two or more consonants* stand between two vowels (see: **sp**, Ex. 1; **tr**, Ex. 2; **st**, Ex. 3; **str**, Ex. 4; **l-g**, Ex. 5; **m-pl**, Ex. 6; **n-gu**, Ex. 7; **r-m**, Ex. 8). Note, further, that such of these groups of consonants as can *begin a word* belong to the *second* vowel, and so *begin a syllable* (see Exs. 1-4); whereas, such of these groups

as *cannot begin a word* are *divided* (see Exs. 5–8). Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

## 9.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab'-e-ō** (**ab**, away; **eō**, I go), I go away.
2. **In-ī'-quus** (**in-**, not; **aequus**, fair), unfair.
3. **Ab'-est** (**ab**, away; **est**, he is), he is away.
4. **Red'-i-mō** (**red-**, back; **emō**, I buy), I buy back.

**10. OBSERVATION:** Note that the foregoing examples are *compounds*, and that, in syllabication, the *parts* of each compound are treated as *separate words*. Frame a rule for the Syllabication of Compounds.

## 11.

## EXERCISE.

Spell, syllabicate, and pronounce the following words:—

<sup>2</sup> **dēleō**, I destroy.

<sup>3</sup> **impēdimentum**, impediment.

<sup>4</sup> **injūria**, injury.

<sup>4</sup> **prōvincia**, province.

<sup>4</sup> **inūtilis**,<sup>5</sup> unprofitable.

<sup>4</sup> **jūstitia**, justice.

<sup>2</sup> **oppidum**, town.

<sup>2</sup> **littera**, letter.

<sup>2</sup> **māgnus**,<sup>6</sup> great.

<sup>2</sup> **occupō**, I seize.

<sup>4</sup> **officium**, duty.

<sup>2</sup> **redeō**,<sup>7</sup> I return.<sup>4.1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> **adeō**,<sup>8</sup> I go to.

<sup>2</sup> **dixit**,<sup>9</sup> he said.

<sup>1</sup> The accented syllable of Latin words will be marked until the subject of accentuation has been treated.

<sup>2</sup> Accent the first syllable.

<sup>3</sup> Accent the fourth syllable.

<sup>4</sup> Accent the second syllable.

<sup>5</sup> **inūtilis** (compound) = **in-**, not; **ūtilis**, useful.

<sup>6</sup> The combination **gn** can begin a word.

<sup>7</sup> **redeō** (compound) = **red-**, back; **eō**, I go.

<sup>8</sup> **adeō** (compound) = **ad**, to; **eō**, I go.

<sup>9</sup> **x**, though a double consonant (= c + s), is treated as a single consonant in syllabication.

## III.

## QUANTITY.



## 12.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Recū'sat, he refuses.</i> | 4. <i>Lau'dat, he commends.</i> |
| 2. <i>Tī'mēs, you fear.</i>     | 5. <i>Proe'lium, battle.</i>    |
| 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i>        | 6. <i>Æ'vum, age.</i>           |

13. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples contains a *long vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or a *diphthong* (see Exs. 4-6). Such a syllable is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Long Vowel or Diphthong.

Note that the syllables *not italicized* in the foregoing examples contain a *short vowel*. Such syllables are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Short Vowel.

NOTE: For an exception to the rule implied in the last paragraph, see 15 below.

## 14.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i>        | 4. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bel'gae, the Belgae.</i> | 5. <i>Vāl'lum, wall.</i> |
| 3. <i>Līn'gua, tongue.</i>     | 6. <i>Dux, leader.</i>   |

15. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by two consonants* (see Exs. 1-5) or by a *double consonant* (see *x*,<sup>1</sup> Ex. 6). The *vowel* so placed may be long (see Exs. 4 and 5) or short (see Exs. 1, 2, 3, and 6); but the *syllable* is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by Two Consonants or a Double Consonant.

NOTE: For an exception to the foregoing, see A. & G. 18, *e*; H. 16, III.; G. 11.

## 16. EXAMPLES.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Amīci' <i>ti</i> a, <i>friendship.</i> | 3. Proe' <i>li</i> um, <i>battle.</i> |
| 2. Ha' <i>b</i> eō, <i>I have.</i>        | 4. <i>V</i> i'ae, <i>ways.</i>        |

17. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by another vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or by a *diphthong* (see Ex. 4). Both the *vowel* so placed and the *syllable* containing it are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by another Vowel or by a Diphthong.

$$^1 x = c + s \text{ or } g + s.$$

## IV.

## ACCENT.

## 18. EXAMPLES.

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. An'nus, <i>year.</i>      | 3. Jū'stus, <i>just.</i>   |
| 2. Lau'dō, <i>I commend.</i> | 4. Lin'gua, <i>tongue.</i> |

19. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the foregoing examples are words of *two syllables*. Which syllable is *accented*? Frame a rule for the Accent of Latin Words of Two Syllables.

## 20. EXAMPLES.

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Habē'mus, <i>we have.</i>        | 5. Ha'beō, <i>I have.</i>        |
| 2. Recūsā'mus, <i>we refuse.</i>    | 6. Amīci'tia, <i>friendship.</i> |
| 3. Cōnfir'mō, <i>I establish.</i>   | 7. Op'pidum, <i>town.</i>        |
| 4. Trānspor'tō, <i>I transport.</i> | 8. Po'pulus, <i>people.</i>      |

21. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the foregoing examples are words of *more than two syllables*, (2) that in Exs. 1-4 the *penult*<sup>1</sup> is *long*, and (3) that in Exs. 5-8 the *penult* is *short*. Which syllable is *accented* when the *penult* is *long* (see Exs. 1-4)? Which syllable is *accented* when the *penult* is *short* (see Exs. 5-8)? Frame a rule for the Accent of Latin Words of More than Two Syllables.

## 22.

## EXERCISE.

Spell each of the following words, syllable by syllable; give the Quantity of each syllable when you have spelled it; then Pronounce the complete word; thus, *r-e, re, short*; *c-ū, cū, long*; *s-ā, sā, long*; *m-u-s, mus, short*; *recūsā' mus.*

*amō, I love.*

*cōn-firmās,<sup>2</sup> you (sing.) establish.*

*laudat, he commends.*

*recūsāmus, we refuse.*

*probātis, you (pl.) approve.*

*trāns-portant,<sup>2</sup> they transport.*

*moneō, I warn.*

*habēs, you (sing.) have.*

*manet, he remains.*

*pārēmus, we obey.*

*tenētis, you (pl.) hold.*

*timent, they fear.*

<sup>1</sup> The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

this book the parts of compound words will be separated by the hyphen.

<sup>2</sup> Compound; in the vocabularies of

---

## LESSON I.

### THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**NOTE:** It is assumed that the pupil is already familiar with the parts of speech and their properties (as person, number, gender, mood, tense, etc.), or, failing this, that the teacher will explain and illustrate them as occasion requires.

The long vowels are marked throughout this book; vowels not marked are to be pronounced short. As a practical aid in the observance of quantity, it is recommended that the pupil be required, in written exercises, to mark the long vowels.

## 23.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Amō, I love*; *amāre, to love.*
2. *Moneō, I warn*; *monēre, to warn.*
3. *Tegō, I cover*; *tegere, to cover.*
4. *Audiō, I hear*; *audire, to hear.*

**24. EXPLANATION:** The foregoing examples show that in Latin the *present infinitive active* is formed, not as in English by placing the preposition *to* before the simple form of the verb, but by adding *-re*. Moreover, some verbs (as *amō*) have a characteristic vowel *-ā-* before this infinitive ending, others (as *moneō*) have *-ē-*, others (as *tegō*) have *-e-*, and others (as *audiō*) have *-ī-*. Accordingly,

25. Latin verbs are divided into four groups called  
CONJUGATIONS.

1. The First Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ā-** before the ending **-re**; as: **amā-re**, *to love*.

2. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ē-** before the ending **-re**; as: **monē-re**, *to warn*.

3. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-e-** before the ending **-re**; as: **tege-re**, *to cover*.

4. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ī-** before the ending **-re**; as: **audī-re**, *to hear*.

26. Learn, with meanings, the Present Indicative and Infinitive of the following verbs, and tell to which Conjugation each belongs:—

VOCABULARY.

**cōn-firmō**,<sup>1</sup> **-āre**,<sup>2</sup> *establish*.

**dē-leō**, **-ēre**,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> *destroy*.

**dūcō**, **-ere**, *lead*.

**emō**, **-ere**, *buy*.

**habeō**, **-ēre**, *have*.

**impediō**, **-īre**, *hinder*.

**laudō**, **-āre**, *commend*.

**maneō**, **-ēre**, *remain*.<sup>3</sup>

**mūniō**, **-īre**, *fortify*.

**probō**, **-āre**, *approve*.<sup>3</sup>

**pūniō**, **-īre**,<sup>3</sup> *punish*.

**quaerō**, **-ere**, *inquire*.<sup>3</sup>

**re-cūsō**, **-āre**,<sup>3</sup> *refuse*.

**regō**, **-ere**,<sup>3</sup> *rule*.

**tegō**, **-ere**, *cover*.

**teneō**, **-ēre**, *hold*.

**timeō**, **-ēre**, *fear*.

**trāns-portō**, **-āre**, *transport*.<sup>3</sup>

**veniō**, **-īre**, *COME*.<sup>3</sup>

**vestiō**, **-īre**, *clothe*.

<sup>1</sup> In translating the indicative, supply the pronoun *I*.

<sup>2</sup> To be read: **cōnfirmāre**, **dē-īre**, &c.

<sup>3</sup> English words or parts of words

that are *borrowed* from the Latin are printed in the vocabularies of this book in *this type*; English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with Latin words are printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**.

## LESSON II.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: CONJUGATIONS  
I. AND II.

27. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **amō**: A. & G. p. 76, also § 194, *a*; H. p. 86, also § 446; G. p. 54, also § 198.

28. Inflect (like **amō**) the Present Indicative Active of **cōfirmō**, *I establish*; **laudō**, *I commend*; **probō**, *I approve*; **recūsō**, *I refuse*; **trānsportō**, *I transport*.

29. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. p. 90; G. p. 58.

30. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) the Present Indicative Active of **habeō**, *I have*; **maneō**, *I remain*; **pāreō**, *I obey*; **teneō**, *I hold*; **timeō**, *I fear*.

## 31. EXAMPLES.

**Monet**, *he warns, or he is warning.*

**Nōn monet**, *they do not warn, or they are not warning.*

## 32. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōfirmō. 2. Laudat. 3. Probātis. 4. Nōn recūsāmus. 5. Trānsportant. 6. Cōfirmās. 7. Nōn probāmus. 8. Laudātis. 9. Habeō. 10. Manet. 11. Pārent. 12. Tenēs. 13. Nōn timēmus. 14. Manēs. 15. Manētis. 16. Nōn pāret. 17. Recūsant. 18. Timeō. 19. Trānsportat. 20. Habēmus. 21. Tenētis. 22. Laudās. 23. Nōn cōfirmant. 24. Recūsō. 25. Nōn pārēs.

II. 1. I approve. 2. He transports. 3. We commend. 4. They do not refuse. 5. You (pl.) establish. 6. You (sing.) do not commend. 7. They approve. 8. He refuses. 9. You (sing.) have. 10. We are not obeying. 11. I am holding. 12. He does not fear. 13. You (pl.) fear. 14. They are not remaining. 15. He has. 16. You (sing.) are remaining. 17. He does not commend. 18. I obey. 19. We transport. 20. I am remaining. 21. You (sing.) do not obey. 22. He establishes. 23. We do not approve. 24. You (pl.) have. 25. They are establishing.

## 33.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Probat. 2. Pārēmus. 3. Nōn laudant. 4. Recūsātis. 5. Maneō. 6. Timēs. 7. Cōnfirmāmus. 8. Habētis. 9. Nōn tenet. 10. Recūsās. 11. Pāreō. 12. Probant. 13. Trānsportātis. 14. Nōn probō. 15. Manēmus.

II. 1. He holds. 2. They do not commend. 3. You (sing.) approve. 4. He does not obey. 5. We are remaining. 6. You (sing.) fear. 7. I am establishing. 8. You (pl.) approve. 9. They transport. 10. We do not have. 11. You (pl.) hold. 12. You (sing.) refuse. 13. They obey. 14. I do not fear. 15. I am commending.



## LESSON III.

## THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV.

34. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. p. 94; G. p. 64.

35. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) the Present Indicative Active of **dīcō**, *I say*; **dūcō**, *I lead*; **mittō**, *I send*; **pōnō**, *I place*; **quaerō**, *I inquire*.



36. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. p. 98; G. p. 68.

37. Inflect (like **audiō**) the Present Indicative Active of **mūniō**, *I fortify*; **pūniō**, *I punish*; **veniō**, *I come*; **vestiō**, *I clothe*; **impediō**, *I hinder*.

38. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative of **sum**: A. & G. p. 68; H. p. 84; G. p. 50. Inflect the Present Indicative of **absum**,<sup>1</sup> *I am away*.

## 39.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dīcit. 2. Dūcimus. 3. Mittis. 4. Pōnunt.  
5. Quaerō. 6. Dīcitis. 7. Mūniunt. 8. Nōn pūnī-  
mūs. 9. Veniō. 10. Vestīs. 11. Impedit. 12. Mūnītis.  
13. Es. 14. Absunt.<sup>1</sup> 15. Nōn laudāmus. 16. Mittimus.  
17. Timet. 18. Impediō. 19. Sumus. 20. Nōn habent.  
21. Cōnfirmat. 22. Abestis. 23. Dūcis. 24. Nōn pōnō.  
25. Timētis. 26. Venīmus. 27. Abes. 28. Vestiunt.  
29. Nōn quaerit. 30. Sum.

II. 1. We say. 2. He is not leading. 3. I am placing.  
4. You (sing.) inquire. 5. They do not send. 6. You  
(pl.) lead. 7. I do not punish. 8. They are fortifying.  
9. He hinders. 10. We are coming. 11. You (sing.)  
clothe. 12. You (pl.) are fortifying. 13. You (pl.) are.  
14. He approves. 15. They are away. 16. We do  
not inquire. 17. I have. 18. You (sing.) punish.  
19. We are. 20. You (pl.) do not obey. 21. I refuse.  
22. He is away. 23. They say. 24. You (sing.) send.  
25. We do not fear. 26. They punish. 27. You (sing.)  
are away. 28. You (pl.) do not come. 29. I am hindering.  
30. He is.

## 40. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Dicis. 2. Pūnit. 3. Absumus.<sup>1</sup> 4. Nōn laudātis.  
 5. Sunt. 6. Nōn dūcō. 7. Manent. 8. Impedimus. 9. Quae-  
 ritis. 10. Absum.<sup>1</sup> 11. Mūnīs. 12. Nōn probās. 13. Estis.  
 14. Mittunt. 15. Tenēmus. 16. Venit.

II. 1. You (sing.) are. 2. You (pl.) do not refuse. 3. We  
 are away. 4. I am fortifying. 5. He sends. 6. I am not away.  
 7. He inquires. 8. You (pl.) are hindering. 9. They do not  
 have. 10. You (sing.) lead. 11. We obey. 12. They are.  
 13. We are sending. 14. We establish. 15. He does not come.  
 16. You (pl.) clothe.

<sup>1</sup> *b* before *s* is sounded like *p*; hence, pronounce *apsum*, *apsumus*, *apsunt*.



## LESSON IV.

## SUBSTANTIVES: FIRST DECLENSION.

NOTE: It is assumed that the teacher will here prepare the way by oral instruction for the declension of a Latin noun with the translation of its cases. For suggestions, see A. & G. § 31.

41. Learn the declension, with meanings, of **stella** (A. & G. 35) or **mēnsa** (H. 48; G. 27).

42. Define *Stem*, and give the stem<sup>1</sup> of **stella** (A. & G. 21, coarse type) or **mēnsa** (H. 46; G. 24).

43. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for Gender: A. & G. 35, to the second period; H. 48; G. 28.

44. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.<sup>2</sup>

<b>amicitia</b> , -ae, F., <i>friendship</i> .	<b>contrōversia</b> , -ae, F., <i>dispute</i> .
<b>Aquitānia</b> , -ae, F., <i>Aquitania</i> . <sup>3</sup>	<b>Galba</b> , <sup>5</sup> -ae, M., <i>Galba</i> . <sup>3</sup>
<b>Belgae</b> , <sup>4</sup> -arum, M., <i>the Belgae</i> <sup>3</sup> (or <i>Belgians</i> ).	<b>injūria</b> , -ae, F., <i>injury</i> .
<b>causa</b> , -ae, F., <i>cause</i> .	<b>patria</b> , -ae, F., <i>native country</i> .
<b>cōpia</b> , -ae, F., <i>abundance</i> ; in pl., <i>forces, troops</i> .	<b>porta</b> , -ae, F., <i>gate</i> .
	<b>prōvincia</b> , -ae, F., <i>province</i> .
	<b>sententia</b> , -ae, F., <i>opinion</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The stem vowel of the first declension will be treated as *-ā* in this book, the long quantity being original. **Stellā** and **mēnsā** will therefore be considered the stems of *stella* and *mēnsa* respectively. The teaching of the grammars on this point is not uniform.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil should remember that the only object for which he is required to learn declensions is, that he may become so familiar with the forms as to be able to give the English equivalent of a Latin form, or the Latin equivalent of an English form, *on the instant*. In pre-

paring this vocabulary, therefore, he should not content himself with being able merely to name the cases of each substantive in their order, but should practise such exercises as the following: Express in Latin, *of friendship, the Belgians', by disputes, to the gate, &c.*; express in English, **Aquitāniae, causārum, injūriā, sententiās, &c.**

<sup>3</sup> For fuller information, see the general vocabulary.

<sup>4</sup> Omit the singular in declining.

<sup>5</sup> Read A. & G. 75, 1; H. 130, 1, 1).

LESSON V.

ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. — SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE. — ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

NOTE: It is assumed that the pupil is familiar with the structure of the simple sentence, or, failing this, that the teacher will orally explain such terms as *subject, predicate, object*, etc.

45. EXAMPLES.<sup>1</sup>

1. **Ab injūriā** (1, 31, 16)<sup>2</sup>, *from injury*.
2. **Ā prōvinciā** (1, 33, 4), *(away) from the<sup>3</sup> province*.
3. **Cum cōpiīs** (4, 21, 3), *with the forces*.
4. **Dē injūriīs** (1, 14, 6), *for injuries*.
5. **Ex** (or **ē**) **prōvinciā** (7, 65, 1), *from (out of) the province*.
6. **Prō patriā** (Cic. *Tusc.* 4, 19, 43), *in behalf of [one's] country*.
7. **Sine causā** (1, 14, 2), *without cause*.

**46. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:**<sup>1</sup> Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the *substantives* with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with the foregoing Prepositions.

**47. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:**<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 152, *b*; H. 434; G. 418.

**48.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Aquītānia pertinet** (1, 1, 7), *Aquitania extends*.
2. **Contrōversia est** (6, 13, 5), *there is a<sup>s</sup> dispute*.
3. **Belgae pertinent** (1, 1, 6), *the Belgians extend*.
4. **Patent portae** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 5, 10), *the gates are open*.<sup>4</sup>
5. **Praestat amīcitia** (Cic. *Lael.* 5, 19), *friendship takes precedence*.<sup>4</sup>

**49. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) the *number, person* and *case* of the *substantives*, (2) the *number* and *person* of the *verbs*, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. What is the usual order of *subject* and *predicate* (see Exs. 1–3)? What seems to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 4 and 5)? Frame rules (1) for the Case of the Subject of the sentence in Latin, (2) for the Number and Person of the Verb, and (3) for the Position of Subject and Predicate.

**50. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 173, 204, 343, 344, *a*; H. 368, 460, 560, 561, *I.*; G. 194, 202, 676, 675, 1, 1.

**51.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Causam probant** (6, 23, 7), *they approve the cause*.
2. **Sententiam laudant** (Sall. *Cat.* 53, 1), *they commend the opinion*.
3. **Amīcitiā cōfirmāre** (1, 3, 1), *to establish friendship*.
4. **Sententiās dīcere** (Caes. *B.C.* 1, 1, 2), *to express opinions*.
5. **Laudāmus dīvitiās** (Sall. *Cat.* 52, 22), *we commend riches*.<sup>4</sup>

**52. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) the *class* (*i.e.*, whether *transitive* or *intransitive*) to which the verbs belong, (2) the *case* of the *substantives* construed with them, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Frame rules for the Case and Position of the Direct Object of a transitive verb in Latin.

**53. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 237; H. 371; G. 327. For the order of the words, see the references in **50**; also H. 561, II.

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should first study carefully the examples in connection with the paragraph designated "Observation and Inference," and should commit the examples to memory. Before consulting the sections in the grammar referred to under the heading "References for Verification," he should strive to discover for himself the principles which the examples illustrate, and to frame independently the rule for construction. When he has framed such a rule to the best of his ability, he may consult the grammar for the purpose of verifying or correcting his inferences or his phrase-

ology. The references, or their equivalent in grammatical English, should then be fixed in the memory for use in the exercises which follow.

<sup>2</sup> Citations given without name are from Caesar's Gallic War.

<sup>3</sup> There is no article in Latin. In translation from Latin into English, the article must be supplied wherever the English usage requires it; in translation from English into Latin, the article must be disregarded.

<sup>4</sup> *This type* in the English translation denotes emphasis.

## LESSON VI.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

#### 54.

#### VOCABULARY,<sup>1</sup>

**ab, ā,**<sup>2</sup> prep. w. abl., *away from*,  
*from*.

**cum,** prep. w. abl., *with*.

**dē,** prep. w. abl., *from, about*.

**ē-dūcō, -ere,** *lead out*.

**ex, ē,**<sup>3</sup> prep. w. abl., *out of, from*.

**Gallia, -ae, F.,** *Gaul*.

**Genāva, -ae, F.,** *Geneva*.

**longē,** adv., *far*.

**prō,** prep. w. abl., *in front of, in be-  
half of, FOR*.

**pūgnō, -āre,** *fight*.

**red-dō, -ere,** *return (trans.), restore*.

**sine,** prep. w. abl., *without*.

**Tolōsa, -ae, F.,** *Toulouse*.

**vīta, -ae, F.,** *life*.

#### 55.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Galba dūcit. 2. Galba cōpiās dūcit. 3. Galba cōpiās ex Galliā dūcit. 4. Amīcitiā cōfirmant. 5. Cum Belgīs amīcitiā cōfirmant. 6. Belgae timent. 7. Belgae sine causā timent. 8. Genāva abest. 9. Genāva longē abest. 10. Genāva ā Tolōsā longē abest. 11. Dē injūriīs quaerit. 12. Vītam prō vītā reddunt.

II. 1. The Belgians lead-out.<sup>4</sup> 2. The Belgians lead-out their<sup>5</sup> forces. 3. We are leading-out our<sup>5</sup> forces from the province. 4. They are inquiring about the forces. 5. He establishes friendship. 6. We are establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. You (sing.) fear without cause. 8. He leads his forces out-of Italy. 9. They are fighting for their<sup>5</sup> country.

## 56.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cōpiās ex prōvinciā ēdūcunt. 2. Dē pūgnā cōgnōscit. 3. Galliam ab injūriā dēfendit. 4. Messālla lacrimās nōn tenet. 5. Amicitiam recūsāmus, nōn appetimus.

II. 1. Toulouse is at a great distance (is-distant far) from Geneva. 2. They learn about the injuries. 3. Galba is transporting his<sup>5</sup> forces from (out-of) Gaul. 4. We do not keep-back our<sup>5</sup> tears. 5. You reject friendships, you do not seek after [them].<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This vocabulary and subsequent special vocabularies will contain the words of the "Exercises" only; the words of the "Supplementary Exercises" will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Words once given in a special vocabulary will not be repeated in subsequent special vocabularies.

<sup>2</sup> Use **ab** before words beginning with a vowel; use **ā** before words beginning with a consonant. For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> Use **ex** before words beginning with a vowel; use **ex** or **ē** before words beginning with a consonant.

<sup>4</sup> Words connected by a hyphen are to be treated in translation as a single expression.

<sup>5</sup> Omit the possessive here. See A. & G. 197, c; H. 447; G. 299.

<sup>6</sup> Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

---

## LESSON VII.

## SUBSTANTIVES: SECOND DECLENSION.

57. Learn the declension, with gender and meanings, of **servus** (or **hortus**), **puer**, **ager**, **vir**, **bellum** (or **templum**): A. & G. 38; H. 51; G. 29, 31.

58. Give the *stem* of each of the substantives in the foregoing paragraph, and explain the formation of the *nominative* from the stem. For this purpose read: A. & G., first paragraph of the note preceding 38, and first sentence of the second paragraph; H. 51, 1, 2, 1), 2), 4), 5); G. 29, 31, 32<sup>3</sup>.

59. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for Gender: A. & G. 39; H. 51; G. 30.

60. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

**ager, -grī, m.,** *land, field*; in pl., also *country districts*.

**castra, -ōrum,<sup>2</sup> n.,** *camp*.

**conloquium, -iī, n.,** *conference*.

**frūmentum, -ī, n.,** *grain* (usually of harvested grain); in pl., *grain* (especially of standing grain).

**Galli,<sup>3</sup> -ōrum, m.,** *the Gauls*.

**gener, -erī, m.,** *son-in-law*.

**Helvētīi,<sup>2</sup> -ōrum, m.,** *the Helvetians*.

**hiberna,<sup>2</sup> -ōrum, n.,** *winter-quarters*.

**impedimentum, -ī, n.,** *hindrance*; in pl., *baggage*.

**imperium, -iī, n.,** *command, control*.

**Labiēnus,<sup>3</sup> -ī, m.,** *Labienus*.<sup>4</sup>

**lēgātus, -ī, m.,** *ambassador*; *lieutenant*.

**mūrus, -ī, m.,** *wall*.

**oppidum, -ī, n.,** *town* (viewed as stronghold).

**populus, -ī, m.,** *people, race*.

**proellum, -iī, n.,** *battle*.

**puer, -erī, m.,** *child, boy*.

**studium, -iī, n.,** *zeal; devotion; pursuit*.

**vicus, -ī, m.,** *village*.

**vir, virī, m.,** *man*.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.

<sup>2</sup> Omit the singular in declining.

<sup>3</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.

<sup>4</sup> For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

## LESSON VIII.

THE PREPOSITION *In*. — GENITIVES: POSSESSIVE,  
SUBJECTIVE, OBJECTIVE.

## 61.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **In Galliam contendit** (1, 7, 1), *he hastens into Gaul.*
2. **In conloquium venire** (1, 35, 2), *to come to a conference.*
3. **Frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant** (3, 9, 8), *they collect the grain from the country districts [and convey it] into the towns.*
4. **In vicō hiemāre** (3, 1, 4), *to pass the winter in the village.*
5. **In mūrō** (2, 6, 3), *on the wall.*
6. **In Galliā in hibernīs** (2, 1, 1), *in winter-quarters in Gaul.*

**62. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that in the first three of the foregoing examples *in* means *into* or *to*, and therefore answers the question *whither?*; note, on the other hand, that in the last three examples *in* means *in* or *on*, and answers the question *where?* Note, further, the *case* of the *substantives* construed with *in* in the two sets of examples. With what cases, then, may *in* be used, and with what difference of meaning? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with *in*.

**63. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 152, c, last two lines; H. 435, n. 1; G. 419.

## 64.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **In castrīs Helvētiōrum** (1, 29, 1), *in the camp of (i.e., belonging to) the Helvetians.*
2. **Oppidum Rēmōrum** (2, 6, 1), *a town of (i.e., belonging to) the Remi.*
3. **Divitiacī studium** (1, 19, 2), *the devotion of Divitiacus (Divitiacus manifests the devotion).*
4. **Fuga Gallōrum** (1, 40, 8), *the flight of the Gauls (the Gauls flee).*
5. **Prō injūriīs populī** (1, 30, 2), *in return for the injuries of (i.e., done to) the people.*
6. **Britanniæ imperium** (2, 4, 7), *authority over (i.e., exercised towards) Britain.*



65. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *genitive* in each of the foregoing examples limits a *substantive*, (2) that the genitive denotes a *different person* or *thing* from that denoted by the limited substantive, and (3) that the relation of the genitive to the limited substantive is (in most of the examples) expressed in English by the preposition *of*. Frame a rule for these and similar Genitives.

66. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 213; H. 393, 395.

67. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples just considered. What seems to be the usual position of the genitive with reference to the substantive which it limits?

68. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: H. 565; G. 678.

69. OBSERVATION: Note further (1) that in Exs. 1 and 2 the genitive expresses *possession*, and may therefore be called a *Possessive Genitive*; (2) that in Exs. 3 and 4 the genitive expresses the *subject* of the feeling or action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called a *Subjective Genitive*; (3) that in Exs. 5 and 6 the genitive expresses the *object* of the action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called an *Objective Genitive*.

70. REFERENCES: A. & G. 214, 217; H. 396, I., II., III.; G. 360, 361, 1, 2.

## 71.

## VOCABULARY.

ad-administrō, -āre, *execute*.

Aedui,<sup>1</sup> -ōrum, M., *the Aeduans*.

ap-petō, -ere, *strive to secure*.

bellum, -ī, N., *war*.

beneficium, -iī, N., *benefit*.

Britannia,<sup>2</sup> -ae, F., *Britain*.

con-locō, -āre, *place*.

dē-pōnō, -ere, *put aside*.

Divitiacus,<sup>3</sup> -ī, M., *Divitiacus*.

In, prep., w. acc., *into* (opp. *ex*);

w. abl., *in, on*.

memoria, -ae, F., *remembrance*.

mittō, -ere, *send*.

neg-legō, -ere, *disregard, neglect*.

ob-tineō, -ēre, *hold*.

oc-cīdō, -ere, *kill, slay*.

postulō, -āre, *demand*.

Rōmāni,<sup>1</sup> -ōrum, M., *the Romans*.

saxum, -ī, N., *stone*.

socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.

vastō, -āre, *lay waste*.

## 72.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus est in Galliā in hibernīs. 2. In Galliam lēgātum mittit. 3. Beneficiōrum memoriam nōn dēpōnimus. 4. Aeduōrum agrōs vastant. 5. Gener socerum occīdit. 6. Ab castrīs oppidum Aeduōrum longē abest. 7. Divitiacus Britanniae imperium obtinet. 8. Saxa in mūrō collocant. 9. In castra cum impedimentīs veniunt. 10. Studium Galbae nōn negligit.

II. 1. They send ambassadors into the town. 2. We do not demand control of the war. 3. He strives-to-secure the friendship of the Romans. 4. The Romans are in winter-quarters. 5. The fathers-in-law kill their sons-in-law. 6. They execute the orders (**imperium**) of the lieutenant. 7. We do not disregard the wrongs (**injūria**) of the Aeduans. 8. The baggage is in the camp. 9. They come into camp without their baggage.

## 73.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Frūmentum in prōvinciam portant. 2. Sunt frūmenta in agrīs Aeduōrum. 3. Aeduōrum injūriās nōn negligit. 4. Fuga Gallōrum Rōmānōs commovet.

II. 1. He puts-aside the remembrance of his injuries. 2. The fields of the Aedui are at a great distance (are-distant far) from the camp. 3. They carry the baggage into the camp. 4. [There] are stones on the wall.

<sup>1</sup> Omit the singular in declining.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.

<sup>3</sup> For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

## LESSON IX.

## ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## 74. EXAMPLES.

## SINGULAR.

- M. **Vir bonus** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 15, 61), *a good man*.  
 F. **Villam bonam** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 13, 55), *a good country-house*.  
 N. **Solō bonō** (Cat. *R. R.* 1), *by good soil*.

## PLURAL.

- M. **Virōs bonōs** (Cic. *Tusc.* 5, 10, 28), *good men*.  
 F. **Bonās hōrās** (Mart. 1, 113), *good (i.e., valuable, precious) hours*.  
 N. **Verbōrum bonōrum** (Cic. *Brut.* 66, 233), *of good (i.e., well-chosen) expressions*.

75. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE : Note (1) the *number, gender, and case* of the *substantives* in each of the foregoing examples, and (2) the *form* of the *adjective* associated with it. Does the Latin adjective, like the English, remain unchanged in form, or is it varied to suit the number, gender, and case of the substantive to which it belongs? Are Latin adjectives, then, declined?

76. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION : A. & G. 186 ; H. 438 ; G. 285.

77. Learn the declension, with stems, of **bonus** : A. & G. 81 ; H. 147, 148 ; G. 33.

78. Learn the declension, with stems, of **miser** (or **liber**) and **niger** (**aeger** or **piger**) : A. & G. 82 ; H. 149, 150 ; G. 34.

79. Decline, giving stems, the *adjectives* in the following

## VOCABULARY.

- ad-scendō, -ere, ascend.**                      **asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough,**  
**aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick.**              **rugged.**

<b>dīvidō, -ere, separate.</b>	<b>perīculum, -ī, N., danger, peril.</b>
<b>im-plōrō, -āre, implore.</b>	<b>prae-cēdō, -ere, excel.</b>
<b>jugum, -ī, N., YOKE, (mount.) ridge.</b>	<b>re-līquō, -ere, leave behind.</b>
<b>lacrima, -ae, F., TEAR.</b>	<b>reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining.</b>
<b>liber, -era, -erum, free.</b>	<b>Rhodanus, -ī, M., the Rhone.</b>
<b>māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great.</b>	<b>Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.</b>
<b>multus, -a, -um, adj., much; in pl., many.</b>	<b>Sēquanī, -ōrum, M., the Sequani.</b>
<b>nostr, -tra, -trum, adj., our.</b>	<b>servus, -ī, M., slave.</b>
<b>numerus, -ī, M., number.</b>	<b>superō, -āre, conquer, defeat.</b>

**80. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **74**. What seems to be the usual position of the adjective with respect to its substantive?

**81. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 343, c; H. 565, with 1; G. 678.

**82. Decline together, with meanings:** **puer aeger, a sick child; jugum asperum, a rugged ridge; populus Rōmānus** (in sing.), *the Roman people; reliquae cōpiae* (in pl.), *the remaining forces.*

### 83. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī amīcītiām recūsāt. 2. Līberōs Galīae populōs superāt. 3. Multōs puerōs aegrōs relīquunt. 4. Multīs dē<sup>1</sup> causīs<sup>2</sup> Helvētīū relīquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. 5. Māgnūm servōrum numerum habet. 6. Rhodanus prōvinciām nostrām ab Helvētīīs dīvidīt.

II. 1. The Rhone separates the Sequani from our province. 2. Our forces are ascending the rugged ridge. 3. The sick children are in<sup>1</sup> great danger. 4. He implores with<sup>1</sup> many tears. 5. He leads-out the remaining forces of the Helvetians.

### 84. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Auxiliū ā populō Rōmānō implōrant. 2. Divitiācī māgnūm in<sup>3</sup> populūm Rōmānūm studiū cōgnōscīt. 3. Multīs

dē causīs in jugō asperō lēgātum relinquit. 4. Lēgātum māgnō cum periculō in Galliam mittō.

II. 1. For<sup>4</sup> many reasons our forces excel the Helvetians. 2. The sick child implores aid with many tears. 3. The free races of Gaul refuse the friendship of our lieutenant.

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 345, a; G. 680, 2.

<sup>2</sup> Translate: *for many reasons*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *to*.

<sup>4</sup> See 83, I., sent. 4.

## LESSON X.

### ADJECTIVES: ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

#### 85.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Amīcitia numquam molesta est** (Cic. *Lael.* 6, 22), *friendship is never troublesome.*
2. **Vērae amīcitiæ sempiternæ sunt** (Cic. *Lael.* 9, 32), *true friendships are everlasting.*
3. **Fortūna caeca est** (Cic. *Lael.* 15, 54), *Fortune is blind.*
4. **Imbēcilla est nātūra** (Cic. *Lael.* 17, 63), *nature is weak.*<sup>1</sup>
5. **Tanta est stultitiæ incōstantia** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 2, 4), *such is the inconsistency*<sup>1</sup> *of folly.*
6. **Sumus ōtiōsī** (Cic. *Lael.* 5, 17), *we are at-leisure.*<sup>1</sup>
7. **At**<sup>2</sup> **sunt mōrōsī, et anxii, et irācundī senēs**<sup>3</sup> (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 18, 65), *but, you will say,*<sup>2</sup> *the old are full-of-whims, uneasy, and irritable.*<sup>1</sup>

86. OBSERVATION: Compare the foregoing examples with those of 74. Note that in the latter the adjectives simply qualify their substantives *without the intervention of a verb*, whereas in the examples of 85 the adjectives are connected with their substantives by some form of the verb **sum**. The adjectives of 74 merely designate an *attribute* or quality, and are called *Attributive Adjectives*; the adjectives of 85 unite with the verb to form the *predicate*, and are called *Predicate Adjectives*. Note, further, that the predicate

adjective, like the attributive, agrees<sup>4</sup> with its substantive in *gender, number, and case*.

**87. REFERENCES:** A. & G. 186, *a, b*; H. 438, 2; G. 284, I., 285, 202<sup>2</sup>.

**88. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **85**. Does the predicate adjective appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the verb (see Exs. 1-5)? What appears to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 6, 7)? Why is the subject placed *last* in Ex. 5? Why does **Imbēcilla est** stand at the *beginning* of the sentence in Ex. 4?

**89. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 343, with *a*, 344, *a*; H. 560, 561, I., II.; G. 676, 1, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

**90.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Maurō cārus** (Sall. *Jug.* 108, 1), *dear to the Moor*.
2. **Populō Rōmānō periculōsum** (1, 33, 3), *dangerous to the Roman people*.
3. **Castrīs idōneum** (1, 49, 1), *suitable for a camp*.
4. **Helvētiīs amīcus** (1, 9, 3), *friendly to the Helvetians*.
5. **Cupidīs<sup>5</sup> odiōsum et molestum** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 14, 47), *vexatious and annoying to [those who are] desirous*.
6. **Fīnitimī Belgīs** (2, 2, 3), *adjacent to the Belgians*.
7. **Inimīcum Pompējō** (Sall. *Cat.* 19, 1), *hostile to Pompey*.

**91. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) the *meaning* of the *adjectives* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the *substantives* construed with them. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with such Adjectives as the foregoing.

**92. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 234, *a*; H. 391, I.; G. 356.

**93. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **90**. Does the dative appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the adjective (see Exs. 1-5)?

## 94.

## VOCABULARY.

**adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *unsuccessful, adverse.*

**aedificium**, -iī, n., *building.*

**amicus**, -a, -um, adj., *friendly, favorably-disposed.*

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *warlike.*

**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear.*

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*

**discipulus**, -ī, m., *pupil.*

**equus**, -ī, m., *horse.*

**finitimus**, -a, -um, adj., *bordering on, adjacent.*

**Germāni**, -ōrum, m., *the Germans.*

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable.*

**jūstus**, -a, -um, adj., *just, founded in right.*

**magister**, -tri, m., *master; teacher.*

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched.*

**numquam**, adv., *never.*

**periculōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous, perilous.*

**perniciōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *destructive, ruinous.*

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

**socius**, -iī, m., *ally.*

**supplicium**, -iī, n., *punishment.*

**templum**, -ī, n., *temple.*

**vīctōria**, -ae, f., *victory.*

## 95.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lēgātum māgnō cum periculō mittit. 2. Vīctōria Germānōrum populō Rōmānō periculōsa est. 3. Multī socii agrī in castris manent. 4. Germāni asperī et bellicōsi sunt. 5. Supplicium socerī generō nōn est grātum. 6. Helvētiī sunt liberī. 7. Magister discipulis cārus est, discipulī magistrō. 8. In Britannia sunt crēbra aedificia.

II. 1. The Romans have beautiful temples. 2. Divitiacus is favorably-disposed to the Helvetians. 3. The horses of our lieutenant are beautiful. 4. The authority (*imperium*) of the Roman people in Gaul is founded-in-right. 5. Aquitania is adjacent to the Roman province. 6. The life of slaves is wretched. 7. An unsuccessful battle is ruinous to the Romans. 8. Free men are never wretched.

## 96.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Vīctōriae cōpiarum nostrārum viris bonis grātae sunt. 2. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis obsecrat. 3. Reliquos Belgas

in officiō continet. 4. Diligentia discipulōrum magistrīs grāta est.  
 5. Divitiacī māgnū in populū Rōmānū studiū cōgnōscit.  
 6. Nostrī equī nōn sunt nigrī, sed rubrī.

II. 1. The idleness of pupils is annoying to their teachers.  
 2. The Belgians are free. 3. Ariovistus is savage, passionate,  
 [and] headstrong. 4. He selects a place suitable for a camp.  
 5. He carries-on war for (*ḍē*) many reasons. 6. The Helvetians  
 excel the rest-of-the (*i.e.*, remaining) Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 4, Lesson V.

<sup>2</sup> *At* here introduces an objection which the speaker supposes will suggest itself to the minds of his hearers.

<sup>3</sup> *senēs*, *the old*, belongs to the third declension, which will be treated later.

<sup>4</sup> *ōtiōsī* in Ex. 6 agrees with *nōs*, *we*, the omitted subject of *sumus*.

<sup>5</sup> A. & G. 188; H. 441, 1; G. 195, 1.

<sup>6</sup> *sc. cārī sunt*.



## LESSON XI.

### VERBS: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

97. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,<sup>1</sup> of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of *sum*: A. & G. p. 68; H. p. 84; G. p. 50.

98. Inflect (like *sum*) in the same tenses: *absum*; also learn the synopsis.

99. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,<sup>1</sup> of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive, of *amō*: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 54, 56.

100. Inflect (like *amō*) in the same tenses of both voices: *cōfirmō*, *laudō*, *probō*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.



101. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 58, 60.

102. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**): **habeō**, **teneō**, **timeō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

103. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 64, 66.

104. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**): **dūcō**, **mittō**, **pōnō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

105. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 68, 70.

106. Inflect (like **audiō**): **impediō**, **pūniō**, **vestiō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

<sup>1</sup> The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present

purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. See A. & G. 276, 277, 278; H. 466, 467, I., II., 468, 469, I., II., 470; G. 218, 222, 234.

## LESSON XII.

### EXERCISES ON THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

#### 107.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Abestis. 2. Laudāmur. 3. Cōfirmābās. 4. Habēbō. 5. Tenēbuntur. 6. Dūcētur. 7. Mittēbantur. 8. Mūniēbātis. 9. Vestiēbāmur. 10. Aberat. 11. Recūsās.

12. Probābis. 13. Habēris. 14. Dūcēminī. 15. Eri-  
mus. 16. Nōn pūniunt. 17. Pōnitur. 18. Impediēbāris.  
19. Manet. 20. Nōn timēbunt. 21. Erāmus. 22. Ves-  
tīre. 23. Tenēbātur. 24. Laudābor. 25. Nōn dīci-  
mus. 26. Quaerēbam. 27. Pūniēbar. 28. Nōn veniētis.  
29. Aberis. 30. Trānsportantur.

II. 1. I do not obey. 2. I am led. 3. We shall be  
commended. 4. They were saying. 5. You (pl.) were  
not feared. 6. He will obey. 7. We were establishing.  
8. They were sent. 9. We shall inquire. 10. I was com-  
ing. 11. I shall be away. 12. We are feared. 13. The  
camp will be fortified. 14. They do not refuse. 15. He  
will be clothed. 16. You (sing.) were hindered. 17. We  
were. 18. They will remain. 19. I am held. 20. You  
will be sent. 21. He was led. 22. They were coming.  
23. It is-in-process-of-fortification.<sup>1</sup> 24. We do not approve.  
25. He will have. 26. You (sing.) punished. 27. You  
were not obeying. 28. We were hindered. 29. You (pl.)  
will transport. 30. I shall be feared.

**108.****Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Nōn manēbant. 2. Dūcimīnī. 3. Vestiēre. 4. Im-  
pediēbar. 5. Trānsportātur. 6. Nōn recūsābis. 7. Tenēbā-  
minī. 8. Mittēmur. 9. Dicitis. 10. Eram. 11. Aberātis.  
12. Pōnuntur. 13. Probābuntur. 14. Cōfirmābis. 15. Mū-  
nient. 16. Pūniēminī. 17. Nōn timēbantur. 18. Recūsābās.  
19. Manēbant. 20. Mittitur.

II. 1. We shall obey. 2. We were not commended. 3. You  
(pl.) were coming. 4. You (sing.) will be hindered. 5. We  
were away. 6. We are led. 7. You do not have. 8. He will  
be punished. 9. They were inquiring. 10. He will be. 11. He  
will say. 12. It was-in-process-of-fortification.<sup>2</sup> 13. You (sing.)  
were praised. 14. I shall be away. 15. We shall be clothed.  
16. You were held. 17. They do not approve. 18. You (sing.)  
are not feared. 19. I am sent. 20. I shall be punished.

<sup>1</sup> Present passive of *mūniō*.<sup>2</sup> Imperfect passive of *mūniō*.

## LESSON XIII.

## ABLATIVES: MEANS OR INSTRUMENT AND VOLUNTARY AGENT.

## 109.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Frūmentō juvāre** (2, 3, 3), *to aid [him] with grain.*
2. **Ut fūmō sīgnificābātur** (2, 7, 4), *as was made evident by the smoke.*
3. **Armīs contendere** (2, 13, 2), *to contend with arms.*
4. **Copulīs continēbantur** (3, 13, 8), *they were held fast by means of grapnel-hooks.*
5. **Castra vāllō fossāque mūnīre** (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a rampart and a ditch.*

**110. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that the substantives which designate the *means* or *instrument by which* the action expressed by the verb is performed, are in the *ablative*. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Means or Instrument.

**111. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 248; H. 420; G. 403<sup>1</sup>.

## 112.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab Suēbīs premēbantur** (4, 1, 2), *they were harassed by the Suebi.*
2. **Sī postulātur ā populō** (Cic. *Off.* 2, 17, 58), *if the people demand it* (lit., if it is demanded by the people).
3. **Ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque . . .** (1, 31, 4), *[invited] by the Arverni and Sequani.*
4. **Ab Divitiacō . . .** (1, 32, 1), *[delivered] by Divitiacus.*
5. **A Labiēnō . . .** (1, 22, 1), *[held] by Labienus.*

**113. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Compare the *ablatives* in the foregoing examples with those of 109. Note that the *ablatives*

in 109 designate *things* used as *instruments*, and that they are not accompanied by a preposition; but that the ablatives in 112 designate *persons* acting as *voluntary agents*, and that they are accompanied by the preposition *ā* or *ab*. How, then, is the Agent, as distinguished from the Instrument, to be expressed in Latin?

114. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 246; H. 415, I.; G. 403<sup>2</sup>.

## 115.

## VOCABULARY.

ac-cūsō, -āre, call to account.	fossa, -ae, F., ditch, moat.
aqua, -ae, F., water.	fuga, -ae, F., flight.
Ariovistus, -ī, M., Ariovistus. <sup>1</sup>	fūmus, -ī, M., smoke.
com-moveō, -ēre, disturb, disquiet.	pateō, -ēre, lie open, extend.
com-pleō, -ēre, FILL.	praemium, -īi, N., reward.
concilium, -īi, N., council.	-que, <sup>2</sup> conj., and.
con-vocō, -āre, call together, con- voke.	sarmenta, -ōrum, N. (usu. pl.), light branches.
dīcō, -ere, say, express.	sīgnificō, -āre, show, make evident.
et, <sup>2</sup> conj., and.	tribūnus, -ī, M., tribune. <sup>1</sup>
ex-citō, -āre, stimulate, excite.	vāllum, -ī, N., wall, rampart.
ex-pellō, -ere, drive out, expel.	

## 116.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fossam aquā complent. 2. Ab Aeduīs accūsātur.  
3. Castra vāllō fossāque mūniēbant. 4. Concilium ā Belgīs convocābitur. 5. Sarmentīs fossās Rōmānōrum complēbimus. 6. Sententiae ā tribūnīs dīcēbantur. 7. Rōmānī adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoventur. 8. Superābuntur Belgae, expellentur Germānī.

II. 1. The Germans will be defeated by the Gauls. 2. I shall fortify the camp with a rampart. 3. The forces of the Gauls are defeated by Ariovistus. 4. The Helvetians were adjacent to the Roman province. 5. He will stimulate the tribunes by great rewards. 6. The camp, as (*ut*) was made evident by the smoke, extended over-a-wide-space (*lātē*, adv.<sup>3</sup>). 7. The baggage was held by our-men.<sup>4</sup> 8. The ditches will be filled with water.

## 117. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Oppidum nātūrā loci mūniēbātur. 2. Concilium ab lēgātō convocātur. 3. Frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant. 4. Castris idōneum locum dēligēs. 5. Inerepitantur atque incūsantur reliquī Belgae ā Nerviīs. 6. Undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur.

II. 1. The camp will be defended by our-men.<sup>4</sup> 2. A place suitable for a camp is selected. 3. The towns were fortified, and the grain was conveyed from the country districts into the towns. 4. The lieutenant will be harassed with difficulties by the Veneti. 5. You (pl.) will recompense the lieutenant with a great reward.

<sup>1</sup> See the general vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> *et, and*, simply connects; *-que, and*, implies close connection and is enclitic (appended to the second member); *atque (āc)*, and also, gives emphasis to

the second member: A. & G. 156, *a*; H. 554, I., 2; G. 477, 478, 479.

<sup>3</sup> Place the adverb before the verb: A. & G. 343; H. 567; G. 676 with Rem.

<sup>4</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson X.

—o—o—o—

## LESSON XIV.

### SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: MUTE STEMS.

118. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 46; H. 57, 58, 59; G. 54.

119. Decline:<sup>1</sup> *prīnceps, -ipis*, M., *chief*; *rēx, -gis*, M., *king*; *dux, -cis*, C.,<sup>2</sup> *leader*; *mīles, -itis*, M., *soldier*; *caput, -itis*, N., *head*; *jūdex, -icis*, C.,<sup>2</sup> *judge*; *rādīx, -īcis*, F., *root*; *lapis, -idis*, M., *stone*; *custōs, -ōdis*, C.,<sup>2</sup> *guard*.

120. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: *prīncip-, rēg-, duc-, mīlit-, capit-, jūdic-, rādīc-, lapid-, custōd-*.

121. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 119: A. & G. 44, 45, *a* (first sentence), *b* (first two sentences), *c* (entire); H. 57, 2, 58, 1, 2), 3), 5), 59, 1, 3); G. 51 (entire).

122. Decline together, with meanings:<sup>1</sup> **dux Rōmānus**, *a Roman leader*; **lēx dūra**, *a harsh law*; **eques noster**, *our horseman*; **caput māgnūm**, *a large head*; **vōx libera**, *free speech*; **jūdex jūstus**, *a just judge*.

## 123.

VOCABULARY.<sup>3</sup>

cadō, -ere, *fall*.

in-fluō, -ere, *flow into, flow*.

Juba, -ae, *M.*, *Juba*.<sup>4</sup>

Ōceanus, -ī, *M.*, *ocean*.

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* (sing. rare), *FEW*.

pedes, -itis, *M.*, *foot-soldier*.

per-turbō, -āre, *disturb*.

Procillus, -ī, *M.*, *Procillus*.<sup>4</sup>

Rhēnus, -ī, *M.*, *the Rhine*.

trā-dūcō, -ere, *lead across*.

trahō, -ere, *draw, drag*.

vitium, -ī, *N.*, *fault*.

vōx, vōcis, *F.*, *voice*; *speech*; *utterance, outcry*.

## 124.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lēgēs reddit. 2. Rēx Germānōrum est in Galliā.  
3. Equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque mittuntur ā rēge Jubā.  
4. Ducēs cōpiās trādūcēbant. 5. Ducis vitium militibus  
perniciōsum est. 6. Peditum vōcibus equitēs perturbāban-  
tur. 7. Paucī dē nostrīs equitibus cadunt. 8. Militēs  
lapidibus pūgnant. 9. Procillus ā custōdibus īn fugā tra-  
hēbātur. 10. Rhēnus multīs capitibus<sup>5</sup> in Ōceanum īnfluit.

II. 1. The laws will be restored. 2. The Rhine has many sources (heads). 3. King Juba sends many horsemen from the town. 4. The guards were dragging Procillus in their flight. 5. The forces of the leaders will be led across. 6. The outcries of the soldiers disturbed the leader. 7. The flight of the horsemen was fraught-with-danger (*periculōsus*, *adj.*) to the foot-soldiers.

125. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Contrōversiae rēgum compōnentur. 2. In pūgnā militis officia praestābat. 3. Sēquanī caput dēmittunt. 4. Militēs ab signīs discēdent. 5. Dux in vāllō custōdēs dispōnit. 6. Etiam militum vōcibus carpēbātur.

II. 1. The judges will settle the disputes. 2. The foot-soldiers were forsaking (withdrawing from) their standards. 3. I shall perform the duties of a leader in the fight. 4. Guards were placed at intervals on the wall by the leader. 5. Even the common-soldiers (*mīles*) were reviling the leader with outcries.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.

<sup>2</sup> Common gender, *i.e.*, masculine or feminine.

<sup>3</sup> See also, for vocab., 119 and 122.

<sup>4</sup> See general vocabulary.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *mouths*.



LESSON XV.

VERBS: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF BOTH VOICES. — PRINCIPAL PARTS.

126. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,<sup>1</sup> of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of *sum*: A. & G. pp. 68, 69; H. p. 84; G. pp. 50, 51.

127. Learn, as in 126, the inflection and synopsis of *absum*.<sup>2</sup>

128. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,<sup>1</sup> of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, Active and Passive, of *amō*: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 55, 57.

129. Inflect (like *amō*) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: *cōfirmō*, *establish*; *laudō*, *commend*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**130.** Learn, as in **128**, the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 59, 61.

**131.** Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**,<sup>3</sup> *have, hold*; **compleō**,<sup>4</sup> *fill*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**132.** Learn, as in **128**, the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 65, 67.

**133.** Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**,<sup>5</sup> *lead*; **mittō**,<sup>6</sup> *send*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**134.** Learn, as in **128**, the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 69, 71.

**135.** Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

**136.** OBSERVATION: In committing to memory the forms of the verbs thus far introduced, the learner may have observed the following facts:—

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses, Active and Passive, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. This stem may be obtained by cutting off the syllable *-re* from the *Present Infinitive Active*, and is called the *Present Stem*. Thus the present stem of **amō** is **amā-**; the present stem of **moneō** (**dēleō**) is **monē-** (**dēlē-**); of **tegō** (**regō**, **emō**) is **tege-** (**rege-**, **eme-**); of **audiō** is **audī-**. Again, the *Present Infinitive Active* shows to which conjugation the verb belongs.

2. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Active Voice, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. This stem may be obtained by cutting off the person-ending **-t**



from the third person singular of the *Perfect Indicative Active*, and is called the *Perfecti Stem*. Thus the perfect stem of *amō* is *amāvī-*; the perfect stem of *moneō* (*dēleō*) is *monuī-* (*dēlēvī-*); of *tegō* (*regō*, *emō*) is *tēxī-* (*rēxī-*, *ēmī-*); of *audiō* is *audīvī-*.

3. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Passive Voice, in the several conjugations, are made up of the forms of *sum* in combination with the *Perfect Participle*.

**137. INFERENCE:** In view of the foregoing observed facts, what parts of the verb, besides the *Present Indicative Active*, are, from their importance, entitled to be called the *Principal Parts*?

**138. VERIFICATION:** The principal parts of *amō*, *love*, *moneō*, *warn*, *dēleō*, *destroy*, *tegō*, *cover*, *regō*, *rule*, *emō*, *buy*, *audiō*, *hear*, are:

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. INDIC. ACT.	PERF. PART. PASS.
<b>amō</b>	<b>amāre</b>	<b>amāvī</b>	<b>amātus</b>
<b>moneō</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monuī</b>	<b>monitus</b>
<b>dēleō</b>	<b>dēlēre</b>	<b>dēlēvī</b>	<b>dēlētus</b>
<b>tegō</b>	<b>tegere</b>	<b>tēxī</b>	<b>tectus</b>
<b>regō</b>	<b>regere</b>	<b>rēxī</b>	<b>rēctus</b>
<b>emō</b>	<b>emere</b>	<b>ēmī</b>	<b>ēemptus</b>
<b>audiō</b>	<b>audīre</b>	<b>audīvī</b>	<b>audītus</b>

<sup>1</sup> The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. The two meanings of the Latin perfect, and the distinction between the imperfect and the historical perfect, should receive special notice. See A. & G. 277, 279, 280, 281, also 115, *b, c*; II. 468, 469, I., II., 471, I., II., 6, 472, 473; G. 222, 223, 226, 227, 231, 232, 233, 236.

<sup>2</sup> The perf. indic. of *absum* is *āfuī*.

<sup>3</sup> The perf. indic. act. of *habeō* is *habuī*; the perf. participle is *habitus*.

<sup>4</sup> The perf. indic. act. of *compleō* is *complēvī*; the perf. participle is *complētus*.

<sup>5</sup> The perf. indic. act. of *dūcō* is *dūxī*; the perf. participle is *ductus*.

<sup>6</sup> The perf. indic. act. of *mitto* is *mīxī*; the perf. participle is *missus*.

## LESSON XVI.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

139. Learn from the general vocabulary (at the end of the book) the Principal Parts of the verbs in the following

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ab-dūcō</b> , <i>lead away.</i>	<b>pōnō</b> , <i>place.</i>
<b>con-veniō</b> , <i>COME together.</i>	<b>postulō</b> , <i>demand.</i>
<b>con-vocō</b> , <i>call together.</i>	<b>mūniō</b> , <i>fortify.</i>
<b>ē-nūntiō</b> , <i>divulge.</i>	<b>teneō</b> , <i>hold.</i>
<b>frangō</b> , <i>BREAK, crush.</i>	<b>trā-dō</b> , <i>surrender.</i>
<b>per-moveō</b> , <i>move deeply.</i>	

## 140.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōnfirmāvī. 2. Cōnfirmābam. 3. Audītus erās.  
 4. Ēnūntiāverō. 5. Vestītus eris. 6. Convocātī estis.  
 7. Convocābāminī. 8. Postulāverat. 9. Mūnītī erant.  
 10. Habitus es. 11. Frēgeritis. 12. Vestītī erunt.  
 13. Convēninus. 14. Conveniēbāmus. 15. Posueram.  
 16. Missī sunt. 17. Mittēbantur. 18. Āfuerant. 19. Nōn habuerimus.  
 20. Complēvistī. 21. Complēbās. 22. Permōtus est.  
 23. Fuerāmus. 24. Trādītus eram. 25. Permōtus erit.  
 26. Nōn pūnīvit. 27. Nōn pūniēbat. 28. Convocātī erātis.  
 29. Āfuerit. 30. Ductī eritis. 31. Posuerunt.  
 32. Pōnēbant. 33. Laudātī sumus. 34. Laudābāmur.  
 35. Complēverās. 36. Nōn convēnerint. 37. Audītī erāmus.  
 38. Frēgīstī. 39. Frangēbās. 40. Fuīstī.  
 41. Erātis. 42. Fuērunt.

- II. 1. I was clothed. 2. I was (habitually) clothed.  
 3. You (sing.) had been surrendered. 4. We shall have been called together.  
 5. You (pl.) will have come together. 6. He had heard. 7. He has filled. 8. They will have

been led away. 9. You (pl.) had been deeply moved. 10. You (sing.) were sent. 11. You (sing.) were (habitually) sent. 12. I shall have held. 13. I had fortified. 14. You (pl.) clothed. 15. You (pl.) used to clothe. 16. You (pl.) were clothing. 17. You (sing.) have divulged. 18. You (pl.) had been. 19. He had been led. 20. You (sing.) will have been commended. 21. They demanded. 22. They were demanding. 23. They were wont to commend. 24. You (pl.) were away. 25. He was wont to be deeply moved. 26. You (pl.) had held. 27. We shall not have been led. 28. We shall have broken. 29. He will have been. 30. I was in the habit of punishing. 31. You (sing.) have not been away. 32. We were not heard. 33. You (pl.) used to hear. 34. They fortified the camp. 35. They were fortifying the camp. 36. The camp was in process of fortification. 37. You (sing.) will have divulged. 38. They have not been. 39. You (sing.) have not punished. 40. They had led away. 41. We had commended. 42. He will have held.

#### 141. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Permōti erāmus. 2. Abductus est. 3. Complēverit. 4. Trādiderātis. 5. Tenuērunt. 6. Missi erimus. 7. Nōn habuerās. 8. Āfuistis. 9. Fuit. 10. Erat. 11. Cōfirmāverint. 12. Positi erant. 13. Missus sum. 14. Mittēbar. 15. Pūnitus eram. 16. Pūniēbantur. 17. Frēgerant. 18. Abductus erat. 19. Posuimus. 20. Pōnēbāmus.

II. 1. We divulged. 2. They had been placed. 3. They have been crushed. 4. You (sing.) will have been led away. 5. We had demanded. 6. He will have had. 7. You (sing.) will have been. 8. I shall have fortified. 9. I shall have been clothed. 10. I led. 11. We did not lead. 12. You (pl.) were not leading. 13. You were wont to be led. 14. They had come together. 15. He had been away. 16. You (pl.) had been called together. 17. They will have been filled. 18. I shall have established. 19. You (sing.) had been. 30. They were away.

## LESSON XVII.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE IN COMPOUND  
TENSES. — DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

## 142.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Mūrus nūdātus est** (2, 6, 2), *the wall was stripped.*
2. **Gallia posita est** (1, 16, 2), *Gaul is situated.*
3. **Proelium restitūtum est** (1, 53, 1), *the battle was renewed.*
4. **Repertī sunt equitēs Rōmānī** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 4, 9), *Roman knights were found.*
5. **Tabulae repertae sunt** (1, 29, 1), *lists were found.*
6. **Castra posita erant** (2, 8, 3), *the camp had been pitched.*

**143. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *gender*, *number*, and *case* of the *participle* and of the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples. Does the participle, like the adjective, agree with its substantive? Frame a rule for the Gender, Number, and Case of the Participle<sup>1</sup> in the tenses for completed action.

**144. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 186; H. 438, 1.

## 145.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Umbrenō negōtium dat** (Sall. *Cat.* 40, 1), *he assigns the work to Umbrenus.*
2. **Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit** (1, 20, 6), *he puts guards over Dumnorig.*
3. **Neque nostrīs cēdēbant** (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 57, 3), *nor did they yield to our men.*
4. **Labiēnō timēbat** (7, 56, 2), *he feared for [the safety of] Labienus.*
5. **Patriae cōsulere** (Nep. *Epam.* 10, 1), *to take thought for [the welfare of] one's country.*
6. **Praeterita Divitiacō condōnāre** (1, 20, 6) *to overlook the past [out of regard] for Divitiacus.*

7. **Favēre Helvētiīs** (1, 18, 8), *to favor the Helvetians.*
8. **Lēgātīs imperat** (5, 1, 1), *he gives orders to the lieutenants.*
9. **Vercingetorigī pārent.** (7, 63, 9), *they obey (i.e., yield obedience to) Vercingetorix.*
10. **Lacedaemoniīs servīre** (Nep. Alc. 9, 4), *to be enslaved to the Lacedaemonians.*
11. **Semper cīvitatī indulserat** (7, 40, 1), *he had always been partial to the community.*
12. **Persuādēt Rauricīs** (1, 5, 4), *they prevail upon the Raurici.*
13. **Fāmae suae pepercit** (Sall. Cat. 52, 32), *he has spared his own reputation.*
14. **Miserīs succurrere** (Verg. Aen. 1, 630), *to succor (lit., run under) the wretched.*
15. **Invidēre bonīs** (Sall. Cat. 51, 38), *to envy (lit., look askance at) the good.*
16. **Dux suīs aderat** (7, 62, 5), *the leader stood by (i.e., supported) his men.*
17. **Negōtiō praefuerant** (5, 2, 3), *they had been in charge of (lit., had been before) the work.*
18. **Cōnsiliīs obstitit** (Nep. Con. 2, 3), *he opposed (lit., stood against) the plans.*

**146. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *datives* in the foregoing examples express the person *to* or *for whom*, or the thing *to* or *for which*, something is done; in other words, these *datives* denote the *object indirectly affected* by the action expressed by the verb. Frame a rule for the Case of the Indirect Object.

Note, further, the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the verb? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Exs. 7, 12, and 15)?

**147. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 224, 343, 344; H. 382, 567, 1; G. 343, 676, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

**148. OBSERVATION:** Note that the verbs in Exs. 1, 2, and 6, are *transitive*; and that they take, besides the dative of the indirect

object, an *accusative* of the *direct object*. Note also the *order of the words* in these examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the direct (see Exs. 1 and 2)? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Ex. 6)?

**149. REFERENCES:** A. & G. 225; H. 384, II., 567, 3; G. 344, 676, Rem., 2, 3.

**150. OBSERVATION:** Note that the verbs in the remaining examples are *intransitive*, and that they take the dative of indirect object only.

**151. REFERENCES:** A. & G. 226; H. 384, I.

**152. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that in Exs. 7-13, the dative is used with verbs of *favoring* (**favēre**, 7), *commanding* (**imperat**, 8), *obeying* (**pārent**, 9), *servicing* (**servīre**, 10), *indulging* (**indulserat**, 11), *persuading* (**persuādent**, 12), *sparing* (**pepercit**, 13). Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with these and similar verbs.

**153. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 227; H. 385, I., II.; G. 345.

**154. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the verbs in Exs. 14-18 are *compounded* with the *prepositions* **sub** (**suc-currere**, 14), **in** (**in-vidēre**, 15), **ad** (**ad-erat**, 16), **prae** (**prae-fuerant**, 17), and **ob** (**ob-stitit**, 18) respectively. Note further that, in the compounds given above, the force of the *preposition* is felt *independently* of the *verb*.<sup>2</sup> Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with such Compounds.

**155. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 228; H. 386; G. 346.

<sup>1</sup> Participles in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, are declined like adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**.

<sup>2</sup> The learner must not infer that *all* verbs compounded with these prepositions take the dative.

## LESSON XVIII.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

## 156.

## VOCABULARY.

commodum, -i, n., <i>advantage.</i>	obses, -idis, c., <i>hostage.</i>
con-dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>over-look.</i>	ob-stō, -āre, -stiti, <i>stand against, oppose.</i>
cōnsilium, -ii, n., <i>plan.</i>	Orgetorix, -igis, m., <i>Orgetorix.</i>
cōnsulō, -ere, -luī, -ltus, <i>take thought, have regard, consult.</i>	pāreō, -ēre, -uī, <i>obey.</i>
Dumnorix, -igis, m., <i>Dumnorix.</i>	pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>
fāma, -ae, f., <i>reputation.</i>	per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, <i>persuade.</i>
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, <sup>1</sup> <i>favor.</i>	precēs, <sup>3</sup> -um, f., <i>entreaties.</i>
fortūna, -ae, f., <i>fortune.</i>	prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, <i>provide.</i>
im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, <i>urge on, impel.</i>	servitūs, -ūtis, f., <i>slavery, servitude.</i>
im-perō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>command; demand.</i>	sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, <sup>1</sup> <i>COME to the support of.</i>
indulgēō, -ēre, -sī, -tus, <i>indulge.</i>	sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, <i>take, (of punishment) inflict.</i>
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, <i>take part in.</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., <i>your (pl.).</i>
in-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, <i>envy.</i>	virtūs, -ūtis, f., <i>manliness, valor, virtue.</i>
īra, -ae, f., <i>anger, passion.</i>	
liberī, <sup>2</sup> -ōrum, m., <i>children.</i>	
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., <i>MY.</i>	

## 157.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Virtūtī nostrae fortūna invidet. 2. Magis (*rather*) fāmae vestrae quam (*than*) īrae cōsultis. 3. Prōvinciae māgnū mīlitum numerum imperat. 4. Cūr (*why?*) meis commodīs obstās? 5. Celeriter (*quickly*) sociīs subvēnērunt. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est. 7. Oppidum mūnītum erat. 8. Līberī Aeduōrum īn servitūtem abductī erant. 9. Aeduīs obsidēs reddit. 10. Haec (nom. pl. neut., *these things*) sī (*if*) ēnūntiāta erunt, dē obsidibus supplicium sūmet. 11. Ariovistus mīlītēs īn servitūtem Rōmānīs nōn trādiderat.

12. Dumnorix favēbat Helvētiīs. 13. Cōsulēmus miserīs.  
14. Ā reliquīs obsidēs trāditī sunt.

II. 1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls have been defeated by the Romans. 3. He overlooked the injury [out of regard] for the entreaties of Divitiacus. 4. He has placed guards over<sup>4</sup> Orgetorix. 5. The plan was approved by the leaders. 6. Expressions<sup>5</sup> were heard. 7. The leader had demanded of the Gauls<sup>6</sup> a great number of hostages. 8. Labienus had provided grain for the soldiers. 9. The leader indulges the soldiers, but (*sed*) the soldiers do not obey the leader. 10. The horsemen had not taken part in the battle. 11. The leader will quickly (*celeriter*) come to the support of the soldiers. 12. The Gauls have been urged on by their chiefs.

## 158.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Juventūs Catilinae inceptīs favēbat. 2. Divitiacus cōsiliīs Dumnorigīs obstābat. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānīs salūtem nōn committit. 4. Ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcēs-sitī erant. 5. Arma Gallōrum ex oppidō trādita erant. 6. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae erunt. 7. Dux Gallōrum suis aderat. 8. Equitibus celeriter subveniunt peditēs.

II. 1. I shall not restore the hostages to the Aeduans. 2. He had given the boy a beautiful book. 3. Many hostages had been given by the rest. 4. They will prefer friendship to many advantages. 5. We shall take thought for the safety of the unfortunate soldiers. 6. Dumnorix envied Divitiacus and did not<sup>7</sup> yield obedience to the Roman people. 7. The ditches have been filled with light branches. 8. The beautiful temples had been destroyed by the Roman soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Verbs that are *invariably* intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only; accordingly, in the principal parts of such verbs, the neuter form of the participle will be given.

<sup>2</sup> *liberī*, *children*, with reference to

their parents; *puerī*, *children*, as a class.

<sup>3</sup> Usually plural.

<sup>4</sup> Sign of dative.

<sup>5</sup> *vōx*, *vōcis*; see 123.

<sup>6</sup> Use the dative.

<sup>7</sup> And not, *neque*.



## LESSON XIX.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: LIQUID  
AND -S-STEMS.

159. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 49; H. 60, 61; G. 40, 43, 46, 49.

160. Decline: **cōnsul**, -is, M., *consul*; **contentiō**, -ōnis, F., *contention*; **homo**, -inīs, C., *man*; **flūmen**, -inīs, N., *river*; **latus**, -erīs, N., *side*; **pater**, -tris, M., *father*; **tempus**, -oris, N., *time*; **timor**, -ōris, M., *fear*.

161. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: **cōnsul-**, **contentiōn-**, **homin-**, **flūmin-**, **lates-**,<sup>1</sup> **patr-**, **tempos-**,<sup>1</sup> **timōr-**.

162. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 160: A. & G. 48, *a, b, c, d*; H. 60, 1, 1), 2), 3), 61, 1, 1), 2), 3), 4); G. 42, 48.

163. Decline together, with meanings: **cōnsul dēsīgnātus**, *consul elect*; **contentiō nostra**, *our contention*; **homo miser**, *wretched man*; **flūmen lātum**, *broad river*; **latus sinistrum**, *left side*; **pater vester**, *your father*; **tempus aliċnum**, *an unfavorable time*; **timor māgnus**, *great fear*.

## 164.

VOCABULARY.<sup>2</sup>

**altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall*.

**arbor**, -oris, F., *tree*.

**Caesar**, -aris, M., *Caesar*.

**com-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, *engage in*.

**com-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set at rest, settle*.

**con-tinēō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hem in*.

**corpus**, -oris, N., *body*.

ex-erceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus, <i>exercise, train.</i>	opus, -eris, N., <i>work.</i>
honōs or honor, -ōris, M., <i>honor.</i>	parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), SPARE.
legiō, -ōnis, F., <i>legion.</i> <sup>3</sup>	per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, <i>arrive, COME.</i>
nōmen, -inis, N., NAME.	tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>award.</i>
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>seize;</i> <i>employ.</i>	

## 165.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulem dēsīgnātum accūsant. 2. Contentiōnēs nostrae compositae sunt. 3. Homīnī miserō parcēs. 4. Flūmine lātō continentur. 5. Tempore<sup>4</sup> aliēnō proelium commisit. 6. Māgnū in timōrem hominēs pervēnerant. 7. Arborēs sunt altae. 8. Caesarī honōrem tribuit. 9. Militēs in opere occupātī erant. 10. Nōmen Caesaris legiōnibus est cārum.

II. 1. The consuls elect have been called to account. 2. Honors will be awarded to Caesar. 3. Caesar's honors are acceptable<sup>5</sup> to the legions. 4. The wretched men obeyed the consuls. 5. The legions engage in battle at an unfavorable time.<sup>6</sup> 6. A broad river hems in the Helvetians. 7. The contentions of the wretched men will be set at rest. 8. The horsemen trained their bodies.

## 166.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Latus sinistrum castrōrum flūmine mūniēbātur. 2. Virgīnī pulchrae parcēmus. 3. Legiōnēs ab opere dēductae erant. 4. Gallī nōmen Caesaris timēbant. Patrēs vestrī magis (*rather*) virtūte quam (*than*) dolō contendēbant.

II. 1. Rivers protected the sides of the camp. 2. The fear of the legions is disquieting to Caesar. 3. The commander will recall his men from the work. 4. The beautiful maidens will obey their fathers.

<sup>1</sup> s in the oblique cases between two vowels becomes r: A. & G. 11, a; H. 31, 1; G. 48<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> See also, for vocab., 160 and 163.

<sup>3</sup> See also general vocabulary.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of *time when*; use preposition *at* in translating: A. & G. 256; H. 429; G. 392.

<sup>5</sup> grātus, -a, -um, adj.

<sup>6</sup> See 165, I., sent. 5.

## LESSON XX.

VERBS: IMPERATIVES OF BOTH VOICES. — THE  
VOCATIVE.

**167.** Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

**168.** Learn, as in **167**, the inflection of **absum**.

**169.** Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 79; H. pp. 87, 89; G. pp. 54, 56.

**170.** Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **cōfirmō**, *establish*; **laudō**, *commend*.

**171.** Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **moneō** (or **dēlēō**): A. & G. p. 81; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 58, 60.

**172.** Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēlēō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**, *have, hold*; **compleō**, *fill*.

**173.** Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 64, 66.

**174.** Inflect (like **tego**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**, *lead*; **mittō**, *send*.

**175.** Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 87; H. pp. 99, 101; G. pp. 68, 70.

**176.** Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

## 177.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōfirmā. 2. Tenēminī. 3. Vestīre. 4. Pōnite. 5. Tenētor. 6. Mittitōte. 7. Convocantor. 8. Vestītor. 9. Habētō. 10. Mūnītō. 11. Mittuntō. 12. Es. 13. Abeste. 14. Laudāminī. 15. Nē<sup>1</sup> dūcuntor. 16. Complēte. 17. Conveniuntō. 18. Este. 19. Cōfirmātō. 20. Abestōte. 21. Mittere. 22. Estō. 23. Pōne. 24. Nē<sup>1</sup> habentō. 25. Dūcitor.

II. 1. Be (thou) established. 2. Be (ye) sent. 3. You (ye) shall hold. 4. Fortify (ye). 5. Thou shalt establish. 6. They shall be clothed. 7. It shall be placed. 8. Fortify (thou). 9. He shall send. 10. It shall be had. 11. They shall not<sup>1</sup> be called together. 12. Be it [so] (fut.). 13. They shall not<sup>1</sup> be. 14. Come (ye) together. 15. Thou shalt be praised. 16. Thou shalt fill. 17. He shall not<sup>1</sup> be clothed. 18. Be (ye) away. 19. Commend (thou). 20. Be (thou) clothed. 21. Thou shalt not<sup>1</sup> be established. 22. Be ye led. 23. Thou shalt hold. 24. They shall lead. 25. Ye shall be.

## 178.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Vestīminī. 2. Habēre. 3. Nē cōfirmātōte. 4. Mitte. 5. Convocāte. 6. Nē pōnuntor. 7. Laudāre. 8. Dūcimīni. 9. Abestō. 10. Suntō. 11. Mūnītōte.

II. 1. Hold (ye). 2. Be (ye) called together. 3. Be (thou) placed. 4. You (ye) shall clothe. 5. Have (thou). 6. They shall not be called together. 7. He shall not be. 8. Be (thou) away. 9. Call (ye) together. 10. Have (ye).

## 179.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Dēsilīte, mīlitēs** (4, 25, 3), *jump overboard, my men* (lit., soldiers)!
2. **Sīc exīstimō, patrēs cōnscrīptī** (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 15), *this is my opinion* (I think thus), *conscript fathers*.
3. **Est ut dīcis, Catō** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 3, 8), *it is as you say, Cato*.
4. **Tū<sup>2</sup> vērō perge, Laelī<sup>3</sup>!** (Cic. *Lael.* 9, 32) *pray go on, Laelius!*
5. **Tē<sup>4</sup> hortor,<sup>5</sup> mī<sup>6</sup> Cicerō** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 3), *I exhort you, my [dear] Cicero*.

**180. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) that the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples represents the *person addressed*, (2) that this substantive is in the *vocative*, and (3) that it stands, not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one or more words. Frame a rule for the Case and Position of the substantive used in Direct Address.

**181. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 241; H. 369, 569, VI.; G. 194, Rem. 3 with fine-print note.

<sup>1</sup> Use *nē* (not *nōn*) when the *future imperative* is negated; the *present imperative* does not take a negative in prose.

<sup>2</sup> *Tū*, pron. 2d pers. nom. sing, *thou, you.*

<sup>3</sup> See A. & G. 40, c; H. 51, 5; G. 29, Rem. 2.

<sup>4</sup> *Tē*, pron. 2d pers. acc. sing., *thee, you.*

<sup>5</sup> *hortor* has a passive form, but an active meaning; such verbs are called *deponent*, and will be treated later.

<sup>6</sup> See A. & G. 40, c; H. 185, note 1; G. 23, Rem. 2.



## LESSON XXI.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

#### 182.

#### VOCABULARY.

*agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, do.*

*animōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of courage.*

*bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.*

*Catīlina, -ae, m., Catiline.*

C.<sup>1</sup> *Fannius, -ī, m., Gajus Fannius.*

C.<sup>1</sup> *Laellus, -ī, m., Gajus Laellius.*

*cōscriptus, -a, -um, enrolled, conscript.*

*custōdia, -ae, f., guardianship; in pl., guards.*

*dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend.*

*facultās, -ātis, f., opportunity.*

*fillus, -ī, m., son.*

M. *Tullius, -ī, m., Marcus Tullius.*

*prae-stō, -āre, -itī, -ātus or -itus, exhibit.*

*pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūs, cleanse, purge.*

*Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.*

*sē-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, separate.*

*tectum, -ī, n., dwelling.*

*vigilla, -ae, f., wakefulness; in pl., watchmen.*

## 183.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Habētis, militēs, facultātem<sup>4</sup>; praestāte virtūtem.<sup>4</sup>  
 2. Pūrgā<sup>4</sup> Rōmam, Catilīna. 3. Jam diū (*for a long time*),  
 patrēs cōnscrīptī,<sup>3</sup> in periculīs sumus.<sup>5</sup> 4. Audī, mī<sup>6</sup> fili.  
 5. Multīs proeliīs, militēs, exercēminī. 6. M. Tullī,<sup>7</sup> quid  
 (neut. sing. acc. interrog. pron., *what*) agis?

II. 1. In battle (battles), soldiers, you are to be (fut. imper.) full of courage. 2. Many do,<sup>8</sup> indeed (*quidem*<sup>9</sup>), inquire, Gajus Laelius, as (*ut*) has been said<sup>10</sup> by Fannius. 3. Separate yourself (*tē*), Catiline, from the good. 4. Defend your dwellings by guards and watchmen. 5. Thou shalt be defended, consul, by [means of] guards and watchmen. 6. Very well (*vērō*<sup>11</sup>), you shall hear, my son.

## 184.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Quoniam (*Seeing that*) supplicatiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs (acc. pl., *those days*) cum conjugibus ac liberis vestris. 2. Vōs,<sup>12</sup> Quirītēs,<sup>13</sup> in vestra tecta discēdite. 3. Tū,<sup>14</sup> Fannī, nōn rēctē (*rightly*) jūdicās dē Catōne. 4. Memoria vestra, discipulī, vocābulīs Latinīs exercētor. 5. Virtūs, virtūs, inquam,<sup>15</sup> C. Fannī, et conciliat amicitias et cōservat.

II. 1. Therefore,<sup>16</sup> conscript fathers, take thought for yourselves;<sup>17</sup> preserve<sup>18</sup> yourselves,<sup>19</sup> [your] wives, [your] children, and your<sup>20</sup> fortunes; defend<sup>21</sup> the name and safety of the Roman people. 2. You were, then,<sup>22</sup> at Laeca's,<sup>23</sup> Catiline. 3. Lay aside your favorable disposition towards me,<sup>24</sup> conscript fathers, and think of (*dē*) your children. 4. Ye shall stand by the unfortunate, praetors!

<sup>1</sup> C had originally the sound of *g*-hard. This sound it retained (even after the introduction of the character *G*) when used as an abbreviation for the name *Gājus*.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 3 at the end of the preceding lesson.

<sup>3</sup> See *cōnscrīptus* in the general vocabulary.

<sup>4</sup> Note the emphatic position.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *have been*, and see A. & G. 276, *a*; H. 467, 2; G. 221.

<sup>6</sup> See foot-note 6, Lesson XX.

<sup>7</sup> Note the exceptional position of the vocative, due to the excitement of the speaker.

<sup>8</sup> Express the emphasis denoted in English by "do," by placing the verb first.

<sup>9</sup> Place **quidem** after the verb, and let the vocative follow before the subject.

<sup>10</sup> The participle must be neuter.

<sup>11</sup> Place **vērō** after the verb.

<sup>12</sup> **Vōs**, pron. 2d pers. nom. pl. *you*.

<sup>13</sup> From **Quirīs, -ītis**; in the plural, applied to the Romans when acting in a civil capacity. Translate: *fellow citizens*.

<sup>14</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson XX.

<sup>15</sup> *I say*; **inquam** is a defective verb, i.e., it lacks most of its parts.

<sup>16</sup> **Quā rē.**

<sup>17</sup> **vōbīs.**

<sup>18</sup> Place the verb before its objects.

<sup>19</sup> **vōs.**

<sup>20</sup> For gender, see A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286.

<sup>21</sup> Place the verb after its objects; see A. & G. 344, f; H. 562; G. 684.

<sup>22</sup> **igitur.**

<sup>23</sup> **apud** (prep.) **Laecam.**

<sup>24</sup> Arrange thus: *your towards me* (**ergā mē**) *favorable disposition.*



## LESSON XXII.

### SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

**185.** Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 52; H. 62, 63; G. 59.

**186.** Decline: **collis**,<sup>1</sup> -is, M., *hill*; **hostis**,<sup>1</sup> -is, C., *enemy*; **īgnis**,<sup>2</sup> -is, M., *fire*; **nāvis**,<sup>3</sup> -is, F., *ship*; **puppis**,<sup>3</sup> -is, F., *stern*; **rūpēs**, -is, F., *rock*; **īnsigne**, -is, N., *badge*; **vectīgal**, -ālis, N., *revenue*.

**187.** Note that the stems of the foregoing nouns are: **colli-**, **hosti-**, **īgni-**, **nāvi-**, **puppi-**, **rūpi-**, **īnsigni-**, **vectīgāli-**.

**188.** Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in **186**: A. & G. 51, a, c; H. 63, 1, 1); G. 58 (first three paragraphs).

**189.** Decline together, with meanings: **collis asper**, a *rugged hill*; **hostis noster**, *our enemy*; **īgnis clārus**, a *bright fire*; **nāvis longa**, a *ship of war* (lit., *long ship*); **puppis alta**, a *high stern*; **rūpēs sinistra**, a *rock on the left*; **īnsigne pulchrum**, a *beautiful badge*; **māgnū vectīgal**, a *large revenue*.

## 190.

VOCABULARY.<sup>4</sup>

<b>ac-commodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</b> <i>adjust.</i>	sing.), <i>boundary</i> ; in pl., also <i>territories.</i>
<b>altitūdō, -inis, F.,</b> <i>height.</i>	<b>mare, -is, N.,</b> <i>sea.</i>
<b>augeō, -ēre, auxili, auctus,</b> <i>increase.</i>	<b>op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</b> <i>assault.</i>
<b>barbarus, -a, -um, adj.,</b> <i>rude</i> ; used subst., <i>barbarian.</i>	<b>prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,</b> <i>send forward.</i>
<b>clāssis, -is, F.,</b> <i>fleet.</i>	<b>prae-sum, -esse, -fui,</b> <i>be in command of.</i>
<b>com-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus,</b> <i>drive in a body, drive.</i>	<b>silva, -ae, F.,</b> <i>wood, forest.</i>
<b>cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</b> <i>burn.</i>	<b>terra, -ae, F.,</b> <i>earth, land.</i>
<b>figūra, -ae, F.,</b> <i>shape.</i>	<b>turris, -is, F.,</b> <i>tower.</i>
<b>fīnis, -is, M.</b> (sometimes F. in	

## 191.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. In fīnēs Helvētiōrum pervēnērunt. 2. Ab hostibus ignī corpora sunt cremāta. 3. Lēgātum cum nāvī longā praemittit. 4. Caesar clāssī praerat. 5. Nāvium figurā permōtī sunt barbarī. 6. Nostrī hostīs in silvās collisque compulērunt. 7. Īnsignia accommodāta erant. 8. Oppidum oppūgnat terrā<sup>5</sup> marīque.<sup>5</sup>

II. 1. They had persuaded the enemy.<sup>6</sup> 2. The height of the sterns exceeded<sup>7</sup> [that of] the towers. 3. The bodies of the enemy will be burned.<sup>8</sup> 4. The lieutenant has arrived with ships of war.<sup>9</sup> 5. The shape of the ships alarmed<sup>10</sup> the barbarians. 6. The enemy<sup>6</sup> will be driven by our men into the hills. 7. The revenues have been increased by Caesar.

## 192.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Māgna hostium multitudō sitī cōsūmēbātur. 2. Nāvēs longae aedificantur in flūmine. 3. Gallī animālia immolant. 4. Neque terrā neque marī effugium dabātur hostibus. 5. Turris altās excitant.

II. 1. They were building ships of war on the river. 2. Living



creatures are sacrificed by the Gauls. 3. The enemy erect a high tower on the hill. 4. A lieutenant was in command of the enemy's fleet.

<sup>1</sup> Decline **collis** and **hostis** with only **-em** in the accusative, and only **-e** in the ablative; otherwise like **turris**. (The rare instances in which **collis** has **-i** in the ablative may be disregarded.)

<sup>2</sup> Decline **ignis** with only **-em** in the accusative; otherwise like **turris**.

<sup>3</sup> Decline **nāvis** and **puppis** throughout like **turris**.

<sup>4</sup> See also, for vocab., 186 and 189.

<sup>5</sup> Ablative of *place where*; use preposition *by* in translating.

<sup>6</sup> Use the plural.

<sup>7</sup> **superō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *will be burned by fire*.

<sup>9</sup> "Ships of war" = *long ships*.

<sup>10</sup> **per-moveō**, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**.

—o:~o:~o:—

## LESSON XXIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

**193.** Learn the declension of the adjectives **levis** (**trīstis** or **facilis**) and **ācer**: A. & G. 84; H. 153, 154; G. 82.

**194.** Decline (like **levis**, **trīstis**, or **facilis**): **omnis**, *all, every*; **fortis**, *brave*; **militāris**, *military*; **dēclivis**, *sloping*; **humilis**, *low*.

**195.** Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjectives are: **omni-**, **forti-**, **militāri-**, **dēclivi-**, **humili-**; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms*: cf. A. & G. 51, *c*; G. 81.

**196.** Decline (like **ācer**): **alacer**, *eager*; **equester**, *pertaining to cavalry*; **pedester**, *pertaining to infantry*; also: **celer**,<sup>1</sup> **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*.

**197.** Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjectives are: **alacri-**, **equestri-**, **pedestri-**, **celeri-**; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms*: cf. A. & G. 51, *b, c*; H. p. 59, foot-note 6; G. 81, 82.

198. Decline together, with meanings: **proelium equestre**, a cavalry engagement; **īnsigne militāre**, a military badge; **omne animal**, every animal; **animus alacer**, an eager spirit; **turris humilis**, a low tower; **nāvis celeris**,<sup>1</sup> a swift ship; **collis dēclivis**, a sloping hill; **cōpiāe pedestrēs**, infantry; **hostis fortis**, a brave enemy.

## 199.

VOCABULARY.<sup>2</sup>

ad, prep. w. acc., to, for.

com-būrō, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus, burn up.

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, contend.  
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, withdraw, recall.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look for.

ex-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, erect.

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsus, set fire to, burn.

in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up.

pūgna, -ae, F., fight.

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, sustain.

## 200.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Īnsignia militāria relinquunt.** 2. **Hostēs equestribus proeliis contendunt.** 3. **Caesar pedestris cōpiās dēdūxit.** 4. **Oppida omnia incendunt, frūmentum omne combūrunt.** 5. **Militēs ad pūgnam alacrēs erunt.** 6. **Militēs nostrī omnia<sup>3</sup> fortī sustinēbant animō.<sup>4</sup>** 7. **Gallī celerem<sup>5</sup> victōriam exspectābant.**

II. 1. They erect a low tower. 2. He drew up his forces on<sup>6</sup> a sloping hill. 3. A speedy<sup>7</sup> victory had been looked for by the Gauls. 4. Caesar's infantry has been recalled. 5. All the legions were eager for the fight. 6. Caesar favored the infantry.

## 201.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. **Ariovistus equestribus proeliis cottidiē (daily) contendit.** 2. **Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt.** 3. **Nervi pedestribus valent cōpiis.<sup>8</sup>** 4. **Dumnorix reliqua omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō<sup>9</sup> redēmit.** 5. **Nam (for) ut<sup>10</sup> Gallōrum alacer est animus, sic<sup>10</sup> mollis mēns est.**

II. 1. Caesar hastened thither (eō) with<sup>11</sup> his infantry. 2. They first (primum) joined battle with their cavalry,<sup>12</sup> [and] then (de'inde) suddenly displayed their infantry. 3. Ariovistus will inflict severe punishment on (dē)<sup>13</sup> all the hostages. 4. The embassy was intrusted to Orgetorix by general vote.

<sup>1</sup> *celer* has *celerum* in the genitive plural; but as this form is found only as a substantive, it should be omitted in declining.

<sup>2</sup> For vocab., see also 194, 196, 198.

<sup>3</sup> Used substantively: A. & G. 188; H. 441, 1; G. 195, Rem. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of *manner*; use prep. *with* in translating. See A. & G. 248, Rem.; H. 419, III.; G. 401.

<sup>5</sup> *speedy*.

<sup>6</sup> *in*.

<sup>7</sup> See sent. 7 of the preceding exercise.

<sup>8</sup> Ablative of *cause*: A. & G. 245; H. 416; G. 407.

<sup>9</sup> Ablative of *price*: A. & G. 252; H. 422; G. 404.

<sup>10</sup> *ut . . . sic, as . . . so, although . . . yet*.

<sup>11</sup> Omit *cum*: A. & G. 248, a; H. 419, I., 1, 1), (1); G. 391, Rem. 1.

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *they first began (committō) a cavalry battle*.

<sup>13</sup> "inflict punishment on" = *take (sūmō) punishment from (dē)*.



## LESSON XXIV.

### APPOSITION. — PREDICATE AGREEMENT. — ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### 202.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Divitiacus Aeduis respondit** (1, 32, 3), *Divitiacus the Aeduan replied.*
2. **Divitiaci frātris studium** (1, 19, 2), *the devotion of Divitiacus, [his] brother.*
3. **Praeterita Divitiacō frātrī condōnāre** (1, 20, 6), *to overlook the past [out of regard] for Divitiacus, [his] brother.*
4. **Flaccum et Pomptinum praetōrēs vocāvī** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 5), *I summoned Flaccus and Pomptinus, the praetors.*
5. **Īn flūmen Rhodanum ĩnfluit** (1, 8, 1), *it flows into the river Rhone.*
6. **Ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum** (1, 23, 1), *from Bibracte, a town of the Aeduans.*

**203. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that **Aedūus, frātris, frātrī, praetōrēs, flūmen,** and **oppidō** denote the *same person or thing* as **Divitiacus, Divitiaci, Divitiacō, Flaccum et Pomptinum, Rhodanum,** and **Bibracte,** respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description* merely. A substantive thus added for further description is called an *Appositive*, and the usage is called *Apposition*. Does the Appositive differ from the principal substantive in *case*, or agree with it? Does it usually agree in *gender* and *number* (see Exs. 1-4)? Does it *invariably* agree in *gender* (see Ex. 5)? Does the Appositive appear regularly to *precede* or to *follow* the principal substantive? Frame a rule for the Case of the Appositive.

**204. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 183, 184, *b*; H. 363, 1; G. 319.

**205.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Lēgatiōnis Divicō p̄nceps fuit** (1, 13, 2), *Divico was the leader of the embassy.*
2. **Testis est Ītalia** (Cic. *Manil.* 11, 30), *Italy is a witness.*
3. **Pausaniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homo fuit** (Nep. *Paus.* 1, 1), *Pausanias, the Lacedaemonian, was a great man.*
4. [**Castici**] **pater populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat** (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called the friend of the Roman people.*
5. **Audācia fortitūdō vocātur** (Sall. *Cat.* 52, 11), *audacity is called fortitude.*

**206. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that **p̄nceps, testis, homo, amīcus,** and **fortitūdō,** denote the *same person or thing* as **Divicō, Ītalia, Pausaniās, pater,** and **audācia,** respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description*. Note, however, that the descriptive substantives here illustrated are *not*, like those of **202**, *merely appended* to the principal substantive, but that they are connected with it by the *verb*; also that they unite with the verb to form the *predicate* of the sentence. As they thus form a part of the predicate, they are called *Predicate Substantives*. Does the

Predicate Substantive differ from the *subject* in *case*, or agree with it? Does the Predicate Substantive appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the *verb*? Frame a rule for the Case of the Predicate Substantive.

207. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 183, 185; II. 362, 1; G. 324.

## 208.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad Caesarem revertērunt** (1, 31, 1), *they returned to Caesar.*
2. **Ante oppidum** (2, 32, 4), *before the town.*
3. **Apud Sēquanōs** (1, 9, 3), *among the Sequani.*
4. **Contrā populum Rōmānum** (2, 13, 2), *against the Roman people.*
5. **Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum** (1, 6, 2), *between the boundaries of the Helveticans and Allobroges.*
6. **Per finēs Aeduōrum** (1, 12, 1), *through the territory of the Aeduans.*
7. **Post tergum** (4, 15, 1), *behind [one's] back.*
8. **Propter timōrem** (Caes. B. C. 2, 35, 5), *because of fear.*
9. **Trāns Rhodanum** (1, 10, 5), *across the Rhone.*

209. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the substantives with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with the foregoing Prepositions.

210. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 152, a; II. 433; G. 417.



## LESSON XXV.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

## 211.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>Aeduus, -i, m.,</b> <i>an Aeduan.</i>	<b>amicus, -i, m.,</b> <i>friend.</i>
<b>Allobrogēs, -um, m.,</b> <i>the Allobroges.</i>	<b>appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,</b> <i>call, entitle.</i>

apud, prep. w. acc., *among*.  
 Athēniēnsis, -is, c., *an Athenian*.  
 atque,<sup>1</sup> conj., *and also, and*.  
 avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.  
 cōsanguinei, -ōrum, m., *blood-  
 relations, kinsmen*.  
 eques, -itis, m., *knight*.<sup>2</sup>  
 extrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.  
 frāter, -tris, m., *BROTHER*.  
 frigus, -oris, n., *cold, frost*.  
 Gallieus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.  
 honestus, -a, -um, adj., *honorable*.  
 iter, itineris, n., *way; journey,  
 march*.

lingua, -ae, f., *TONGUE, language*.  
 L. Pisō, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Piso*.<sup>3</sup>  
 mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe*.  
 nam,<sup>4</sup> conj., *for*.  
 propter, prep. w. acc., *on account  
 of, owing to*.  
 scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill*.  
 Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian*.  
 trāns, prep. w. acc., *across*.  
 vergō, -ere, *incline*.  
 vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret* (see  
 also general vocabulary).

## 212.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Orgetorix in itinere persuādet Casticō,<sup>5</sup> Catamantaloedis<sup>6</sup> filiō, Sēquanō. 2. Ariovistus rēx atque amīcus ā senātū (*senate*) appellātus est. 3. Procillum<sup>5</sup> propter linguae Gallicae scientiam ad Ariovistum mīsit. 4. Collis aequālīter (*uniformly*) dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim<sup>7</sup> vergēbat. 5. Diviciō<sup>8</sup> dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 6. Thrasybūlus,<sup>5</sup> Lyci<sup>5</sup> filiū, Athēniēnsis.<sup>9</sup> 7. Apud Aeduōs summus magistrātus (*the chief magistrate*) vergobretus appellātur.

II. 1. The Roman knights, honorable and good men, approve. 2. They send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Aeduan. 3. For, owing to the frosts, the grain was not ripe in the fields. 4. Lucius Piso the lieutenant was the grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law. 5. Geneva is a town of the Allobroges. 6. The Segūsiāvī<sup>5</sup> are beyond the province, across the Rhone. 7. The Aeduans have oftentimes<sup>10</sup> been called brothers and kinsmen by the senate.<sup>11</sup>

## 213.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Trāns Sabim flūmen omnēs Nervii cōnsēderant. 2. Iter Caesaris per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātur. 3. Omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt obsidēsque inter sē (acc. pl.

*themselves*) dedērunt. 4. C. Valerius Procillus, familiāris Caesaris, habēbātur princeps Galliae prōvinciae. °5. Ējus rēi (*of this fact*) populus Rōmānus est testis. 6. Is (*this*) pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus.

II. 1. Titus Labienus, an experienced leader, has been appointed lieutenant. 2. The reputation of the Treveri for valor (gen.) is unparalleled among the Gauls. 3. The river Arar flows through the territory of the Aeduans and Sequanians into the Rhone. 4. Dumnorix was the brother of Divitiacens. 5. The village of the Veragri is called Octodurus. 6. You have attacked Cicero, the consul elect, Catiline. 7. The tenth legion, through the military tribunes (tribunes of the soldiers), returned thanks to Caesar. 8. And he also persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan, the brother of Divitiacens.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson XIII.

<sup>2</sup> See *eques* in the general vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> See *Pīsō* in the general vocabulary.

<sup>4</sup> *Nam, for,* should be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

<sup>5</sup> The English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

<sup>6</sup> *Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., Catamantaloedes* (a ruler of the Sequani).

<sup>7</sup> *Sabis, -is, M., the Sabis* (modern Sambre, a river in Belgic Gaul).

<sup>8</sup> *Divīcō, -ōnis, M., Divico* (a prominent Helvetian).

<sup>9</sup> *sc. fuit.*

<sup>10</sup> *saepenumerō.*

<sup>11</sup> See 212, I., second sentence.



## LESSON XXVI.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: STEMS APPARENTLY CONSONANT.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.—PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

214. Learn the paradigms of declension in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 54; H. 64. In G. read 54, Rem. (first six lines), 59, Rem. 3, and 69, 1.

215. Decline: *pars, -tis, F., part; civitās, -ātis, F.,*

*community*; **cohors, -tis**, F., *cohort*; **adulēscēns, -entis**, C., *youth*; **mēns, mentis**, F., *mind*.

216. Decline together, with meanings: **sinistra pars**, *the left side* (part); **fīnitima cīvitās**, *the neighboring community*; **reliqua cohors**, *the remaining cohort*; **adulēscēns fortis**, *a brave youth*; **mēns mollis**, *a yielding disposition*.

217. Learn the declension of the adjectives **atrōx** (**audāx** or **fēlīx**) and **egēns** (or **prūdēns**): A. & G. 85, *a*; H. 155, 156, 157; G. 83.

218. Decline **vēlōx, -ōcis**, *swift*; **ferāx, -ācis**, *fertile*; **ingēns, -entis**, *huge*; **potēns, -entis**, *powerful*.

219. Decline together, with meanings: **pedes vēlōx**, *a swift foot-soldier*; **ager ferāx**, *fertile land*; **ingēns īnsula**, *a huge island*; **rēx potēns**, *a powerful king*.

220. Learn, with meanings, the present participles of **amō, moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audiō**: A. & G. 113, *a* with pp. 77, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 91, 95, 99; G. pp. 54, 58, 64, 68.

221. Decline the present participles: **amāns, monēns**, (or **dēlēns**), **tegēns** (**regēns** or **emēns**), **audiēns**: A. & G. 85, *a* (**egēns**), 87, *a*; H. 157 (**amāns**) with note; G. 83 (**prūdēns**), 85, 2 (second paragraph).

222. Decline together, with meanings: **mulier flēns**, *the woman weeping*; **labōrantēs nostrī**, *our men struggling against odds*; **cīvitās flōrēns**, *a flourishing community*; **continēns silva**, *an uninterrupted forest*.



223. Learn the declension of *vetus*; A. & G. 85, b; H. 158; G. 83.

224. Decline together, with meanings: *vetus injūria*, a former injury.

## 225.

VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

*animus*, -ī, M., *mind*; *heart*.

*con-locō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place*; give in marriage.

*cōn-sistō*, -ere, -stitī, *take position*; STAND.

*Crassus*, -ī, M., *Crassus*.

*decimus*, -a, -um, adj., Tenth.

*dē-ligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *select*.

*homo*, -inis, c. (always M. when it refers to a male), *man*.

*lātus*, -a, -um, adj., *broad*, *extensive*.

*māter*, -tris, F., MOTHER.

*petō*, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -ītus, *ask for*.

*poena*, -ae, F., *satisfaction*; *punishment*.

*re-petō*, -ere, -īvī, or -īī, -ītus, *demand back*, *demand*.

*Suessiōnēs*, -um, M., the *Suessiones*.

*timor*, -ōris, M., *fear*.

## 226.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Legiōnis decimae milītēs īn sinistrā parte cōstitērant. 2. Crassum adulēscēntem fortem praemittet. 3. Timor omnium mentīs animōsque perturbābat. 4. Peditēs vėlōcēs ac<sup>2</sup> fortēs dēliguntur. 5. Īn flūmine Rhēnō sunt multae ingentēsque īnsulae. 6. Equitēs labōrantibus nostrīs subveniunt. 7. Caesar prō veteribus Helvētiōrum<sup>3</sup> injūriis populī<sup>3</sup> Rōmānī poenās repetit.

II. 1. They establish friendship with the neighboring communities. 2. The lands of the Suessiones are extensive and fertile. 3. He gives his mother in marriage to a powerful man. 4. The women weeping ask for peace. 5. Crassus, a brave youth, came to the support of the horsemen [who were] struggling against odds.

## 227.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ā<sup>4</sup> fronte et ab<sup>4</sup> sinistrā parte nūdātā erant castra. 2. Equitēs recentī proeliō<sup>5</sup> perterriti erant. 3. Lēgātis pācem atque ami-

citiam petentibus liberaliter respondit. 4. Auxiliārēs opīniōnem pūgnantium<sup>6</sup> praebēbant.<sup>7</sup> 5. Rhēnus multās ingentisque insulās efficit.<sup>8</sup> 6. In dēclivī āc praecipitī locō equōs sustinent.

II. 1. Nearly (**ferē**) all the centurions of the remaining cohorts were either (**aut**) wounded or (**aut**) slain. 2. The Suessiones possessed extensive and fertile lands. 3. He comes-upon<sup>9</sup> the soldiers fighting. 4. The Morini had uninterrupted woods and marshes. 5. Can I<sup>10</sup> lay aside the remembrance of recent injuries? 6. They put (**conjēcērunt**) to (**in w. acc.**) flight the enemy [who were] again offering resistance.

<sup>1</sup> For vocabulary, see also 215, 216, 219, 222, 224.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson XIII.

<sup>3</sup> What kind of genitive? See 64 and 69.

<sup>4</sup> In Latin the place at which an action occurred is often viewed as the point from which it proceeded, and so **ab** or **ex** is used where the English idiom requires **in** or **on**. Translate: *in front and on the left side*.

<sup>5</sup> A. & G. 259 a; H. 425, 1, 1); G. 387.

<sup>6</sup> Used substantively: A. & G. 113, f; H. 441; G. 438.

<sup>7</sup> **opīniōnem praebēbant**, produced the impression.

<sup>8</sup> Pres. indie. 3d. sing. of **efficiō**.

<sup>9</sup> **occurrō**; see 154 and 155.

<sup>10</sup> **Num possum** (*am I able*) with infinitive. Read: A. & G. 210, c (last sentence); H. 351, 1, note 3; G. 458.



## LESSON XXVII.

### ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. — ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN.

#### 228.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt** (1, 1, 4), *the Helvetians surpass the remaining Gauls in valor*.
2. **Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, incendunt** (1, 5, 2), *they burn all their towns, about twelve in number*.
3. **Suēba nātiōne** (1, 53, 4), *Swabian by birth*.
4. **Nervius nōmine Verticō** (5, 45, 2), *a Nervian named Vertico* (lit., Vertico by name).
5. **Cīvitās hominum multitūdine praestābat** (2, 15, 1), *the community took the lead in population* (in number of inhabitants).

**229. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that **virtūte**, **numerō**, **nātiōne**, **nōmine**, and **multitūdine** show in what particular or in respect to what the statement (made or implied) is true. In what case are these substantives? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives thus used.

**230. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 253; H. 424; G. 398.

**231. EXAMPLES.**

1. **Tertiā vigiliā solvit** (4, 23, 1), *he set sail at the third watch.*
2. **Hōrā quartā Britanniam attigit** (4, 23, 2), *he reached Britain at the fourth hour.*
3. **Ūnō tempore accidit** (Caes. B. C. 3, 15, 4), *on one occasion it happened.*
4. **Omnī tempore** (1, 11, 3), *at all times* (lit., at every time).
5. **Paucīs annīs** (1, 31, 11), *within a few years.*
6. **Nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt** (2, 17, 2), *they came by night to the Nervii.*

**232. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that **vigiliā**, **hōrā**, **tempore** (Exs. 3 and 4), **annīs**, and **nocte** express *time at which* or *time within which*. In what case are these substantives? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting *time when* or *within which*.

**233. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 256 (to the semicolon); H. 429; G. 392.

**234. VOCABULARY.**

<b>Aquitāni</b> , -ōrum, M., <i>the Aquitani or Aquitanians.</i>	<b>initium</b> , -iī, N., <i>beginning.</i>
<b>Celtae</b> , -ārum, M., <i>the Celts (Kelts).</i>	<b>institūtum</b> , -ī, N., <i>institution.</i>
<b>com-memorō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>recount.</i>	<b>lātitūdō</b> , -inis, F., <i>breadth, extent.</i>
<b>etiam</b> , conj., <i>also, even.</i>	<b>lēx</b> , lēgis, F., <i>LAW.</i>
<b>ex-īstimō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>reckon, consider.</i>	<b>multitūdō</b> , -inis, F., <i>multitude, number.</i>
	<b>nox</b> , noctis, F., <i>NIGHT.</i>

**opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.,** *fit, opportune.*

**ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.,** *speech, address.*

**prae-stō, -āre, -itī, -ātus or -itus,**  
*excel.*

**regiō, -ōnis, F.,** *territory.*

**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its, their.*

**tempestās, -ātis, F.,** *time.*

**tertius, -a, -um,** **THIRD.**

**ūnus, -a, -um,** **ONE.**

**videō, -ēre, vidī, visus,** *see.*

## 235.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētīi virtūte omnibus Gallīs praestābant. 2. Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua in Ariovistum beneficia commemorāvit. 3. Aquitānia et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne hominū tertiā pars Galliae exīstimātur. 4. Ā castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum<sup>1</sup> nōmine Bibrax<sup>2</sup> longē aberat. 5. Paene<sup>3</sup> ūnō tempore et ad<sup>4</sup> silvās et īn flūmīne hostēs vīsī sunt. 6. Multā nocte<sup>5</sup> sē<sup>6</sup> in castra recēpit.<sup>6</sup>

II. 1. The Belgians, Aquitanians, [and] Celts differ<sup>7</sup> from one another<sup>8</sup> in language, institutions, [and] laws. 2. Among the Suessiones, even within our-own remembrance, Divitiacus has been king. 3. The Suessiones have towns to the number of twelve<sup>9</sup> (twelve in number). 4. Caesar arrived at an opportune moment (time). 5. [There] was at this<sup>10</sup> time at Rome<sup>11</sup> a Numidian<sup>12</sup> named Massiva.<sup>13</sup>

## 236.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī sociī atque amīcī grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs (*increased, made richer*) sunt. 2. Ūnā nocte omnēs hermae<sup>14</sup> dējectī sunt.<sup>15</sup> 3. Intempestā nocte<sup>16</sup> conjūrātiōnis principēs convocat per M. Porcium Laecam. 4. Duae<sup>17</sup> fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, altera Nōrica. 5. Catō cum modestō pudōre, cum innocente abstinentiā certābat. 6. Tertiā vigiliā omnibus cōpiīs<sup>18</sup> ex oppidō trūpērunt.

II. 1. Our fleet excelled the ships of the Veneti in speed. 2. Accordingly in the beginning kings trained, some<sup>19</sup> the mind, others the body. 3. There was, not far from the road, a town of the Numidians named Vaga. 4. You were, then, at Laeca's on that (*illā*) night, Catiline. 5. The Bellovaci were foremost<sup>20</sup>

among the Belgians in valor, in influence, and in population (number of inhabitants). 6. Nor in the last<sup>21</sup> war with (obj. gen.) the Allobroges did the Aeduans render<sup>22</sup> assistance to the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> The English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

<sup>2</sup> **Bibrax, -actis, F.**, *Bibrax* (mod. *Bièvre*).

<sup>3</sup> **paene, adv.**, *almost*.

<sup>4</sup> **ad, prep.**, *close by, at*.

<sup>5</sup> **multā nocte, late at night**.

<sup>6</sup> **sē recēpit** (perf. of **recipiō, take back**), *returned*.

<sup>7</sup> **differunt**.

<sup>8</sup> **from one another, inter sē** (lit., among themselves).

<sup>9</sup> **duodecim, indecl. adj.**

<sup>10</sup> **eā** (fem. sing. to agree with the proper case of **tempestās**).

<sup>11</sup> Use the locative form: A. & G. 36, c; H. 48, 4; G. 27, 2.

<sup>12</sup> **Numida, -ae, M.**

<sup>13</sup> **Massīva, -ae, M.**; see 228, Ex. 4.

<sup>14</sup> **Hermēs (or Herma), -ae, M.**, *Hermes-pillar* (see general vocabulary); for declension, see A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

<sup>15</sup> Perf. pass. of **dēiciō, throw down**.

<sup>16</sup> **intempestā nocte, at an unseasonable hour of the night**.

<sup>17</sup> Nom. pl. fem., *two*.

<sup>18</sup> A. & G. 248, a; H. 419, I., 1, 1), (1); G. 391, Rem. 1.

<sup>19</sup> **pars** (in apposition w. "kings").

<sup>20</sup> **were foremost, plūrimū valēbant**.

<sup>21</sup> **proximus, -a, -um, adj.**

<sup>22</sup> **did render, tulērunt, perfect of ferō**.



## LESSON XXVIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER.<sup>1</sup>

#### 237.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar, M.**, *Caesar*.

2. **vir, M.**, *man*.

3. **rēx, M.**, *king*.

4. **Semprōnia, F.**, *Sempronia*.

5. **mulier, F.**, *woman*.

6. **rēgīna, F.**, *queen*.

7. **cīvis, C.**, *citizen*.

8. **hostis, C.**, *enemy*.

9. **cūstōs, C.**, *guard*.

**238. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) that Exs. 1-3 designate *males*, and that they are of the *masculine gender*; (2) that Exs. 4-6 designate *females*, and that they are of the *feminine gender*; (3) that Exs. 7-9 designate *either males or females*, and that they are of the *common* (masc. or fem.) *gender*. Frame a general rule for the Gender of Substantives, of whatever declension, whose Gender is determined by their Signification.

## 239.

1. mucrō, M., *sharp point*.
2. pulmō, M., *lung*.
3. sermō, M., *conversation*.
4. dolor, M., *pain*.
5. honor, M., *honor*.

## EXAMPLES.

6. timor, M., *fear*.
7. caespes, -itis, M., *turf*.
8. gurgēs, -itis, M., *whirlpool*.
9. trāmes, -itis, M., *path*.

**240. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-ō, -or, -es** (gen. **-itis**).

## 241.

1. aetās, F., *age*.
2. cīvitās, F., *community*.
3. voluntās, F., *pleasure*.
4. nūbēs, -is, F., *cloud*.
5. rūpēs, -is, F., *rock*.
6. vallēs, -is, F., *valley*.
7. clāssis, F., *fleet*.
8. nāvis, F., *ship*.
9. turrīs, F., *tower*.
10. mēns, F., *mind*.
11. pars, F., *part*.
12. urbs, F., *city*.
13. nox, F., *night*.
14. vōx, F., *voice*.

## EXAMPLES.

15. pāx, F., *peace*.
16. fortitūdō, -inis, F., *fortitude*.
17. māgnitūdō, -inis, F., *size*.
18. multitūdō, -inis, F., *multitude*.
19. ferrūgō, -inis, F., *iron-rust*.
20. imāgō, -inis, F., *image*.
21. orīgō, -inis, F., *source*.
22. salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety*.
23. senectūs, -ūtis, F., *old age*.
24. virtūs, -ūtis, F., *virtue*.
25. contemptiō, F., *contempt*.
26. legiō, F., *legion*.
27. ōrātiō, F., *speech*.

**242. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-ās, -ēs** (gen. **-is**), **-is, -s** preceded by a consonant, **-x, -dō** (gen. **-dinis**), **-gō** (gen. **-ginis**), **-ūs** (gen. **-ūtis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective).

## 243.

## EXAMPLES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>insigne</i> , N., <i>badge</i> .     | 7. <i>corpus</i> , -oris, N., <i>body</i> .  |
| 2. <i>mare</i> , N., <i>sea</i> .          | 8. <i>frigus</i> , -oris, N., <i>cold</i> .  |
| 3. <i>rēte</i> , N., <i>net</i> .          | 9. <i>tempus</i> , -oris, N., <i>time</i> .  |
| 4. <i>agmen</i> , N., <i>train, army</i> . | 10. <i>genus</i> , -eris, N., <i>class</i> . |
| 5. <i>flūmen</i> , N., <i>river</i> .      | 11. <i>latus</i> , -eris, N., <i>side</i> .  |
| 6. <i>nōmen</i> , N., <i>name</i> .        | 12. <i>opus</i> , -eris, N., <i>work</i> .   |

244. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing nouns, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-e, -men, -us** (gen. **-oris, -eris**).

## 245.

## VOCABULARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>audāx</i> , -ācis, adj., <i>bold</i> .         | <i>noster</i> , -tra, -trum, adj., <i>our</i> .             |
| <i>altus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>high, deep</i> . | <i>pulcher</i> , -chra, -chrum, adj.,<br><i>beautiful</i> . |
| <i>ingēns</i> , -entis, adj., <i>huge</i> .       | <i>turpis</i> , -e, adj., <i>base</i> .                     |
| <i>longus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>long</i> .      |   |
| <i>māgnus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>great</i> .     |   |

## 246.

## EXERCISE.

Determine the gender of the following substantives by the rules framed in connection with this lesson; indicate the gender thus determined by attaching to each substantive an appropriate adjective selected from the vocabulary in 245.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>nestās</i> , -ātis, <i>summer</i> .   | <i>cohors</i> , -rtis, <i>cohort</i> .         |
| <i>altitūdō</i> , -inis, <i>height</i> . | <i>cōsul</i> , -is, <i>consul</i> .            |
| <i>amor</i> , -ōris, <i>love</i> .       | <i>contentiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>contentious</i> . |
| <i>arx</i> , arcis, <i>citadel</i> .     | <i>crimen</i> , -inis, <i>charge</i> .         |
| <i>auris</i> , -is, <i>ear</i> .         | <i>cubile</i> , -is, <i>couch</i> .            |
| <i>avis</i> , -is, <i>bird</i> .         | <i>cunctātiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>delay</i> .       |
| <i>cāligō</i> , -inis, <i>mist</i> .     | <i>custōs</i> , -ōdis, <i>guard</i> .          |
| <i>carmen</i> , -inis, <i>song</i> .     | <i>Dumnorix</i> , -igis, <i>Dumnorix</i> .     |
| <i>clādēs</i> , -is, <i>disaster</i> .   | <i>dux</i> , ducis, <i>leader</i> .            |
| <i>clāmor</i> , -ōris, <i>shout</i> .    | <i>eques</i> , -itis, <i>horseman</i> .        |

<b>facultās, -ātis</b> , <i>opportunity.</i>	<b>ovīle, -is</b> , <i>sheep-fold.</i>
<b>familiāritās, -ātis</b> , <i>intimacy.</i>	<b>palmes, -itis</b> , <i>vine-shoot.</i>
<b>flūmen, -inis</b> , <i>river.</i>	<b>pater, -tris</b> , <i>father.</i>
<b>foedus, -eris</b> , <i>treaty.</i>	<b>pāvō, -ōnis</b> , <i>peacock.</i>
<b>furor, -ōris</b> , <i>rage.</i>	<b>pectus, -oris</b> , <i>breast.</i>
<b>gēns, gentis</b> , <i>race.</i>	<b>pedes, -itis</b> , <i>foot-soldier.</i>
<b>homo, -inis</b> , <i>man</i> (including woman).	<b>prōlēs, -is</b> , <i>offspring.</i>
<b>insigne, -is</b> , <i>badge.</i>	<b>puppis, -is</b> , <i>stern.</i>
<b>juventūs, -ūtis</b> , <i>youth.</i>	<b>rādix, -icis</b> , <i>root.</i>
<b>lātitudō, -inis</b> , <i>breadth.</i>	<b>regiō, -ōnis</b> , <i>direction.</i>
<b>latrō, -ōnis</b> , <i>robber.</i>	<b>scelus, -eris</b> , <i>crime.</i>
<b>levitās, -ātis</b> , <i>lightness.</i>	<b>sēdēs, -is</b> , <i>seat.</i>
<b>leō, -ōnis</b> , <i>lion.</i>	<b>sedīle, -is</b> , <i>seat</i> (poetic).
<b>litus, -oris</b> , <i>shore.</i>	<b>sēmen, -inis</b> , <i>seed.</i>
<b>longitūdō, -inis</b> , <i>length.</i>	<b>servitūs, -ūtis</b> , <i>servitude.</i>
<b>lūx, lūcis</b> , <i>light.</i>	<b>sīdus, -eris</b> , <i>constellation.</i>
<b>miles, -itis</b> , <i>soldier.</i>	<b>stīpes, -itis</b> , <i>stock</i> (of a tree).
<b>mors, mortis</b> , <i>death.</i>	<b>suspiciō, -ōnis</b> , <i>suspicion.</i>
<b>nemus, -oris</b> , <i>grove.</i>	<b>tēmō, -ōnis</b> , <i>carriage-pole.</i>
<b>obses, -idis</b> , <i>hostage.</i>	<b>umbō, -ōnis</b> , <i>boss</i> (of a shield).
<b>opīnio, -ōnis</b> , <i>opinion, notion.</i>	<b>virgō, -iuis</b> , <i>virgin.</i>

247. Note the gender of each of the following substantives,<sup>2</sup> and fix its gender in the memory by associating it with an appropriate adjective selected from 245.

**animal, -ālis**, *n.*, *animal.*  
**arbor, -oris**, *f.*, *tree.*  
**caput, -itis**, *n.*, *head.*  
**collis, -is**, *m.*, *hill.*

**īgnis, -is**, *m.*, *fire.*  
**īter, itineris**, *n.*, *journey.*  
**lapis, -idis**, *m.*, *stone.*  
**vectīgal, -ālis**, *n.*, *revenue.*

<sup>1</sup> The rules for gender suggested in this lesson are deemed sufficient as practical aids to the memory. The gender of substantives of the third declension not here provided for, should be learned by observation and practice in reading and writing Latin.

<sup>2</sup> These substantives have already appeared in special vocabularies; they are introduced here because their gender is not provided for in the rules of this lesson.



## LESSON XXIX.

## SUBSTANTIVES: FOURTH DECLENSION.

**248.** Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 68; H. 116; G. 67.

**249.** Decline: **fructus, -ūs, M., fruit**; **exercitus, -ūs, M., army**; **manus, -ūs, F., hand**; **cornū, -ūs, N., horn.**

**250.** Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative singular* and *dative plural* of the foregoing substantives: A. & G. note preceding 68; H. 116, 1, 2; G. 67.

**251.** Note the *gender* of the substantives in 249, and frame a Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fourth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 69, *a* (first sentence), *b*; H. 116; G. 68.

**252.** Decline together, with meanings: **vetus exercitus, veteran army**; **omnis fructus, all the fruit**; **manus sinistra, left hand**; **dextrum cornū, right wing** (lit., *horn*).

## 253.

VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

<b>ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, lose.</b>	<b>equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry.</b>
<b>cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōāctus, collect.</b>	<b>impetus, -ūs, M., attack, onset.</b>
<b>cōspectus, -ūs, M., sight.</b>	<b>locus, -ī, M., place; pl. (usually)</b>
<b>cōsulātus, -ūs, M., consulship.</b>	<b>loca, -ōrum, N., places.</b>
<b>dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, carry off.<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>manus, -ūs, F., hand; art; band. *</b>
<b>dē-sistō, -ere, -stiti, desist, cease.</b>	<b>nātūra, -ae, F., nature.</b>
	<b>occāsus, -ūs, M., setting.</b>

<b>peditātus</b> , -ūs, M., FOOT-soldiers, <i>infantry.</i>	<b>senātus</b> , -ūs, M., <i>senate.</i>
<b>pellō</b> , -ere, <b>pepulī</b> , <b>pulsus</b> , <i>beat.</i>	<b>sōl</b> , -is, M., <i>SUN.</i>
<b>re-moveō</b> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>remove.</i>	<b>sub</b> , <sup>3</sup> prep. w. acc. and abl., <i>under;</i> <b>sub occāsum</b> , <i>towards the set-</i> <i>ting.</i>

## 254.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs ā<sup>4</sup> sinistrō cornū pulsī erant. 2. Sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt. 3. Nam equitātūī Dumnorix praeerat. 4. Manūs ā Belgīs cōgēbantur. 5. Oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum erat. 6. Gallī māgnās peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās cōgunt. 7. Ariovistus in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est.

II. 1. The horses of all have been removed from sight. 2. Caesar began the battle on<sup>5</sup> the right wing. 3. All the fruits had been lost. 4. The cavalry sustains the attack of the enemy. 5. Almost (*paene*) in sight of our army the children of the Aeduans were carried off into slavery. 6. Crassus is in command of all the cavalry. 7. The Aeduans had lost all their senate [and] all their cavalry.

## 255.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Tertiā ex<sup>4</sup> parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō Helvētīi continentur. 2. Dumnorix māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit. 3. Manūs cōguntur, exercitus in ūnum locum condūcitur. 4. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū vēnit. 5. Helvētīi tamen nōn parēs sunt nostrō exercitūī. 6. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās in castra redūxit. 7. Paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et jam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vīsī sunt.

II. 1. The enemy could<sup>6</sup> not withstand the onsets of our men. 2. The twelfth legion had taken position on<sup>7</sup> the right wing. 3. Caesar opened the engagement on<sup>5</sup> the right wing. 4. Thence he leads his army into the country<sup>8</sup> of the Allobroges. 5. Towards sunset<sup>9</sup> they ceased. 6. The forces (bands) of the enemy were kept apart. 7. Gradually those (*eī*, nom. pl.) who (*quī*, nom. pl.) were in command of the cavalry were disquieted.

<sup>1</sup> See also, for vocabulary, 252.<sup>2</sup> See also 199.<sup>3</sup> A. & G. 152, c; H. 435, note 1.<sup>4</sup> Translate *on*, and see foot-note 4, Lesson XXVI.<sup>5</sup> See 254, I., sent. 1.<sup>6</sup> *were not able* (*nōn poterant*) to *withstand*.<sup>7</sup> *in*; why not *ñ* as in the next sentence?<sup>8</sup> *fīnēs*, plural.<sup>9</sup> *setting of the sun*.

## LESSON XXX.

## ADJECTIVES: REGULAR COMPARISON.

## 256.

## EXAMPLES.

1. POSITIVE: altus (st. alto-), *high, deep*.  
COMPARATIVE: altior, M. & F., -ius, N., *higher, deeper*.  
SUPERLATIVE: altissimus, -a, -um, *highest, deepest*.
2. POSITIVE: fortis (st. forti-), *brave*.  
COMPARATIVE: fortior, M. & F., -ius, N., *braver*.  
SUPERLATIVE: fortissimus, -a, -um, *bravest*.
3. POSITIVE: prūdēns (st. prūdent-), *sagacious*.  
COMPARATIVE: prūdentior, M. & F., -ius, N., *more sagacious*.  
SUPERLATIVE: prūdentissimus, -a, -um, *most sagacious*.
4. POSITIVE: felix (st. fēlici-), *happy*.  
COMPARATIVE: fēlicior, M. & F., -ius, N., *happier*.  
SUPERLATIVE: fēlicissimus, -a, -um, *happiest*.

257. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the *nominative* of the *comparative* and *superlative* is formed by the addition of *-ior* (N. *-ius*) and *-issimus* (*-a, -um*),<sup>1</sup> respectively, to the *stem* of the *positive*; and (2) that in *vowel-stems* the *final vowel* of the stem *disappears* before these endings. Frame a rule for the Comparison of Adjectives.

258. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 89; H. 162; G. 86.

259. Learn the declension of the comparative *melior* (*trīstior* or *altior*): A. & G. 86; H. 154; G. 87.

260. Compare: (like *altus*) *lātus*, *broad*, *longus*, *long*; (like *fortis*) *levis*, *light*, *gravis*, *heavy*; (like *prūdēns*) *potēns*, *powerful*, *sapiēns*, *wise*; (like *fēlix*) *vēlōx*, *swift*, *ferāx*, *fertile*; also decline their Comparatives.

261. Decline together, with meanings: *mōns altior*, *higher mountain*; *gravior fortūna*, *harder lot*; *longius iter*, *longer road*.

## 262.

VOCABULARY.<sup>2</sup>

*aetās*, *-ātis*, F., *age*.

*circum-dūcō*, *-ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductus*, *lead around*.

*cīvitās*, *-ātis*, F., *community*, *state*.

*com-mittō*, *-ere*, *-mīsī*, *-missus*, *commit*, *intrust*.

*filīa*,<sup>3</sup> *-ae*, F., *daughter*.

*gravis*, *-e*, adj., *heavy*; *severe*, *hard*.

*nōbilis*, *-e*, adj., *high-born*, *noble*.

*rēgnum*, *-ī*, N., *kingdom*; *sover. eignty*.

*re-sistō*, *-ere*, *-stitī*, *resist*.

*salūs*, *-ūtis*, F., *safety*.

*semper*, adv., *always*.

*Sēquanī*, *-ōrum*, M., *the Sequani* or *Sequanians*.

*vulgō*, adv., *commonly*.

## 263.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Dē obsidibus gravius*<sup>4</sup> *supplicium sūmet*. 2. *Oppidum ex*<sup>5</sup> *omnibus partibus altissimās*<sup>4</sup> *rūpēs habēbat*. 3. *Omniū fortissimī sunt Belgae*. 4. *Fīliam hominī nōbilissimō conlocat*. 5. *Resiste, mīles fortissime*. 6. *Omnes graviōris aetātis*<sup>6</sup> *convēnerant*. 7. *Peditum fortissimōrum salūtem equitātū nōn committam*. 8. *In Galliā ā potentiōribus vulgō rēgna*<sup>7</sup> *occupābantur*. 9. *Cohortēs longiōre itinere*<sup>8</sup> *circumductae erant*.

II. 1. The swiftest foot-soldiers are not always the bravest. 2. The Helvetians were hemmed in by a broader and deeper river. 3. They send the noblest men in<sup>9</sup> the state. 4. The punishment of the Sequani is too severe.<sup>4</sup> 5. The lands of the Suessiones were very extensive<sup>4</sup> and (very) fertile. 6. On<sup>5</sup> one side the Helvetians are hemmed in by the river Rhine [which is] exceedingly broad and (exceedingly) deep.

## 264.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Carīnae plāniōrēs sunt quam<sup>10</sup> nostrārum nāvium.  
 2. Ubī dē Caesaris adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs<sup>11</sup> factī sunt,<sup>12</sup>  
 lēgātōs mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis.<sup>13</sup> 3. Est gravior fortūna  
 Sēquanōrum quam<sup>14</sup> reliquōrum. 4. Suessiōnēs lātissimōs ferā-  
 cissimōsque agrōs possident. 5. Locus ex omnī Galliā opportū-  
 nissimus ac frūctuosissimus jūdicātus est.

II. 1. Ariovistus will inflict the severest punishment on<sup>15</sup> all  
 the hostages. 2. The Romans will be more faint-hearted (of  
 feebler courage<sup>16</sup>). 3. Nor according to Swabian notions (accord-  
 ing to the customs<sup>17</sup> of the Suebi) is anything<sup>18</sup> esteemed baser  
 or more spiritless. 4. Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was by-  
 far the most-exalted-in-rank.<sup>19</sup> 5. The Morini were-making-for  
 the denser woods. 6. Dumnorix, for-the-sake<sup>20</sup> of [extending  
 his] political power, gave his mother [in marriage] to a man of-  
 very-high-rank<sup>19</sup> and of-very-great-influence.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Superlatives, therefore, are adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined like *bonus*.

<sup>2</sup> For vocabulary, see also 256, 260, 261.

<sup>3</sup> For irregularity in the declension of the plural, see A. & G. 36, e; H. 49, 4; G. 27, 3.

<sup>4</sup> The Latin comparative and superlative admit of other translations than those given in 256. Thus, *gravior* may mean *severer*, *rather severe* (i.e., severer than usual), *too severe* (i.e., severer than is fitting); *gravissimus* may mean *severest* or *very (exceedingly) severe*.

<sup>5</sup> See foot-note 4, Lesson XXVI.

<sup>6</sup> *All [who were] of advanced age, i.e., all the elders.* For the genitive *actūtis*, see A. & G. 215; H. 306, V. n. 1; G. 304.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by the singular, *sever- eighty or royal power*; the plural is used in the Latin because repeated instances are referred to.

<sup>8</sup> A. & G. 258, g; H. 420, I, 3; G. 387.

<sup>9</sup> "in the state" = *of the state*.

<sup>10</sup> sc. *carīnae*.

<sup>11</sup> Predicate adjective with the passive verb *factī sunt* and limiting *Helvētīi*.

<sup>12</sup> *factī sunt*, perf. pass. of *faciō*, *make*; *certiōrēs factī sunt*, (were made more certain, and so) *were informed*.

<sup>13</sup> See 263, II., sent. 3.

<sup>14</sup> sc. *fortūna*.

<sup>15</sup> See 263, I., sent. 1.

<sup>16</sup> *of feebler courage, infirmiore animō*: A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

<sup>17</sup> Express "according to" by putting the word for "customs" in the ablative: A. & G. 253; H. 416; G. 398.

<sup>18</sup> *quicquam*, nominative neuter singular.

<sup>19</sup> Superlative of *nōbilis*.

<sup>20</sup> *causā*; *causā* follows the genitive that limits it.

<sup>21</sup> Superlative of *potēns*.

## LESSON XXXI.

## SUBSTANTIVES: FIFTH DECLENSION.

265. Learn the declension of **rēs**, F., *thing*; **diēs**, M.,<sup>1</sup> *day*; **fidēs**, F., *faith*; **spēs**, F., *hope*; **aciēs**, F., *edge, line of battle, line*: A. & G. 72, 74, *d*; H. 120, 122, 1, 2; G. 69, Rem. 1.

266. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 265: A. & G. note preceding 72; H. 120, 1; G. 69.

267. Note the *gender* of the substantives in 265, and frame a general Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fifth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 73; H. 123; G. 70.

268. Decline together, with meanings: in sing., **rēs militāris**, *the military art*; in pl., **multae rēs**, *many things*; in sing., **diēs septimus**, *the seventh day*; in pl., **paucī diēs**, *a few days*; in sing., **māgna fidēs**, *great confidence*; in sing. and in nom. and acc. pl. **spēs asperior**, *a more discouraging prospect*; in sing., **aciēs triplex**, *triple line of battle*.

269.

VOCABULARY.<sup>2</sup>

**ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, *happen, occur*.  
**cōn-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *station, post*.  
**dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *dismiss; lose*.  
**dolus**, -ī, M., *treachery*.  
**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *provisions*.

**juventūs**, -ūtis, F., *YOUTH*.  
**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *MIDDLE, middle part of*<sup>3</sup>.  
**occāsio**, -ōnis, F., *occasion, chance*.  
 \***posterus**,<sup>4</sup> -a, -um, adj., *following*.  
**premō**, -ere, **pressī**, **pressus**, *press hard, distress*.  
**quaerō**, -ere, -sivī or -īi, -ītus, *seek; inquire*.

**secundus, -a, -um, adj., second.** **trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, surren-**  
**servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep; fi-** **der; impart.**  
**dem servāre, to keep one's** **trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., THIRTY.**  
**word.** **ūsus, -ūs, m., experience.**

## 270. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Diē septimō pervērit. 2. Hostēs sine fidē tempus atque occāsiōnem dolī quaerunt. 3. Diērum trīgintā habēbant frūmentum. 4. In ūnā<sup>5</sup> virtūte omnem spem salūtis pōnunt. 5. Multa dē rērum nātūrā juventūtī trādunt. 6. In colle mediō<sup>3</sup> triplicem aciem īnstrūxit. 7. Omnem rēi frūmentāriæ spem dīmiserant. 8. Reliquās legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit.

II. 1. The army<sup>6</sup> of the enemy had been beaten on the left wing. 2. A very opportune incident<sup>7</sup> occurred. 3. On the following day he inquired about the remaining matters.<sup>7</sup> 4. Caesar will keep his word as-to<sup>8</sup> the number of days. 5. The remaining legions take position in line of battle on the middle of the hill. 6. The soldiers of the second line were distressed for p̄visions.<sup>9</sup> 7. The tribunes had no great experience in military affairs.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> See also 265, 268.

<sup>3</sup> **medius** in agreement with a substantive usually denotes *the middle of*; thus, in **colle mediō**, *on the middle of the hill*: see A. & G. 193; H. 440, notes I and 2; G. 257, Rem.

<sup>4</sup> The asterisk (\*) indicates that the form to which it is attached is not in use.

<sup>5</sup> *alone.*

<sup>6</sup> **exercitus** = *army* (generic term); **agmen** = *army* (on the march); **aciēs** = *army* (drawn up in battle array). Which is to be preferred here?

<sup>7</sup> **rēs**.

<sup>8</sup> **dē**.

<sup>9</sup> Use the ablative.

<sup>10</sup> **rēs** in the singular.

## LESSON XXXII.

## ADJECTIVES: PECULIARITIES OF COMPARISON.

NOTE: As the four conjugations in verbs, and the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, have now been treated, the special vocabularies hitherto printed in connection with the exercises will be discontinued. The pupil will henceforth be obliged to depend wholly, therefore, on the general vocabularies at the end of the book. In consulting the Latin-English vocabulary for the meaning of a word whose formation or composition is given, he should study carefully what is printed in brackets, so as to be able to trace the meaning of the complete word from the meaning of the parts which enter into its formation. Right habits formed at this stage will greatly facilitate the acquisition of power to translate at sight.

At this point also, or a little later at the discretion of the teacher, the pupil may with profit begin to take occasional short lessons on the formation of words (see lessons beginning p. 209), and to translate and commit to memory passages from the anecdotes introduced at p. 224. The lessons on formation and the anecdotes should be completed before the continuous extracts from Caesar (p. 234) are begun.

271. Compare, with meanings: **ācer**, *sharp*; **celer**, *swift*; **miser**, *wretched*; **pulcher**, *beautiful*: A. & G. 89, *a*; H. 163, 1; G. 88, 1.

272. Compare, with meanings: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **humilis**, *low*: A. & G. 89, *b*; H. 163, 2; G. 88, 2.

273. Compare, with meanings: **bonus**, *good*; **malus**, *bad*; **māgnus**, *great*; **parvus**, *small*; **multus**, *much*: A. & G. 90; H. 165; G. 89.

274. Compare, with meanings: **citerior**, *hither, on this side*; **interior**, *inner*; **prior**, *former*; **propior**, *nearer*; **ūterior**, *farther*: A. & G. 91; H. 166; G. 89, Rem. 2.

275. Compare, with meanings: **exterus**, *on the outside*; **īferus**, *below*; \* **posterus**, *coming after*; **superus**, *above*: A. & G. 91, *a*; H. 163, 3; G. 89, Rem. 1.



## 276.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pulcherrimam tōtius<sup>1</sup> Galliae urbem suis manibus succendunt. 2. Inter novissimum<sup>2</sup> hostium agmen et nostrum primum, longum spatium intererat. 3. Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmant. 4. Tamen humilissimus homo de plebe ope<sup>3</sup> dignus est. 5. Majori tamen parti placuit castra defendere. 6. In Galliam ulteriorem contendit. 7. Majoris natu<sup>4</sup> legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 8. Quam<sup>5</sup> maximis potest<sup>6</sup> itineribus contendit. 9. Sed Sequanis pegasus accidit. 10. Traducti sunt plures.<sup>7</sup> 11. Summae virtutis difficillima est via.

II. 1. Geneva<sup>8</sup> is the last<sup>8</sup> town of the Allobroges and nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 2. [There] was but<sup>9</sup> one legion in farther Gaul. 3. At night-fall<sup>10</sup> they will hasten to the Rhine. 4. They had the greatest abundance of ships. 5. He had stationed the legions on the summit-of<sup>11</sup> the ridge. 6. The bravest soldiers had been posted<sup>12</sup> in the upper line. 7. They collect as many ships as they possibly can.<sup>13</sup> 8. The lot of the Sequani was most pitiable.

## 277.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar Procillo<sup>14</sup> summam omnium rerum fidem habebat. 2. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur,<sup>15</sup> pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni. 3. Proximo die Caesar e castris copias suas eduxit. 4. Multo<sup>16</sup> major alacritas studiumque majus exercitui injectum est.<sup>17</sup> 5. Dei Mercurii sunt plurima simulacra. 6. Plura<sup>7</sup> Gallorum scuta uno ictu pilorum transfixa et conligata sunt. 7. Nostrum majores<sup>18</sup> exemplum posteris<sup>19</sup> praeviderunt pulcherrimum.<sup>20</sup> 8. Collis infimus<sup>21</sup> apertus erat, ab superiore parte silvestris.

II. 1. The Sequanian land is the best in<sup>22</sup> all<sup>1</sup> Gaul. 2. He hastens by forced marches<sup>23</sup> into farther Gaul and arrives at (ad) Geneva. 3. Caesar treats with Ariovistus on matters of-the-highest-importance.<sup>24</sup> 4. At night-fall<sup>10</sup> they hastened to the Rhine

and the marches<sup>25</sup> of the Germans. 5. He stationed all the auxiliaries in front of the smaller camp in sight of the enemy. 6. In that-place was the shortest route into farther Gaul. 7. The river Axona is in the remotest [part of the]<sup>23</sup> territories of the Remi. 8. The lot of the Sequani is more pitiable and grievous than [that] of the rest.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive feminine of **tōtus**, -a, -um, *all, whole*; see A. & G. 83; H. 151, 1; G. 35.

<sup>2</sup> **novissimum agmen**, *the rear*; for comparison, see A. & G. 91, c, 2; H. 167, 2; G. 89, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative with **dignus**: A. & G. 245, a (first line); H. 421, III.; G. 373, Rem. 3.

<sup>4</sup> **mājōrēs nātū**, [those who are] *greater by birth, i.e., the elders*.

<sup>5</sup> **quam** strengthens the superlative **māximīs**; read A. & G. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2); G. 317.

<sup>6</sup> Pres. indic. 3d sing. of **possum**, *be able, can*; translate: *by the greatest possible marches, by forced marches*. **potest** might have been omitted.

<sup>7</sup> *More* (than one, *i.e.*) *several*. For declension, see A. & G. 86; H. 165, note 1; G. 89.

<sup>8</sup> Put the word for "last" at the beginning, and the word for "Geneva" at the end. What is the effect of this arrangement?

<sup>9</sup> **Erat omnīnō**.

<sup>10</sup> "At night-fall" = *at the first part of the night* = **primā nocte**; see A. & G. 193; H. 440, notes 1 and 2; G. 287, Rem.

<sup>11</sup> Superlative of **superus** in agreement with substantive; see preceding references.

<sup>12</sup> "had been posted" = *had taken position*; use **cōsistō**.

<sup>13</sup> **possunt**, 3d pl. pres. indic. of **possum**; imitate 276, I., sent. 8.

<sup>14</sup> **Procillō** (dat.) **habēbat**, *reposed in Procillus*.

<sup>15</sup> **begin**; **oriuntur** has a passive form, but an active meaning.

<sup>16</sup> *greater by much, i.e., far greater*; for the ablative, see A. & G. 250; H. 423; G. 400.

<sup>17</sup> **injectum est**, perf. pass. of **inicio**: *was infused*.

<sup>18</sup> Comparative of **māgnus** used substantively: *ancestors*.

<sup>19</sup> Plural of **\*posternus** used substantively: *posterity*.

<sup>20</sup> Note the emphatic position of **pulcherrimum**.

<sup>21</sup> *at the bottom*.

<sup>22</sup> cf. foot-note 9, Lesson XXX.

<sup>23</sup> Imitate 276, I., sent. 8.

<sup>24</sup> Superlative of **superus**.

<sup>25</sup> "marches" = *borders, frontiers*; use the plural of **finis**.

<sup>26</sup> Superlative of **externus** in agreement with substantive; cf. foot-note 10.



## LESSON XXXIII.

### NUMERALS: CARDINALS.

278. Learn, with meanings, the cardinal numerals: A. & G. 94; H. 174; G. 93.

279. Learn the declension of: **ūnus** (A. & G. 83, *a*; H. 175; G. 35), **duo** (A. & G. 94, *b*; H. 175; G. 92), **trēs** (A. & G. 94, *c*; H. 175; G. 92), **ducentī** (A. & G. 94, *d*; H. 177).

280. Decline together: **duae legiōnēs**, *two legions*; **itinerā duo**, *two roads*; **trēs senātorēs**, *three senators*; **passūs ducentī**, *two hundred paces*.

281. Decline together, with meanings: in the sing., **ūnum iter**, *one route*; in the sing., **ūna spēs**, *the only hope*; in the pl., **ūnī Suēbī**, *the Suebi alone*; in the pl., **ūna castra**, *one camp*. See A. & G. 94, *a*; H. 175, n. 1; G. 95, Rem. 2 (second line).

## 282.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Equitēs mille** (Cic. *Fam.* 10, 9, 3), *a thousand horsemen*.
2. **Equitum mille** (Caes. *B. C.* 3, 84, 4), *a thousand horsemen* (lit., a thousand of horsemen).
3. **Mīlia passuum tria** (1, 22, 5), *three miles* (lit., three thousands of paces).

283. OBSERVATION: Note (1) that **mille** (Ex. 1) is an *indeclinable adjective*; (2) that **mille** (Ex. 2) is a *substantive* in the *singular number* limited by the *genitive equitum*;<sup>1</sup> (3) that **mīlia** (Ex. 3) is a *substantive* in the *plural number* limited by the *genitive passuum*.<sup>1</sup>

284. REFERENCES: Read carefully: A. & G. 94, *e* with note (to the semicolon); H. 178 with note (to the semicolon); G. 308.

285. Decline together: **diēs quīndecim**, *fifteen days*; **mīlia sexāgintā tria**, *sixty-three thousand*. See A. & G. 94, *c* (second sentence); H. 176; G. 92.

## 286.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Factiōnēs sunt duae**. 2. **Mīlia hominum vīgintī quattuor<sup>2</sup> ad Ariovistum vēnērunt**. 3. **Vicōs quadringentōs**

incendunt. 4. Cum duābus legiōnibus jugum adscendit. 5. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 6. Caesar scūtum ab novissimīs ūnī militī<sup>3</sup> dētraxit. 7. Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad<sup>4</sup> duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, incendunt. 8. Quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs pollicentur,<sup>5</sup> Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī vīgintī quīnque<sup>2</sup> mīlia, Menapiī septem mīlia, Aduātucī decem et novem<sup>2</sup> mīlia.

II. 1. The place was six hundred paces<sup>6</sup> distant. 2. There were only two routes. 3. The Belgians inhabit one part. 4. The Nervii were reduced from six hundred senators to three.<sup>7</sup> 5. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine. 6. The Nervii were reduced from sixty thousand men to barely<sup>8</sup> five hundred. 7. He stationed two legions on the topmost ridge. 8. The sum total<sup>9</sup> was<sup>10</sup> about<sup>4</sup> three hundred sixty-eight thousand.

## 287.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria, Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim, Rauricōrum vīgintī tria, Bōjōrum trīgintā duo. 2. Ex litterīs Caesaris diērum<sup>11</sup> vīgintī supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

II. 1. In twenty-five days they raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet<sup>6</sup> broad [and] eighty feet<sup>6</sup> high. 2. He pitches his camp three miles<sup>6</sup> from the camp of the enemy. 3. The Helvetians with five hundred horse had routed a great force of cavalry.

<sup>1</sup> It will be enough for the pupil at present to note that the *substantives mille* and *mīlia* are followed by the genitive; the *kind* of genitive used after these substantives will be discussed in the next lesson.

<sup>2</sup> What other form of expression is possible?

<sup>3</sup> ūnī militī, from a soldier, dat. of ind. obj. after dētraxit; in the Latin expression, the soldier is viewed as the person to whom the action is done. See A. & G. 229; H. 385, 2; G. 344, Rem. 2.

<sup>4</sup> ad with numerals = about.

<sup>5</sup> pollicentur, promise, has a passive form with active meaning.

<sup>6</sup> Use the accusative; this use of the accusative will be discussed in the next lesson.

<sup>7</sup> Express: from six hundred to three senators.

<sup>8</sup> Express: barely to.

<sup>9</sup> "sum total" = sum of all.

<sup>10</sup> was, fuerunt. See A. & G. 204, b; H. 462; G. 202, Rem. 1, 3).

<sup>11</sup> cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 6.

## LESSON XXXIV.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. — ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION  
OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE.

## 288.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Māgna est corporis pars aperta** (4, 1, 10), *a great part of the body is exposed.*
2. **Impedimentōrum māgnū numerū** (2, 17, 2), *a great quantity of baggage.*
3. **Nihil vīnī** (2, 15, 4), *no wine* (lit., nothing of wine).
4. **Mīlia hominū vīgintī quattuor** (1, 31, 10), *twenty-four thousand men.*
5. **Omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae** (1, 1, 3), *the Belgians are the bravest of all.*
6. **Nōbilissimōs cīvitātis** (1, 7, 3), *the men of highest rank in the community.*
7. **Multum aestātis** (5, 22, 4), *a considerable part of the summer.*
8. **Satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parū** (Sall. *Cat.* 5, 4), *enough eloquence, [but] not enough discretion.*

289. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in each of the foregoing examples, that the *genitive* designates the *whole*, and that the word which the genitive limits designates a *part*. The genitive thus used is called the *Partitive Genitive*. Frame a rule for the Partitive Genitive.

290. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 216; H. 397; G. 366.

291. OBSERVATION: What part of speech is the *partitive word* in Exs. 1-4? in Exs. 5-7? in Ex. 8? Read A. & G. 216, a, 1, 2, 3, 4; H. 397, 1, 2, 3, 4; G. 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, Rem. 4.

## 292.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Dīēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit** (1, 48, 3), *for five days in succession Caesar led out his forces [and arrayed them] in front of the camp.*

2. [**Castici**] **pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat** (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had held regal power among the Sequani for many years.*
3. **Repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident** (7, 42, 6), *they besiege day and night those that resist.*
4. **Oppidum aberat mīlia passuum octō** (2, 6, 1), *the town was eight miles distant.*
5. **Duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās perdūxit** (7, 72, 3), *he made (carried) two trenches fifteen feet wide.*
6. **Hercyniae silvae lātitudō novem diērum iter patet** (6, 25, 1), *the breadth of the Hercynian forest extends over nine days' journey.*

293. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1–3, that **diēs**, **annōs**, **diem**, and **noctem** answer the question *how long?* In what *case* are they? Note, in Exs. 4–6, that **mīlia**, **pedēs**, and **iter** answer the question *how far?* In what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Duration of Time or Extent of Space.

294. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 256 (last part), 257; II. 379; G. 335, 2, 336, 337.

## 295.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Magistrātūs Aeduōrum antīquitus<sup>1</sup> rēgiam potestatem annum obtinēre cōsuērant.<sup>2</sup> 2. Ā castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. 3. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. 4. Mīlitēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā, altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt. 5. Paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rēi frūmentāriae causā<sup>3</sup> morātur.<sup>4</sup>

II. 1. Night lasts (is) thirty days together<sup>5</sup> at the winter season.<sup>6</sup> 2. Nor was there left much time before (to) sunset. 3. The territories of the Helvetians extended two hundred and forty miles in<sup>7</sup> length, [and] a hundred and eighty in<sup>7</sup> breadth. 4. He selected a place suitable

for a camp about six hundred paces from the Germans.  
5. After the destruction of the Cimbri, they had been for many years harassed by their neighbors.

## 296.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Prīma legiō in castra vēnerat, reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium aberant. 2. Explōrātōrēs hostiū omni flūminis parte<sup>8</sup> erant dispositi. 3. Aeduī et Arvernī dē potentātū inter sē<sup>9</sup> multōs annōs contendunt.<sup>10</sup> 4. Frūmenta tantā multitudīne jūmentōrum atque hominū cōsūmēbantur. 5. Ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram milia passuum decem novem mūrūm perdūcit. 6. Ariovistus multōs mēnsēs castrīs<sup>11</sup> sē<sup>12</sup> ac palūdi-bus<sup>11</sup> tenerat.

II. 1. He was distant a few days'<sup>13</sup> march from the Germans. 2. The enemy not only<sup>14</sup> blockades the roads, but also<sup>14</sup> leaves behind a strong enough garrison<sup>15</sup> for the camp. 3. Storms ensued<sup>16</sup> several days in succession.<sup>17</sup> 4. The place was distant about six-hundred paces from the enemy. 5. There was the greatest abundance of everything in the town. 6. For several years he has farmed<sup>18</sup> the revenues of the Aedui.

<sup>1</sup> antiquitus, in former times.

<sup>2</sup> cōsūcērant, contracted from cōnsuēverant: A. & G. 128, a; H. 235; G. 151, 1.

<sup>3</sup> See Lesson XXX., foot-note 20.

<sup>4</sup> morātur, he delays, has a passive form with reflexive meaning.

<sup>5</sup> "thirty days together" = thirty successive days.

<sup>6</sup> at the winter season, sub brūmā.

<sup>7</sup> in with accusative.

<sup>8</sup> Ablative of place where with preposition omitted; read A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2; G. 386.

<sup>9</sup> inter sē, among themselves, with each other.

<sup>10</sup> contendunt, have been contending: A. & G. 276, a; H. 467, 2; G. 221.

<sup>11</sup> As the ablative of place where in this instance expresses also means by which, the preposition in is omitted: H. 425, 1, 1; G. 387.

<sup>12</sup> himself, accusative singular.

<sup>13</sup> "a few days' march" = a march of a few days; cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

<sup>14</sup> not only . . . but also, et . . . et.

<sup>15</sup> "a strong enough garrison" = enough of garrison.

<sup>16</sup> secūtae sunt (passive form with active meaning).

<sup>17</sup> "in succession" = successive.

<sup>18</sup> "has farmed the revenues" = has the revenues farmed. Farmed, redēptus, -a, -um.

## LESSON XXXV.

NUMERALS: ORDINALS.—ADJECTIVES: GENITIVE IN  
-ius, DATIVE IN -ī.

297. Learn, with meanings, the first twenty-five ordinal numerals: A. & G. 94; H. 174; G. 93.

298. Study the following table of alternative expressions:

*thirteenth*, **tertius decimus** or **decimus et tertius** (similarly 14–17).

*eighteenth*, **duodēvīcēsīmus** or **octāvus decimus** (similarly 19).

*twenty-first*, **vīcēsīmus prīmus** or **ūnus et vīcēsīmus**.

*twenty-second*, **vīcēsīmus secundus** or **altēr et vīcēsīmus**.

*twenty-third*, **vīcēsīmus tertius** or **tertius et vīcēsīmus** (similarly 24 and 25).

299. Decline<sup>1</sup> together: in the sing., **legiō decima**, *the tenth legion*; **cēnsōrēs vīcēsīmī sextī**, *the twenty-sixth censors*.

300. Learn the declension of: **alius**, *other*; **nūllus**, *not any, no*; **sōlus**, *alone*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **ūllus**, *any*; **ūnus**, *one*; **altēr**, *other* (of two); **uter**, *which* (of two); **neuter**, *neither*: A. & G. 83 with *a* and *b*; H. 151, 1; G. 35 with Rem. (end).

301. Decline together: **aliud iter**, *another road*; **nūlla vōx**, *not a word*; **ūllum perīculum**, *any danger at all*.

302. Decline together, in the sing.: **prōvincia tōta**, *the whole province*; **altera pars**, *the other side*; **utra pars**, *which part* (of two)?



## 303.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Diē sextō decimō pervēnit. 2. Aliud iter habent nūllum.<sup>2</sup> 3. Annō ūndēvīcēsīmō<sup>3</sup> post cōsulis mortem, urbs expūgnāta est. 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs<sup>4</sup> hostibus<sup>5</sup> resistit. 5. Diērum<sup>6</sup> vīgintī supplicātiō acciderat nūllī.<sup>2</sup> 6. Sēquanī sōlī auxilium nōn implōrant. 7. Cēnsōrēs vīcēsīmī sextī<sup>3</sup> ā prīmīs cēnsōribus fuērunt. 8. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae. 9. Alter alterī<sup>7</sup> ūtilis est. 10. Dē quartā vigiliā summum jugum montis adscendit. 11. Cum legiōne duodecimā contendit. 12. Uter utrī anteferendus<sup>8</sup> est? 13. Potestās erat neutrī.<sup>9</sup>

II. 1. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions<sup>10</sup> arrived. 2. Some resisted the enemy<sup>5</sup> in one quarter, others in another.<sup>11</sup> 3. He left behind the fourteenth legion. 4. There he places the baggage of the entire army. 5. In the twenty-sixth year the town was taken by assault. 6. Some<sup>12</sup> hastened to the mountain, the others<sup>12</sup> to the baggage. 7. He waited until<sup>13</sup> the ninth hour.<sup>14</sup> 8. Neither-party<sup>15</sup> makes<sup>16</sup> a beginning. 9. He will arrive at about the fourth hour<sup>14</sup> of the day. 10. They do not govern according-to<sup>17</sup> the dictates<sup>18</sup> of another. 11. [It] was the eighteenth purificatory sacrifice. 12. He makes a requisition on<sup>19</sup> the whole province.

## 304.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Aliud aliī<sup>20</sup> nātūra iter ostendit. 2. Alterius factiōnis principātum tenent Aedui, alterius Arvernī. 3. Annum jam tertium et vīcēsīmum<sup>3</sup> rēgnat.<sup>21</sup> 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs<sup>4</sup> victis ac summōtis resistēbat, tertia venientēs sustinēbat. 5. Post sex legiōnēs tōtūm exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat;<sup>22</sup> inde duae legiōnēs tōtūm agmen claudēbant. 6. Legiōnis<sup>19</sup> nōnae et decimae milites Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt. 7. Alter alteri<sup>23</sup> inimicus erat.

II. 1. He makes a requisition on<sup>19</sup> the entire province [for] the greatest possible number of soldiers. 2. He sent Galba with the

twelfth legion and a part of the cavalry against<sup>24</sup> the Veragri. 3. They ask of one another<sup>25</sup> the cause of the tumult. 4. The first and second lines<sup>4</sup> are under<sup>26</sup> arms, the third is fortifying the camp. 5. The Helvetians go in quest of another dwelling place, other habitations. 6. Lysander conquered the Athenians when they had been carrying on war twenty-six years.<sup>27</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ordinals are of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus**.

<sup>2</sup> Note the emphatic position.

<sup>3</sup> What is the alternative expression ?

<sup>4</sup> Note the difference between the Latin idiom and the English; **aciēs** is here singular, but must be translated plural.

<sup>5</sup> A. & G. 227; H. 385, I.; G. 345.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

<sup>7</sup> Translate: *They are useful to each other* (the one is useful to the other): A. & G. 203.

<sup>8</sup> *is to be preferred.*

<sup>9</sup> Trans.: *Neither had power* (power was to neither). For the dative, see A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

<sup>10</sup> cf. foot-note 4.

<sup>11</sup> Translate as if the entire sentence were. *Others resisted the enemy in another part.* See A. & G. 203, c; H. 459, 1; G. 306 (illustrations).

<sup>12</sup> *Some . . . the others, alterī . . . alterī.*

<sup>13</sup> **ad**.

<sup>14</sup> See **hōra** in the general vocabulary.

<sup>15</sup> Use the plural of **neuter**.

<sup>16</sup> **faciunt**, 3d pl. of **faciō**.

<sup>17</sup> **ad**.

<sup>18</sup> **dictates** (pl.), **praescriptum**, **-ī**, N. (sing.).

<sup>19</sup> "on" is here a sign of the dative of indirect object.

<sup>20</sup> See references under foot-note 11.

<sup>21</sup> *He has been reigning these twenty-three years*; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 10.

<sup>22</sup> **conlocārat** = **conlocāverat**; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

<sup>23</sup> cf. foot-note 7.

<sup>24</sup> **in** with accusative.

<sup>25</sup> *Another asks from another*; cf. foot-note 7.

<sup>26</sup> **in** with ablative.

<sup>27</sup> Translate: *Lysander conquered the Athenians carrying on war in the twenty-sixth year.*



## LESSON XXXVI.

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

#### 305.

#### EXAMPLES.

##### I. TIME.

1. Caesar **necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs**, ad legiōnem dēvēnit (2, 21, 1), *Caesar*, WHEN HE HAD ISSUED THE NECESSARY ORDERS (the necessary things having been ordered), *came to the legion.*

2. **Māgnā** multitudīne peditātūs coāctā, ad castra vēnerunt (4, 34, 5), HAVING COLLECTED A LARGE FORCE OF INFANTRY (a large force having been collected), *they came to the camp.*
3. [Orgetorix], **M. Messallā et M. Pīsōne** cōsulibus, civitātī persuāsīt (1, 2, 1), *Orgetorix*, IN THE CONSULSHIP OF MARCUS MESSALLA AND MARCUS PISO (Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso being consuls), *persuaded his countrymen.*
4. **Cōgnitō** Cāesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs mittit (1, 42, 1), ON LEARNING THE ARRIVAL OF CAESAR (the arrival having been learned), *Ariovistus sent ambassadors.*
5. **Scūtō** dētractō, prōcēssit (2, 23, 2), *he* SNATCHED A SHIELD AND (a shield having been snatched, he) *went forward.*

II. CAUSE.

6. Germānī reliquā fugā dēspērātā, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt (4, 15, 2), *the Germans*, DESPAIRING OF FURTHER FLIGHT (further flight having been despaired of), *cast themselves into the river.*
7. **Potentibus** Rēmīs, impetrant (2, 12, 5), AT THE INTERCESSION OF THE REMI (the Remi asking), *they obtain* [their request].

III. CONCESSION.

8. **Paucīs** dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit (2, 12, 2), THOUGH BUT FEW DEFENDED (few defending) [*it*], *he could not take* [*it*].

IV. MEANS.

9. Militēs, pīlīs missīs, hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (1, 25, 2), *the soldiers*, BY THROWING THEIR HEAVY JAVELINS (javelins having been thrown), *broke through the enemy's phalanx.*

V. CONDITION.

10. Nihil decet repūgnante nātūrā (Cic. *Off.* 1, 31, 110), *nothing is becoming* IF NATURE OPPOSES (nature opposing).
11. **Sēquanīs** invītīs, ire nōn poterant (1, 9, 1). IF THE SEQUANI WITHHELD CONSENT (the Sequani [being] unwilling) *they could not proceed.*

**306. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *ablative expressions* printed in **boldface type** in the foregoing examples might be omitted without injury to the construction. In other words, they are *grammatically independent*. Ablatives which are thus grammatically independent of the remaining parts of the sentence are called *Ablatives Absolute* (i.e., independent ablatives).

Note, further, that all the examples, except 3 and 11, contain a *substantive* in the ablative absolute with a *participle*, whereas, in Ex. 3, *both ablatives* are *substantives*, and, in Ex. 11, the *second ablative* is an *adjective* (**invītis**).

Note, again, that the ablatives absolute express: in 1-5, *time*; in 6 and 7, *cause*; in 8, *concession*; in 9, *means*; in 10 and 11, *condition*.

Note, finally, that the literal construction of the words is frequently disregarded in the English translation. Thus, in Exs. 1, 8, 10, and 11, the ablative absolute is translated by a *subordinate clause*; in Exs. 2, 4, 6, and 9, a *passive participle* is translated by an *active*; in Exs. 3, 4, 7, and 9, a *preposition with a substantive* is used in translation; and in Ex. 5, the participle is translated by a *verb* connected with the main verb by a *coördinate conjunction*.

Frame rules embodying the foregoing observations.

**307. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 255, a; H. 431, 1, 2, 4; G. 408, 409.

### 308. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūllō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in Allobrogēs perdūxit. (2. Conloquium, interpositā causā, tollit.) 3. Nōn-nūllī ab novissimīs, dēsertō proeliō,<sup>1</sup> excēdēbant. 4. Propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit.<sup>2</sup> 5. Mulierēs, pāssīs manibus, flentēs auxiliū implōrābant. 6. Repūgnante nātūrā, frūstrā contendimus. 7. L. Tullō M'. Lepidō cōsulibus, P. Autrōnius et P. Sūlla, dēsīgnātī cōsulēs, poenās dederant.

II. 1. They had not given battle the-day-before, *although they had seized the higher places*.<sup>3</sup> 2. *Having made this*<sup>4</sup> *address*, he dismissed the council. 3. *At the intercession of*

*Dumnorix*, they obtain their request of<sup>5</sup> the Sequani. 4. The women and children on<sup>6</sup> the wall, *with hands outstretched* according to<sup>7</sup> their wont, besought peace of<sup>5</sup> the Romans. 5. The Caturiges *seize the higher places and*<sup>1</sup> impede the army's march.<sup>8</sup> 6. *In Caesar's consulship*, Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people. 7. The Helvetians, *if Caesar withhold consent*,<sup>9</sup> will endeavor to force a passage<sup>10</sup> through the province.

309.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Secundiore equitum proelio hostibus, Caesar suos in castra redūxit.* 2. *Nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia sex ad Rhenum contendērunt.* 3. *Male rē gestā, fortuna defuit imperatori.* 4. *Aequato omnium periculo, spem fugae tollit.* 5. *Comutato consilio atque itinere converso nostrōs a novissimo agmine lacesunt.*

II. 1. Labienus having seized the mountain, awaited our men. 2. Although two cohorts were sent by Caesar as-a-reinforcement,<sup>11</sup> the enemy, inasmuch as our men were overcome with terror, broke boldly through the midst [of them]. 3. In the consulship of Cotta and Torquatus, a great many objects on the Capitol were struck<sup>12</sup> by lightning.<sup>13</sup> 4. On hearing the shouting, they all broke ranks<sup>1</sup> and hastened to seek safety in flight.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Imitate 305, Ex. 5.

<sup>2</sup> *nōn potuit*, he was not able.

<sup>3</sup> Passages in this exercise printed in Italics are to be translated by the ablative absolute.

<sup>4</sup> *hāc*, abl. sing. fem.

<sup>5</sup> *ā*, ab.

<sup>6</sup> *ex*.

<sup>7</sup> cf. foot-note 17, Lesson XXX.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *restrain the army from the march*: A. & G. 243; H. 413; G. 388.

<sup>9</sup> See 305, Ex. 11.

<sup>10</sup> Translate: *will attempt a passage through force (per vim)*. For declension of *vīs*, force, see A. & G. 61; H. 66.

<sup>11</sup> *subsidiō* (dat.).

<sup>12</sup> *percussae sunt* (perf. pass. of *percussio*).

<sup>13</sup> *by lightning, de caelo* (from heaven).

<sup>14</sup> Ablative of means.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

**310.** Review the present active and perfect passive participles of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audio**; and learn, with meanings, the future active participle and the gerundive: A. & G. pp. 77, 79, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 89, 91, 93, 95, 97, 99, 101; G. pp. 54, 57, 58, 61, 64, 67, 68, 71. Learn also the future participle of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

**311.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing forms, the following facts:—

1. The *present active participle* is formed by the addition of **-nt-**,<sup>1</sup> nom. **-ns**,<sup>1</sup> to the *present stem*,<sup>2</sup> and the *gerundive* by the addition of **-ndo-**,<sup>3</sup> nom. **-ndus**, to the *same stem*.

2. The *future active participle* is formed by the addition of **-tūro-**, nom. **-tūrus**, to the *verb stem* as it appears in the *perfect passive participle*.<sup>4</sup>

Frame rules for the formation of the Present Active Participle, the Gerundive, and the Future Active Participle in the several conjugations.

**312.** Form and translate the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Gerundive, of:—

<b>ā-mittō</b> , -ere, -mīsī, -missus, <sup>4</sup> <i>lose.</i>	<b>ex-īstimō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>reckon,</i>
<b>cōgō</b> , -ere, cōgī, cōāctus, <i>com-</i>	<i>think.</i>
<i>pel.</i>	<b>habeō</b> , -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>have.</i>
<b>com-moveō</b> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,	<b>mūniō</b> , -īre, -īvī or -īī, -itus, <i>fortify.</i>
<i>alarm.</i>	<b>reperiō</b> , -īre, repperī, repertus,
<b>dō</b> , dare, dedī, datus, <i>give.</i>	<i>find.</i>

**313.** Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the First (Active) Periphrastic Conjugation<sup>5</sup> of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 233; G. 149.

**314.** Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the Second (Passive) Periphrastic Conjugation<sup>5</sup> of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 234; G. 150.

**315.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī grātiām repudiātūrus est. 2. Aquī-tānia tertia pars Galliae est exīstimanda. 3. Obsidēs datūrī erant. 4. Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrus erit. 5. Bellum gerendum erit. 6. Neque obsidēs repetītūrī neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implō-rātūrī fuērunt. 7. Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 8. Militēs ab opere sunt revocandī. 9. Iter per prōvinciam per vim tentātūrī sunt.

II. 1. They had been on-the-point-of-restoring the hos-tages. 2. They were about-to-compel the Allobroges. 3. The opportunity must not be lost. 4. The [soil] of the Gauls<sup>6</sup> was not to-be-compared with that<sup>7</sup> of the Ger-mans. 5. The signal will have-to-be-given with the trumpet. 6. Neither will men of hostile disposition<sup>8</sup> be likely-to-refrain from injury and mischief. 7. He had been on-the-point-of-obtaining control of his own state. 8. The force of the enemy will have-to-be-kept-asunder.

**316.****Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrī sumus vel vī<sup>9</sup> coāctūrī. 2. Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum,<sup>10</sup> sīgnum tubā dandum,<sup>10</sup> ab opere revocandī<sup>11</sup> militēs, aciēs instru-enda.<sup>10</sup> 3. Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglētūrus erit. 4. Occāsio negōtīi bene gerendī<sup>12</sup> āmittenda nōn est. 5. Nōs<sup>13</sup> neque legātōs missūrī neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrī<sup>14</sup> sumus. 6. Uter utrī antefendus est?

II. 1. The Germans' mode of life is not to be compared with [that] of the Gauls.<sup>6</sup> 2. Ariovistus is not<sup>15</sup> likely to reject either<sup>15</sup> my good will or<sup>15</sup> the Roman people's. 3. The authority of the Aeduans ought to have been increased among all the Belgians. 4. They were on the point of sacrificing an opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue.<sup>13</sup> 5. The wrongs of the Aeduans ought not to be neglected. 6. The enemy will not be likely, if an opportunity is afforded [them],<sup>17</sup> to refrain from mischief.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the vowel of the present participle is short before *-nt-* and long before *-ns*.

<sup>2</sup> The present stem may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive active; see 136, 1. Note, however, that the present stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation (as, *audiō*) ends in *-ie-* (as, *audie-*) in the present participle and gerundive.

<sup>3</sup> Note that the vowel preceding *-nd-* is short.

<sup>4</sup> If the perfect participle ends in *-sus*, the future participle ends in *-sūrus*.

<sup>5</sup> Note, in studying the forms of this conjugation, that the *tense* is determined by the form of *sum* used.

<sup>6</sup> *Gallicus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

<sup>7</sup> Use *ager* here, and omit it at the beginning.

<sup>8</sup> Use the ablative; cf. foot-note 16, Lesson XXX.

<sup>9</sup> For declension, see references under foot-note 10, Lesson XXXVI.

<sup>10</sup> sc. *erat*.

<sup>11</sup> sc. *erant*.

<sup>12</sup> Opportunity of the matter to be well conducted = *opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue*.

<sup>13</sup> *Ūe*.

<sup>14</sup> Fut. act. part. of *accipiō*.

<sup>15</sup> not . . . either . . . or = *neither . . . nor* = *neque . . . neque*.

<sup>16</sup> See sentence 4 of the preceding exercise with accompanying foot-note.

<sup>17</sup> Ablative absolute.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### DATIVE OF AGENT. — DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE. — DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE.

#### 317.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda* (2, 20, 1), *Caesar had to do everything at once* (lit., all things were to Caesar to be done).
2. *Nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus* (3, 13, 9), *the risk was greatly to be dreaded by our ships*.



3. **Militibus cum hostibus erat pugnandum** (4, 24, 2), *the soldiers had to fight with the enemy* (lit., the necessity of fighting was to the soldiers).
4. **Cum luxuriā nōbīs<sup>1</sup> certandum est** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 5, 11), *we have to contend with dissipation* (lit., the necessity of contending is to us).

**318. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that with the *gerundive*, in the foregoing examples, the *person upon whom the necessity rests*, or *by whom the work is to be done*, is expressed by the *dative* (see **Caesari, nāvibus, militibus, nōbīs**). Frame a rule for such Datives.

**319. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 232; H. 388; G. 353.

**320. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note further, that (1) the verbs in Exs. 1 and 2 are *transitive*, and the periphrastic forms have a *subject* expressed, with which they agree in *person, number, and gender*; whereas (2) in Exs. 3 and 4 the verbs are *intransitive*, the periphrastic forms have *no subject*, but are of the *third person singular*, and the *gerundive* is *neuter*. In the latter case the verb is said to be used *impersonally*. State the second of the foregoing observed facts in the form of a General Rule.

**321. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 146, c; H. 301, 1, 2; G. 199, Rem. 1.

**322.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Volusēnus, vir cōsiliī māgnī** (3, 5, 2), *Volusenus, a man of great sagacity.*
2. **Paucōrum diērum iter** (4, 7, 2), *a few days' march.*
3. **Castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō mūnīre** (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a wall (of) twelve feet high (in height).*
4. **Omnēs Britannī capillō sunt prōmissō** (5, 14, 2), *all the Britons have (are of) flowing hair.*
5. **[Thūys] barbā erat prōmissā** (Nep. *Dat.* 3, 1), *Thuys wore (was of) a flowing beard.*

6. [Catō] **singulārī fuit industriā** (Nep. Cat. 3, 1), *Cato was [a man] of unexampled industry.*

**323. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Exs. 1-3, that the substantives added for description (see **cōnsiliī, diērum, pedum**) are in the *genitive*, and that this genitive is limited by an *adjective* (see **māgnī, paucōrum, duodecim**). A genitive thus added to a substantive for further description is called a *Descriptive Genitive* or a *Genitive of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Descriptive Genitive.

**324. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 215; H. 396, V., Note 1; G. 364.

**325. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Exs. 4-6, that the substantives added for description (see **capillō, barbā, industriā**), are in the *ablative*, and that this ablative is limited by an *adjective* (see **prōmissō, prōmissā, singulārī**). An ablative thus added to a substantive for further description is called a *Descriptive Ablative* or an *Ablative of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Ablative of Quality.

**326. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

**327. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 2 and 3 denote *measure*; does the ablative, or the genitive, appear to be preferred for this kind of description?

Note, further, that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 4 and 5 denote *physical characteristics*; which of the two cases appears to be preferred for this kind of description?

Compare Ex. 1 with Ex. 6; does there appear to be any difference between the genitive and ablative in these examples?

**328. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 215, *b*, 251, *a*; H. 419, II., 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 402, Rem. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Dative plural of **nōs**, *we*.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## 329. ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FORE-GOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

I. 1. Aduātucī Caesarī sunt cōservandī. 2. Tum māgnī ponderis saxa in mūrō conlocābant. 3. Ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānī, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs sunt. 4. Nōn omittendum est Nervīus cōnsilium. 5. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium. 6. Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem, ad Ariovistum mittit. 7. Num hominēs tantulae statūrae tantī oneris turrin movēre possunt?<sup>1</sup> 8. Cum tantā multitudīne hostium lēgātō nōn est dūmicandum.

II. 1. Sabinus will have to keep<sup>2</sup> the forces of the enemy asunder. 2. Our horsemen and light armed<sup>3</sup> foot-soldiers again sought flight in<sup>4</sup> another direction. 3. A mountain of great height bounds the remaining space. 4. The commander must exercise<sup>2</sup> no slight diligence. 5. Protected [as they were] by a rampart (of) fifteen miles in circuit, they kept themselves<sup>5</sup> within the town.<sup>6</sup> 6. Iccius the Reman, [a man] of the highest rank and influence among his [countrymen], sent a messenger to Caesar. 7. Neither ought the Romans to have feared<sup>7</sup> without cause. 8. The Romans move forward with remarkable speed<sup>8</sup> engines of great height.

## 330. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrit. 2. Militibus autem, impeditis manibus, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum. 3. Civitās erat māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte. 4. Ab utrōque<sup>9</sup> latere collis trānsversam fossam

obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum. 5. Sēquanīs vērō omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendī. 6. Ūrī sunt speciē et colōre et figurā tauri.<sup>10</sup>

II. 1. Agesilaus was of small stature and spare figure. 2. [It is] not in vain [that] men of such valor venture to cross a very broad river. 3. Caesar will have to inflict punishment on the Veneti. 4. The general should distribute his army more-widely.<sup>11</sup> 5. The Britons have all parts of the body shaved<sup>12</sup> except the head and the upper lip.

<sup>1</sup> are able, can.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 317, Ex. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *foot-soldiers of light armor.*

<sup>4</sup> in with accusative.

<sup>5</sup> sēsē (acc. pl.).

<sup>6</sup> Ablative without prepositio: cf. 296, I, sent. 6, with foot-note.

<sup>7</sup> cf. Ex. 3 in 317; see also 320 (2).

<sup>8</sup> cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXIII.

<sup>9</sup> uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two).

<sup>10</sup> The descriptive ablative here takes a genitive instead of an adjective.

<sup>11</sup> iātius.

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *are of every part of the body shaved.*



## LESSON XL.

### NUMERALS: DISTRIBUTIVE.

331. Learn, with meanings, the distributive numerals from *one* to *twelve*: A. & G. 95; H. 174; G. 95.

332. Decline together: *bīnae nāvēs*, *ships* [taken] *two and two*; *duodēna mīlia*, *twelve thousand apiece*: A. & G. 95; H. 179.

### 333.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. Prīncipēs singulōs (5, 6, 4), *the chiefs one at a time.*
2. Singulī singulōs dēlēgerant (1, 48, 5), *they had each selected one.*
3. Bīnae āc ternae nāvēs (3, 15, 1), *ships in groups of two and three.*
4. Quaternae cohortēs ex quīnque legiōnibus (Caes. B. C. 1, 83, 2), *four cohorts from each of the five legions.*

5. **Ūna**<sup>1</sup> castra (Caes. B. C. 1, 74, 4), *one camp*.  
 6. **Bīna**<sup>1</sup> castra (Caes. B. C. 3, 19, 1), *two camps*.  
 7. **Trīnīs**<sup>1</sup> castrīs (7, 66, 2), *in three camps*.

## 334.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant.  
 2. Imperant Sēquanīs duodēna mīlia. 3. Ternās<sup>2</sup> cohortēs ex quattuor legiōnibus reliquit. 4. Inter bīna<sup>1</sup> castra Pompēi<sup>3</sup> atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus. 5. Ibi<sup>4</sup> turrēs cum ternīs tabulātīs ērigēbat. 6. Circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs, trīnīs<sup>4</sup> castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit.

II. 1. Caesar and Ariovistus brought ten [soldiers] each to the confērencē. 2. Soldiers in groups of five<sup>5</sup> and six surrounded single [soldiers]. 3. The floats he made fast by means of four<sup>2</sup> anchors at<sup>6</sup> each of the four corners. 4. He resolved to spend the winter with three legions in three<sup>1</sup> camps. 5. He erected towers of two stories each.

## 335.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praefecit.<sup>7</sup>  
 2. Imperant Morinis quīna mīlia. 3. Binīs<sup>8</sup> cohortibus relictis, reliquum exercitum in cōpiōsissimōs agrōs Biturigum indūcit.  
 4. Primam aciem quaternae cohortēs ex quīnque legiōnibus tenēbant.

II. 1. And-so with equal courage they matched<sup>9</sup> [their ships] one by one against the ships of the enemy [taken] two and two.  
 2. One camp seemed now to-have-been-formed<sup>10</sup> out of two.

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 95, b; II. 174, 2, 3); G. 95, Rem. 2.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 333, Ex. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive of **Pompējus**.

<sup>4</sup> Would **ternīs** be admissible here? See foot-note 1.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 333, Ex. 3.

<sup>6</sup> "at" = *from*; cf. foot-note 4, Les-son XXVI.

<sup>7</sup> Perfect indicative of **praefeciō**.

<sup>8</sup> The distributive shows that *two from each legion* is meant.

<sup>9</sup> **obicībant** (pronounced: **ob-<sup>h</sup>i-ci-bant**), imperf. indic. of **obicīō** (pronounced: **objiciō**).

<sup>10</sup> **facta**.

## LESSON XLI.

## PRONOUNS : PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE.

336. Learn, with meanings, the declension of the Personal Pronouns : A. & G. 98 ; H. 184 ; G. 98, 99.

## 337.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs** (7, 20, 8), *listen to [these] Roman soldiers.*
2. **Est ut dīcis, Catō** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 3, 8), *it is as you say, Cato.*
3. **Nōs, nōs cōsulēs dēsumus** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 3), *we, we the consuls are remiss.*
4. **Vōsne<sup>1</sup> Domitium, an vōs Domitius dēseruit** (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 32, 8), *did you desert Domitius, or did Domitius desert you?*

333. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE : Note that, in Exs. 1 and 2, the *personal pronouns vōs and tū*, subjects of **audīte** and **dīcis**, are *not expressed* ; whereas, in Exs. 3 and 4, **nōs** and **vōs** are *expressed*. What appears to be the reason of this difference ? Frame a rule for the Nominative of the Personal Pronoun.

339. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION : A. & G. 194, a ; H. 446 ; G. 198.

## 340.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Habētis ducem memorem vestrī** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 9, 19), *you have a leader [who is] thoughtful of you.*
2. **Grāta mihī vehementer est memoria nostrī tua** (Cic. *Fam.* 12, 17, 1), *your remembrance of us is exceedingly gratifying to me.*
3. **Dēsīgnat ad caedem ūnum quemque<sup>2</sup> nostrūm** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 2), *he marks each one of us for slaughter.*
4. **Minus habeō vīrium quam vestrūm utervīs<sup>3</sup>** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 10, 32), *I have less strength than either of you.*

**341. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Of the *two forms of genitive* in the plural of the personal pronouns, which appears from the foregoing examples to be preferred for the *objective genitive*? which for the *partitive genitive*?

**342. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 194, *b*; H. 446, n. 3; G. 99, Rem. 1.

**343.** Learn, with meanings, the declension of the Reflexive Pronoun: A. & G. 98, *c*; H. 184 with 2; G. 100.

**344.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs sūmpserat** (1, 33, 5), *Ariovistus had taken upon himself such airs.*
2. **Reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť**<sup>4</sup> (1, 12, 3), *the rest fled (gave themselves up to flight).*
3. **Duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant** (5, 3, 2), *two were contending with each other (between themselves) for supremacy.*
4. **Inter sē differunt** (1, 1, 2), *they differ from one another (among themselves).*
5. **Dē mē pauca dīcam** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 20), *I will speak briefly of myself.*
6. **Tū tē in custōdiam dedīstī** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 19), *you offered to give yourself into custody.*

**345. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note (1) that the foregoing examples are *simple sentences*, and that the *reflexive pronoun* refers to the *subject*; (2) that the preposition **inter** with the reflexive, in Exs. 3 and 4, gives the latter a *reciprocal force* (*each other, one another*); (3) that in Exs. 5 and 6, where the subject of the sentence is of the *first* or *second person* the *personal pronoun* (see **mē** and **tē**) performs the office of the *reflexive*. Frame rules embodying the foregoing observations.

**346. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 196, *f*, 98, *a*; H. 448 with note, 449; G. 295, 212.

## 347.

## EXAMPLES.

1. [**Patria**] **tēcum**, **Catilīna**, **sīc** agit (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 18), *your country, Catiline, thus remonstrates with you.*
2. **Haec**<sup>5</sup> **vōbiscum** **ūnā** **cōnsul** **agam** (Sall. *Cat.* 20, 17), *these [measures] I shall as consul carry out in conjunction with you.*
3. . . . **sēcum** **habēbat** (3, 18, 1), *he kept about his person (had with himself).*

**348. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing examples, that **tēcum**, **vōbiscum**, **sēcum** are used in place of **cum tē**, **cum vōbīs**, **cum sē**. Frame a rule for the Position of **cum** used with the Ablative of the Personal Pronouns.

**349. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 99, *e*; II. 184, 6; G. 414, Rem. 1.

<sup>1</sup> **ne** is here an interrogative particle introducing the first part of the double question; the second part is introduced by **an**: A. & G. 211; II. 353, 1; G. 460.

<sup>2</sup> Acc. masc. sing. of **quisque**, *each*.

<sup>3</sup> This pronoun is made up of **uter**

(*whichever of the two*) and **vīs** (*you wish or you please*); the first part is declined, the second remains unchanged.

<sup>4</sup> Contracted from **mandāvērunt**; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Acc. neut. pl. of **hīc**, *this*.

—o:~o:~o—

## LESSON XLII.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

## 350.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ego vigilō ad salūtem, tū ad perniciem rēi pūblicae.
2. Ab exercitū meō tē removeō. 3. Orgetorix sibi mortem cōscīvit. 4. Habētis ducem memorem vestrī,<sup>1</sup> oblītum suī.<sup>1</sup> 5. Tū, C.<sup>2</sup> Aviēne, mihī rēique pūblicae inūtilis fuīstī.
6. Catilīna sēcum suōs ēdūcet. 7. Obsidēs inter sēsē dant.
8. Nullum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis postulō. 9. Utrīque<sup>3</sup> nostrūm grātum est. 10. Nīmium mihī sūmam.
11. Equitēs vōbiscum dē amōre rēi pūblicae certant.



II. 1. Which-one<sup>4</sup> of us does not know? 2. Your fellow citizens all fear you. 3. We seek the safety, you (pl.) the destruction of our common country. 4. The citizens will vie with us in<sup>5</sup> patriotism (love of the commonwealth). 5. The Aedui and Arverni had been contending<sup>6</sup> with each other many years. 6. To you our common country commits herself. 7. No one has [ever] contended with me without [effecting] his own destruction. 8. I do not myself<sup>7</sup> commend myself. 9. It will be gratifying to you both.<sup>8</sup> 10. It is with difficulty<sup>9</sup> that I keep from<sup>10</sup> you the hands of your countrymen. 11. Review with me [the events of] the night before.<sup>11</sup>

351. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Vōbis supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis, vōbis sē, vōbis vītā omnium civium commendat. 2. Equitum Rōmānōrum ego vix abs<sup>10</sup> tē jam diū manūs ac tēla contineō.<sup>12</sup> 3. Ego meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbis rēgna conciliābō. 4. Belgae, Aquitāni, Gallī lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Gallōs auxiliū causā sēcum habēbat. 6. Cicerō amantissimus utriusque nostrū est.

II. 1. I, I the consul, am remiss. 2. Lead out<sup>13</sup> with you, too, all your [associates]. 3. Dismiss your kind solicitude for<sup>14</sup> me, and think of yourselves and your children. 4. The Belgians unite in a sworn league against the Roman people and exchange<sup>15</sup> hostages. 5. Your house and mine<sup>16</sup> are building<sup>17</sup> rapidly. 6. And-so they surrendered themselves and all their [effects] to Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> *vestri* is in the objective genitive after *memorem*; *sui* is in the same construction after *oblitum*.

<sup>2</sup> *C.* is here an abbreviation for *GAI*, vocative of *Gājus*; see *Lesson XXI.*, foot-note 1.

<sup>3</sup> *each* (of two), *both*; decline like *uter*, appending *-que* throughout.

<sup>4</sup> *Quis?*

<sup>5</sup> *dē.*

<sup>6</sup> *A. & G.* 277, *b*; *H.* 469, 2; *G.* 225.

<sup>7</sup> *ipse*, nom. singular masculine.

<sup>8</sup> cf. sent. 9 of the preceding exercise.

<sup>9</sup> Translate: *I with difficulty keep.*

<sup>10</sup> *abs* may be used for *ā* before *tē*.

<sup>11</sup> Translate: *the preceding night.*

<sup>12</sup> cf. *Lesson XXI.*, foot-note 5.

<sup>13</sup> *ēddūc'* (accent the final syllable):

*A. & G.* 128, *c*; *H.* 238, n. 2; *G.* 151, 4.

<sup>14</sup> Arrange: *your for me (ergā mē) kind solicitude.*

<sup>15</sup> Translate: *give among themselves.*

<sup>16</sup> Translate: *the house of each of us.*

<sup>17</sup> Present passive.

## LESSON XLIII.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. — THE GERUND.

## 352.

## EXAMPLES.

1. [Plēbēs] cupida rērum novārum bellō favēbat (Sall. *Cat.* 48, 1),  
*the commons, desirous of a change (of new things), favored war.*
2. [Cōnsidius] rēi mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur (1, 21, 4),  
*Considius was accounted very well versed in the military art.*
3. Bellī haud ignārus (Sall. *Jug.* 28, 5), *not unacquainted with war.*
4. Habētis dūcem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 9, 19), *you have a leader [who is] thoughtful of you, forgetful of himself.*
5. Plēna erant omnia timōris (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 41, 8), *all (lit., all things) were filled with fear.*
6. Erant complūrēs cōnsilī<sup>1</sup> participēs nōbilēs (Sall. *Cat.* 17, 5),  
*there were a great many nobles concerned in the plot.*
7. Flaccum et Pomptīnum, amantissimōs rēi pūblicae virōs, ad mē vocāvī (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 5), *I summoned Flaccus and Pomptinus, men warmly attached to the commonwealth.*
8. Corpus [Catilīnae] patiēns inediae [fuit] (Sall. *Cat.* 5, 3), *Catiline's constitution was capable of enduring abstinence from food.*

353. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the *adjectives* **cupida**, **perītissimus**, **ignārus**, **memorem**, **oblītum**, **plēna**, **participēs**, **amantissimōs**, **patiēns**, from the nature of their signification, require an *object of reference* to complete their meaning; and (2) that the *substantive* added in each instance to complete the meaning of the adjective is in the *genitive case* (see **rērum**, **rēi**, **bellī**, **vestrī**, **suī**, **timōris**, **cōnsilī**, **rēi pūblicae**, **inediae**). Also, after noting carefully the *meaning* of the adjectives that govern the genitive in the foregoing examples, frame a rule stating what *Classes of Adjectives* take a *Genitive* to complete their meaning.

354. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 218, *a, b*; II. 399, I., 1, 2, 3, II.; G. 373, 374.

355. Learn, with meanings, the gerunds of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audiō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 91, 95, 99; G. pp. 55, 59, 65, 69.

## 356.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Jūs vocandī senātum** (Liv. 3, 33, 10), *authority to convene* (of convening) *the senate*.
2. **Hominēs bellandī cupidī** (1, 2, 4), *men fond of fighting*.
3. **Dē rēbus pertinentibus ad beātē vīvendum** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 6, 19), *concerning matters which contribute to a happy life* (to living happily).
4. **Ōrātōrem aptum ad dīcendum** (Cic. *Tusc.* 1, 3, 5), *an orator with aptitude for speaking*.
5. **Mōrēs [puerōrum] sē inter lūdendum dētegunt** (Quint. 1, 3, 11), *the moral traits of children reveal themselves in play* (amid playing).
6. **Homīnis mēns discendō alitur** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 30, 105), *the mind of man is strengthened by study* (by studying).
7. **Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar** (1, 18, 10), *Caesar learned on making inquiry*.

357. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, that the gerund **vocandī** governs the accusative of direct object (see **senātum**); and, in Ex. 3, that the gerund **vīvendum** is modified by the adverb **beātē**. In view of these facts, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

What is the case, and what the construction, in the foregoing examples, of the gerunds **vocandī**, **bellandī**, **vīvendum**, **dīcendum**, **lūdendum**, **discendō**, **quaerendō**. In view of the several constructions here illustrated, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

The Gerund, then, shares the nature of what two parts of speech? In what constructions may it be used?<sup>2</sup>

**358. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 295, 297<sup>3</sup>, 298 (to the semicolon), 300, 301; H. 541, 542, I., III., IV.; G. 427, 429<sup>3</sup>, 433<sup>3</sup>, 432<sup>3</sup>, 434<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 40, b; H. 51, 5; G. 29, Rem. 1.

<sup>2</sup> The Gerund may be in the *genitive* after a *substantive*, as in Ex. 1; in the

*genitive after an adjective*, as in Ex. 2, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Omit, for the present, in reading, the reference to the Gerundive.



## LESSON XLIV.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

#### 359.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulī<sup>1</sup> jūs est vocandī senātum. 2. Diēs prōlātandō māgnās oppōrtūnitātēs corrumpunt. 3. Nōn solum ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, vērum etiā ad docendum. 4. Dumnorix est cupidus rērum novārum. 5. Diem ad dēliberandum sūmam. 6. Militēs praedae sunt participēs. 7. Nōn ego tam barbarus neque tam imperītus rērum. 8. Summa erat difficultās nāvīgandī. 9. Prohibenda est ira in pūniendō. 10. Titus equitandī perītissimus fuit.

II. 1. They strengthen the conspiracy by not believing [in its existence]. 2. In the free towns there are less [adequate] resources for defence.<sup>2</sup> 3. Private citizens have<sup>3</sup> no authority to convene<sup>4</sup> the senate. 4. Catiline was covetous of others' [property],<sup>5</sup> lavish of his own. 5. Epaminondas was skilled in war, brave in action,<sup>6</sup> of very great courage, devoted to the truth. 6. Epaminondas was a good listener.<sup>7</sup> 7. In deliberating, the mind<sup>8</sup> is often drawn into contradictory opinions. 8. The soldiers of Sulla, recalling<sup>9</sup> former victory, ardently-desired civil war.

## 360.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ea<sup>10</sup> facta commemorandō, militum animōs accendēbat. 2. Hostium parātus erat ad dimicandum animus. 3. Carthāgō fuit aemula imperi<sup>11</sup> Rōmānī. 4. Spatium pila in hostēs coniciendī<sup>12</sup> nōn dabātur. 5. Sagittariōrum adventū Rēmīs studium prōpūguandī accēssit. 6. Dumnorix fuit cupidus rērum novārum, cupidus imperii, māgnū animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis.

II. 1. No one was able to maintain his position<sup>13</sup> on the wall. 2. Our consul was inured to toil,<sup>8</sup> of penetrating intellect, not unacquainted with war, and utterly<sup>14</sup> unmoved in the face of dangers. 3. Caesar acquired<sup>15</sup> glory by giving, by relieving, [and] by pardoning. 4. The barbarians are very fond of cattle.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 9.

<sup>2</sup> "for defence" = *for defending*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *no authority is to private citizens*; see foot-note 1.

<sup>4</sup> "to convene" = *of convening*.

<sup>5</sup> *aliēnus*, -a, -um, in neuter singular, used substantively.

<sup>6</sup> *manus*; cf. 229 and 230.

<sup>7</sup> Translate: *fond of listening*.

<sup>8</sup> Use the plural.

<sup>9</sup> *memor* with genitive.

<sup>10</sup> *ea*, accusative neuter plural, *these*.

<sup>11</sup> See foot-note 1, preceding lesson.

<sup>12</sup> Pronounce: *conjiciendī*.

<sup>13</sup> Translate: *power was to no one of maintaining*, etc.; see foot-note 1.

<sup>14</sup> Sign of superlative

<sup>15</sup> *adeptus est*.

## LESSON XLV.

DEMONSTRATIVES: *Hīc, Iste, Ille.*

361. Learn the declension of the demonstratives: *hīc*, *this*; *iste*, *that* (of yours); *ille*, *that*. A. & G. p. 52 (including the first sentence of *a*); H. 186, I., II., III.; G. 102, I., II., III.

362. Decline together: *haec legiō*, *this legion*; *hōc respōsum*, *this answer*; *ista mēns*, *that purpose of yours*; *gladiātor iste*, *that* [worthless] *gladiator*; *illud tempus*, *that time*; *Sōcraticus*<sup>1</sup> *ille*, *the famous disciple of Soerates*.

## 363.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Senātus haec intellegit: hīc tamen vīvit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 2), *the senate knows these things* (just referred to by the speaker); *yet this man* (in sight of the speaker, and perhaps designated by a gesture) *lives*.
2. **Huic legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipuē** (1, 40, 15), *Caesar had especially favored this* (just referred to) *legion*.
3. **Mūtā istam mentem** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 3, 6), *change that purpose of yours*.
4. **Nēmō est istōrum tam misericors** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 7, 16), *there is no one of those men* (with a touch of contempt) *so compassionate . . .*
5. **At ille diem noctemque nāvem tenuit in ancorīs** (Nep. *Th.* 8, 7), *yet he kept his vessel at anchor a day and a night*.
6. **Illō tempore** (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 7, 5), *at that time*.
7. **Ille mānsuētūdine clārus factus<sup>2</sup>; huic sevērītās dīgnitātem addiderat** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 2), *the former became illustrious through his clemency; to the latter austerity gave<sup>3</sup> dignity*.
8. **Mēdēa illa** (Cic. *Manil.* 9, 22), *the famous Medea*.

**364. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Are the *demonstratives* in Exs. 1, 4, 5, 7 used *substantively* or *adjectively*? Answer the same question for Exs. 2, 3, 6, 8. Does the demonstrative, when used *adjectively*, appear regularly to *follow* or to *precede* its substantive? Which of these demonstratives may appropriately be called the *demonstrative of the first person*? Which the *demonstrative of the second person*? Which of the *third*? What other distinctions or peculiarities in the use of these pronouns do the translations of the foregoing examples reveal?

**365. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 101, 102, *a, b, c, 343, d*; II. 450, 2, 4, 569, I., 1; G. 290, 291, 292, 2, Rem. 1, 678, Rem. 2.

## 366.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Sī deelit hōc remedium, ad illud<sup>4</sup> declīnandum est.**
2. **Xenophōn, Sōcraticus<sup>1</sup> ille, scripsit historiam.** 3. **Nōs**

autem,<sup>5</sup> virī fortēs, istius<sup>6</sup> furōrem ac tēla vītāmus. 4. Vītā  
 istam fugae sōlitūdīnīque mandā. 5. Ille per mē crēvit.  
 6. Illius facilitās, hūjus cōstantia laudābātur. 7. Illō  
 tempore rēgnū obtinēbat. 8. Ad hās suspīciōnēs certissi-  
 mae rēs accēdunt. 9. Māgna huic Jovī<sup>7</sup> habenda est grātia.  
 10. Gladiātōrī istī nihil dābō.

II. 1. Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest. 2. The  
 beauty of the former,<sup>8</sup> the virtue of the latter,<sup>8</sup> was com-  
 mended. 3. Two Roman knights relieved you of that<sup>9</sup>  
 anxiety. 4. Indeed,<sup>10</sup> I suppose, that<sup>11</sup> centurion Manlius  
 declared war in his own name.<sup>12</sup> 5. Having given this  
 answer,<sup>13</sup> he withdrew. 6. How long will that insane folly  
 of yours mock us? 7. Swords are drawn both by those  
 and by our party. 8. He, yonder<sup>14</sup> Jupiter, resisted [them].  
 He [preserved] the Capitol, he [preserved] these temples,  
 he preserved the whole<sup>15</sup> city.

<sup>1</sup> **Sōcraticus**, -a, -um, *belonging to Socrates*; hence, used substantively, *disciple of Socrates*.

<sup>2</sup> ac. est; perfect passive of **faciō**.

<sup>3</sup> Lit., *had added*.

<sup>4</sup> **ille** (especially the neuter **illud**) often, as here, means *the following*.

<sup>5</sup> Conjunction, *however, but*; for position, see: A. & G. 345, b; H. 569, III.; G. 486, Rem.

<sup>6</sup> Contemptuous; translate: *that mad-man or that wretch*.

<sup>7</sup> See **Jūppiter** in general vocabulary.

<sup>8</sup> See 363, Ex. 7.

<sup>9</sup> See 363, Ex. 3.

<sup>10</sup> **Etenim** (at the beginning).

<sup>11</sup> Contemptuous.

<sup>12</sup> Ablative of *manner*.

<sup>13</sup> What construction? cf. 305, Ex. 2.

<sup>14</sup> "yonder" = *that*.

<sup>15</sup> **cūctus**, -a, -um; see **cūctus** in general vocabulary.

## LESSON XLVI.

DEMONSTRATIVES (DETERMINATIVES): **Is, Ipse,**  
**Īdem.**

367. Learn the declension of the demonstratives (determinatives): **is**, *he, this, that*; **ipse**, *self*; **īdem**, *the same*: A. & G. 101; H. 186, IV., V., VI.; G. 101.

368. Decline together: **ea mūnītīō**, *that fortification*; **id iter**, *that journey*; **hōc ipsum tempus**, *this very time*; **eadem fortūna**, *the same fortune*; **īdem prīnceps**, *the same chief*.

## 369.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit** (1, 2, 3), *he persuaded them to it (persuaded it to them) more easily because-of-the-following-fact (hōc)*.
2. **In eō itinere persuādet Casticō** (1, 3, 4), *on this journey he prevails upon Casticus*.
3. **Dixī ego īdem īn senātū** (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 7), *I also (I the same) said in the senate*.
4. **Haec eadem centuriōnibus mandābant** (7, 17, 8), *they delivered these same [assurances] to the centurions*.
5. **Eōdem tempore equitēs fugam petēbant** (2, 24, 1), *at the same time the cavalry took to flight*.
6. **Ipse eōdem itinere ad eōs contendit** (1, 21, 3), *he hastened in person to them (he himself hastened, etc.) by the same route*.
7. **Ipse sibī inimīcus est** (Cic. Fin. 5, 10, 28), *he is an enemy to himself (i.e., he is his own enemy)*.
8. **Ipsō terrōre equōrum ordinēs perturbant** (4, 33, 1), *by the mere fright (fright itself) of the horses, they throw the ranks into confusion*.
9. **Hōc ipsō tempore** (6, 37, 1), *at this very time*.



**370. OBSERVATION:** Compare *id* (Ex. 1) with *eō* (Ex. 2); which is used *substantively?* which *adjectively?* Note that *eīs* (Ex. 1) and *eōs* (Ex. 6) are used as *personal* pronouns. Compare *idem* (Ex. 3) and *eadem* (Ex. 4) with *eōdem* (Ex. 5) and *eōdem* (Ex. 6); which are used *substantively?* which *adjectively?* Note that *idem* (Ex. 3) is translated *also*. Note that *ipse* is translated, in Ex. 6, *in person*; in Ex. 8, *mere*; and in Ex. 9, *very*. Note that *ipse* (Ex. 7) does not, as the English translation might lead us to expect, agree with *sibi*, but with the *subject* of the sentence.

**371. REFERENCES:** A. & G. 195, *e, f, l*; H. 451, 3, 452, 1, 2; G. 100, 296, 297, 298.

**372.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Magna*<sup>1</sup> huic ipsi Jovi habenda est grātia.<sup>1</sup> 2. *Eōdem* tempore lēgātī ab Aeduīs veniēbant. 3. *Initium* ējus<sup>2</sup> fugae factum est<sup>3</sup> ā Dumnorige atque ējus<sup>4</sup> equitibus. 4. *Id* ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs comperī. 5. *Ipse* sibi mortem cōscīvit. 6. *Atreatēs* eandem bellī fortūnam experiuntur.<sup>5</sup> 7. *Hōc idem* in reliquīs fit<sup>6</sup> eīvitātibus. 8. *Pompējus* eadem illa agit. 9. *Ipsōrum* linguā Celtae, nōstrā Gallī appellantur. 10. *Ob eās causās* ēī mūntiōnī T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit;<sup>7</sup> ipse in Ītaliā contendit. 11. *Ipse* ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē<sup>8</sup> mittit.

II. 1. From Pontus also<sup>9</sup> the famous Medea once fled.<sup>10</sup> 2. For<sup>11</sup> this reason Caesar hastened into Gaul. 3. With equal<sup>12</sup> speed they hastened to our camp. 4. Learn these [facts] from the very [persons] who<sup>13</sup> have escaped<sup>14</sup> from the massacre itself. 5. All [men] love themselves. 6. The Germans came in-great-numbers to him in<sup>15</sup> camp. 7. Having called<sup>16</sup> together their chiefs, he takes them severely to task. 8. Divitiacus the Aeduan again<sup>17</sup> responded. 9. He, in the consulship<sup>16</sup> of Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso, persuaded his countrymen. 10. This district was called the Tigrine. 11. On the following day

they move their camp from that place. Caesar does<sup>18</sup> the same.

<sup>1</sup> Note the emphasis produced by the separation of the adjective from its substantive.

<sup>2</sup> Used adjectively, *this*.

<sup>3</sup> Perfect passive of *faciō*, *make*.

<sup>4</sup> Used as a personal pronoun, *his*.

<sup>5</sup> From *experior*, which has a passive form with active meaning.

<sup>6</sup> 3d sing. pres. of *fiō*, *be done*.

<sup>7</sup> 3d sing. perf. indic. of *praeficiō*.

<sup>8</sup> Could *eum* be substituted for *sē*? See A: & G. 196; H. 449, 1); G. 295.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 369, Ex. 3.

<sup>10</sup> *profūgit*, perf. of *profugiō*.

<sup>11</sup> cf. 372, sent. 10.

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *the same*.

<sup>13</sup> *quī*, nominative plural masculine.

<sup>14</sup> *fūgērunt*, perf. of *fugiō*.

<sup>15</sup> Note the difference of idiom: "to him in camp" = *to him into camp*.

<sup>16</sup> What construction must be used?

<sup>17</sup> Translate: *the same Divitiacus*.

<sup>18</sup> *facit*, 3d sing. pres. indic. of *faciō*.

### 373. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons XLV. and XLVI.

I. 1. Hic testāmentō, ille proximitāte nītitur.<sup>1</sup> 2. Ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant. 3. Māgna<sup>2</sup> dīs<sup>3</sup> immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Jovī Statōrī, antiquissimō custōdī hūjus urbis, grātia.<sup>2</sup> 4. Exclūsī eōs quōs (*whom*) tū ad mē mīserās. 5. Īdem<sup>4</sup> prīncipēs civitātum ad Caesarem revertērunt. 6. Ego ūnius ūsūram hōrae gladiātōrī isti ad vīvendum nōn dabō. 7. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsīt, quod undīque locī nātūrā Helvētīi contīnentur. 8. Helvētīi ferē cottīdīānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum (*when*) aut suīs<sup>5</sup> fīnibus eōs<sup>6</sup> prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum<sup>7</sup> fīnibus bellum gerunt.

II. 1. That which<sup>8</sup> *they*<sup>9</sup> had accomplished<sup>10</sup> in twenty days, *he* had done in one day. 2. He was the only one to be feared<sup>11</sup> out of all that-crew.<sup>12</sup> 3. You gave yourself into custody. 4. On your arrival those benches [near you] were cleared.<sup>13</sup> 5. The Suessiones enjoy<sup>14</sup> the same constitution and the same laws. 6. This [part of] Gaul is my province just as<sup>15</sup> that is yours.

<sup>1</sup> *relies, depends*; this verb is passive in form, but active in meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 372, foot-note 1.

<sup>3</sup> From *deus*; for declension, see A. & G. 40, f; H. 51, 6; G. 29, 5.

<sup>4</sup> Nom. pl. masc. of *īdem*.

<sup>5</sup> See references under foot-note 8, Lesson XLVI.; also G. 294. What change of meaning would result if *eōrum* were substituted for *suīs*?

<sup>6</sup> What would be the meaning if *sē* were substituted for *eōs*?

<sup>7</sup> What would *suīs* mean here?

<sup>8</sup> *quod*, neuter singular accusative.

<sup>9</sup> Use the proper form of *ipse*.

<sup>10</sup> *cōnfēcērant*, from *cōnficiō*.

<sup>11</sup> Translate: *he alone (īnus) was to be feared* (pass. periphrastic).

<sup>12</sup> Use the plural of *iste*.

<sup>13</sup> *vacuēfacta sunt*, perfect passive of *vacuēfaciō*.

<sup>14</sup> *ūtuntur*; this verb has a passive form with active meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

<sup>15</sup> *sicut*.

## LESSON XLVII.

## THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION. — THE TWO SUPINES.

374.

EXAMPLES.

- |    |   |   |  |   |   |
|----|---|---|--|---|---|
| 1. | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p>a. <b>Jūs vocandī senātum</b> (Liv. 3, 38, 10), <i>right of convening the senate.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Jūs vocandī senātūs</b>, <i>right of the senate to be convened.</i></p> </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">}</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p><i>authority to convene the senate.</i></p> </td> </tr> </table>             | { | <p>a. <b>Jūs vocandī senātum</b> (Liv. 3, 38, 10), <i>right of convening the senate.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Jūs vocandī senātūs</b>, <i>right of the senate to be convened.</i></p>          | } | <p><i>authority to convene the senate.</i></p>      |
| {  | <p>a. <b>Jūs vocandī senātum</b> (Liv. 3, 38, 10), <i>right of convening the senate.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Jūs vocandī senātūs</b>, <i>right of the senate to be convened.</i></p>   | } | <p><i>authority to convene the senate.</i></p>   |   |   |
| 2. | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p>a. <b>Cupiditās bellum gerendī</b>, <i>desire of carrying on war.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Cupiditās bellī gerendī</b> (1, 41, 1), <i>desire of war to be carried on.</i></p> </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">}</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p><i>eagerness to fight.</i></p> </td> </tr> </table>                               | { | <p>a. <b>Cupiditās bellum gerendī</b>, <i>desire of carrying on war.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Cupiditās bellī gerendī</b> (1, 41, 1), <i>desire of war to be carried on.</i></p>               | } | <p><i>eagerness to fight.</i></p>                   |
| {  | <p>a. <b>Cupiditās bellum gerendī</b>, <i>desire of carrying on war.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Cupiditās bellī gerendī</b> (1, 41, 1), <i>desire of war to be carried on.</i></p>  | } | <p><i>eagerness to fight.</i></p>  |   |   |
| 3. | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p>a. <b>Diēs prōlātandō</b> (Sall. <i>Cat.</i> 43, 3), <i>by putting off the days.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Diēbus prōlātandīs</b>, <i>by the days to be put off.</i></p> </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">}</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p><i>by postponing the day [of execution].</i></p> </td> </tr> </table>                   | { | <p>a. <b>Diēs prōlātandō</b> (Sall. <i>Cat.</i> 43, 3), <i>by putting off the days.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Diēbus prōlātandīs</b>, <i>by the days to be put off.</i></p>                     | } | <p><i>by postponing the day [of execution].</i></p> |
| {  | <p>a. <b>Diēs prōlātandō</b> (Sall. <i>Cat.</i> 43, 3), <i>by putting off the days.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Diēbus prōlātandīs</b>, <i>by the days to be put off.</i></p>  | } | <p><i>by postponing the day [of execution].</i></p>  |   |   |
| 4. | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p>a. <b>Male gerendō negōtium</b>, <i>by managing business badly.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Male gerendō negōtiō</b> (Cic. <i>Cat.</i> 2, 10, 21), <i>by business to be managed badly.</i></p> </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">}</td> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"> <p><i>through bad management of business.</i></p> </td> </tr> </table> | { | <p>a. <b>Male gerendō negōtium</b>, <i>by managing business badly.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Male gerendō negōtiō</b> (Cic. <i>Cat.</i> 2, 10, 21), <i>by business to be managed badly.</i></p> | } | <p><i>through bad management of business.</i></p>   |
| {  | <p>a. <b>Male gerendō negōtium</b>, <i>by managing business badly.</i></p> <p>b. <b>Male gerendō negōtiō</b> (Cic. <i>Cat.</i> 2, 10, 21), <i>by business to be managed badly.</i></p>  | } | <p><i>through bad management of business.</i></p>  |   |   |

**375. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in the examples marked *a*, the *gerund* is used with a *direct object*; whereas, in the examples marked *b*, the *gerundive* is used in *agreement with the substantive which was formerly the direct object*, and the latter has the same construction which the *gerund* formerly had. Note, further, that the two forms of expression have the *same meaning*. The examples marked *a* illustrate the *Gerund Construction*; those marked *b* illustrate the *Gerundive Construction*. Frame a rule for changing the *Gerund Construction* to the *Gerundive*.<sup>1</sup>

**376. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 296; H. 544, 1; G. 428.

**377.** Restore the gerund construction to the gerundive in the following examples :

1. **Exercitum Ariovistum opprimendī causā habet**, *he has an army for the purpose of crushing Ariovistus.*
2. **Ea facta commemorandō, mīlitum animōs accendēbat**, *by recalling these exploits, he fired the hearts of the soldiers.*

**378.** Learn the following supines:<sup>2</sup>

1ST CONJUGATION.

1. **rogātum**, *to ask.*
2. **memorātū**, *in relating.*

2D CONJUGATION.

1. **vīsum**, *to see.*
2. **monitū**, *in reminding.*

3D CONJUGATION.

1. **perditum**, *to ruin.*
2. **dictū**, *in saying.*

4TH CONJUGATION.

1. **audītum**, *to hear.*
2. **audītū**, *in hearing.*

**379.** OBSERVATION: It has been seen (Lesson XLIII.) that the *gerund* is a verbal *substantive* of the *second declension*, used in four cases. The *supine* is also a verbal *substantive*; of what *declension* is it, and in what *cases* is it used?

**380.**

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium** (1, 11, 2), *they send ambassadors to ask assistance.*
2. **Ad senātum vēnisse<sup>3</sup> auxilium postulātum** (1, 31, 9), *to have come to the senate to petition for assistance.*
3. **Incrēdibile memorātū est** (Sall. *Cat.* 6, 2), *it is incredible to relate* (in the relating).
4. **Difficile dictū est** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 12), *it is difficult to speak* (in the speaking).

**381.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the first two of the foregoing examples (1) that the *supines* **rogātum** and **postulātum** are construed with *verbs of motion* (**mittunt** and **vēnisse**); and (2) that they express *purpose*. Frame a rule for the use of the *Supine* in **-um**.

**382.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 302; H. 546; G. 436.

**383. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Exs. 3 and 4, (1) that the *supines* **memorātū** and **dictū**, are used with *adjectives*; and (2) that they answer the question *in what respect?* or *from what point of view?* Frame a rule for the use of Supines in **-ū**.

**384. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 303; II. 547; G. 437.

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive construction is generally preferred to the gerund construction; and, in connection with a preposition, the gerundive construction is always to be taken.

<sup>2</sup> **amō**, **dēleō**, **tegō**, **regō**, and **emō**, which have heretofore served as paradigms, have no supine.

<sup>3</sup> Perf. act. infin. of **veniō**.



## LESSON XLVIII.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINES.

**385.**

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Gallī legiōnis opprimendae cōnsilium cēpērunt.<sup>1</sup> †  
 2. Diēs prōlātandō māgnās opportūnitātēs corrumpunt. †  
 3. Vix iūs rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur. 4. Ex †  
 cīvitate profūgī et ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum. †  
 5. Perfacile factū<sup>2</sup> est cōnāta perficere.<sup>3</sup> 6. Ariovistus cum †  
 suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontionem contendit. †  
 7. Propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs Dumnorix †  
 conlocārat.<sup>4</sup> 8. Nec hōc est dictū mirābile. 9. Dē ex- †  
 pūgnandō oppidō spēs hostēs fefellit. 10. Sum cupidus tē †  
 audiendī: 11. Nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed †  
 etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuit. 12. Frontō vir †  
 movendārum lacrimārum perītissimus fuit.

II. 1. You had sent two knights to me to pay their respects. 2. The best [thing] to do<sup>2</sup> is to declare war. 3. *He* was more earnest to restore<sup>5</sup> me than [he had been]

to retain me. 4. Caesar gave the signal for the battle to begin.<sup>6</sup> 5. He gives his daughter in marriage<sup>7</sup> to Manilius. 6. *You* have been able not merely to set at defiance the laws, but even to destroy<sup>8</sup> them. 7. Of this kind of death it is difficult to speak. 8. In recounting the disaster of the community, they said . . . 9. They are seeking<sup>9</sup> to destroy themselves and the commonwealth. 10. Orgetorix is selected to accomplish<sup>10</sup> these things.

## 386.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar exercitum in Galliā Ariovistī opprimendī causā habēbat. 2. Militēs in quaerendīs suis<sup>11</sup> pūgnandī tempus dimittēbant. 3. Eā dē rē difficile dictū est. 4. Exclūsī eōs quōs<sup>12</sup> tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. 5. Ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.<sup>13</sup> 6. Tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, princīpēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum<sup>14</sup> convēnerunt.

II. 1. They squander their wealth in levelling mountains. 2. One legion had been sent to forage.<sup>15</sup> 3. The best thing to do<sup>2</sup> is to cut off<sup>16</sup> the Romans from grain and supplies. 4. All the morally bad, then, [are] slaves: nor is this so wonderful in-point-of-fact<sup>17</sup> as in the form of statement.<sup>18</sup> 5. Suddenly the Gauls formed<sup>1</sup> the design of renewing the war and crushing the legion. 6. You live, and you live not to forsake,<sup>19</sup> but to persevere in<sup>19</sup> your shameless course.

<sup>1</sup> cēpērunt, *formed*, perf. indic. of capiō.

<sup>2</sup> factū, supine in -ū of faciō, *do*.

<sup>3</sup> Pres. infin. of perficiō, *accomplish*.

<sup>4</sup> See Lesson XXXV., foot-note 22.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *desirous of restoring*.

<sup>6</sup> Translate: *of the battle to be begun*.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 385, I., sent. 7.

<sup>8</sup> "have been able to destroy" = *have availed for destroying*. cf. 385, I., sent. 11.

<sup>9</sup> eunt, 3d person plural of eō, *go*.

<sup>10</sup> The gerundive of cōnficiō, *accomplish*, is cōnficiendus, -a, -um.

<sup>11</sup> sc. sīgnīs.

<sup>12</sup> whom.

<sup>13</sup> Perf. indic. of proficiscor, *set out*.

<sup>14</sup> Sup. of grātulor, *congratulate*; this verb has a pass. form with act. meaning.

<sup>15</sup> frūmentātum, sup. of frūmentor, which has a pass. form with act. meaning.

<sup>16</sup> prohibeō with abl.

<sup>17</sup> rē.

<sup>18</sup> Translate: *in saying*.

<sup>19</sup> cf. 386, I., sent. 5.

## LESSON XLIX.

VERBS IN **-iō** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION. — THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

387. Learn, with meanings, the inflection and synopsis of **capiō**, *take*, in the Indicative and Imperative moods, Active and Passive; also the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 106–108; G. pp. 72, 73.

388. Using **capiō** as a model, form the same parts of: **rapiō**, *snatch*; **jaciō**, *throw*; **ēiciō**,<sup>1</sup> *expel*.

389. Learn the declension of the relative pronoun **quī**, *who, which, that, what*: A. & G. 103; H. 187; G. 103.

## 390.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Īn fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē sine morā dēdidērunt** (2, 15, 2), *he came into the territories of the Ambiani, who surrendered without delay.*
2. **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae** (1, 1, 1), *all Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit.*
3. **Illī, cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, ēruptiōnem fēcērunt** (2, 33, 2), *they, with those arms which they had withheld and concealed, made a sortie.*
4. **Longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt** (5, 14, 1), *[those] who inhabit Kent are by far the most highly civilized.*

391. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1–3, that the *relatives* **quī**, **quārum**, and **quae** refer to **Ambiānōrum**, **partēs**, and **armīs** respectively; and that they agree with these substantives in *number* and *gender*. The substantive to which a relative thus refers is called the *Antecedent*.

In what *construction* is **quī** (Ex. 1)? **quārum** (Ex. 2)? **quae** (Ex. 3)? Is the *case* of the Relative, then, determined by that of the Antecedent?

Frame a rule for the Gender, Number, and Case of the Relative.

**392.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 198; H. 445; G. 615, 616.

**393.** OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 4, the antecedent of **quī** (**eī**, *those*) is omitted.

**394.** REFERENCES: A. & G. 200, *c*; H. 445, 6; G. 620, 621.

<sup>1</sup> **ēiciō** (= **ex** + **iaciō**) is to be pronounced as if it were written **ējiciō**; so also all compounds of **iaciō** with monosyllabic prepositions: as, **abiciō** (pronounced: **abjiciō**), **coniciō** (pronounced: **conjiciō**), etc. For the principal parts of **ēiciō**, see the general vocabulary.



## LESSON L.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

**395.**

**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum<sup>1</sup> continenter bellum gerunt. 3. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, quibus in tabulīs ratiō cōnfecta erat. 4. Quī<sup>2</sup> omnibus hominibus crēdit, saepe dēcipitur. 5. Legiōnem cui Galba praeerat, mīsīt. 6. Sūlla cum māgnō equitātū in castra vēnit, quōs<sup>3</sup> ex Latiō et ā sociīs coēgerat. 7. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgātiōnis Divicō p̄ncēps fuit. 8. Ego<sup>4</sup> quī tē cōfirmō,<sup>4</sup> ipse mē nōn possum.<sup>5</sup>

II. 1. Those will be visited with punishment<sup>6</sup> by whom arms shall be taken.<sup>7</sup> 2. Catiline, whom the consul has



expelled, is fleeing. 3. These are [the things] which I demand. 4. He sends<sup>8</sup> reinforcements to the support of<sup>8</sup> our men who are in retreat.<sup>9</sup> 5. He hastened to convey his army across. . . . This<sup>10</sup> movement made one side of his camp secure. 6. The nature of the site which our men had selected for a camp was as follows.<sup>11</sup> 7. We often despise those with whom and among whom we live. 8. Here am [I] who did<sup>4</sup> [the deed].

### 396. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Convocātis Aeduōrum princīpibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Liscō, quī summō magistratūi praeerat, graviter eōs accūsāt. 2. Ūltrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōsēderant, castra posuit. 3. Ūnus ex cō numerō quī<sup>3</sup> ad caedem parātī erant, Massivam obruncat. 4. Tum dēmum Liscus, orātīōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit. 5. Nāvium quod<sup>12</sup> fuerat ūnum in locum coēgerant; quibus<sup>13</sup> āmissis, sē Caesarī dēdidērunt.

II. 1. He persuades Casticus, whose father had held sovereign power among the Sequani for many years. 2. The Helvetians send ambassadors to Caesar . . . Of this<sup>14</sup> embassy, Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians, was the head. 3. Meanwhile, by means of that legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had assembled from the province, he extends a wall from Lake Geneva, which flows into the river Rhone, to mount Jura, which separates the territory of the Sequani from [that of] the Helvetii.

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 104, e; II. 187, 2; G. 414. Rem. 1.; cf. 348 and 349.

<sup>2</sup> Account for the omission of the antecedent.

<sup>3</sup> Read: A. & G. 199, b; II. 445, 5; G. 616, 3, I.

<sup>4</sup> Note that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent (expressed or understood).

<sup>5</sup> am able, can; sc. cōfirmāre.

<sup>6</sup> Use the plural.

<sup>7</sup> Translate: shall have been taken.

<sup>8</sup> submitto with dative.

<sup>9</sup> "who are in retreat" = fleeing.

<sup>10</sup> "This movement" = which thing. In Latin the relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative.

<sup>11</sup> "as follows" = this.

<sup>12</sup> nāvium quod fuerat, all their ships (lit., what of ships there had been).

<sup>13</sup> Translate: these; cf. foot-note 10.

<sup>14</sup> See 395, I., sent. 7; cf. foot-note 10.

## LESSON LI.

TWO ACCUSATIVES: SAME PERSON OR THING.  
— WITH COMPOUNDS.

## 397.

## EXAMPLES.

1. [**Casticī**] **patrem senātus amīcum appellāverat**, *the senate had called the father of Casticus friend.*
2. [**Casticī**] **pater ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat** (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called friend by the senate.*
3. **Hunc [montem] mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit** (1, 38, 6), *a wall built round it makes this mountain a citadel.*
4. **Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit** (Liv. 1, 32, 1), *the people chose Ancus Marcius king.*
5. **Tē sapientem et appellant et exīstimant** (Cic. *Lael.* 2, 6), *you they both call and think wise.*

**398. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Exs. 1 and 3-5, that the verbs are followed by *two accusatives* denoting the *same person or thing*. What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

**399. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 239, *a*; H. 373; G. 334.

**400. OBSERVATION:** Note, in Ex. 1, that the senate did not *call* the father of Casticus, but *called* him *friend*; and that, therefore, the complete predicate is not **appellāverat**, but **amīcum appellāverat**. As **amīcum** forms an essential part of the *predicate*, it may be called the *Predicate Accusative* in distinction from **patrem**, which is the *Direct Object*. What are the Predicate Accusatives in Exs. 3-5? What are the Direct Objects?

**401. OBSERVATION:** Note that, in Ex. 2, the *passive construction* is illustrated. What has the Predicate Accusative of the

Active Construction become in the Passive? What has the Direct Object become? Change Exs. 3-5 into the Passive Construction.

**402. REFERENCES:** H. 373, 1, 2; G. 197 (second paragraph).

**403. EXAMPLES.**

1. **Hibērum cōpiās trājēcit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he threw his forces across the Ebro.*
2. **Duodecim mīlia equitum Hibērum trādūxit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he led twelve thousand horse across the Ebro.*
3. **Id animum advertit** (1, 24, 1), *he directed his attention to this.*

**404. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the verbs in the foregoing examples are *compounds*, being made up of a *simple verb* and a *preposition*. Is the *simple verb* in each instance *transitive* or *intransitive*? What *case*, then, would it take if it stood alone? What *case* would the *preposition* take if it stood alone? How, then, are the *two accusatives* to be accounted for? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

**405. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 239, *b*; H. 376; G. 330, Rem. 1.

**406. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ariovistus in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est. 2. Suā emetātiōne hostēs nostrōs mīlītēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcerant. 3. Omnēs cōpiās Rhēnum trādūxerant. 4. Hostis apud mājōrēs nostrōs is dīcēbātur quem nunc peregrīnum dīcimus. 5. Hāc igitur mente Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit. 6. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.

II. 1. Spurius Cassius was made master of the horse. 2. In this council he proclaimed Cingetorix a public enemy. 3. On !<sup>1</sup> veterans, conduct a new army and a new leader across the Ebro! 4. The full moon rendered the tides very high. 5. Caesar, having been informed by Titurius, led all his cavalry and light armed<sup>2</sup> Numidians across the bridge.

<sup>1</sup> **Agite**, 2d pl. imper. of **agō**, *lead*.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lesson XXXIX., foot-note 3.

## LESSON LII.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES: PERSON AND THING.

## 407.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Racilius mē sententiam rogāvit** (Cic. *Q. Fr.* 2, 1, 3), *Racilius asked me my opinion.*
2. **Is enim est prīmus rogātus sententiam** (Liv. 37, 14), *for he was asked his opinion first.*
3. **Juventūtem mala facinora ēdocēbat** (Sall. *Cat.* 16, 1), *the youth he trained to (taught thoroughly) acts of lawlessness (evil deeds).*
4. **Cicerō per lēgātōs cūncta ēdoctus [est]** (Sall. *Cat.* 45, 1), *Cicero received detailed information of (was thoroughly taught) everything through the envoys.*

**408. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Exs. 1 and 3, that the verbs are in the *active* and are followed by *two accusatives*, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*. Note that, in Exs. 2 and 4, the same verbs are used in the *passive*. What does the Accusative of the Person become in the passive construction? the Accusative of the Thing? What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction?<sup>1</sup> Frame a rule for the constructions here illustrated.

**409. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 239, c, Rem. (first two lines); H. 374, 1; G. 333, Rem. 1.

## 410.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Quaerit ex perfugīs causam** (7, 44, 2), *he asks the deserters for an explanation (an explanation from the deserters).*
2. **Mulierēs pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt** (2, 13, 3), *the women besought the Romans for peace (asked peace from the Romans).*
3. **Ab Lentulō postulant jūsjūrandum** (Sall. *Cat.* 44, 1), *they demand of Lentulus an oath.*

**411. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Do the foregoing verbs of asking and demanding conform to the rule already established (407 and 408)? How is the *person* expressed with *quaerō*, *petō*, and *postulō*? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs.

**412. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 239, Rem. (second paragraph); H. 374, n. 4; G. 333, 2.

### 413. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar sententiā ā cōsule rogātus est. 2. Celeriter concilium dīmittit; Liscum retinet; quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. 3. Cicerōnem lēgāti cūncta ēdocuērunt. 4. Quod ab alterō postulant, in sē recūsant. 5. Hōs ego dē rē pūblicā sententiā rogō. 6. Ad haec quae interrogātus es, respondē.

II. 1. Cato, on being appealed to for<sup>2</sup> his opinion, delivered the following address. 2. We must ask Caesar for peace.<sup>3</sup> 3. Cicero, thoroughly-informed-of everything through the envoys, directed the praetors . . . 4. The Ubii earnestly pressed Caesar for aid. 5. You taught us this art. 6. Cicero asked Silanus his opinion first, because he was consul elect.

<sup>1</sup> The learner should be careful to distinguish the two accusatives here considered from those illustrated in 397. In the examples under 397 the two accusatives denote the *same* person or

thing; whereas, of the two accusatives illustrated in 407, one denotes the person, the other the thing.

<sup>2</sup> Translate: *having been asked*.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Exs. in 317.

### 414. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LI. and LII.

I. 1. Liscus summō magistrātui praerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus. 2. Licet vōbis in Ubiōrum finibus cōsidere, quōrum sunt lēgāti apud mē et ā mē auxilium petunt. 3. Caesar rogātus sententiā ā cōsulē, haec verba locūtus est.<sup>1</sup> 4. Trēs jam partēs cōpiarum Helvētii id flūmen trādūxerant. 5. Sed iuventūtem, quam, ut suprā diximus, inlēxerat, multis modis<sup>2</sup> mala facinora ēdocēbat.

II. 1. Having armed the soldiers whom he thought suitable for this enterprise, he came to the town. 2. There-is-a-panic<sup>3</sup> throughout the camp,<sup>4</sup> and they ask of one another<sup>5</sup> the cause of the confusion. 3. When<sup>6</sup> the Helvetians had been informed<sup>6</sup> of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 4. In this struggle,<sup>7</sup> the Germans whom Caesar had led across the Rhine ignominiously fled. 5. Dionysius taught Epaminondas music. 6. Under the tuition of Hannibal<sup>8</sup> he had been thoroughly-trained-in all the arts of war.

<sup>1</sup> *spoke*; perf. indic. of **loquor**, which has a pass. form with act. meaning.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 4.

<sup>3</sup> **trepidātur**; A. & G. 146, c; H. 301, 1; G. 199, Rem. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *in the entire camp*; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 8.

<sup>5</sup> cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 25.

<sup>6</sup> Use **ubī** with the perfect indicative.

<sup>7</sup> cf. Lesson XXVI., foot-note 5.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *under Hannibal* [as] *master*.

## LESSON LIII.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. — INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES: -ne, Nōne, Num.

**415.** Learn the declension of the interrogatives: **quis** (subst.), *who?* **quid** (subst.), *what?* and **quī** (adj.), *which, what?*: A. & G. 104; H. 188, I., II.; G. 104 and Rem.

**416.** Decline together: **quī miles**, *what soldier?* **quae urbs**, *what city?* **quod genus**, *what class?*

#### 417.

#### EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā salūtāvit?** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 16), *who in* (lit., out of) *this* (so) *great concourse greeted you?*
- 2. Quid tandem tē impedit? Mōsne mājōrum?** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 11, 28), *what, pray, hinders you? Is it the practice of the fathers?*

3. **Nōnne** [vōs] **prōjēcit ille**? (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 32, 8), *did not he cast you off?*

4. **Num negāre audēs**? **Quid tacēs**? (**Convincam, sī negās**) (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 4, 8), *do you dare to deny it? Why are you silent? I will prove it, if you deny it.*

**418. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in the foregoing interrogative sentences, that the question in each case is indicated not by a change in the order of the words, but by the introduction of some interrogative word. Note, further, that the interrogative word is a *pronoun* in Ex. 1 (see **Quis**), and in the first question of Ex. 2 (see **Quid**); whereas, in the second question of Ex. 2 (see **-ne** in **Mōsne**), in Ex. 3 (see **Nōnne**), and in the first question of Ex. 4 (see **Num**), it is an *interrogative particle*. Does the question containing the appended interrogative particle **-ne** (Ex. 2) suggest the answer *yes*, the answer *no*, or does it simply ask for information? What answer does **Nōnne** (Ex. 3) suggest? **Num** (Ex. 4)?

**419. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 210, *a, c*; H. 351, 1, Notes 1, 2, and 3, also 2; G. 456, 457, 458.

#### 420. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgīstī?* 2. *Ubi proximā nocte fuīstī, quōs convocāvīstī?* 3. *Quam rem pūblicam habēmus?* 4. *In quā urbe vīvimus?* 5. *Nōnne sibi salūtem fugā petīvit?* 6. *Num dubitās id imperante mē facere quod jam tuā sponte faciēbās?*<sup>1</sup> 7. *Numquamne familia nostra quiēta erit?* 8. *Quibus<sup>2</sup> gaudiīs<sup>3</sup> exsultābis!* 9. *Cui est Āpūlia attribūta?* 10. *Quō tandem<sup>4</sup> animō<sup>3</sup> hōc tibi ferendum est?* 11. *Potestne<sup>5</sup> tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut hūjus caelī spīritus esse<sup>5</sup> jūcundus?* 12. *Nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibilī scelere hōc scelus cumulāstī?*<sup>6</sup>

II. 1. *What plan<sup>7</sup> will they adopt?* 2. *What and how-great states are in arms?* 3. *In<sup>8</sup> what direction is the enemy marching?* 4. *Whom did you leave at Rome,<sup>9</sup> whom did you take<sup>10</sup> with you?* 5. *To whom has the Picene*

district been assigned? 6. [When] betrayed by<sup>11</sup> him, were you not preserved by Caesar's generosity? 7. "Do you see, soldiers?" says he.<sup>12</sup> 8. In-what-way did they defend their towns? 9. Can [there] be<sup>5</sup> peace or amity between<sup>13</sup> purposes so opposed? 10. Do you not seem<sup>14</sup> to see with your eyes these [things] (which you have heard?)

## 421.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Autrōniō nōnne sodālēs, nōnne conlēgae suī, nōn veterēs amīcī dēfuērunt?* 2. *Quanta est insulae māgnitūdō? quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolunt? quem ūsum belli habent? quī sunt idōneī portūs?* 3. *Quae in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sunt dicta?* 4. *Num mē fefellit, Catilina, diēs?*

II. 1. Shall I stand in arms<sup>15</sup> against Caesar, my general? 2. Did not all these who are foremost in the commonwealth desert Autronius? 3. Did, then, the shipwreck of so-many leaders do-away-with the art of steering? 4. From what classes of men are those [contemptible]<sup>16</sup> forces obtained? 5. From what regions do they come, and what [things] have they learned there?

<sup>1</sup> *tuā sponte faciēbās, you were going to do of your own free will.*

<sup>2</sup> The interrogatives are used in exclamations.

<sup>3</sup> cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXIII.

<sup>4</sup> *tandem, pray* (exclamation).

<sup>5</sup> *potest*, 3d sing. of *possum*; *esse*, pres. infin. of *sum*; *potest esse, can be.*

<sup>6</sup> *cumulāsti = cumulāvīstī*; cf. foot-note 2, Lesson XXXIV.

<sup>7</sup> "what plan" = *what* (subst.) of *plan* (part. gen.)?

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *into what part?*

<sup>9</sup> See Lesson XXVII., foot-note 11.

<sup>10</sup> "take" = *lead out.*

<sup>11</sup> *per.*

<sup>12</sup> *inquit* (def.), *says he*, is placed after one or more words of a direct quotation.

<sup>13</sup> *in* with ablative.

<sup>14</sup> Translate: *Do you not seem to yourselves?* For *seem*, use the passive of *videō*.

<sup>15</sup> "in arms" = *armed.*

<sup>16</sup> Which of the demonstratives must be used here?



## LESSON LIV.

## VERBS: SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**422.** Learn, without meanings, the inflection and synopsis of the Subjunctive Tenses of **sum**: A. & G. pp. 68, 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 50.

**423.** Inflect (like **sum**) in the same tenses: **absum**; also learn the synopsis.

**424.** Learn, without meanings, the inflection and synopsis of the Subjunctive Tenses, Active and Passive (including the Periphrastic Conjugations), of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 76, 77, 78; H. 87, 89, 115; G. pp. 54-57, 82.

**425.** Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing Tenses of both Voices: **cōfirmō**, **laudō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**426.** Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 58-61.

**427.** Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**): **habeō**, **compleō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**428.** Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 64-67.

**429.** Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**): **dūcō**, **mittō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**430.** Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **capiō**: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 106, 108; G. pp. 72, 73.

**431.** Inflect (like **capiō**): **rapiō**, **jaciō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

**432.** Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 99, 101; G. pp. 68-71.

**433.** Inflect (like **audiō**): **pūniō**, **vestiō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.



## LESSON LV.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

#### 434.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Quis habet Etrūriam?** *who has Etruria in charge?*
2. **Videō quis habeat Etrūriam** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 3, 6), *I see who has Etruria in charge.*
3. **Cui est Āpūlia attribūta?** *to whom has Apulia been assigned?*
4. **Videō cui sit Āpūlia attribūta** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 3, 6), *I see to whom Apulia has been assigned.*

**435. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the questions contained in Exs. 1 and 3 invite a *direct answer*, and that the verb is in the *indicative mood*. Note, further, that in Exs. 2 and 4 these questions have been made the *direct object* of **videō**, and that they *no longer invite an answer*. The questions of Exs. 1 and 3 are called *Direct* or *Independent*; those of Exs. 2 and 4 are called *Indirect* or *Dependent*. What *mood* in the Indirect Question has taken the place of the *indicative* in the Direct? Does any change of mood take place in English? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in Indirect Questions.

**436.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 334; H. 529, I.; G. 469.

**437.** What are the Primary or Principal Tenses of the verb? the Secondary or Historical Tenses? See A. & G. 285, 1, 2; H. 198, I., 1, 2, 3, 4, II., 1, 2, 3; G. 216.

**438.** EXAMPLES.

1. **Videō quis habeat Etrūriam** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 3, 6), *I see who has Etruria in charge.*
2. **Vidēbō quis habeat Etrūriam**, *I shall see who has Etruria in charge.*
3. **Vīderō quis habeat Etrūriam**, *I shall have seen who has Etruria in charge.*
4. **Videō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
5. **Vidēbō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I shall see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
6. **Vīderō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I shall have seen who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
7. **Vidēbam quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*
8. **Vīdī quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*
9. **Vīderam quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I had seen who had Etruria in charge.*
10. **Vidēbam quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*
11. **Vīdī quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*
12. **Vīderam quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I had seen who had had Etruria in charge.*

**439.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Is the verb of the *leading clause*, in Exs. 1-6, in a *primary* or a *secondary tense*? Answer the same question for the *subjunctive* of the *dependent clause* in the same examples. Is the verb of the *leading clause*, in Exs. 7-12,

in a *primary* or a *secondary tense*? Answer the same question for the *subjunctive* of the *dependent clause* in the same examples. Does the subjunctive of a dependent clause, then, adapt its tense to that of the verb in the leading clause? Frame a general rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

**440.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 286; H. 490, 491; G. 510 (first paragraph).

**441.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the action denoted by the *subjunctive*, in Exs. 1-3 and 7-9, is represented as *continued*, or *incomplete*, with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Which *tense* of the *subjunctive* is used to express this continuance or incompleteness when the leading verb is in a *primary tense* (see Exs. 1-3)? when the leading verb is in a *secondary tense* (see Exs. 7-9)?

Note that the action denoted by the *subjunctive*, in Exs. 4-6 and 10-12, is represented as *completed* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Which *tense* of the *subjunctive* is used to express this completeness when the leading verb is in a *primary tense* (see Exs. 4-6)? when the leading verb is in a *secondary tense* (see Exs. 10-12)?

Frame special rules for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

**442.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 286, Rem.; H. 492, 1, 2, 493, 1, 2; G. 510.



## LESSON LVI.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRINCIPLES.

#### 443. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, quis nostrūm<sup>1</sup> ignōrat? 2. Expōnam enim vōbīs, Quirītēs, ex quibus generibus hominum istae<sup>2</sup> cōpiae comparentur.

3. Quid eā nocte ēgisset, quid in proximam cōstituisset, ēdocuī. 4. Quid hostēs cōsiliī caperent, exspectābat. 5. Quae in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit. 6. Videō quanta tempestās invidiae nobīs impendat. 7. Intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim. 8. Docēbat etiam quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in Aeduōs facta essent. 9. Quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet.

II. 1. Who among us<sup>3</sup> does not know where you were last night? 2. He understood at what risk<sup>4</sup> he had done this. 3. Caesar knew for<sup>5</sup> what reason these things were said. 4. I will recount what cities, fortified by nature, the Roman people took in war.<sup>6</sup> 5. Caesar inquired of the captives wherefore Ariovistus did not come to an engagement.<sup>7</sup> 6. They compel merchants to declare from what districts they come, and what (pl.) they have learned there. 7. Nor was it altogether clear in what direction the enemy had marched. 8. He made known what he disapproved in him. 9. He set forth to the citizens what the senate had decreed the-day-before.

## 444.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit. 2. Neque quanta esset insulae māgnitudō, neque quae aut quantaē nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, reperiēbat. 3. Et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgunt et quid quisque eōrum audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerunt. 4. Memorāvīt quibus in locīs māximae hostium cōpiāe ā populō Rōmānō parvā manū fūsae essent. 5. Vidētē quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

II. 1. At the same time he-called-his-attention-to what had been said in his own presence<sup>8</sup> in the council of the Gauls about Dumnorix. 2. He had not-yet perceived for what reason they were withdrawing. 3. Who among<sup>3</sup> us does not know what (pl.) was done last night, what the night before? 4. The consul pointed out from what classes of men Catiline's forces had

been collected. 5. Ascertain what<sup>9</sup> is the nature of the mountain and what<sup>9</sup> the ascent by a circuitous path.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Why not *nostrī*?

<sup>2</sup> Contemptuous.

<sup>3</sup> "who among us" = *who of us*.

<sup>4</sup> Trans.: *with how-great risk*.

<sup>5</sup> *dē*.

<sup>6</sup> "in war" = *by fighting*.

<sup>7</sup> "to come to an engagement" = *to contend in battle* = *proeliō dēcertāre*.

<sup>8</sup> Trans.: *himself present* (abl. abs.).

<sup>9</sup> *quālis*, -e, adjective.

<sup>10</sup> Trans.: *in circuit*.

## LESSON LVII.

### INDEFINITES.

445. Learn the declension of the indefinites: *quis*, *any one*; *quī*, *any*; *quīdam*,<sup>1</sup> *a, a certain, some one*; *quīvis*, *any you please, any one you please*; *aliquis*, *some, some one*; *quisque*, *every, each, every one, each one*: A. & G. 104, 105, *c, d* (first four lines and paradigm), *e* (first three lines); H. 190, 1, 2, 1), 2), Notes 1 and 2; G. 105, 1, 2, 5, 6.

446. Decline together: *sī quis*, *if any one*; *sī quārēs*, *if anything*; *spēs aliqua*, *some hope*; *quīdam*<sup>1</sup> *homo*, *a man*; *quodcumque*<sup>2</sup> *bellum*, *whatever war*; *nōbilissimus quisque*, *all the nobility*;<sup>3</sup> *quaevis vīs*,<sup>4</sup> *any force whatever*.

#### 447.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Nāvēs tōtae (throughout) factae erant ex rōbore ad quamvis vim<sup>4</sup> et contumēliam perferendam.* 2. *Nam omnēs in quibus aliquid dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant.* 3. *Ubi cuique locus silvestris spem salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat.* 4. *Haec castra silvam quandam<sup>1</sup> contingēbant.* 5. *Errant sī quicquam<sup>5</sup> ab hīs praesidiū spērant.* 6. *Quaecumque<sup>2</sup> bella gerentur sine ūllō periculō tuō cōficiuntur.* 7. *Obsidēs nōbilissimī cūjusque<sup>3</sup> liberōs poscit et in eōs*

omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad voluntātem ējus facta est.

II. 1. They are conscious<sup>6</sup> of [having done] some wrong.  
 2. It-is-better for us to-submit-to<sup>7</sup> any fortune whatever.  
 3. He hears these [tidings] from some (*quīdam*) deserters belonging-to-the-town. 4. Nor do they have any<sup>8</sup> clothing except skins. 5. Unless some help<sup>9</sup> comes from<sup>10</sup> Caesar, the same thing will have to be done by<sup>11</sup> all the Gauls.  
 6. Caesar summons<sup>12</sup> the foremost men of each community.  
 7. Whoever shall be in authority over<sup>13</sup> the province, shall defend the Aedui. 8. And so they dare to attack<sup>14</sup> any number whatever.

## 448.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Alicūjus injūriāe sibī cōnsciū est. 2. Idōneum quendam hominem dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxiliū causā sēcum habēbat. 3. Neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam<sup>5</sup> habētur. 4. At Caesar, principibus cūjusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātis, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit.

II. 1. By [holding out] great rewards, he prevailed upon one (*quīdam*) of<sup>15</sup> the Gallic horsemen. 2. I shall send to you some one of<sup>15</sup> my [followers]. 3. And so they dare, however few [they may be], to attack<sup>14</sup> any number whatever of horsemen. 4. There is timber of every description except beech and fir. 5. If any crime has been committed, these-same-persons<sup>16</sup> determine the rewards and the penalties.

<sup>1</sup> *n* is used for *m* before *d*, e.g., *quendam* (acc. sing.) and *quōrundam* (gen. pl.).

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 105, a.

<sup>3</sup> Lit., *every noblest* [man]; decline in singular only; note that *quisque* follows the superlative.

<sup>4</sup> For declension of *vīs*, see A. & G. 61; H. 66; G. 76, D.

<sup>5</sup> *quisquam*, *anyone*, has *quicquam* or *quidquam*, *anything*, in the nominative and accusative neuter singular; it lacks the feminine singular and the entire plural. For use of *quisquam*, see A. & G. 202, c; H. 457; G. 304.

<sup>6</sup> Translate: *they are conscious to themselves*.

<sup>7</sup> *patī*, pres. infin. pass. with act. meaning.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *anything of clothing*; see foot-note 5.

<sup>9</sup> "some help" = *something of help*.

<sup>10</sup> Translate: *shall be in Caesar*.

<sup>11</sup> What construction must be used?

<sup>12</sup> *to summon* = *ad sē ēvocāre*.

<sup>13</sup> Use *obtinēō* with accusative.

<sup>14</sup> *to attack*, *adīre ad*.

<sup>15</sup> "of" = *from*.

<sup>16</sup> *Idem*, nom. pl. masc.

## LESSON LVIII.

## DATIVE OF POSSESSION.—DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō** (7, 39, 2), *these had a struggle with each other for precedence* (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).
2. **At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris erat** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).
3. **Est igitur hominī cum deō similitūdō** (Cic. *Leg.* 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the verb **sum** construed in the foregoing examples? By what English verb is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

452.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsīt** (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).
2. **Tulingī, quī novissimīs praesidiō erant** (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).
3. **Quibus corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit** (Sall. *Cat.* 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).
4. **Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus relīquit** (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).



**453. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** With how many *datives* are the verbs in the foregoing examples construed? What do these datives respectively denote? Note that the *transitive verbs* (see *mīsit*, Ex. 1, and *reliquit*, Ex. 4) take, besides the dative, an *accusative* also. Frame a rule embodying your observations.

**454. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 233; H. 390, I, II.; G. 350.

**455. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtīi est? 2. Multis corpus voluptātī, anima onerī est. 3. Lēgātum minōribus castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. 4. Familiāritās mihi cum eō est. 5. Q. Caepiōnī fortūna bellī crīminī, invidia populī calamitātī fuit. 6. In hāc īsulā est fōns aquae dulcis cui nōmen Arethūsa est. 7. Tertiam legiōnem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

II. 1. Traders have no access to them. 2. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection to me. 3. Two legions served as a guard to the baggage. 4. Our diminutive stature excites the contempt<sup>1</sup> of the Gauls. 5. No one could maintain his position<sup>2</sup> on the wall. 6. He sent the third line to the relief of our men [who were] struggling against odds.<sup>3</sup>

**456. Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. At nōbis est domi<sup>4</sup> inopia, foris aes aliēnum. 2. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā aut Caesarī aut omnino populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit.<sup>5</sup> 3. Militēs sibi ipsi ad pūgnam erant impedimentō. 4. Ea rēs magnō ūsui nostrīs fuit.

II. 1. These [matters] are my business.<sup>6</sup> 2. He reminded many, to whom this had been a source of booty, of the victory<sup>7</sup> of Sulla. 3. The associates of Catiline had all sorts of<sup>8</sup> miseries in abundance, but no<sup>9</sup> favorable condition or<sup>9</sup> prospect.

<sup>1</sup> Trans. : *is to the Gauls for contempt.*

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lesson XLIV., foot-note 13.

<sup>3</sup> Present participle of *labōrō*.

<sup>4</sup> Locative form, *at home*; for declension, see: A. & G. 70, *f*; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rein. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Account for mood and tense.

<sup>6</sup> Trans. : *are to me for a care.*

<sup>7</sup> Use the genitive.

<sup>8</sup> "all sorts of" = *all*.

<sup>9</sup> "no . . . or" = *neither any . . . nor*.

## LESSON LIX.

THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE AS  
OBJECT. — TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.

**457.** Learn, with meanings, the Infinitives of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

**458.** Learn, with meanings, the Infinitives, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 79; H. pp. 87, 89; G. pp. 55, 56. Form the Infinitives of **cōfirmō** and **laudō**.

**459.** Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 81; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 59, 61. Form the Infinitives of **habeō** and **compleō**.

**460.** Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 65, 67. Form the Infinitives of **dūcō** and **mittō**.

**461.** Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **capiō**: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 107, 108; G. pp. 72, 73. Form the Infinitives of **rapiō** and **jaciō**.

**462.** Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 87; H. pp. 99, 101; G. 69, 71. Form the Infinitives of **pūniō** and **vestiō**.

**463.**

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit** (2, 8, 3), *he knew that our men were not inferior* (lit., our men not to be inferior).

2. **Neque hominēs temperātūrōs<sup>1</sup> exīstimābat** (1, 7, 4), *nor did he think that the men would refrain* (lit., the men to be about to refrain).
3. **Divicō respondit ita Helvētiōs īnstitūtōs esse** (1, 14, 7), *Divico replied that the Helvetians had been so trained* (lit., the Helvetians to have been so trained).
4. **Caesar Dumnorigem dēsīgnārī sentiēbat** (1, 18, 1), *Caesar perceived that Dumnorix was meant* (lit., Dumnorix to be meant).

**464. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in each of the foregoing examples, the leading verb has, for its object, a clause whose *verb* is in the *infinitive* and whose *subject* is in the *accusative*. Note, further, that **intellēxit** is a verb of *knowing*, **exīstimābat** a verb of *thinking*, **respondit** a verb of *telling*, and **sentiēbat** a verb of *perceiving*. What *classes* of verbs, then, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative as Object? Frame a rule for this construction.

**465. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 272; II. 535, I. (read also 1, 2, 3); G. 527.

**466. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *present infinitives* **esse** (Ex. 1) and **dēsīgnārī** (Ex. 4) are translated by the *past tense*; and that they denote, therefore, the same time as the verbs (**intellēxit** and **sentiēbat**) on which they depend. In other words, these present infinitives represent the time of the action not as present absolutely, but as present relatively to the time denoted by the principal verb. How does the *future infinitive* **temperātūrōs** (Ex. 2) represent the time of the action? Answer the same question for the *perfect infinitive* **īnstitūtōs esse** (Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the use of the Infinitive Tenses.

**467. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 288; II. 537; G. 529, 530.

<sup>1</sup> *sc. esse*; the auxiliary of the fut. infin. act. is often omitted.

## LESSON LX.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING  
CONSTRUCTIONS.

## 468.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dixit pėjus vīctōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs vīctīs accidisse. 2. Lēgātum sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum<sup>1</sup> exīstimābat. 3. Reperiēbat initium fugae factum<sup>2</sup> ā Dumnorigē. 4. Ex perflugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audit Saburram Uticae appropīnquāre. 5. Divitiacus respondit scīre sē illa esse vēra. 6. Summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs<sup>1</sup> vidēbant.

II. 1. Caesar remembered<sup>3</sup> that the army had been beaten by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke. 2. They said that the Aedui had lost all their nobility, all their senate, [and] all their cavalry. 3. He said that our plans were reported to the enemy. 4. Caesar learned that by these means (things) Dumnorix was increasing his private resources. 5. Caesar answered that he would make peace with them. 6. He knew that it would be [attended] with great danger to the province.<sup>4</sup>

## 469.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō initium fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ējus equitibus; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum. 2. Sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna<sup>5</sup> conciliātūrum cōfirmat. 3. Negāvit aut cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, aut hanc cōnsuetūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

II. 1. They knew that he had done in one day what *they*<sup>6</sup> had accomplished with-the-utmost-difficulty in twenty days. 2. They supposed that they should either persuade the Allobroges or con-

strain them by force. 3. He said that he had fled from the state and come to the senate to solicit<sup>7</sup> aid.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Lesson LIX., foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> sc. esse.

<sup>3</sup> "remembered" = *held by memory*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the genitive.

<sup>5</sup> The plural is used here because sov-

ereign power in two states is thought of; use the singular in translation.

<sup>6</sup> Use the proper form of *ipse*.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 380, Ex. 2.

## LESSON LXI.

### COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE. — INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

#### 470.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Neque fugere dēstitērunt** (1, 53, 1), *nor did they cease to flee.*
2. **Helvētīī nostrōs lacessere coepērunt** (1, 15, 3), *the Helvetians began to attack our men.*
3. . . . **quod accidere solēbat** (6, 15, 1), *which was wont to happen.*

**471. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the infinitives **fugere** (Ex. 1), **lacessere** (Ex. 2), and **accidere** (Ex. 3), are *without subject accusative*. Note, further, that the verbs on which these infinitives depend (**dēstitērunt**, **coepērunt**, **solēbat**), are verbs of *incomplete meaning*. As the infinitive in these cases is added to *complete* the meaning of the verb on which it depends, it is called the *Complementary Infinitive*. After what *class* of verbs, then, is the Complementary Infinitive used? Frame a rule for this construction.

**472. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 271 with note; H. 533, I., 1, 2; G. 424.

#### 473.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Mea facta mihī dīcere licet** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 24), *I have the right to speak of my own deeds* (to speak is lawful for me).
2. [**Mihī**] **nōn placuit reticēre** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 26), *I am resolved not to remain silent* (to remain silent has not seemed good to me).

3. **Tē prōvidēre decet** (Sall. *Jug.* 10, 7), *it is proper for you to see to it* (for you to see to it is becoming).
4. **Pulchrum est bene facere rēi pūblicaē** (Sall. *Cat.* 3, 1), *to serve the commonwealth by deeds* (to do well for the commonwealth) *is honorable*.

**474. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the verbs **licet** (Ex. 1), **placuit** (Ex. 2), and **decet** (Ex. 3), are *impersonal*; and that they have as *subject* an *infinitive*, either *without* subject accusative (see **dīcere**, Ex. 1, and **reticēre**, Ex. 2), or *with* subject accusative (see **tē prōvidēre**, Ex. 3). Note also that the verb **est** (Ex. 4) has an *infinitive* (**facere**) as *subject*. With what *classes* of verbs, then, is the Infinitive used as Subject? Frame a rule for this construction.

**475. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 270, a; H. 538, 1; G. 423.

**476.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Liberī eōrum īn servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbent.<sup>1</sup>  
 2. Hīs rēbus coercērī mīlitēs solent. 3. Nōn oportet<sup>1</sup>  
 mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō jūre impedīrī. 4. Nōbīs est  
 in animō sine ūllō maleficiō per prōvinciam iter facere.  
 5. Nōbīs praestat quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī<sup>2</sup>  
 quam ā Gallīs per cruciātum interficī. 6. Cōstituērunt  
 jūmentōrum quam<sup>3</sup> māximum numerum coēmere. 7. In-  
 īquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre.

II. 1. It-was-generally-understood that Caesar would  
 first carry on war in Venetia. 2. Still, the majority were  
 in favor of defending<sup>4</sup> the camp. 3. They decided to  
 establish friendship with the neighboring states. 4. The  
 Helvetians began<sup>5</sup> to maintain their ground more boldly.<sup>6</sup>  
 5. Priority of time ought not in every instance to be re-  
 garded.<sup>7</sup> 6. We are at liberty<sup>8</sup> to do this. 7. Their  
 lands ought<sup>9</sup> not to be laid waste.

## 477.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ariovistus respondit amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi prae-sidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre. 2. Helvētīi audācius<sup>6</sup> sub-sistere et proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. 3. Sī antiquissimum quodque tempus<sup>10</sup> spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī jūstissimum est in Galliā imperium.

II. 1. It is the intention of<sup>11</sup> the Helvetians to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 2. It is reported to Caesar that the Helvetians intend to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 3. If the decision of the senate has a claim to be respected,<sup>12</sup> Gaul ought<sup>9</sup> to be free.

<sup>1</sup> *dēbeō* is personal; *oportet* is im-personal. Both express moral obligation, or a necessity founded on duty.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 7, Lesson LVII.

<sup>3</sup> cf. foot-note 5, Lesson XXXII.

<sup>4</sup> Trans.: *it seemed good (placuit) to the greater part to defend.*

<sup>5</sup> *coepērunt.*

<sup>6</sup> *audācius, more boldly.*

<sup>7</sup> Translate: *it is not right (oportet) [for] each earliest time to be re-garded.* For order, cf. Lesson LVII., foot-note 3.

<sup>8</sup> Trans.: *it is permitted to us.*

<sup>9</sup> Use *dēbeō.*

<sup>10</sup> See sent. 5 in the preceding exercise.

<sup>11</sup> Imitate 476, I., sent. 4.

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *if it is proper [for] the decision of the senate to be respected.*



## LESSON LXII.

DEPONENT VERBS. — ABLATIVE WITH *Ūtor*,  
*Fruor*, ETC.

## 478.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Tabulās pīctās mīrārī* (Sall. *Cat.* 11, 6), *to admire paintings.*
2. *Hostem verērī* (1, 39, 6), *to fear the enemy.*
3. *Hostēs sequitur* (1, 22, 5), *he pursues the enemy.*
4. *Oppidō potitur* (7, 11, 8), *he gets possession of the town.*
5. *Ad Vesontiōnem morātur* (1, 39, 1), *he tarries (i.e., detains himself) at Vesontio.*

479. OBSERVATION: Note, in the foregoing examples, that the verbs have a *passive form*, but an *active* (Exs. 1-4) or *reflexive*

(Ex. 5) *meaning*. Such verbs are called *Deponent* (from *dē-pōnō, lay aside*) because they have laid aside their passive meaning.

480. REFERENCES: A. & G. 135; H. 231; G. 211.

481. Learn the inflection and synopsis of one deponent verb under each conjugation: A. & G. 135, *a, c*; H. 231, 1, 3, 232 (see note); G. pp. 74–81.

## 482.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Māteriā ūtēbātur** (4, 31, 2), *he used the timber.*
2. **Vīta quā fruimur brevis est** (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 3), *the life which we enjoy is short.*
3. . . . **quōrum māgna multitūdō servōrum mūnere fungitur** (Nep. *Paus.* 3, 6), *large numbers of whom discharge the duty of slaves.*
4. **Numidae lacte et carne vescēbantur** (Sall. *Jug.* 89, 7), *the Numidians subsisted on milk and meat.*
5. **Caesar oppidō potitur** (7, 11, 8), *Caesar obtains possession of the town.*

483. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what *case*, in the foregoing examples, are the following verbs construed: **ūtēbātur** (Ex. 1), **fruimur** (Ex. 2), **fungitur** (Ex. 3), **vescēbantur** (Ex. 4), **potitur** (Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with these verbs:

484. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 249; H. 421, I.; G. 405.

## 485.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Linguā Gallicā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdine<sup>1</sup> ūtēbātur. 2. Equitēs officiō fūctī renūntiant paucōs in aedificiīs esse inventōs. 3. Lacte, cāseō, carne<sup>2</sup> vescor. 4. Tūtius esse arbitrābantur, commēatū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potūrī. 5. Quae agat,<sup>3</sup> quibuscum loquātur,<sup>3</sup> sciō. 6. Is mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur,



quī praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit.  
 7. Partiendum<sup>4</sup> sibi exercitum putāvit. 8. Vereingetorix  
 ex arce suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur.

II. 1. Our men obtained possession of the baggage and  
 camp. 2. Wondering<sup>5</sup> what was<sup>3</sup> the cause of this be-  
 havior, he inquired of them personally. 3. They share<sup>6</sup>  
 with their leaders all advantages in life. 4. The [territories  
 of the] Belgians begin at the extreme confines of Gaul [and]  
 extend towards the north-east.<sup>7</sup> 5. It is very easy to  
 obtain<sup>8</sup> control of all Gaul. 6. Adopting<sup>5</sup> the same  
 policy, they burn their towns and villages, and set out to-  
 gether with the Helvetians. 7. And I do not know whether<sup>9</sup>  
 this is<sup>3</sup> to be wondered at.

## 486.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Est genus quoddam hominum, quod Hīlōtae vocātur,  
 quōrun magna multitudō agrōs Lacedaemoniōrum colit servōrum-  
 que mūnere fungitur. 2. Rōmānōs pulsōs<sup>10</sup> superātōsque,<sup>11</sup> castrīs  
 impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs<sup>10</sup> renūntiāvērunt. 3. In  
 suis finibus decertābunt et domesticis cōpiis rēi frūmentariae  
 ūtentur.

I. 1. One of those who stood next<sup>11</sup> stepped over<sup>12</sup> this [man]  
 as he lay prostrate<sup>13</sup> and discharged<sup>12</sup> the same office. 2. The  
 soldiers will subsist chiefly on milk, cheese, and game. 5. How  
 long, pray, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?

<sup>1</sup> cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

<sup>2</sup> *carō*, *carnis*, *f.*, *flesh*, *meat*.

<sup>3</sup> Account for mood and tense.

<sup>4</sup> A. & G. 135, *d*; H. 231, 2; *sc. esse*.

<sup>5</sup> Use perf. part.

<sup>6</sup> Trans.: *enjoy together with their leaders*.

<sup>7</sup> Trans.: *north and rising sun*.

<sup>8</sup> Use *potior*.

<sup>9</sup> Express *whether* by appending *-ne* to the gerundive.

<sup>10</sup> *sc. esse*.

<sup>11</sup> Trans.: *one from the nearest*.

<sup>12</sup> "stepped over and discharged" = *having stepped over, discharged*.

<sup>13</sup> Trans.: *this [man] lying*.

## LESSON LXIII.

## INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, DUBITATIVE.

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 487.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Persequāmur eōrum mortem** (7, 38, 8), *let us avenge their death.*
2. **Discēdant in Ītaliā omnēs ab armīs** (Caes. B. C. 1, 9, 5), *let all throughout Italy lay down their arms (withdraw from arms).*
3. **Quaesierit sānē** (Cic. Mil. 17, 46), *suppose, if you will (sānē), that he did make inquiry.*

488. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *subjunctive* **persequāmur** (Ex. 1) expresses *exhortation*, that **discēdant** (Ex. 2) expresses *command*, and that **quaesierit** (Ex. 3) expresses *concession*. Are the clauses containing these subjunctives *dependent* or *independent*? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

489. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 266; H. 483, 484, II., III., IV.; G. 256, 1, 3, 257.

## OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 490.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Stet haec urbs praeclāra** (Cic. Mil. 34, 93), *may this illustrious city abide!*
2. **Utinam P. Clōdius vīveret** (Cic. Mil. 38, 103), *would that Publius Clodius were alive!*
3. **Utinam ille omnēs sēcum cōpiās suās ēdūxisset** (Cic. Cat. 2, 2, 4), *would that he had taken with him all his forces!*

491. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *subjunctives* in the foregoing examples express *wish*. Are the clauses containing them *dependent* or *independent*? In what *tense* is the subjunctive in Ex. 1? Does the wish in this example relate to *present*, *past*, or *future time*? Is the wish conceived of as *possible*

or impossible of fulfillment? In what *tense* is the subjunctive in Ex. 2? To what *time* does it relate? Does it represent the wish as fulfilled or unfulfilled? Answer the last three questions for the subjunctive in Ex. 3. What *particle* accompanies the subjunctive in Exs. 2 and 3? Frame rules for Mood and Tense in Expressions of Wishing.

492. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 267, *b*; II. 484, I., 483, 1, 2; G. 253, 254.

## DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 493. EXAMPLES.

1. **Ēloquar an sileam** (Verg. *Aen.* 3, 39), *shall I speak out, or hold my peace?*
2. **Hunc ego nōn admīrer** (Cic. *Arch.* 8, 18), *can I help admiring (should I not admire) this man?*
3. **Nam quid dē Cŷrō nūntiāret** (Cic. *Mil.* 18, 48), *pray, what need had he to bring news of Cyrus?*

494. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *subjunctives* in Ex. 1 are in a *question* expressing *doubt*, (2) that the *subjunctive* in Ex. 2 is in a *question* expressing *indignation*, (3) that the *subjunctive* in Ex. 3 is in a *question* expressing *impossibility*. Are the questions containing these subjunctives *dependent* or *independent*? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

495. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 268; II. 484, V., 486, II.; G. 258, 251.

## LESSON LXIV.

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, AND DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVES.

## 496. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Discēdat uterque ab armīs exercitūsque dīmittat.
2. Valeant, valeant, cīvēs meī; sint incolumēs, sint flōrentēs, sint beātī; stet haec urbs praeclāra mihiq̄ue patria

cārissima! 3. Nam quid ea memorem, quae, nisi eīs quī vīdēre, nēminī crēdibilia sunt? 4. Tranquillā rē publicā meī cīvēs perfruantur! 5. Proficiscantur, nē<sup>1</sup> patiantur dēsideriō<sup>2</sup> suī Catilinam miserum tībēscere. 6. Hunc ego nōn diligam, nōn admīrer? nōn omūi ratiōne dēfendendum putem? 7. Utinam exstārent illa carmina! 8. Mihī salvā rē publicā vōbīscum perfrūī liceat! 9. Hōc utinam ā prīncipiō tībī placuisset!

II. 1. Let Marius have eternal glory;<sup>3</sup> let Pompey be preferred to all. 2. Would that my fellow citizens had been uninjured, had been prosperous, had been happy! 3. But who could suppose that the Teuceri would come<sup>4</sup> to the shores of Hesperia? 4. May I but (*modo*) accomplish my endeavors! 5. Why should I speak of Gabinius? 6. If they remain in the city, let them look for what<sup>5</sup> they deserve. 7. If they cannot<sup>6</sup> stand, let them fall. 8. Who could hesitate to release himself from fear,<sup>7</sup> and the commonwealth from peril?<sup>7</sup>

## 497.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Utinam P. Clōdius nōn modo vīveret, sed etiam praetor, cōsul, dictātor esset potius<sup>8</sup> quam hōc spectāculum vidērem! 2. Sit Scīpiō clārus ille, cūjus virtūte Hannibal ex Ītaliā dēcēdere coāctus est; habeātur vir ēgregius Paullus ille; cūjus currum rēx potentissimus et nōbilissimus Persēs honestāvit. 3. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentīā dēspērētis?

II. 1. Therefore let the reprobates go; let them separate themselves from the good. 2. Would that this which I am saying were not<sup>1</sup> true!<sup>9</sup> 3. Why should I allow soldiers to be wounded who have done their best to serve me?<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *nō* is the regular negative with the hortatory and optative subjunctives.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *be of eternal glory.*

<sup>4</sup> In what mood? See 463, Ex. 2.

<sup>5</sup> "what" = *those* [things] *which.*

<sup>6</sup> *nōn possunt.*

<sup>7</sup> Ablative without preposition.

<sup>8</sup> *rather.*

<sup>9</sup> Translate: *would that I were not saying this truly.*

<sup>10</sup> "who have . . . me" = *having deserved best (optimē) from (dē) me.*

LESSON LXV.

ADVERBS: FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

498.

EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.

ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1. <b>jūstus</b> (st. <b>jūsto</b> -);	<b>jūstē</b> , <i>justly</i> .
2. <b>liber</b> (st. <b>libero</b> -);	<b>liberē</b> , <i>freely</i> .
3. <b>pulcher</b> (st. <b>pulchro</b> -);	<b>pulchrē</b> , <i>beautifully</i> .
4. <b>acer</b> (st. <b>acri</b> -);	<b>acriter</b> , <i>sharply</i> .
5. <b>fortis</b> (st. <b>forti</b> -);	<b>fortiter</b> , <i>bravely</i> .
6. <b>audāx</b> (st. <b>audāci</b> -);	<b>audācter</b> ( <b>audāciter</b> ), <i>boldly</i> .
7. <b>sapiēns</b> (st. <b>sapient</b> -);	<b>sapienter</b> , <i>wisely</i> .

COMPARATIVE.

8. <b>jūstior</b> , <i>juster</i> ;	<b>jūstius</b> , <i>more justly</i> .
9. <b>liberior</b> , <i>freer</i> ;	<b>liberius</b> , <i>more freely</i> .
10. <b>pulchrior</b> , <i>more beautiful</i> ;	<b>pulchrius</b> , <i>more beautifully</i> .
11. <b>acrior</b> , <i>sharper</i> ;	<b>acrius</b> , <i>more sharply</i> .
12. <b>fortior</b> , <i>braver</i> ;	<b>fortius</b> , <i>more bravely</i> .
13. <b>audācior</b> , <i>bolder</i> ;	<b>audācius</b> , <i>more boldly</i> .
14. <b>sapientior</b> , <i>wiser</i> ;	<b>sapientius</b> , <i>more wisely</i> .

SUPERLATIVE.

15. <b>jūstissimus</b> (st. <b>jūstissimo</b> -);	<b>jūstissimē</b> , <i>most justly</i> .
16. <b>liberrimus</b> (st. <b>liberrimo</b> -);	<b>liberrimē</b> , <i>most freely</i> .
17. <b>pulcherrimus</b> (st. <b>pulcher-</b> <b>rimo</b> -);	<b>pulcherrimē</b> , <i>most beautifully</i> .
18. <b>acerrimus</b> (st. <b>acerrimo</b> -);	<b>acerrimē</b> , <i>most sharply</i> .
19. <b>fortissimus</b> (st. <b>fortissimo</b> -);	<b>fortissimē</b> , <i>most bravely</i> .
20. <b>audācissimus</b> (st. <b>audācis-</b> <b>simo</b> -);	<b>audācissimē</b> , <i>most boldly</i> .
21. <b>sapientissimus</b> (st. <b>sapient-</b> <b>tissimo</b> -);	<b>sapientissimē</b> , <i>most wisely</i> .

**499. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *adverbs* formed from *adjectives* of the *second* and *first declensions* (Exs. 1-3, positive, and Exs. 15-21, superlative) end in *-ē*; and that these adverbs may be formed from the *stem* of the *adjective* by changing the *final stem vowel* to *-ē*.<sup>1</sup>

Note, further, that adverbs formed from the *positive* of *adjectives* of the *third declension* (see Exs. 4-7) may be obtained by adding the suffix *-ter* to the *stem* of the *adjective*.<sup>2</sup>

Note, finally, that the *comparative* of an adverb formed from an adjective (see Exs. 8-14) is the *neuter singular accusative* of the *comparative* of the *adjective* used adverbially.

Frame rules for forming the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative of Adverbs from the corresponding Adjectives.

**500. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 148, *a, b, d*; H. 304, II., 2, IV., 306; G. 90, 1, 2, 4.

**501.** Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them: *indignus, unworthy*; *studiōsus, eager*; *miser, wretched*; *celer, quick, swift*; *gravis, heavy*; *brevis, brief*; *vehemēns, violent*; *prūdēns, sagacious*; *fēlix, happy*.

**502.** Account for the form of the following adverbs: *facile, easily*; *multum, much*; *plūrimum, very much, exceedingly*; *postrēmum, finally*; *crēbrō, frequently*; *paulō, by a little, a little*; *ūnā, in company, together*; *quā, where*: A. & G. 148, *d, e*; H. 304, I., II.; G. 90, 3, 4.

**503.** Compare: *diū, long* (in time); *saepe, often*; *bene, well*; *male, ill*: A. & G. 92; H. 306, 2, 4; G. 91.

#### 504. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet; quaerit ex solō ea quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit liberius atque audācius. 2. Persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indīguissimē

interiērunt.<sup>3</sup> 3. Belgae ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe com-  
meant. 4. Omnēs ācerimē fortissimēque pūgnābant.  
5. Omnia quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs per-  
turbant.

II. 1. They were able<sup>4</sup> to use their swords more easily.  
2. Galba was-not-disposed<sup>5</sup> to try fortune further.<sup>6</sup> 3. Hav-  
ing assembled the leaders of the Aedui, he took them severely  
to task. 4. They knew that he had done in a single day  
what<sup>7</sup> they had accomplished with the utmost difficulty in  
twenty days. 5. The-battle-was-carried-on<sup>8</sup> with the great-  
est energy. 6. The enemy broke through the midst [of  
them] with the greatest boldness. 7. The army must be  
more widely distributed.

## 505.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar amicissimē dē vōbis et illi gravissimē jūdicāvē-  
runt. 2. Lēgātī dixērunt Aeduōs omnī tempore dē populō Rō-  
mānō bene meritōs esse. 3. Equitēs cupidius novissimum agmen  
īsecūtī sunt. 4. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam  
lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs.

II. 1. Darts could<sup>4</sup> not be thrown very easily<sup>9</sup> from the lower  
position, and [those] cast by the Gauls fell with greater force.<sup>10</sup>  
2. Dumnorix was especially popular with<sup>11</sup> the common people.

<sup>1</sup> Adverbs in *-ē* were originally abla-  
tive forms.

<sup>2</sup> But stems in *-nt-* drop *-t-* before  
*-ter*.

<sup>3</sup> Perf. indic. 3d pl. of *intereō*, *perish*.

<sup>4</sup> *poterant*.

<sup>5</sup> *nōlēbat*.

<sup>6</sup> Comparative of *saepe*.

<sup>7</sup> "what" = *that which*.

<sup>8</sup> *pūgnābātur*.

<sup>9</sup> *satis commodē*.

<sup>10</sup> Translate: *more heavily*.

<sup>11</sup> "popular with" = *acceptable to*.

## LESSON LXVI.

## ABLATIVE: SEPARATION AND WANT.

## 506.

## EXAMPLES.

1. [Marius] bis Ītaliā obsidiōne lĭberāvit (Cic. Cat. 4, 10, 21),  
*Marius twice relieved Italy from siege.*
2. Vōs Sulpiciū vītā prĭvāstis (Cic. Phil. 9, 4, 8), [it is] you  
[who] have deprived Sulpicius of life.
3. Eō errōre careō (Cic. Lael. 3, 10), *I am free from that error.*
4. Sed nōn egeō medicĭnā (Cic. Lael. 3, 10), *but I need no medicine.*
5. Iter ab Arare Helvētiū āverterant (1, 16, 3), *the Helvetians  
had turned their line of march away from the Arar.*
6. Proeliō abstinēbat (1, 22, 3), *he held off from battle.*
7. Hannibal ex Ītaliā dēcēdere coāctus est (Cic. Cat. 4, 10, 21),  
*Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.*
8. Helvētiū hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt (1, 8, 4), *the Helvetians de-  
sisted from this attempt.*
9. Ēgredere ex urbe (Cic. Cat. 1, 8, 20), *depart from the city.*
10. Hostēs proeliō excēdēbant (3, 4, 3), *the enemy withdrew from  
the fight.*

507. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that each of the foregoing illustrations contains a verb expressing *separation*, and that this verb is construed with the *ablative*.

Is the ablative in Exs. 1-4, used *with* or *without* a *preposition*? With what classes of verbs, then, does the Ablative of Separation omit the preposition?

With what prepositions are the verbs of separation in Exs. 5-10 compounded? Note that the *ablatives* construed with these compound verbs in Exs. 5, 7, and 9 *have a preposition*; whereas the *ablatives* in Exs. 6, 8, and 10 *have no preposition*. What explanation of this difference can you suggest?

Frame rules for the use or the omission of the Preposition with the Ablative of Separation.

508. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, *a, b*; H. 414, I., 413, n. 3; G. 388 (both paragraphs).



509.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Gubernātōre opus est** (Liv. 24, 8), *there is need of a pilot.*
2. **Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est** (Cic. *Fam.* 9, 23, 3), *we have need (there is to us need) of your authority.*
3. **Factō opus est** (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 6), *there is need of action.*
4. **Mātūrātō opus est** (Liv. 8, 13, 17), *there is need of hastening.*

510. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: By what case is the person or thing needed expressed with **opus** in the foregoing examples (see **gubernātōre**, **auctōritāte**, **factō**, and **mātūrātō**)? By what case is the person needing expressed (see **nōbīs** in Ex. 2)? Note that the thing needed is expressed in Exs. 3 and 4 by the perfect passive participle (see **factō** and **mātūrātō**). What constructions, then, are used with **opus**?

511. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, e; H. 414, IV., n. 2, n. 3; G. 390.

512.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 2. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū. 3. Huic trādita urbs est, nūda praesidiō.<sup>1</sup> 4. Magistrātibūs igitur opus est, sine quōrum prūdentiā esse cīvitās nōn potest. 5. Factō, nōn cōsultō, in tālī pericūlō opus est. 6. Helvētiī, eā spē dējectī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 7. Complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs earent.<sup>2</sup> 8. Una centuria facta est immūnis mīlitiā.<sup>1</sup> 9. Hunc ā tuīs ārīs arcēbis.

II. 1. The charioteers, meanwhile, gradually withdrew from the battle. 2. We shall live without anxiety and fear, and shall free mind and body from trouble. 3. The orator has need of a mind [that is] free<sup>1</sup> from envy and all vices. 4. They threatened Caesar with the sword [as he was] coming out from the senate. 5. It is a great undertaking and requires no (nōn) slight practice. 6. There is no need of deliberation.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 243, d; H. 414, III.; G. 288 (end).

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lesson XXI., foot-note 5.

<sup>3</sup> cf. sent. 5, preceding exercise.

## LESSON LXVII.

## ABLATIVES: SOURCE AND CAUSE.

## ABLATIVE OF SOURCE.

513.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Pisō amplissimō genere nātus** (4, 12, 4), *Piso, born of a very illustrious family.*
2. **Eā familiā ortum** (Sall. *Cat.* 31, 7), *descended from such a family.*
3. **Is Ascanius, quācumque mātē genitus** (Liv. 1, 3, 3), *this Ascanius, of whatever mother born . . .*

514. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *perfect participles* in the foregoing illustrations express *birth* or *origin*. How is *source* denoted in connection with these participles? Frame a rule for this construction.

515. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 244, *a*; H. 415, II.; G. 395.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

516.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar beneficiis māgnus habēbātur** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 2), *Caesar was considered great because of his benefactions.*
2. **Ipsā vacuitāte omnis molestiae gaudēmus** (Cic. *Fin.* 1, 11, 37), *we take pleasure in the mere absence of all annoyance.*

517. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: What do the *ablatives* in the foregoing examples express? Frame a rule for these and similar Ablatives.

518. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 245; II. 416; G. 407.

519.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Mithridātē<sup>1</sup> rēgiō genere ortum, rēgem cōstituit.
2. Helvētīi suā victōriā insolenter glōriābantur. 3. Alter

est Cetus, antiquissimā familiā nātus atque ipse homo summae potentiae. 4. Eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem in rē militārī sūmēbant. 5. Reperiēbat plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab<sup>2</sup> Germānis. 6. Gubernātōris ars ūtilitāte laudātur.

II. 1. Catiline made a boast of his vices. 2. Lycomedes, descended from a royal race, laid claim to this priestly dignity. 3. He had said this at the bidding of his master. 4. Lucius Catiline, [who was] born of a noble family, was of great vigor both of mind and of body. 5. Cato was commended for his steadfastness. 6. This happened because of the inexperience of the enemy, and the valor of the soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Greek accusative of **Mithridātēs**, *-is, m., Mithridates*.

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 244, a, Rem.; II. 415, II., note; G. 395 (end).

## 520. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LXVI. and LXVII.

I. 1. Pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur. 2. Ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 3. Quid<sup>1</sup> mihi aut vitā aut civitāte opus est,<sup>1</sup> quam beneficiō Caesaris habere vidēbor? 4. Omnium rērum nātūrā cōgnitā levāmur superstitiōne, liberāmur mortis metū. 5. Tantummodo inceptō opus est.

II. 1. Among these was Piso, an Aquitanian, born of a very illustrious family. 2. Why should anybody suppose<sup>2</sup> that this [man] will withdraw from his allegiance? 3. When a violent tempest arises,<sup>3</sup> then there is need of a man and a pilot. 4. Catiline withdrew from the city because of his fear of the consul. 5. Labienus, having seized the mountain, was waiting for our men and holding off from battle.

<sup>1</sup> **Quid** (adv. acc.) **mihi opus est**, *what need have I?*

<sup>2</sup> What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Use the perfect tense.

## LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERB: **Possum.** — IMPERSONAL USE OF  
INTRANSITIVE VERBS IN THE PASSIVE.

**521.** Learn the composition, inflection, and synopsis of **possum**, *be able, can*: A. & G. 120, *b*; H. 290, II., notes 1, 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 115.

**522.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Ācriter pūgnātum est** (1, 50, 2), *the fight was vigorously maintained.*
2. **Dictō pārētur** (Liv. 9, 32, 4), *the order is obeyed* (obedience is rendered to the order).
3. **Huic rēi subventum est ā nōbīs** (Cic. *Att.* 1, 17, 9), *I supported this proposition* (to this thing support was given by us).
4. **Hūc concurritur** (7, 84, 2), *they make for this point in a body* (a general rush is made).

**523.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in the foregoing illustrations are *intransitive*, i.e., they do not take a direct object in the active voice. How are they used in the *passive*? What, then, is the *gender* of the *participle* in the compound tenses of the passive (see Exs. 1 and 3; cf. also **317**, Exs. 3 and 4)? In the case of intransitive verbs that govern the *dative* (e.g., **pāreō**, *obey*, **subveniō**, *support*), is this dative *changed* in the passive, or is it *retained* (see Exs. 2 and 3)? Frame a rule for the use of Intransitive Verbs in the Passive.

**524.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 146, *c*; H. 301, 1; G. 199, Rem. 1, 208.

**525.****EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Tōtīus Galliae<sup>1</sup> plūrimum Helvétīi possunt. 2. Sed Caesar, ubī ad eum ventum est, haec verba locūtus est.
3. Quam mākīmīs potest itineribus in Galliam ūlteriōrem

contendit. 4. Labiēnus, ut erat c̄i praeceptum ā Caesare, proeliō abstinēbat. 5. Hīs persuādēre nōn poterant. 6. Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat. 7. Neque hostibus nocētur. 8. Mihī profectō poterit ignōscī. 9. Nōbīs parum erēdēbātur. 10. Intellegēs quid invictī Germānī virtūte possint.<sup>2</sup> 11. Quid hostis virtūte posset,<sup>2</sup> periclitābātur.

II. 1. He demands of the whole province the largest possible<sup>3</sup> number of soldiers. 2. He says that he cannot<sup>4</sup> grant any one a passage through the province. 3. *He* had very little influence<sup>5</sup> owing to his youth. 4. I am believed. 5. Why am I envied? 6. I am convinced that he will not reject my friendship. 7. The ships of the enemy could not be injured.<sup>6</sup> 8. He shows what the discipline and resources of the Roman people have been able [to effect]. 9. Those with whom they had come up<sup>7</sup> made a stand.

526.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 2. Caesar intellēxit neque hostiū fugam reprimi neque iīs nocērī posse. 3. Sēsē nē vultum<sup>8</sup> quidem Germānōrum dicēbant ferre<sup>9</sup> potuisse. 4. Id oppidum ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, propter mūrī altitūdinem expūgnāre nōn potuit.

II. 1. He inquired of them what communities were in arms, and what was their strength<sup>10</sup> in war. 2. For they had learned that the enemy's ships could not be damaged<sup>11</sup> by the beak. 3. A rush was made to-that-point<sup>12</sup> from the nearest redoubts, and the fight was maintained desperately by the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> A. & G. 216, a, 2; II. 397, 3; G. 371.

<sup>2</sup> Account for mood and tense.

<sup>3</sup> cf. sent. 3 of the preceding exercise.

<sup>4</sup> "He says that he cannot" = *he denies that he can*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *was able very little*.

<sup>6</sup> cf. sent. 6, preceding exercise.

<sup>7</sup> Translate: *Those to whom it had been come*.

<sup>8</sup> Note that with *nē . . . quidem* the emphatic word is placed between *nē* and *quidem*.

<sup>9</sup> Present infinitive of *ferō*.

<sup>10</sup> "what was their strength" = *what they could*.

<sup>11</sup> cf. preceding exercise, sent. 2.

<sup>12</sup> *eō*.

## LESSON LXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS: **Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.** — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

**527.** Learn the inflection and synopsis of **volō**, *wish, be willing*; **nōlō**, *be unwilling*; **mālō**, *wish rather*: A. & G. 138, 1, 2, 3; H. 293 with note 2; G. 189.

**528.**

## EXAMPLES.

- Nōnnūllī, ut suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant** (1, 39, 3), *some stayed to escape (that they might escape) suspicion.*
- Nē exīre posset, valvās obstrūxērunt** (Nep. Paus. 5, 2), *they barricaded the doors that he might not get out.*
- Virgultīs conlētīs, quibus fossās compleant, pergunt** (3, 18, 8), *having gathered brushwood with which to fill (that with it they may fill) the trenches, they proceed.*
- Praesidia dispōnit, quō facilius [Helvētiōs] prohibēre possit** (1, 8, 2), *he establishes garrisons at intervals, that (thereby) he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.*

**529.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in the foregoing examples express *purpose*. Clauses expressing purpose are called *Final Clauses*. What *mood* is used in final clauses? Is the final clause in Ex. 1 *affirmative* or *negative*? What *particle* introduces it? Answer the same questions for the final clause in Ex. 2. Note that the final clause in Ex. 3 is introduced by the *relative pronoun quibus*, and that **quibus** is equivalent in meaning to **ut eīs**. Note that the final clause in Ex. 4 contains a *comparative (facilius)*; by what word is this final clause introduced? Frame rules (1) for the Mood and (2) for the Introductory Word to be used in Final Clauses.

**530.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 317, *b*; H. 497, I., II., 1 (first sentence), 2 (first sentence); G. 543, 1 (first sentence), 2, 545, 1, 2, 3.

NOTE: The sequence of tenses in dependent subjunctive clauses has already been illustrated and explained (see Lesson LV.).

## 531.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī pāce ūtī vultis, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre.  
 2. Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs, ut spem fugae tolleret. 3. Nōlī exīstimāre hunc esse exercitum. 4. Nē commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā eum locum castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit. 5. Praestō erat ille, quī fugientīs exciperet. 6. Ab hīs quaerēbat cūr bellum quam pācem māluissent. 7. Quō barbarōs facilius repellerent, clāssēs aedificārant<sup>1</sup> exercitūsque comparāruunt.<sup>1</sup>

II. 1. What do you mean?<sup>2</sup> 2. Cato chooses rather to submit than to fight. 3. On (in) making inquiry, he learned for (dē) what reasons Ariovistus was unwilling to treat with Caesar. 4. They sent<sup>3</sup> envoys to Dumnorix, that at his intercession<sup>4</sup> they might obtain<sup>5</sup> their request from the Sequani. 5. He was at hand to effect a junction<sup>6</sup> with the leaders in-the-city. 6. He endeavored to keep the forces of the enemy apart, that it might not be necessary to fight<sup>7</sup> with so great a multitude at once. 7. In order to retard<sup>5</sup> Caesar's attack more effectually, he barricaded<sup>3</sup> the gates.

## 532.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī<sup>8</sup> videant<sup>5</sup> quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.<sup>5</sup> 2. Nōluit eum locum vacāre. 3. Quae vellet ostendit. 4. Omnia permiscērī māvultis quam exercitūs dimittere. 5. Omnīs ālārīōs in cōspectū hostium cōstituit, ut ad speciem ūtērētur. 6. Quāle praemium Miltiadi sit tribūtum docēbō, quō facilius intellegī possit quae omnium civitātum sit nātūra. 7. Ille etiam grave tum vulnus accēpit, nē quid de summā rē publicā dēminuerētur.

II. 1. Do not force these [men] to do without your aid.<sup>9</sup> 2. He wishes to discuss<sup>10</sup> with you matters of the highest interest to [you] both.<sup>11</sup> 3. He ordered them to open the maniples, that they might more easily use their swords. 4. Caesar places in command of the legion a lieutenant, that the individual soldiers<sup>12</sup>

may have him as a witness of their valor. 5. He explained why Cato had chosen rather to submit than to fight. 6. They sent<sup>3</sup> envoys to him to say<sup>5</sup> that it was their intention<sup>13</sup> to march without [committing any] depredation. 7. He barricaded<sup>8</sup> the gates that the soldiers might not break<sup>5</sup> into the town.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

<sup>2</sup> "What do you mean?" = *what do you wish for yourself?*

<sup>3</sup> Use the historical present; see: A. & G. 276, *d*; H. 467, III.; G. 220.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *he* [being] *intercessor*.

<sup>5</sup> For tense, see: A. & G. 287, *e*; H. 495, II.; G. 511, Rem. 1.

<sup>6</sup> "to effect a junction" = *who should unite himself*.

<sup>7</sup> Use **cōnfligō** impersonally in the passive periphrastic conjugation.

<sup>8</sup> cf. Lesson L., foot-note 3.

<sup>9</sup> Translate: *Be unwilling* (cf. 531, I., sent. 3) *to rob these of your aid*.

<sup>10</sup> **agere dē**.

<sup>11</sup> "matters of the highest interest to you both" = *the greatest things of each*.

<sup>12</sup> "the individual soldiers" = *each one*.

<sup>13</sup> "that it was their intention" = *that it was to themselves in mind*.



## LESSON LXX.

### IRREGULAR VERBS: **Ferō, Eō.** — COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES.

533. Learn the inflection and synopsis of **ferō**, *bear*, and **eō**, *go*: A. & G. 139, 141; H. 292, 2, 295; G. 186, 185.

#### 534.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Persuādent Rauricīs utī ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur** (1, 5, 4), *they persuade the Raurici to go with them*.
2. **Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem addūceret** (1, 42, 4), *Ariovistus demanded that he should not bring a single foot-soldier*.
3. **Veritus ut impetum sustinēre posset, litterās Caesarī remittit** (5, 47, 4), *fearing that he might not be able to sustain the attack, he sent back a dispatch to Caesar*.
4. **Nē Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur** (1, 19, 2), *he feared that he might wound the feelings of Divitiacus*.



**535. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the final clauses in the foregoing examples are the *direct objects* of the verbs on which they depend, and that they therefore express purpose somewhat less obviously than those of the preceding lesson. As they complete the meaning of the verbs whose objects they are, they are called *Complementary Final Clauses*. Note, further, that the verbs on which they depend (see **persuādēt**, 1, **postulāvit**, 2, **veritus**, 3, **verēbātur**, 4) denote an *action directed towards the future*. What *class of verbs*, then, do Complementary Final Clauses follow? What *Mood* do they require? Frame a rule for Complementary Final Clauses.

**536. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 331; H. 498, I., II., III.; G. 546.

**537. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in Exs. 3 and 4, the complementary final clause follows a verb of *fearing* (**veritus**, Ex. 3, **verēbātur**, Ex. 4). How is **ut** (Ex. 3) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? How is **nē** (Ex. 4) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? Frame a rule for the use of the Particle after Expressions of Fearing.

**538. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 331, *f*; H. 498, III., note 1; G. 552<sup>5</sup>.

**539.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Fer mihi auxilium. 2. Servitūtem perferre mā-lunt. 3. In tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat quī numerus domō<sup>1</sup> exisset<sup>2</sup> eōrum, quī arma ferre possent. 4. Neutrī transeundī initium faciunt. 5. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. 6. Mulierēs milītēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent. 7. Timēbant nē ab hoste circumvenirentur. 8. Rem<sup>3</sup> frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēbant. 9. Nōnnūllī Caesarī nūntiārant<sup>2</sup> nōn propter timōrem signa lātūrōs milītēs. 10. Ego enim ab incunte aetāte incēnsus sum studiō utriusque vestrūm.

II. 1. At one time<sup>4</sup> they waged war against [others]. at

another<sup>4</sup> they repelled [it when] waged against [themselves]. 2. One must often incur enmity<sup>5</sup> for the public welfare. 3. He went away at the beginning of summer.<sup>6</sup> 4. He warns him to avoid<sup>7</sup> all grounds of suspicion. 5. They feared that our army might be led against<sup>8</sup> them. 6. Take care to attach to yourself the aid<sup>9</sup> of all [classes]. 7. He persuades this [man] to go over to the enemy. 8. Caesar thought that he ought to take special precautions<sup>10</sup> lest this should happen. 9. "Lay the matter before the senate," you say: I shall not.<sup>11</sup> 10. I must return. 11. Go hence!

## 540.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt. 2. Is Amūlium rēgem interēmisse fertur. 3. Respondit in eam partem itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs Helvētiōs. 4. Sic eat quaecumque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem!<sup>12</sup> 5. Allobrogibus imperāvit ut Helvētiīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent. 6. Eō cōnsiliō domōs<sup>1</sup> suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur.<sup>13</sup> 7. Caesar postulāvit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvarent.

II. 1. Would that the soldiers had passed through without [committing any] depredation! 2. I do not know through whose territory they have gone. 3. They betook themselves to the town. 4. They suffer no wine<sup>14</sup> to be imported. 5. It is your [duty] to see that they do not injure me. 6. They demanded of Ariovistus that he should select some place for a conference. 7. There-was-reason-to-fear<sup>15</sup> that they might seem to have been cruel.

<sup>1</sup> For declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rem. 2.

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 128, a; H. 235; G. 151, 1.

<sup>3</sup> **Rem frūmentāriam, ut . . . posset = Ut rēs frūmentāria . . . posset.** The construction used in the text gives special emphasis to **rem frūmentāriam.**

<sup>4</sup> **aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another.**

<sup>5</sup> "One must often incur enmity" = *enmities must often be incurred.*

<sup>6</sup> Trans.: *summer beginning.*

<sup>7</sup> In this and similar cases occurring later, the English infinitive is to be translated by **ut** with the subjunctive.

<sup>8</sup> **adducō ad.**

<sup>9</sup> Use the plural.

<sup>10</sup> Use the passive impersonally.

<sup>11</sup> Trans.: *I shall not lay the matter.*

<sup>12</sup> The exclamation of Horatius as he slew his sister: Liv. 1, 26, 4.

<sup>13</sup> Note that this final clause is in apposition with **cōnsiliō.**

<sup>14</sup> "no wine" = *nothing of wine.*

<sup>15</sup> Passive periphrastic.

## LESSON LXXI.

IRREGULAR VERB: Fĭō. — ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.  
— ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

541. Learn the inflection and synopsis of **fĭō**, *be made, become*: A. & G. 142; H. 294; G. 188.

542.

EXAMPLES.

1.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Quis est enim quam ego mĭtior?} \\ b. \text{ Quis est enim mĕ mĭtior? (Cic. Cat. 4,} \\ \quad \quad \quad 6, 11), \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{for who is milder} \\ \text{than I?} \end{array}$
2.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Docet sĕ nihil amplius scĭre quam} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{lĕgātōs (Sall. Cat. 47, 1),} \\ b. \text{ Docet sĕ nihil amplius scĭre lĕgātĭs,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{he declares that he} \\ \text{knows no more} \\ \text{than the envoys.} \end{array}$
3. **Lūce** sunt **clāriōra** **nōbīs** tua **cōnsilia** (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 6), *your schemes are clearer to us than the light.*
4. **Celerius** **omnī opīniōne** (2, 3, 1), *more quickly than any one had thought possible (than all opinion).*

543. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, *a*, that **quam** is expressed with the comparative **mĭtior**, and that **ego** is in the *nominative*; whereas, in Ex. 1, *b*, **quam** is omitted, and the *nominative* **ego** has been changed to the *ablative* **mĕ**. Compare Ex. 2, *a* with Ex. 2, *b*; how has the omission of **quam** affected the *accusative* **lĕgātōs**? Note, further, that **quam** is omitted after the comparative in Exs. 3 and 4; in what *case* are **lūce** (Ex. 3) and **opīniōne** (Ex. 4)? By what *Case*, then, is the Comparative followed when **quam** is omitted? Frame a rule for this construction.

544. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 247; H. 417; G. 399.

545.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hibernia** **dĭmīdiō** **minor** [est] **quam** **Britannia** (5, 13, 2), *Ireland is smaller by half than Britain.*

2. [Patria] mihī vītā meā multō est cārīor (Cic. Cat. 1, 11, 27), *my country is far (by much) dearer to me than my life.*
3. Paucīs ante diēbus (1, 18, 10), *a few days before (before by a few days).*
4. Quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illa sequēbātur (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *the less he paid court to glory, the more she followed [him] (lit., by what less, by that more).*

**546. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note, in Ex. 1, that the *ablative dīmidīō* tells by *how much* Ireland is smaller than Britain; in other words, it expresses the *degree of difference* denoted by the *comparative minor*. Point out the words in the remaining examples which express degree of difference. In what case are they? By what case, then, is Degree of Difference denoted after Comparative expressions? Frame a rule for this construction.

**547. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 250; H. 423; G. 400.

**548.****EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Dē Caesaris adventū Helvētīi certiorēs fiunt.  
 2. Quid fieri velit, edocet. 3. Proelium adversum paucīs ante diēbus erat factum. 4. Semprōniae cārīōra omnia quam<sup>1</sup> pudicitia fuit.<sup>2</sup> 5. Celerius opīniōne exercitum addūcit. 6. Nēmō Rōmānōrum fuit eloquentior<sup>3</sup> Cicerōne. 7. Multō ego vigilō ācrius ad salutem quam tū ad perniciem rēi publicae. 8. Quārē in hostēs impetus nōn fieret, nōndum perspexerat. 9. Quantō vōs attentius ea agētis, tantō illīs animus infirmior erit. 10. Festīnandō plūs timōris quam periculī effēcerant.

- II. 1. This was at that time easily done. 2. Would that an attack on<sup>4</sup> the enemy were in progress. 3. He holds all his [friends] dear; me indeed<sup>5</sup> [he holds] dearer than himself.<sup>6</sup> 4. These are under (in) arms the year after, those remain at home.<sup>7</sup> 5. The greater the fault is, the severer is the mortification. 6. There-was-in this

man no less vanity than recklessness.<sup>8</sup> 7. He showed what he wished to have done.<sup>9</sup> 8. He accomplished less than he had anticipated.<sup>10</sup> 9. That is much more to be feared.

#### 549. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque itē Labiēni certior fiēbat. 2. In cōspectum hostium celerius opīnōne eōrum exercitum addūcit. 3. Eārum rērum ā nostrīs fiet nihil. 4. Bellī spolia māgnifica magis quam<sup>1</sup> ōrātiō mea vōs hortantur. 5. Carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium. 6. Quō dēlictum mājus est, eō poena est tardior.

II. 1. These [reports] which are talked of are less [important] than is generally supposed.<sup>11</sup> 2. [Those] who had advanced a little too far for the purpose of seeking [materials for] an embankment,<sup>12</sup> had<sup>13</sup> to be sent for. 3. The immortal gods seemed to foreshadow these things which are now taking place. 4. The safety of my fellow citizens has always been dearer to me than my own life.<sup>8</sup> 5. He has not yet learned what is in progress.

<sup>1</sup> Rewrite this sent. omitting **quam**.

<sup>2</sup> **fuit** here follows the number of the nearer substantive **pudicitia** rather than that of the more remote **omnia**.

<sup>3</sup> Rewrite this sent. introducing **quam**.

<sup>4</sup> **In** with accusative.

<sup>5</sup> **quidem**; it follows the word which it emphasizes.

<sup>6</sup> Use the reflexive **sē** with **ipse**.

<sup>7</sup> *at home, domī.*

<sup>8</sup> Express in two ways.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 548, I., sent. 2.

<sup>10</sup> *less than his own expectation.*

<sup>11</sup> Translate: *less than opinion.*

<sup>12</sup> cf. 386, I., sent. 1.

<sup>13</sup> cf. examples in 317.

## LESSON LXXII.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS: **Ōdī, Coepī, Meminī.** — VERBS OF MEMORY.

550. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings, of **coepī**, *I began*; **ōdī**, *I hate*; **meminī**, *I remember*: A. & G. 143, *a, b, c*, note; H. 297, I., 2; G. 190, 5.

## 551.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Vivōrum meminī** (Cic. *Fin.* 5, 1, 3), *I keep the living in mind.*
2. **Meminī, neque unquam obliviscar noctis illius** (Cic. *Planc.* 42, 101), *I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.*
3. **Aliī, reminiscētēs veteris fāmae** (Nep. *Phoc.* 4, 1), *others, recalling his early fame.*
4. **Recordor nōn L. Brūtum sed legiōnēs nostrās** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 20, 74), *I call to mind not Lucius Brutus, but our legions.*
5. **Omnia meminērunt** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 7, 21), *they remember everything.*
6. **Num illa oblītus est** (Cic. *Ac.* 2, 33, 106), *did he forget those things?*
7. **Ea reminiscere** (Cic. *Fam.* 4, 5, 5), *recall these things.*
8. **Id saepe sum recordātus** (Cic. *Att.* 8, 12, 5), *I have often recalled it.*

**552. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** By what cases may verbs of remembering and forgetting be followed (see foregoing examples)? What seems to be the regular construction with **recordor** (see Exs. 4 and 8)? What case regularly follows verbs of remembering and forgetting when the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a *neuter adjective* or *pronoun* (see Exs. 5–8)? What seems to be the construction after **meminī**, **obliviscor**, and **reminiscor** when the object remembered is *not* expressed by a *neuter adjective* or *pronoun* (see Exs. 1–3)? Frame rules embodying these observations.

**553. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 219 and Rem. (last sentence); H. 406, II., 407, note 1; G. 375, Rem. 2.

## 554.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Semper in cīvitate quibus<sup>1</sup> opēs nūllae sunt vetera ōdēre, nova exoptant. 2. Helvētīi proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. 3. Mementō meī. 4. Reminiscere veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī. 5. Plērīque mortālēs, sceleris oblītī, dē poenā disserunt. 6. Eās rēs reminiscī et recordārī videntur. 7. In mūrū lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt.<sup>2</sup> 8. Intellegēbat omnēs hominēs condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse. 9. Quam multa meminērunt augurēs! 10. Probātūrus sum vōbīs dēfēnsiōnem meam sī id meminēritis, quod obliviscī

nōn potestis. 11. Mēns mea pueritiae memoriam recordātur ūltimam. 12. Cōstantiae tuae meminī.

II. 1. I entreat you to remember these things. 2. It is not becoming either<sup>3</sup> to exercise partiality or<sup>3</sup> to cherish hatred. 3. They began to follow and attack our men in (ā) the rear. 4. A great quantity of dust began<sup>2</sup> to be seen. 5. Remember (pl.) us. 6. I cannot forget the old indignity. 7. Recall to mind the ancient valor of the Helvetians. 8. When I reflect on all the stages of your life, I do not see at what period you learned those things. 9. He favors the Helvetians, [but] hates Caesar. 10. Turn your thoughts from<sup>4</sup> slaughter and conflagrations. 11. He forgets nothing but<sup>5</sup> injuries. 12. He recalled the bitter experience of an earlier time. 13. I call to mind<sup>6</sup> not the two Decii, not the two Scipios, — but our own legions.

## 555.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Eundem Achillam,<sup>7</sup> cūjus suprā meminimus, omnibus cōpiis praefecit. 2. Atque ego, quī omnia officiō mētor, recordor tamen tua cōsilia. 3. Cum aliquō dolōre flāgitiōrum<sup>8</sup> suōrum recordābitur. 4. Plērīque mortālēs postrēma meminēre, et in hominibus impiis sceleris eōrum oblitī dē poenā disserunt, sī ea paulō sevērior fuit. 5. Parum ōdisse malōs civēs vidētur.

II. 1. I forget for-the-moment<sup>9</sup> your injuries, Clodia. 2. The mind remembers the past, sees the present, foresees the future. 3. He exhorted the Aeduans to forget disputes and disagreement. 4. They began by putting to death<sup>10</sup> all the worst<sup>11</sup> without trial.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 393 and 394.

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 143, a (second line); H. 297, 1; G. 190, 5 (end).

<sup>3</sup> Trans.: *it is becoming neither . . . nor.*

<sup>4</sup> "turn your thoughts from" = *forget.*

<sup>5</sup> "nothing but" = *nothing unless.*

<sup>6</sup> **recordor.**

<sup>7</sup> For declension, see **Aenēās** (or **Leōnidās**): A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

<sup>8</sup> Is this the *usual* construction with **recordor**?

<sup>9</sup> **jam.**

<sup>10</sup> Trans.: *They at first began to put to death.*

<sup>11</sup> "all the worst" = *each worst*; cf. Lesson LVII., foot-note 3.

## LESSON LXXIII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF RESULT).

556.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ita mē gessī ut omnēs cōservārēminī** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 10, 25), *I so conducted my administration that you were all saved.*
2. **Ita repente prōcurrērunt ut spatium nōn darētur** (1, 52, 3), *they ran forward so suddenly that no time was allowed.*
3. **Quis est tam lyncēus quī in tantīs tenebrīs nihil offendat** (Cic. *Fam.* 9, 2, 2), *who is so sharp-sighted as not to stumble amid such darkness (that he would not stumble, etc.).*
4. **Quae rēs, commeātūs ut ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat** (2, 5, 5), *this movement rendered it possible for supplies to be brought to him (brought it about that supplies could, etc.).*
5. **Eādē nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna** (4, 29, 1), *on the same night it chanced that it was full moon.*

**557. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the dependent clauses in Exs. 1–3 express *consequence* or *result*. Such clauses are called *Consecutive Clauses*, or *Clauses of Result*. What mood is used in consecutive clauses? Is the consecutive clause in Ex. 1 *affirmative* or *negative*? What *particle* introduces it? Answer the same questions for the consecutive clause in Ex. 2. Is the negative particle of the consecutive clause the same as that of the *final clause* (see 528, Ex. 2)? Note that the consecutive clause in Ex. 3 is introduced by the *relative pronoun (quī)*, and that **quī** is here equivalent in meaning to **ut is**. Frame a rule for the Mood and the Introductory Word to be used in Consecutive Clauses.

**558. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 319 and *a* (first sentence); II. 500, I., II.; G. 554.

**559. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 4 is the *direct object* of the verb (**efficiēbat**) on which it depends, and that the latter is a verb denoting the *accom-*



*plishment of an effort.* What *class* of verbs, then, do Object Clauses of Result follow? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Object Clauses of Result.

**560. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 332; H. 501, II., 1; G. 557.

**561. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 5 is the *subject* of the *impersonal verb accidit*. With what *class* of verbs, then, are Subject Clauses of Result found? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Subject Clauses of Result.

**562. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 332, *a*; H. 501, I., 1; G. 558.

**563. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Quis potest esse tam āversus ā vērō quī neget haec omnia quae vidēmus? 2. Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 3. Fīēbat ut minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent. 4. Nōn tam īperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium nōn tulisse. 5. Verbōrum obscūrītās facit ut nōn intellegātur rēs. 6. Fortūna vestra facit ut īrae meae temperem. 7. Illae tamen omnēs dissēnsiōnēs erant ējusmodī<sup>1</sup> quae nōn ad dēlendā, sed commūtandā rem pūblicā pertinērent. 8. Aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium caperent. 9. Tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī proelium redintegrārent.

II. 1. Sabinus gave ground for so-strong-a<sup>2</sup> suspicion of his cowardice that the enemy dared to come up even<sup>3</sup> to the rampart of the camp. 2. Nor am I so iron-hearted as not to be affected.<sup>4</sup> 3. Ariovistus had assumed such arrogance that he seemed insufferable.<sup>5</sup> 4. The-result-will-be<sup>6</sup> that the enemy will escape danger by their swiftness. 5. The obscurity of the subject<sup>7</sup> causes the language not to be understood.<sup>8</sup> 6. So stealthily did they glance at one another<sup>9</sup>

that they seemed to betray themselves by-their-own-actions.<sup>10</sup>

7. The Aeduans have deserved so [well] of (*dē*) the Roman people that their towns ought not to be assaulted.

## 564.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Ējusmodī*<sup>1</sup> sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae utī sub pellibus militēs continēri nōn possent. 2. *Nēmō* enim est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vīvere. 3. Hostēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ex jacentium corporibus pūgnārent.

II. 1. And it so happened that out of so large<sup>2</sup> a number not a single ship<sup>11</sup> was missing.<sup>12</sup> 2. We are not persons of such incredulity that<sup>13</sup> nothing seems to us<sup>13</sup> true. 3. And so, although twelve ships had been lost,<sup>14</sup> he rendered it possible for the voyage to be made<sup>15</sup> well enough with the rest.

<sup>1</sup> of such a kind, such: A. & G. 215, a; H. 396, V., n. 1; G. 364.

<sup>2</sup> tantus.

<sup>3</sup> jam.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *that I am not affected*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *did not seem sufferable*.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 563, I., sent. 3.

<sup>7</sup> Use *rēs* in plural.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *causes that the language is not understood*.

<sup>9</sup> Translate; *among themselves*.

<sup>10</sup> Use *ipse* in app. with the subject.

<sup>11</sup> "not a single ship" = *no ship at all*.

<sup>12</sup> "was missing" = *was missed*.

<sup>13</sup> "persons of such incredulity that to us" = *those to whom*.

<sup>14</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>15</sup> Translate: *caused that it could be sailed*; use *nāvigō* impersonally in the passive.



## LESSON LXXIV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY  
*Quōminus* AND *Quīn*.

## 565.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Tē infirmitās valētūdinis tuae tenuit quō minus venīrēs* (Cic. *Fam.* 7, 1, 1), *the feebleness of your health kept you from coming* (so that thereby [*quō = ut eō*] you came less).
2. *Neque illīs superbia obstābat quō minus aliēna institūta imitārentur* (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 37), *neither did pride prevent them from imitating foreign institutions*.

**566. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the dependent clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quō** minus. What mood do they take (see **venīrēs**, Ex. 1, and **imitārentur**, Ex. 2)? Note also that the verbs on which these clauses depend (**tenuit**, Ex. 1, and **obstābat**, Ex. 2) are verbs of *hindering*. Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

**567. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 319, *c*; H. 505, II., 1; G. 549.

**568.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Nēmō est tam fortis quīn rēi novitāte perturbētur** (6, 39, 3),  
*no one is so brave as not to be disconcerted by the unexpectedness of the situation.*
2. **Quis est quīn contendat** (Sall. *Jug.* 4, 7), *who is there who does not contend?*
3. **Retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla conicerent** (1, 47, 2), *it had not been possible to restrain them from throwing darts* (lit., they had not been able to be restrained, etc.).
4. **Nōn dubitābat quīn summissiōrēs essent futūrae** (8, 31, 2),  
*he had no doubt that they would be more submissive.*
5. **Nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn lēgātōs mitterent**  
(5, 55, 1), *they let no occasion pass without sending ambassadors.*
6. **Facere nōn possum quīn cottīdiē ad tē mittam** (Cic. *Att.* 12, 27, 2), *I cannot help writing to you every day.*

**569. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the consecutive clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quīn**, and that the leading clause in each example contains a *negative expression*. Note, further, that the *negative expression* of the leading clause is: a *general negative* (**nēmō**) in Ex. 1; an *interrogative implying a negative* in Ex. 2 (**quis est** = **nēmō est**); a *negative expression of hindering* (**retinērī nōn potuerant**) in Ex. 3; a *negative expression of doubting* (**nōn dubitābat**) in Ex. 4; and a *negative expression of omitting or refraining* (**nūllum . . . intermīsērunt** and **facere nōn possum**) in Exs. 5 and 6. Frame a rule, or rules, for the use of **quīn** with the Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses.

570. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319, *d*; H. 504; G. 550, 551.

## 571.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nēmō est quīn ubivīs quam ibī ubī est esse mālit. 2. Sed custōdiīs quō<sup>1</sup> id sine periculō minus<sup>1</sup> facerēmus impediēbāmur. 3. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae<sup>2</sup> plūrimum Helvētīi possint. 4. Nōn possunt mīlitēs continērī quīn in urbem irrumpant urbemque dēleant. 5. Neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit. 6. Quis est quīn cernat quanta vīs sit īn sēnsibus? 7. Prohibērī nōn possumus quō minus cottīdiē aquam petāmus. 8. Nōn dubitō quīn probātūrus sim vōbīs dēfēnsiōnem meam. 9. Ego nihil praetermīsī quīn Pompējum ā Caesaris conjūctiōne āvocārem. 10. Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent.

II. 1. The enemy endeavored to hinder our men from fleeing for refuge to their camp. 2. We have not<sup>3</sup> been able to deter even<sup>3</sup> the Suessiones from conspiring with the Belgians. 3. We do not doubt that he will inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages. 4. Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be found out by searching. 5. There is no doubt<sup>4</sup> that the Romans will deprive the Aeduans of freedom.<sup>5</sup> 6. Nor did he refuse to submit to the penalty of the law. 7. I cannot help<sup>6</sup> declaring to you my opinion. 8. Who then can doubt<sup>7</sup> that [true] wealth consists in virtue?

## 572.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Quis est omnium quīn divitiīs et sūmptibus, nōn probitate neque industriā cum mājōribus suis contendat? 2. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. 3. Itaque dēterritus nōn est quō minus, primā aciē prō vallō instrūctā, reliqua pars exercitūs opus faceret.

II. 1. Rest assured<sup>8</sup> that the Romans will wrest liberty from the Aeduans. 2. Parmenio wished to deter him from drinking

the drug. 3. Nor do we refuse to remain<sup>9</sup> forever under your sway. 4. No one might<sup>10</sup> withdraw from the line of march without being cut off by Caesar's cavalry.

<sup>1</sup> *quō* may be separated from *minus* by the intervention of other words.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 1, Lesson LXVIII.

<sup>3</sup> See Lesson LXVIII., foot-note 8.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 571, I., sent. 3.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *wrest freedom from* (lit., to) *the Aeduaus* (dat.).

<sup>6</sup> See 568, Ex. 6.

<sup>7</sup> What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *be unwilling to doubt*.

<sup>9</sup> "remain" = *be*.

<sup>10</sup> *Nūllī licēbat*.

## LESSON LXXV.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

#### 573.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent* (4, 34, 4), *there ensued storms which (of such severity that they) kept our men in camp.*
2. *Hōc quī postulāret reperiēbātur nēmō* (Caes. B. C. 3, 20, 4), *no one was found who (so unreasonable that he) demanded this.*
3. *Fuēre quī crēderent* (Sal. Cat. 17, 7), *there were some who believed.*
4. *Rem idōneam dē quā quaerātur, et hominēs dīgnōs quibuscum disserātur putant* (Cic. Ac. 2, 6, 18), *they consider the subject suitable to be inquired into, and the men worthy of being argued with.*

**574. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the relative clauses of result in the foregoing examples express some *characteristic* of the antecedent. Thus the relative clause *quae ... continērent* (Ex. 1) describes the severity of the storms by saying that they kept the men in camp. Note, further, that the relative clause of characteristic follows a *general negative* (*nēmō*) in Ex. 2, an *indefinite* (omitted) *antecedent* in Ex. 3, an antecedent limited by *idōneam* in Ex. 4, and an antecedent limited by *dīgnōs* in Ex. 4. In what *mood* is the *verb* of a Relative Clause of Characteristic?

With what Antecedents are Relative Clauses of Characteristic especially used? Frame a rule embodying these observations.

575. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 320, *a, f*; H. 503, I., II., 2; G. 633, 634.

576. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō<sup>1</sup> exīre possent. 2. Erant eō tempore quī exīstimārent indicium illud ā P. Antrōnīō māchinātum.<sup>2</sup> 3. Indīgnī vōs estis quī in meō exercitū ōrdinēs dūcātis. 4. Voluptās est sōla<sup>3</sup> quae nōs vocet ad sē. 5. Neque is sum quī mortis periculō terrear. 6. Repertī sunt mīlitēs quī scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. 7. Hunc Caesar idō-neum jūdicāverat quem cum mandātis mitteret.

II. 1. Storms followed which prevented the enemy from fighting. 2. [There] are [persons] here who urge you to revolt<sup>4</sup> from us. 3. He deems Procillus a suitable [person] to send<sup>5</sup> to Ariovistus. 4. He seems to be worthy to command. 5. Nor has any one been found<sup>6</sup> up to this time who refused<sup>6</sup> to die. 6. There were [some] who said that Catiline had passed round blood in sacrificial dishes.

577. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. 2. Morinī Menapiique supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent. 3. Quis servus libertāte<sup>7</sup> dignus fuit cui nostra salūs cāra nōn esset?

II. 1. [He] who quietly obeys seems to be worthy to command. 2. In the camp of Pompey it was possible to see many things which betokened confident expectation of victory. 3. Nor is there any one who asserts that he has penetrated to the beginning of that forest. 4. There are [those] who say that Catiline has been driven into exile by me.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 1, Lesson LXX.

<sup>2</sup> sc. esse.

<sup>3</sup> A. & G. 320, *b*; H. 503, II., 1.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *urge that you revolt.*

<sup>5</sup> cf. sent. 7, foregoing exercise.

<sup>6</sup> A. & G. 287, *a*; H. 495, 1; G. 511, Rem. 2.

<sup>7</sup> cf. Lesson XXXII., foot-note 3.

## LESSON LXXVI.

## CONSTRUCTIONS USED WITH VERBS OF FEELING.

578.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Miserēminī sociōrum** (Cic. *Verr.* 2, 1, 28, 72), *pity* [our] *allies*.
2. **Miserēscite rēgis** (Verg. *Aen.* 8, 573), *take pity on the king*.
3. **Commūne perīculum miserābantur** (1, 39, 4), *they bewailed the common danger*.

579. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miserēminī** (Ex. 1) and **miserēscite** (Ex. 2) are *intransitive*, and mean 'feel pity'; what *case* follows them? Note, on the other hand, that **miserābantur** is *transitive* and means 'express pity for,' 'lament,' 'bewail'; what *case* follows it? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs?

580. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, a; H. 406, I.; G. 376 (first line).

581.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tuī mē miseret, meī piget** (Eun. ap. Cic. *Div.* 1, 31, 66), *I pity thee, I loathe myself* (it pities me of thee, it loathes me of myself).
2. **Taedet omnīnō eōs vītae** (Cic. *Att.* 5, 16, 2), *they are utterly weary of life* (it wearies them of life).
3. **Mē meōrum factōrum nunquam paenitēbit** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 20), *I shall never regret my acts* (it will never repent me of my acts).
4. **Pudet mē nōn tuī quidem, sed Chrysippī** (Cic. *Div.* 2, 15, 35), *I am not ashamed of you indeed, but of Chrysippus*.

582. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miseret** (Ex. 1), **piget** (Ex. 1), **taedet** (Ex. 2), **paenitēbit** (Ex. 3), and **puDET** (Ex. 4) are *impersonal verbs of feeling or emotion*. By what *case* is the *person experiencing the feeling* expressed? (See **mē**, Ex. 1, **eōs**, Ex. 2, **mē**, Ex. 3, **mē**, Ex. 4.) By what *case* is the *object exciting the feeling* expressed? (See **tuī** and **meī**, Ex. 1, **vītae**, Ex. 2, **factōrum**, Ex. 3, **tuī** and **Chrysippī**, Ex. 4.) Frame a rule for the constructions to be used with the foregoing Impersonals.

583. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, *b*; H. 409, III.; G. 376.

## 584.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Quid illius interest ubi sis** (Cic. *Att.* 10, 4, 10), *what matters it to him where you are?*
2. **Docet quanto opere communis salutis intersit manus hostium distineri** (2, 5, 2), *he shows how important it is for the general safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart.*
3. **Mea magni interest te ut videam** (Cic. *Att.* 11, 22, 2), *it is of great importance to me to see you.*
4. **Tua maxime interest te valere** (Cic. *Fam.* 16, 4, 4), *it is of the greatest importance to you that you keep your health.*

585. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that with the *impersonal interest* the person or thing affected is expressed by the *genitive* in Exs. 1 and 2 (see **illius**, Ex. 1, and **salutis**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4 the person interested is expressed *not* by the genitive of the personal pronoun, as might have been expected, but by the *ablative feminine* of the *possessive* (see **mea**, Ex. 3, and **tua**, Ex. 4). Frame a rule for the constructions to be used with the *Impersonal interest*, to express the Person or Thing Affected.

586. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 222, *a*; H. 408, I., 1, 2; G. 381 (both paragraphs).

## 587.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Me** meorum consiliorum nunquam paenitebit.  
 2. **Misereor vestri.** 3. **Miseret te aliorum, tui te nec miseret nec pudet.**<sup>1</sup> 4. **Sunt homines quos infamiae suae neque pudeat neque taedeat.** 5. **Magni**<sup>2</sup> interest Ciceronis, vel **mea** potius, vel **mehercule** utriusque. 6. **Quis est hodie cuius intersit istam legem manere?** 7. **Magni**<sup>2</sup> interest **tua** et **mea**. 8. **Allobroges Umbrenum orabant ut sui misererentur.** 9. **Miserantur communem Galliae fortunam.** 10. **De summis saepe rebus consilia inenunt, quorum eos in vestigio**



paenitēre necesse est. 11. Mē cīvitātis mōrum piget tædetque.

II. 1. You are neither sorry for nor ashamed of yourself. 2. It concerns the general safety for me to have a conference with Ariovistus. 3. The women bewailed their little children. 4. I have not been dissatisfied with my soldiers, nor you with your leader. 5. It is highly<sup>2</sup> important to me for us to be together. 6. They are neither ashamed of their infamy nor weary [of it]. 7. It is of more<sup>3</sup> importance to them than to me. 8. He demands that they have compassion on him.<sup>4</sup> 9. Can any one pity us?

## 588.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nōn tam meā quam rēi pūblicae interest utī salvus sim. 2. Plērique eōrum quī ante mē sentiētiās dīxere, cāsum rēi pūblīcae miserātī sunt. 3. Eōrum nōs magis miseret quī nostram misericordiam nōn requirunt, quam quī illam efflāgitant. 4. Hūjus post mortem, populū jūdicīi suī paenitēbat.

II. 1. It matters very little<sup>5</sup> to me. 2. Caesar used to say that it was not so important for himself<sup>6</sup> as for the state that he should be preserved. 3. Do you not feel that you dishonor<sup>7</sup> this temple, the city,<sup>8</sup> life,<sup>8</sup> light<sup>8</sup>? 4. I pity the misfortunes of Jugurtha. 5. Every one is dissatisfied with his own lot.

<sup>1</sup> For the arrangement of the words in this sentence, see references under Lesson XXI., foot-note 21.

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 252, a; H. 408, III.; G. 282, 1.

<sup>3</sup> magis.

<sup>4</sup> A. & G. 196, a; H. 449, 1; G. 521.

<sup>5</sup> minimē.

<sup>6</sup> Proper form of *suus*.

<sup>7</sup> "Do you not feel that you dishonor this temple?" = *does it not shame you of this temple?*

<sup>8</sup> Repeat "not" with each substantive.

## LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: PRESENT AND PAST  
SUPPOSITIONS.

## PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS INDETERMINATE.

## 589.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 5, 13), *if you ask my advice, I recommend [it].*
2. **Sī quisquam fuit unquam remōtus ab inānī laude, ego profectō is sum** (Cic. *Fam.* 15, 4, 13), *if there ever was any one indifferent to empty applause, I assuredly am the man.*
3. **Sīn autem servīre meae glōriae māvīs, ēgredere** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 9, 23), *if, however, you prefer to minister to my glory, depart.*
4. **Sī stāre nōn possunt, corruant** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 10, 21), *if they cannot stand, let them fall.*

590. EXPLANATION OF TERMS: Sentences like the foregoing, containing a clause introduced by **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds (see **sīn**, Ex. 3), are called *Conditional Sentences*. The clause expressing the *condition* (**sī . . . cōnsulis**, Ex. 1, **sī . . . laude**, Ex. 2, **sīn . . . māvīs**, Ex. 3, **sī . . . possunt**, Ex. 4) is called the *Protasis*; the clause expressing the *conclusion* (**suādeō**, Ex. 1, **ego . . . sum**, Ex. 2, **ēgredere**, Ex. 3, **corruant**, Ex. 4) is called the *Apodosis*.

591. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *Protasis* in the foregoing examples *simply states* a supposed case, without implying either that it is *true* or that it is *false*. Thus, **sī mē cōnsulis**, *if you ask my advice* (Ex. 1), does not imply that the person addressed either *does* or *does not* ask the advice of the speaker. Note, further, that the *Protasis* expresses a *present* supposition in Exs. 1, 3, and 4; and a *past* supposition in Ex. 2. In what *mood* is the verb of the *Protasis* in each of these examples (see **cōnsulis**, Ex. 1; **fuit**, Ex. 2; **māvīs**, Ex. 3; **possunt**, Ex. 4)? Is there a like uniformity as to mood in the verbs of the *Apodosis* (see **suādeō**, Ex. 1; **sum**, Ex. 2; **ēgredere**, Ex. 3; **corruant**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the use of Moods in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

592. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 306; II. 508 and 4; G. 597.

## PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS FALSE.

593.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Servī meī sī mē metuerent, domum meam relinquendam putārem** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 17), *if my slaves feared me, I should think that I ought to leave house and home.* \*
2. [**Vītā**] **sī ēripuisset, multās animī atque corporis poenās adēmisset** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 4, 8), *if he had taken away life, he would have relieved [them] of many torments of mind and body.*
3. **Magis id dīcerēs, sī adfuissēs** (Cic. *Lael.* 7, 25), *you would say so all the more, if you had been there.* x
4. **Sī interfectus esset, quid dīcerent** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 7, 15), *what would they say, if he had been put to death?*

594. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states the supposed case in such a way as to imply its *falsity*. Thus, **servī meī sī mē metuerent**, *if my slaves feared me* (Ex. 1), implies that the speaker's slaves *do not* fear him; and **sī . . . adfuissēs**, *if you had been there* (Ex. 3), implies that the person addressed *was not* there.

Note, further, that the Protasis expresses a *present* supposition in Ex. 1, and a *past* supposition in Exs. 2, 3, and 4; also, that the verb of the Apodosis refers to *present* time in Exs. 1, 3, and 4, and to *past* time in Ex. 2.

What *mood* is used in both Protasis and Apodosis in these examples? What *tense* is used for *present* time? for *past* time? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tense in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

595. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 308; H. 510 and n. 1; G. 599.

596.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Sī iterum experīri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre.** 2. **Sī Catilīna in urbe remānsisset, nunquam nōs rem pūblicam liberāssēmus.** 3. **Pareite dīgnitātī Lentulī sī** \*

† ipse fāmae suae unquam pepercit. 4. SĪ quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem. 5. Id ego sī verbō adsequī possem, istōs ipsōs ēicerem. 6. Sī et in urbe et in eādē mente permanent, ea quae merentur exspectent. 7. Mihi sī haec condiciō cōsulātūs data est, feram nōn solum fortiter vērum etiam libenter. 8. Sī in hunc animadvertissem, crudēliter fēcissem.

II. 1. If they wish to enjoy peace, it is unfair [for them] to refuse [to pay]<sup>1</sup> the tribute. 2. Bring back the men if you wish to be free from suspicion in-my-eyes.<sup>2</sup> 3. If there were room for error, I should readily permit [it]. 4. If he had been conscious<sup>3</sup> of [having done] any wrong, it would not have been difficult [for him] to be on his guard. 5. Pardon the young<sup>4</sup> Cethegus<sup>4</sup> if he has not a second time made war on his country. 6. Still, if it is your pleasure, let it be voted. 7. Nor would you, if you were an Athenian, ever have been illustrious. 8. Would<sup>5</sup> he,<sup>6</sup> then, if he had lived to be a hundred years<sup>7</sup> old, regret<sup>6</sup> his old age?

## 597.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Huic facinorī sī paucōs putātis adfinēs esse, vehementer errātis. 2. Sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet. 3. Sī hōc idem huic adulēcentī optimō P. Sēstiō dixissem, jam mihi senātus vim et manūs intulisset. 4. Sī id culpā senectūtis accideret, eadem mihi ūsū venirent.

II. 1. If you cannot die contentedly, do you hesitate to consign your life to flight and solitude? 2. If your parents hated you, you would, as I think, withdraw to some place out of their sight.<sup>8</sup> 3. If Catiline had come off conqueror, doubtless great bloodshed and disaster would have overwhelmed the country.

<sup>1</sup> *recūsāre dē.*<sup>2</sup> *mihi.*<sup>3</sup> Translate: *conscious to himself.*<sup>4</sup> Translate: *the youth of Cethegus.*<sup>5</sup> What inter. particle? cf. 417, Ex. 4.<sup>6</sup> cf. 581, Ex. 3.<sup>7</sup> *had lived to the hundredth year.*<sup>8</sup> *ab eōrum oculis.*

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE SUPPOSITIONS.

598.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nunquam** lābēre sī tē audiēs (Cic. *Fam.* 2, 7, 1), *you will never err if you (shall) follow your own convictions (hear yourself).*
2. **Sī iste ūnus tollētur, perīculum residebit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 13, 31), *if he alone (shall) be removed, the danger will remain.*
3. **Vix feram sermōnēs hominum sī id fēceris** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 9, 23), *it will be hard for me to endure men's criticisms if you do (shall have done) this.*

599. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states a supposed *future* case with *vividness*, though without implying either that it will or that it will not be fulfilled. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the Protasis (**fēceris**) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (**feram**); what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Note, further, that the verbs of the Protasis in the foregoing examples are rendered by the *present* tense in the English translation; in such cases, which language is the more exact, the Latin or the English? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

600. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 307 (to the semicolon), *a, c* (omit what follows the comma in the third line); H. 508 and 2; G. 597.

601.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī quis deus mihi largiātur ut repuerāscam, valdē recūsem** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 23, 83), *if some god should freely grant me the privilege of becoming a child again, I should stoutly refuse it.*

2. **Ego sī Scīpiōnis dēsīderiō mē movērī negem, mentiar** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 10), *if I should say that I am not affected with grief at the loss of Scipio, I should speak falsely.*
3. **Sī gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat insāniēns, reddere peccātum sit** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 25, 94), *if a man should deposit (should have deposited) with you a sword [when] in his right mind, and should ask it back again [when] insane, it would be wrong to restore it.*

**602. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the Protasis in the foregoing examples states the supposed future case with *less vividness* than in the examples of **598**, and thereby represents the fulfillment of the supposed case as somewhat less probable. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the first Protasis (**dēposuerit**) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (**sit**); what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing:

**603. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 307, *b, c*; H. 509 and n. 1; G. 598.

**604. EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Nisi dēcēdēs, ego tē prō hoste habēbō. 2. Sī discēsseris, māgnō ego tē praemiō remunerābor. 3. Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat? 4. Sī quis deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? 5. Sī poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus; sī minus potuerimus, agrōs Rēmōrum populābimur. 6. Sī vim facere cōnābiminī, prohibēbō. 7. Sī tē interfēcerō, multīs ego nōbilibus grātum faciam.

II. 1. If we can,<sup>1</sup> we shall destroy the bridge; if we cannot,<sup>1</sup> we shall cut off the Romans from supplies. 2. I could not go away if I should wish [to]. 3. If you give satisfaction to the Aeduans for (**ad**) the injuries [you have done

them], I shall make peace with you. 4. Ought not<sup>2</sup> the country to obtain her request, even if she should not be able to apply force? 5. If this (pl.) is reported<sup>3</sup> to Ariovistus, he will inflict punishment on (dē) the hostages. 6. If you do<sup>3</sup> this, there will be lasting friendship between you and the Roman people.<sup>4</sup>

## 605.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Etiam si hominum studia dēficiant, di<sup>5</sup> ipsi immortalēs cōgant tanta vitia superārī. 2. Si sē ējēcerit, sēcumque suōs ēdūxerit, exstinguētur atque dēlēbitur stirps ac sēmen malōrum omnium. 3. Si quis pater familiās,<sup>6</sup> liberis suis ā servō interfectis, supplicium dē servō nōn sūmperit, utrum<sup>7</sup> is clēmēns an crūdēlissimus esse videātur? 4. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, ego tē nōn prō amicō sed hoste habēbō. 5. Pietāte adversus deōs sublātā,<sup>8</sup> fidēs etiam et jūstitia tollātur.

II. 1. If they should remain in Rome,<sup>9</sup> they would be rescued by a hired mob. 2. If this takes place it will be [attended] with great danger to the province.<sup>10</sup> 3. If any [punishment] of undue severity is inflicted upon him<sup>11</sup> by Caesar, no one will suppose that it was not done at<sup>12</sup> my desire.

<sup>1</sup> cf. sent. 5, preceding exercise.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 604, sent. 3.

<sup>3</sup> cf. sent. 2, preceding exercise.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *to the Roman people with you.*

<sup>5</sup> See 373, foot-note 3.

<sup>6</sup> A. & G. 36, b; H. 49, 1; G. 27, Rem. 1.

<sup>7</sup> Omit in translation.

<sup>8</sup> Trans. by a conditional clause. Expand the abl. abs. into the ordinary form of protasis.

<sup>9</sup> cf. Lesson XXVII., foot-note 11.

<sup>10</sup> Use the genitive.

<sup>11</sup> Translate: *if anything too-severe shall have happened to him from Caesar.*

<sup>12</sup> Use ablative of cause.

## LESSON LXXIX.

## CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. — CLAUSES OF PROVISIO.

606.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Quamquam** premēbantur, tamen omnia fortissimō sustinēbant animō (8, 42, 3), *although they were hard pressed, still they endured everything with the bravest spirit.*
2. **Senectūs, quamvīs** nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditātem (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 11), *old age, though it be not burdensome, yet takes away one's vigor.*
3. **Etsī** mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen contendit (4, 20, 1), *although the winters set in early, he hastened notwithstanding.*
4. **Nōnne** impetrāre dēbeat, etiamsī vim adhibēre nōn possit (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 19), *ought she not to obtain her request, even though she should not be able to employ force?*

607. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), **quamvīs** (Ex. 2), **etsī** (Ex. 3), and **etiāmsī** (Ex. 4) express something granted or *conceded*. For this reason they are called *Concessive Clauses*. Note that the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), unlike that introduced by **quamvīs** (Ex. 2), concedes an *admitted fact*, and therefore takes the *indicative mood* (see **premēbantur**). What mood does the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamvīs** take (see **sit**, Ex. 2)? Note that **etsī** (Ex. 3) and **etiāmsī** (Ex. 4) are compounds of **sī**, and that, like **sī**, they take the *indicative or subjunctive* as already explained (Lessons LXXVII.—VIII.). Frame rules for the Mood of the verb in Concessive Clauses.

608. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 313, *a, c, e*; H. 515, I., II., III.; G. 605, 1–3, 606, 607, 608.

609.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum** locus pūgnandī darētur, singulās bīnīs nāvibus obiciēbant (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 58, 4), *provided an opportunity of fighting presented itself, they matched one ship against two.*



2. **Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 7, 22), *the old retain their mental powers (powers remain to the old), if only industry hold out.*
3. **Māgnō mē metū līberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 5, 10), *you will free me from great fear, if only there be a wall between you and me.*

**610. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1), **modo** (Ex. 2), and **dum modo** (Ex. 3) express a *proviso* or *condition*; what *mood* do they take (see **darētur**, Ex. 1, **permaneat**, Ex. 2, and **intersit**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

**611. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 314; H. 513, I.; G. 575.

**612. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Sed est tantū<sup>1</sup> dum modo ista rēi pūblicae periculīs sējungātur calamitās. 2. Quanquam crēbrō audiēbat Labiēnum ab inimicīs suīs sollicitārī, tamen nōn crēdidit. 3. Etiamsī Catilīna perierit, in rē pūblicā sēminārium Catilīnārum erit. 4. Nōn igitur potestās est cōservandae rēi pūblicae, quamvīs ea premātur periculīs. 5. Neque, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat.<sup>2</sup> 6. Illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen tulī. 7. Hominēs, quamvīs in turbidīs rēbus sint, tamen interdum animīs relaxantur.<sup>3</sup>

II. 1. Even though he receives the injury, he yet seems to commit [it]. 2. You at any rate assented to<sup>4</sup> my departure, provided I should be at Rome<sup>5</sup> on the first<sup>6</sup> of January. 3. The Romans, although they were weary of marching<sup>7</sup> and fighting,<sup>7</sup> yet eagerly<sup>8</sup> advanced to meet [him]. 4. And yet<sup>9</sup> that flattery, pernicious though<sup>10</sup> it be, can nevertheless injure no one but<sup>11</sup> him who is pleased by it. 5. He spared neither expense nor his own honor, if only he might make them faithful to himself.

## 613. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Sed quamquam haec tālia sunt, tamen obviam ire inimicis meis animus mē subigit. 2. Ista vēritās etiāmsī jūcunda<sup>12</sup> nōn est, mihī tamen grāta<sup>12</sup> est. 3. Nihil tam difficile est quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī simus, dum ea rēs civitatēin aere aliēnō liberet. 4. Quamvīs nōn fueris suāsor et impulsor profectiōnis meae, approbātor certē fuistī.

II. 1. Life is short, though it extend beyond a thousand years. 2. But Sulla, although he held the same opinion,<sup>13</sup> nevertheless protected the Moor from injury. 3. They will shrink from no peril, provided the province be restored to Caesar through their efforts.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> est tantī, *it is worth such a price*: A. & G. 252, a; H. 404, n. 1; G. 379.

<sup>2</sup> Neque quicquam pēnsī habēbat, *nor did he have any scruple*.

<sup>3</sup> animīs relaxantur, *unbend*.

<sup>4</sup> you were approver of.

<sup>5</sup> cf. foot-note 11, Lesson XXVII.

<sup>6</sup> "first" = *Kalends*.

<sup>7</sup> Ablative.

<sup>8</sup> intentus (adj.) in agreement with subject.

<sup>9</sup> A. & G. 313, f; H. 515, n. 2; G. 607, Rem. 2.

<sup>10</sup> cf. 606, Ex. 2.

<sup>11</sup> "no one but" = *no one unless*.

<sup>12</sup> jūcundus, *agreeable*, because to one's taste; grātus, *welcome*, because valuable in itself.

<sup>13</sup> to hold the same opinion, *eadem exīstimāre*.

<sup>14</sup> Translate: *through themselves*.



## LESSON LXXX.

SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS: GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF CONDEMNING, ETC. — Egeō AND Indigeō.

DATIVE WITH Ēripiō, ETC.

## 614. EXAMPLES.

1. Prīncipēs cīvitatīs īnsimulātī [sunt] prōditiōnis (7, 38, 2), *the foremost men in the state have been charged with treachery*.
2. Prōditiōnis damnātus est (Nep. Th. 8, 2), *he was condemned for treason*.

3. **Videō tē absolūtum esse improbitātis** (Cic. *Verr.* 2, 1, 28, 72),  
*I see that you were acquitted of wrong doing.*

**615. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that **insimulātī sunt** (Ex. 1), **damnātus est** (Ex. 2), and **absolūtum esse** (Ex. 3) are verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting* respectively. By what *case* is the *charge* expressed with these verbs (see **prōditiōnis**, Ex. 1, **prōditiōnis**, Ex. 2, **improbitātis**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these and similar verbs.

- 616. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 220; II. 409, II. and n. 2; G. 377.

**617. EXAMPLES.**

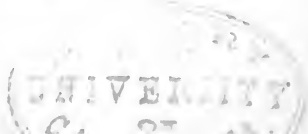
1. **Nīl attigit nisi arma, quōrum indigēbat** (Nep. *Thr.* 2, 6), *he touched nothing but arms, and of these he stood in need.*
2. [**Eōs**], **quibus rēbus indiguērunt, adjūvit** (Nep. *Att.* 9, 3), *he aided them with those things of which they stood in need.*
3. **Neque cōsiliī neque audāciae eguēre** (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 37), *they lacked neither caution nor boldness.*
4. **Alterum alterīus auxiliō eget** (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 7), *each (of these two things) needs the aid of the other.*

**618. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** It has already been shown that verbs denoting *want* regularly take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI.). With what *cases* is **indigeō** construed in the foregoing examples (see **quōrum**, Ex. 1, and **rēbus**, Ex. 2)? What *cases* may be used with **egeō** (see **cōsiliī** and **audāciae**, Ex. 3, and **auxiliō**, Ex. 4)? Frame a special rule for these two verbs.

- 619. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 223; II. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem. 2.

**620. EXAMPLES.**

1. **Id mihi tū abstulistī** (Cic. *Div. in Caecil.* 5, 19), *you have robbed me of that (have taken that away to my hurt).*
2. **Haec illi dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat** (6, 5, 5), *he thought that these allies ought to be detached from him (withdrawn to his injury).*



3. **Mihī timōrem ēripe** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 18), *free me from fear* (take away fear as a favor to me).

**621. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** It has already been shown that verbs of *separation* usually take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI.). Note, however, that, in the foregoing examples, **abstulīstī** (Ex. 1), **dētrahēnda** (Ex. 2), and **ēripe** (Ex. 3) are construed with the *dative* (see: **mihī**, Ex. 1, **illī**, Ex. 2, and **mihī**, Ex. 3). Note, further, that the dative in these examples designates the *person*, and that the action expressed by the verb of separation is viewed as something done *to* or *for* the person affected. Frame a rule for this use of the Dative.

**622. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 229; H. 386, 2; G. 346 (end).

**623. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Nōnnullōs ambitūs Pompējā lēge damnātōs in integrum restituit. 2. Tuāsne injūriās persequar ipse auxili egēns? 3. Populī Rōmānī beneficium mihī per contumēliam ab inimicīs extorquētur. 4. Sī ille nōn fuisset,<sup>1</sup> Agēsilāus Asiam rēgī ēripuisset. 5. Accūsātus capitis absolvitur, multātur tamen pecūniā. 6. Sī quis opis ējus indigēbat, habēbat quod statim daret.

II. 1. Unless you return,<sup>2</sup> we shall condemn you to death. 2. No one of (**ex**) the common people lacked aid against [an enemy] more powerful [than himself]. 3. You have been deprived of life before your time.<sup>3</sup> 4. He seized a shield from a<sup>4</sup> soldier in the rear.<sup>5</sup> 5. And, by Hercules. Sulla, before I knew you,<sup>6</sup> I needed no one.<sup>7</sup> 6. What [punishment] is too severe for<sup>8</sup> men convicted of so heinous a crime?

**624. Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Sīn autem vītam mihī fors adēmerit, hī omnia tibi prō mē persolvent. 2. Summae inīquitātis condemnārī dēbeō nisi vestram vītam meā salūte habeō cārīōrem. 3. Ptolomaeum aliēnārum opum indigentem recēperat. 4. Multī praetereā capitis damnātī exsulēsque convēnerant.

- II. 1. All are at liberty<sup>9</sup> to lay down their arms<sup>10</sup> without risk of injury except [those] condemned<sup>9</sup> for capital offences. 2. This man's army should have been taken from him.<sup>11</sup> 3. This town lacked nothing [that was] serviceable.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *If it had not been for him.*

<sup>2</sup> cf. 598, Exs. 1 and 2.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *Life has been taken away from you before-your-time (immātūrus).*

<sup>4</sup> Use the proper form of *ūnus*.

<sup>5</sup> *ab novissimis.*

<sup>6</sup> Translate: *before you know.*

<sup>7</sup> In the genitive and ablative, *nūllus* (not *nēmō*) must be used for *no one*.

<sup>8</sup> Use *in* with accusative.

<sup>9</sup> Translate: *it is permitted to all except to [those] condemned.*

<sup>10</sup> Translate: *to withdraw from arms.*

<sup>11</sup> Translate: *From this man [his] army was to be taken (pass. periph.).*

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *no serviceable thing.*



## LESSON LXXXI.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES: *Postquam*, *Ubi*, *Ut*, *Simul Atque*; *Cum* (Temporal).

#### 625.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Postquam cōpiās venīre vīdit, flūmen exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit* (2, 5, 4), *when he saw that the forces were advancing, he hastened to convey his army across the river.*
2. *Ubi sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida incendunt* (1, 5, 2), *when they thought that they were ready, they burnt the towns.*
3. *Sed Pompējus, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, sē in castra equō contulit* (Caes. B. C. 3, 94, 5), *but Pompey, when he had seen his cavalry routed, spurred into camp.*
4. *Simul atque sīgna nostra vīdērunt, portās aperuērunt* (Caes. B. C. 1, 18, 2), *as soon as they beheld our standards, they opened their gates.*

626. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples refer to a *definite point of past time*, and that they are introduced by *postquam* (Ex. 1), *ubi* (Ex. 2), *ut* (Ex. 3), and *simul atque* (Ex. 4), respectively. In what *mood and tense* are the verbs of these temporal clauses (see: *vīdit*, Ex. 1, *arbitrātī sunt*, Ex. 2, *vīdit*, Ex. 3, and *vīdērunt*, Ex. 4)? Note, further, that the verb of the temporal clause may be trans-

lated by the *pluperfect* (see *had seen*, Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense of the Verb in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

## 627.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum cīvitās armīs jū̄s suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est** (1, 4, 3), *when the state undertook to maintain its authority by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*
2. **Haec cum flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ējus dextram prēndit** (1, 20, 5), *as he in tears was urging these requests on Caesar, Caesar grasped his hand.*
3. **Diū cum esset pūgnātum, castrīs nostrī potītī sunt** (1, 26, 4), *after a long struggle (when the battle had been fought a long time), our men got possession of the camp.*
4. **Cum trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs . . .** (2, 16, 1), *after marching three days, he learned from prisoners . . .*

**628. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples, like those of **625**, refer to *past time*, but that they are introduced by **cum**. Note, further, that in the present examples the attention of the writer is fixed on the *main action*, and that the temporal clause merely marks in an *incidental* way the time of its occurrence. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in the foregoing temporal clauses (see **cōnārētur**, Ex. 1, **peteret**, Ex. 2, **esset pūgnātum**, Ex. 3, and **fēcisset**, Ex. 4)? Which of these tenses denotes the *same time* as the leading verb? which *time prior*? Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses of Narration.

**629. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION** of Rules framed under **626** and **628**: A. & G. 323, 324, 325; II. 518, n. 1, 521, II., 2; G. 563, 586.

## 630.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaeret, sic reperībat. 2. Ubī lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat<sup>1</sup> sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. 3. Quō cum Catilīna vēnisset, quis eum senātor appellāvit? 4. Caesar, postquam in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōn-

stituit. 5. Cum haesitāret, cum tenērētur, quaesivī quid<sup>2</sup> dubitāret proficisci. 6. Quō ut ventum est, Alexandrīnī trepidantēs in omnēs partēs castrōrum discurrere coepērunt. 7. Quō cum vēnisset,<sup>3</sup> cōgnōscit<sup>1</sup> missum in Hispāniam ā Pompējō Vibullium Rūfum. 8. Simul atque oppidānī in spem auxiliū vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō, arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt.

II. 1. When (**ubī**) the Helvetians had been informed<sup>4</sup> of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 2. Having noted<sup>5</sup> these [facts], he called an assembly<sup>6</sup> [and] severely upbraided them. 3. Caesar on perceiving<sup>7</sup> this withdrew his forces to the nearest hill. 4. When (**cum**) these [ships] were drawing near to Britain, and were in sight<sup>8</sup> from the camp, a storm suddenly arose. 5. As soon as they had recovered<sup>4</sup> from flight, they sent envoys for (**dē**) peace. 6. Having said<sup>5</sup> these things, he swore that he would not return to camp except (**nisi**) [as] victor. 7. On returning<sup>9</sup> thence, he followed the camp of Gajus Claudius Nero.

## 631.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ubī sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit, convocātis eōrum principibus, graviter eōs accūsāt.<sup>1</sup> 2. Cum advesperāsceret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt. 3. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, fugā salutem petere contendērunt. 4. Caesari cum id nūtiātum esset,<sup>3</sup> mātūrat<sup>1</sup> ab urbe proficisci.

II. 1. When he inquired what communities were in arms, he learned as follows. 2. When Caesar arrived there (**eō**), he demanded hostages, arms, [and] slaves. 3. On his departure for Italy, Caesar dispatched Servius Galba with the twelfth legion to (**in**) the Nantuates. 4. In this community two were contending with each other<sup>10</sup> for (**dē**) supremacy; of whom one,<sup>11</sup> as soon as intelligence-was-received<sup>12</sup> of Caesar's arrival, came to him.

<sup>1</sup> See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 3.<sup>2</sup> why (adv. acc.).<sup>3</sup> See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 5.<sup>4</sup> For tense, cf. 625, Ex. 3.<sup>5</sup> Use **cum** with temporal clause.<sup>6</sup> Ablative absolute.<sup>7</sup> Use **postquam**.<sup>8</sup> "were in sight" = *were seen*.<sup>9</sup> Use **ut** with temporal clause.<sup>10</sup> Translate: *between themselves*.<sup>11</sup> **alter**.<sup>12</sup> Use **cōgnōscō** impersonally.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## CUM WITH THE INDICATIVE IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

## 632.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī** (6, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduī were at the head of one party.*
2. **Tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam . . . putābam . . .** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 3), *at the time when I was striving to drive Catiline out of the city . . . I supposed . . .*
3. **Tum cum rēs māgnās permultī amiserant, scīmus fidem concidisse** (Cic. *Manil.* 7, 19), *at the time when a great many had lost large fortunes, we know that there was a financial panic (credit fell prostrate).*
4. **Cum tū haec legēs, illum Rōmae esse oportēbit** (Cic. *Fam.* 12, 30, 5), *by the time this letter reaches you, he will be due in Rome.*

633. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples, unlike those of 627, mark the time of the main action *with definiteness and precision*. What mood does **cum** take under these circumstances (see **vēnit**, Ex. 1, **ēiciēbam**, Ex. 2, **amiserant**, Ex. 3, **legēs**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

## 634.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Factum perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum laudem exercitus meritus vidēbātur** (1, 40, 5), *a trial was made within the memory of our fathers, on which occasion (= and on that occasion) the army appeared to have merited praise.*
2. **Hōc facere apparābant, cum matrēsfamiliae repente prōcurrērunt** (7, 26, 3), *they were getting ready to do this, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth.*
3. **Vix agmen novissimum prōcēsserat, cum Gallī flūmen trānsīre nōn dubitant** (6, 8, 1), *scarcely had the rear advanced, when the Gauls without hesitation crossed the river.*



**635. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples express the *main statement*; in other words, that the temporal clause, although subordinate in *form* (grammatically), is *principal in thought* (logically). What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **vidēbātur**, Ex. 1, **prōcurrērunt**, Ex. 2, **đubitant**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

**636.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **Cum singulās bīnae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī contendēbant** (3, 15, 1), *whenever (i.e., if in any case) two ships had been brought to bear on one, the soldiers would struggle with all their might.*
2. **Cum sē inter turmās insinuāvērunt, dēsiliunt** (4, 33, 1), *whenever (i.e., if in any case) they have worked their way into the squadrons, they leap down.*

**637. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that **cum** in the foregoing examples means *whenever*, and that the temporal clause is equivalent to the *protasis of a general supposition*. What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **circumsteterant**, Ex. 1, **insinuāvērunt**, Ex. 2)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

**638. CAUTION:** It has been shown in the preceding lesson (**627, 628, 629**) that in *temporal clauses of narration*, **cum** with the *imperfect* or *pluperfect tense* commonly takes the *subjunctive*: is this true of the temporal clauses illustrated in the present lesson (see: **ēcībābam**, **632**, Ex. 2; **āmīserant**, **632**, Ex. 3; **vidēbātur**, **634**, Ex. 1; **circumsteterant**, **636**, Ex. 1)?

**639. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION** of Rules framed under **633, 635, 637**: A. & G. 325, *a, b, c*, 309, *c*; H. 521, I., II., 1; Ġ. 582, 585.

**640.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Sed tum cum illum exterminārī volēbam, cōs infirmōs sine illō fore<sup>1</sup> putābam. 2. Neque vērō, cum aliquid

mandārat, cōnfectum putābat. 3. Dumnacus īnstruit aciem, quae suīs esset<sup>2</sup> equitibus praesidiō, cum repente legiōnēs in cōspectum veniunt. 4. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō, māgnā spē et laetitiā omnium discēssum est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Ad equōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt. 6. Repentīnā ruīnā pars ējus turris concidit, cum hostēs inermēs sē ūiversī prōripiunt.

II. 1. The legions were a mile distant, when Scipio, fearing that<sup>4</sup> he should lose the town, led out all his forces. 2. Whenever our cavalry made-a-raid<sup>5</sup> on the fields, he would-let-loose<sup>6</sup> his chariot men. 3. When I was-striving-to-ex-pel<sup>7</sup> him from the city, I had this in view. 4. O glorious day,<sup>8</sup> when I shall depart to join<sup>9</sup> that divine company of spirits! 5. But whenever the supply of this class fails,<sup>10</sup> they have recourse to the sacrifice of the innocent. 6. And now Sulla was marking out the camp, when the horsemen announced that Jugurtha had encamped.

## 641.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cum quaequam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. 2. Jamque ā Labiēnō nōn longē aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt. 3. Ō praeclārum diem, cum ex hāc turbā et conluviōne discēdam!

II. 1. [He] who does not ward off injury from his [friends] whenever he can, acts unjustly. 2. He had shaken the enemy at the first attack, when suddenly a new army bursts into view. 3. In other matters, loss is experienced at-the-moment (**tum**) when disaster comes.

<sup>1</sup> fore = futūrōs esse.

<sup>2</sup> Account for mood and tense.

<sup>3</sup> the assembly dispersed; cf. Exs.,

522.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 534, Ex. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Use the pluperfect.

<sup>6</sup> For tense, cf. 636, Ex. 1.

<sup>7</sup> For tense, cf. 632, Ex. 2.

<sup>8</sup> Use the accusative.

<sup>9</sup> Express "to join" by **in** with accusative.

<sup>10</sup> Use the perfect tense.

## LESSON LXXXIII.

Cum IN CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.  
ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

## 642.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Aedui, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt** (1, 11, 2), *the Aedui, since they could not defend themselves, sent envoys to Caesar.*
2. **Quae cum ita sint, vestra tecta dēfendite** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 12, 26), *this being the case (since these things are thus), defend your dwellings.*
3. **Cum prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum nihil negāvit** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 5, 12), *although at first he had begun to reply defiantly, at the end he denied nothing.*

**643. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the clauses introduced by **cum** in Exs. 1 and 2 express *cause*; what *mood* do they take (see **possent**, Ex. 1, and **sint**, Ex. 2)? Note that the clause introduced by **cum** in Ex. 3 expresses *concession*; what *mood* does it take (see **coepisset**)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in clauses denoting Cause or Concession.

**644. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 326; H. 515, III., 517; G. 581, III., 1, 2.

## 645.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ō terram illam beātam quae hunc virum excēperit** (Cic. *Mil.* 38, 195), *O happy the land which shall receive (shall have received) this man!*
2. **Ō praeclārum diem cum in illud dīvīnum animōrum concilium proficiscar** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 23, 84), *O glorious day, when I shall depart to join that divine company of spirits!*

**646. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that **terram** (Ex. 1) and **diem** (Ex. 2) are used in *exclamations*; in what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used in Exclamations.

647. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 240, *d*; H. 381; G. 340.

## 648.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quae cum ita sint, patrēs cōscrip̄tī, vōbīs populi Rōmānī praesidia nōn dēsunt. 2. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt: hīc tamen vīvit. 3. Militēs, cum frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt. 4. Ō mē miserum, ō mē infēlicem! revocāre tū mē in patriam potuīstī, ego tē in patriā retinēre nōn poterō? 5. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adjūxerant. 6. Cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostīum concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant.

II. 1. Notwithstanding this,<sup>1</sup> I shall nevertheless make peace with you if you make reparation<sup>2</sup> to the Aedui for (dē) injuries. 2. Verily, if this man's comrades follow him,<sup>3</sup> [how] happy [shall] we [be], [how] fortunate the commonwealth! 3. It is a very easy matter,<sup>4</sup> as (cum) we excel all in valor, to obtain control of all Gaul. 4. Not being able<sup>5</sup> to sustain the assaults of our men, they betook themselves to their baggage and wagons. 5. O wretched lot! 6. Although the Suebi had not been able to drive out the Ubii, they nevertheless compelled them to pay tribute.<sup>6</sup>

## 649.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Illi, cum neque vī contendere neque clam trānsire possent, reverti sē in suās sc̄dēs simulāvērunt. 2. At hostēs, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs<sup>7</sup> habērent, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt. 3. O praeclārum mūnus aetātis, sī quidem id aufert ā nōbīs quod est in adulēscentiā vitiōsissimum!

II. 1. The Helvetians, because (cum) they knew that he had crossed the river in a single day, sent ambassadors to him. 2. Caesar, although there was no doubt whatever<sup>8</sup> about the purpose of his adversaries, sent back the legion to Pompey. 3. O

wretched old man, in-that-he<sup>9</sup> did not see that death ought to be disregarded!

<sup>1</sup> although these [things] are so.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 598, Ex. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Trans.: if his comrades shall have followed this [man].

<sup>4</sup> Translate: it is very easy.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: since they were not able.

<sup>6</sup> "Compelled them to pay tribute" = made them tributary to themselves.

<sup>7</sup> A. & G. 247, c; H. 417, n. 2.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: it was by no means (minimē) doubtful.

<sup>9</sup> quī (= cum is) with subjunctive.



## LESSON LXXXIV.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH Priusquam AND Antequam.

#### 650.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. Priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiacum ad sē vocārī jubet (1, 19, 3), before taking any action, he gave orders for Divitiacum to be summoned before him.
2. Nec prius<sup>1</sup> sunt vīsī quam<sup>1</sup> castrīs appropīnquārent (6, 37, 2), and they were not seen until they were close upon the camp.
3. Antequam dē meō adventū audīre potuissent, in Macedoniam perrēxī (Cic. Planc. 41, 98), before they could hear of my coming, I proceeded to Macedonia.
4. Neque prius<sup>1</sup> fugere dēstitērunt quam<sup>1</sup> ad flūmēn pervēnērunt (1, 53, 1), nor did they cease to flee until they had reached the river.
5. Omnia ante<sup>1</sup> facta sunt quam<sup>1</sup> iste Ītaliā attigit (Cic. Ferr. 2, 2, 66, 161), every thing was done before he reached Italy.

651. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples are in *narration* and that they are introduced by **priusquam** (Exs. 1, 2, 4) or **antequam** (Exs. 3, 5). Note that the verb of the temporal clause in Exs. 1-3 is in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* tense; in what mood is it (see: cōnārētur, Ex. 1, appropīnquārent, Ex. 2, potuissent, Ex. 3)? What other temporal particle takes the same mood with these tenses in narra-

tion (see Exs. in 627)? Note that the temporal clauses in Exs. 4 and 5 mark the time of the main action with *definiteness* and *precision*; what *mood* do they take (see **pervēnērunt**, Ex. 4, and **attigit**, Ex. 5)? What other temporal particle takes the same mood under the same circumstances (see 632, Ex. 1)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with **priusquam** and **antequam** in Narration.

## 652.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ante quam prō L. Mūrēnā dīcere īnstituō, prō mē ipsō pauca dīcam** (Cic. *Mur.* 1, 2), *before I undertake to speak in behalf of Lucius Murena, I shall say a few words in my own behalf.*
2. **Nunquam conquiēscam ante quam illōrum ratiōnēs percēperō** (Cic. *de Orat.* 3, 36, 145), *I shall never rest until I have learned their methods.*
3. **Is videlicet ante quam veniat in Pontum, lītterās ad Pompējum mittet** (Cic. *Agr.* 2, 20, 53), *doubtless before going to Pontus (i.e., that he may the more effectually accomplish his purpose in going to Pontus) he will send a letter to Pompey.*

**653. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples refer to the *future*; what *moods* and *tenses* may **priusquam** and **antequam** take under these circumstances (see: **īnstituō**, Ex. 1, **percēperō**, Ex. 2, **veniat**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Moods and Tenses to be used with **priusquam** and **antequam** in Temporal Clauses referring to the Future.

**654. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION** of Rules framed under 651 and 653: A. & G. 327, a; H. 520, I, 1, 2, II.; G. 576, 579.

## 655.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Nec prius ille est vacuus relictus locus quam finis est pugnandi factus.* 2. *Prius ad hostium castra pervenit quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent.* 3. *Prius quam de ceteris rebus respondeo, de amicitia pauca dicam.* 4. *Caesar priusquam eodem est profectus, luna visa est.* 5. *Ducentis annis antequam Romam caperent, in Italiam*

Gallī dēscendērunt. 6. Nōn dēfatīgābor ante quam illōrum ancipitēs viās percēperō.

II. 1. Nor did they cease to pursue<sup>2</sup> until they drew near to the gates. 2. He arrived before Pompey could be aware of [it]. 3. For the purpose of getting information on these points<sup>3</sup> before making<sup>4</sup> the trial, he sent forward Volusenus with a ship of war. 4. Before I come back to the main question, I will say a few [words] about myself. 5. A few [words] must be said by way of explanation<sup>5</sup> before I begin.<sup>6</sup> 6. Nor was there an end of butchering. 7. The Sulla had sated all his [followers] with riches.

## 656.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nāvibus eorum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt. 2. Nōn prius vidit turmās Jūliānās quam suōs caedi sēnsit. 3. Ante quam dē rē publicā dicam ea quae dicenda<sup>7</sup> hōc tempore arbitror, expōnam vōbīs breviter cōnsilium et profectiōnis et reversiōnis meae.

II. 1. They begged Caesar to send them aid before the king should collect a force. 2. I shall make a point of coming<sup>8</sup> to you before I pass quite out of your recollection. 3. The ambassadors did not depart until they had seen<sup>9</sup> the soldiers embarked on [board] the ships.

<sup>1</sup> The parts of **priusquam** and **antequam** may be separated by the intervention of other words.

<sup>2</sup> Trans.: *make an end of pursuing*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate: *for these [things] to be ascertained*.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 650, Ex. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *a few [things] must be made clear*.

<sup>6</sup> *i.e.*, in order that I may begin satisfactorily; cf. 652, Ex. 3.

<sup>7</sup> *sc. esse*.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *I shall bestow pains that I may come*.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 650, Ex. 4.

## LESSON LXXXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH **Dum** AND **Quoad**.—PRICE.

657.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum** **Caesar morātur**, ad eum lēgātī vērunt (4, 22, 1), *while Caesar was delaying, envoys came to him.*
2. **Quoad** **vīvēs**, nunquam tibi redditam grātiā putāveris (Sall. Jug. 110, 4), *as long as you (shall) live, never consider yourself fully requited (that requital has been rendered to you).*
3. [**Ferrum**] **retinuit quoad renūtiātum est vīcisse Boeōtōs** (Nep. Epam. 9, 3), *he kept the sword in place until it was reported that the Boeotians were victorious (had conquered).*
4. **Dum** **nāvēs eō convenirent**, **expectāvit** (4, 23, 4), *he waited for (until) the ships to come (should come) up (i.e., that the ships might come up before he attempted a landing).*
5. **Exercēbātur ad eum finem quoad complectī posset atque contendere** (Nep. Epam. 2, 4), *he trained himself to the end that he might be able (until he should be able) to grapple and fight.*

**658. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in Exs. 1–3, the temporal clauses introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1) and **quoad** (Exs. 2 and 3) express *time merely*; what *mood* do they take (see: **morātur**, Ex. 1, **vīvēs**, Ex. 2, **renūtiātum est**, Ex. 3)? Note that, in Exs. 4 and 5, the temporal clauses introduced by these particles express *purpose* as well as time; what *mood* do they take (see: **convenirent**, Ex. 4, and **posset**, Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with **dum** and **quoad**.

**659. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 328 (to the period); II. 519, I., II., 1, 2; G. 571, 573, 574.

**660. OBSERVATION:** Note that, in Ex. 1, **dum** is used with the present indicative (see **morātur**) although *past time* is referred to.

**661. REFERENCES:** A. & G. 276, e; II. 467, 4; G. 572.



## 662.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Vīgintī talentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem Īsocratēs vēdidit** (Plin. *N. H.* 7, 31), *Isocrates sold a single oration for twenty talents.*
2. **Emāmus vel māgnō** (Cic. *Att.* 13, 29, 3), *let us buy even [if we have to buy] at a high price.*
3. **Līs aestimātur centum talentīs** (Nep. *Tim.* 3, 5), *the fine is fixed at a hundred talents.*
4. **Nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit**<sup>1</sup> (Sall. *Cat.* 58, 15), *none but the victor exchanges war for peace.*

**663.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **vēdidit** (Ex. 1) is a verb of *selling*, **emāmus** (Ex. 2), a verb of *buying*, **aestimātur** (Ex. 3), a verb of *valuing*, and **mūtāvit** (Ex. 4), a verb of *exchanging*; by what *case* is the *price* denoted (see: **talentīs**, Ex. 1, **māgnō**, Ex. 2, **talentīs**, Ex. 3, **pāce**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Case of words denoting Price.

**664.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252; H. 422; G. 404.

## 665.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ēmit tantī quantī Pŷthius voluit** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 14, 59), *he bought at Pythius's own price* (for as much as Pythius wished).
2. **Vēndō nōn plūris, fortasse etiam minōris** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 12, 51), *I sell no dearer, perhaps even cheaper.*

**666.** OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **ēmit** (Ex. 1) and **vēndō** (Ex. 2) are verbs of *buying* and *selling* respectively; and that the *price* is here expressed by **tantī** (Ex. 1), **quantī** (Ex. 1), **plūris** (Ex. 2), and **minōris** (Ex. 2). In what *case* are these words? Frame a special rule for the constructions here illustrated.

**667.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252, *d*; H. 405; G. 380.

## 668.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Dum ea geruntur. iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statione erant. Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem vidērī.
2. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.
3. Dīcit quantī cūjusque agrī

decumās vēndiderit. 4. Quot minīs eam ēmit? Quadrāgintā minīs. 5. Ipse, equō vulnerātō, dējectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit. 6. Quod nōn opus est, asse cārum. 7. Vēndō meum minōris quam ille. 8. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur dum jūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. 9. Dum haec geruntur, nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.

II. 1. Nor did they cease to pursue<sup>2</sup> until the horsemen had utterly routed the enemy.<sup>3</sup> 2. But to wait until the forces of the enemy should be augmented, he thought was the height of folly.<sup>4</sup> 3. For how much did he buy her? Cheap.<sup>5</sup> 4. Would a good man buy<sup>6</sup> for a denarius<sup>7</sup> what is worth a thousand denarii<sup>8</sup>? 5. While he was delaying a few days near (ad) Vesontio, great alarm suddenly took possession of the army. 6. That sufficient time might intervene for the soldiers to assemble,<sup>9</sup> he answered the envoys . . . 7. We cannot buy for less. 8. This penalty was fixed at fifty talents.

## 669.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum in Santonōs Helvētīi perveniant. 2. Quae tribuerat beneficia tam diū meminerat quoad ille grātus erat quī accēperat. 3. Hōc nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quenlibet amplissimum trīumphum. 4. Eōrum salutem civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre nōn potest.

II. 1. Wait until you can know what you have to do.<sup>10</sup> 2. While they were getting<sup>11</sup> these things together,<sup>11</sup> about six thousand men made haste to [reach] the Rhine. 3. I did my utmost<sup>12</sup> to dispose of<sup>13</sup> the tithes at the highest possible price.

<sup>1</sup> The perfect is here used to express a general truth, and must be translated by the present.

<sup>2</sup> Trans.: *make an end of pursuing*.

<sup>3</sup> Trans.: *drove the enemy headlong*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate: *he thought to be of the greatest folly*.

<sup>5</sup> *vīlī* (sc. *pretiō*), *at a low rate*.

<sup>6</sup> *Ematne*?

<sup>7</sup> See *dēnārius*, Latin-English vocab.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: *what is of a thousand denarii*; for form of genitive (*dēnāriūm*), see: A. & G. 40, *e*; II. 52, 3; G. 29, 3; for mood of verb, see Exs. in 573.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 657, Ex. 4.

<sup>10</sup> cf. 317, Ex. 1.

<sup>11</sup> Express passively.

<sup>12</sup> Translate: *Effort was bestowed by me with the greatest energy*.

<sup>13</sup> *ut* with subjunctive.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

PLACE FROM WHICH. — PLACE TO WHICH. — PLACE  
WHERE.

## 670.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab urbe proficiscī** (1, 7, 1), *to set out from the city.*
2. **Cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent** (1, 2, 1), *he persuaded his countrymen to emigrate.*
3. **Ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (1, 8, 1), *they had come together from the province.*
4. **Brundisiō veniēbant** (Caes. B. C. 3, 25, 1), *they came from Brundisium.*
5. **Athēnīs vēnimus** (Cic. Att. 5, 12, 1), *we came from Athens.*
6. **Domō dūxerat** (1, 53, 4), *he had brought from home.*
7. **Rūre [redīre]** (Ter. Eun. 3, 5, 63), *to return from the country.*

**671. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in Exs. 1–3, which illustrate the common usage, *place from which* is denoted by the *ablative with a preposition* (see: **ab urbe**, Ex. 1, **dē fīnibus**, Ex. 2, **ex prōvinciā**, Ex. 3). Note, however, that in Exs. 4 and 5, where the substantive denoting ‘place from which’ is the name of a town, the *ablative without a preposition* is used (see: **Brundisiō**, Ex. 4, and **Athēnīs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, *have no preposition* (see: **domō**, Ex. 6, and **rūre**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place From Which.

**672. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 258, a; H. 412, I, II, 1; G. 411, Rem. 12.

## 673.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad eum locum vēnit** (1, 49, 1), *he came to that place.*
2. **In Galliam contendit** (1, 7, 1), *he hastens into Gaul.*
3. **Rōmam profectus** (6, 12, 5), *having set out for Rome.*
4. **Corfinium pervenit** (Caes. B. C. 1, 15, 6), *he comes to Corfinium.*
5. **Domum revertērunt** (2, 29, 1), *they returned home.*
6. **Domōs suās invitant** (Sall. Jug. 66, 3), *they invite to their homes.*
7. **Abī rūs** (Pl. Most. 1, 1, 63), *go into the country.*

**674. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place to which* is denoted by the *accusative with a preposition* (see: **ad locum**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliam**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4, where the substantive denoting 'place to which' is the name of a *town*, the *accusative without a preposition* is used (see: **Rōmam**, Ex. 3, and **Corfinium**, Ex. 4). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, *have no preposition* (see: **domum**, Ex. 5, **domōs**, Ex. 6, **rūs**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place To Which.

**675. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 258, *b*; H. 380, I., II., 2, 1); G. 410.

**676.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **In eōrum fīnibus** (1, 1, 4), *in their territories*.
2. **Erat in Galliā legiō ūna** (1, 7, 2), *there was in Gaul one legion*.
3. **Ut Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāginī rēgēs** (Nep. *Hann.* 7, 4), *as at Rome consuls, so at Carthage kings*.
4. **Remanēre Brundisiī** (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 25, 2), *to stay at Brundisium*.
5. **Tum māximum magistrātum Thēbīs obtinēbat** (Nep. *Pel.* 3, 2), *at that time he held the highest magistracy at Thebes*.
6. **Domī militiaeque, marī atque terrā** (Sall. *Cat.* 53, 2), *at home and abroad, on land and sea*.
7. **Bellī domīque** (Sall. *Jug.* 41, 7), *in war and in peace*.
8. **Locus humī dēpressus** (Sall. *Cat.* 53, 3), *a place underground (sunk in the ground)*.
9. **An rūrī cēnsēs tē esse** (Pl. *Most.* 1, 1, 7), *do you think you're in the country?*

**677. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that, in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place where* is denoted by the *ablative with a preposition* (see **in finibus**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliā**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3–5, where the substantive denoting place is the name of a *town*, a *locative* form is used *without a preposition* (see: **Rōmae** and **Carthāginī**, Ex. 3, **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that in the first and second declensions singular, this *locative* is the same in form as the *genitive* (see **Rōmae**, Ex. 3, and **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4); and that, in the third declension and in the plural, it is the same as the *dative* or *ablative* (see **Carthāginī**, Ex. 3, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note,

further, that the *preposition* is not used with the *ablatives* **marī** and **terrā** (Ex. 6); also with the *locatives* **domī** (Exs. 6 and 7), **mīlītiaē** (Ex. 6), **bellī** (Ex. 7), **humī** (Ex. 8), and **rūrī** (Ex. 9). Frame a rule for the expression of Place Where.

**678.** REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, *c, d*; II. 425, I, II, 426, 2; G. 412, Rem. 1.



## LESSON LXXXVII.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

**679.**

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. 2. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt. 3. Interim Diōn Syrācūsīs interfectus est. 4. In Galliā morārī cōstituit. 5. Id nōs faciēmus, cum tū domō proficiscēns vēneris Lemnum.<sup>1</sup> 6. Dionysius tyrannus Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat. 7. Nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possum. 8. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. 9. Celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt. 10. Diem quō Rōmā sīs exitūrus, cūrā ut sciam. 11. Armōrum māgnā multitudine dē mūrō in fossam jactā, pāce sunt ūsī. 12. Nunc rūs abibō. 13. Illī erat animus bellī ingēns, domī modicus. 14. Xerxēs terrā marīque bellum intulit Graeciae. 15. Vārus venientem Uticam Tūberōnem portū atque oppidō prohibet. 16. Jacet humī. 17. Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur paucīs<sup>2</sup> īstitūta mājōrum domī mīlītiaēque disserere. 18. Rūre hūc advenit.

II. 1. Having gone out from the camp, they hastened to the Rhine. 2. Caesar came to Brundisium. 3. When this battle had been reported<sup>3</sup> across the Rhine, the Suebi began

to return home. 4. He thinks he's in the country. 5. Complete control of public affairs,<sup>4</sup> both civil<sup>5</sup> and military,<sup>5</sup> was intrusted to Alcibiades. 6. Oedipus was born at Thebes. 7. A certain Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquini. 8. His services in the battle before (*apud*) Sena were highly<sup>6</sup> valued. 9. There were but two routes by which they could go out from home. 10. Neither by land nor by sea had the enemy been able to prove a match<sup>7</sup> [for them]. 11. The archers came from Crete<sup>1</sup> and Lacedaemon. 12. When (*cum*) his arms had been seized<sup>8</sup> at Capua and his slaves seen at Naples, he abandoned his design. 13. The Allobroges are on their way home. 14. Eporedorix had very great influence<sup>9</sup> at home.

## 680.

## Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Uxorem domo secum duxerat.* 2. *Multa populus Romanus domi militiaeque, mari atque terra, praeclara facinora iecit.* 3. *Sed is natus et omnem pueritiam Arpini altus est.* 4. *Arcem Syracusis quam munierat Dionysius ad urbem obsidendam, a fundamentis disiecit.* 5. *Eorum qui domum redierunt census habitus est.* 6. *Quibus rebus Romanam nuntiatis, tantus repente terror invasit ut consul ex urbe profugeret.* 7. *Athenis profectus est.*

II. 1. I am able to sleep on the ground. 2. He learns that the envoys have been sent home in advance. 3. A letter was brought from Athens for Archias,<sup>10</sup> who held the chief magistracy in Thebes. 4. In the consulship of Marcus Claudius and Lucius Furius,<sup>3</sup> envoys came from Rome to Carthage. 5. A list had been made out [showing] how many<sup>11</sup> of them had left their homes.<sup>12</sup> 6. The-people-of-Zama meantime sent envoys to Caesar at Utica.<sup>13</sup> 7. He is very powerful at home.

<sup>1</sup> The names of small islands have the same construction as the names of towns.

<sup>2</sup> *briefly.*

<sup>3</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>4</sup> *totam rem publica.*

<sup>5</sup> Translate: *at home and in war.*

<sup>6</sup> A. & G. 252, a; H. 404; G. 379.

<sup>7</sup> "to prove a match" = *to be equal.*

<sup>8</sup> In what mood? cf. Exs. under 627.

<sup>9</sup> Translate: *was of very great influence.*

<sup>10</sup> See Lesson LXXII., foot-note 7.

<sup>11</sup> "how many" = *what number.*

<sup>12</sup> Trans.: *had gone out from home.*

<sup>13</sup> Trans.: *to Caesar to Utica.*

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE: DECLARATORY AND  
IMPERATIVE SENTENCES.

681.

## EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Mōns tenētur**, *the mountain is held.*  
 b. **Cōnsidius dicit montem tenērī** (1, 22, 2), *Considius says that the mountain is held.*
2. { a. [**Nōs**] **parātī sumus**, *we are ready.*  
 b. **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt** (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
3. { a. **Helvētiī castra mōvērunt**, *the Helvetians have broken up their camp.*  
 b. **Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse** (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
4. { a. **Ego id quod in Nerviiis fēcī faciam**, *I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervii.*  
 b. **Caesar respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum** (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

682. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations, give the *exact language* of the *original speaker* as it came from his lips (see Exs. 1 and 4), as it passed through his mind without being actually spoken (see Ex. 2), or as it was communicated through messengers or letters (see Ex. 3). Note, further, that the examples marked *b* show the *transformations* which the language of the original speaker undergoes when it is *reported*. The examples marked *a* illustrate what is called *Direct Discourse*; the examples marked *b* illustrate what is called *Indirect Discourse*. Define Direct Discourse. Define Indirect Discourse.

683. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 335; H. 522, 1; G. 651.

## 681.

## EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Mōns tenētur**, *the mountain is held.*  
 b. **Cōnsidius dicit montem tenērī** (1, 22, 2), *Considius says that the mountain is held.*
2. { a. [**Nōs**] **parātī sumus**, *we are ready.*  
 b. **Sē parātōs esse** arbitrātī sunt (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
3. { a. **Helvētiī castra mōvērunt**, *the Helvetians have broken up their camp.*  
 b. **Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse** (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
4. { a. **Ego id quod in Nerviiīs fēcī faciam**, *I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervii.*  
 b. **Caesar respondit sē id quod in Nerviiīs fēcisset factūrum** (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

**684. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the examples marked *a* illustrate *declaratory sentences* in which the principal verb is in the *indicative mood* (see: **tenētur**, Ex. 1, *a*; **sumus**, Ex. 2, *a*; **mōvērunt**, Ex. 3, *a*; **faciam**, Ex. 4, *a*) and its *subject* in the *nominative case* (see: **mōns**, Ex. 1, *a*; **nōs**, Ex. 2, *a*; **Helvētiī**, Ex. 3, *a*; **ego**, Ex. 4, *a*).

Note, further, that, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, the *indicative* has been changed to the *infinitive* (see: **tenērī**, Ex. 1, *b*; **esse**, Ex. 2, *b*; **mōvisse**, Ex. 3, *b*; **factūrum**, Ex. 4, *b*), and that the *nominative* has been changed to the *accusative* (see: **montem**, Ex. 1, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 2, *b*; **Helvētiōs**, Ex. 3, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Note, finally, in Ex. 4, that the verb of the *subordinate* clause has been changed from the *indicative* of the Direct Discourse (see **fēcī**, Ex. 4, *a*) to the *subjunctive* in the Indirect (see **fēcisset**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Frame a rule for the constructions to be used in Declaratory Sentences of Indirect Discourse.

**685. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 336; H. 523, I., 524; G. 653.



686.

## EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Adī cīvitātēs**, *visit the communities.*  
 b. **Huic imperat adeat cīvitātēs** (4, 21, 8), *he ordered this man to visit the communities.*
2. { a. **Nōlī hostis populō Rōmānō fierī**, *do not become an enemy to the Roman people.*  
 b. **Lēgātōs ad Bocchum mittit postulātum nē hostis populō Rōmānō fieret** (Sall. Jug. 83, 1), *he sent ambassadors to Bocchus to urge him not to become an enemy to the Roman people.*

**687. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations contain *imperative* expressions (see: **adī**, Ex. 1, *a*, and **nōlī fierī**, Ex. 2, *a*). Note, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, that these imperative expressions are denoted by the *subjunctive* (see: **adeat**, Ex. 1, *b*, and **nē fieret**, Ex. 2, *b*). Frame a rule for Imperative Expressions in Indirect Discourse.

**688. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 339; H. 523, III.; G. 655.

**689. NOTE:** The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent infinitives (see **466** and **467**, Lesson LIX.); the Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent subjunctives (see **439-442**, Lesson LV.). But see, also: H. 525, 1; G. 657.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRINCIPLES.

## 690.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Aeduīs ego obsidēs nōn reddam. 2. Ariovistus respondit: Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse. 3. Mihī ea rēs cūrae erit. 4. Caesar pollicitus est sibī eam rem cūrae futūram. 5. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs<sup>1</sup> exīstimābant. 6. Intellegimus eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse. 7. Lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum<sup>2</sup> convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse. 8. Hōc<sup>3</sup> est gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō<sup>4</sup> quidem querī audent. 9. Divitiacus respondit: hōc esse graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī audērent. 10. Cum volēs, congregere. 11. Ariovistus respondit: cum vellet, congregerētur. 12. Ariovistus respondit: sē nōn sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret.

II. 1. No one has [ever] contended with me without [meeting] his own destruction. 2. Ariovistus made answer that no one had [ever] contended with him without [meeting] his own destruction. 3. I shall wage war neither against<sup>5</sup> the Aedui nor against their allies. 4. Ariovistus made answer that he should wage war neither against the Aedui nor against their allies. 5. Caesar observed that the Sequani were gazing on the ground. 6. What business<sup>6</sup> has Caesar in my Gaul, which I conquered in war?<sup>7</sup> 7. I am at a loss to understand<sup>8</sup> what business Caesar has in my Gaul, which I conquered in war. 8. Ariovistus answered that he was at a loss to understand what business

Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war. 9. Restore the hostages which you have [received] from the Aedui. 10. Caesar sent ambassadors to him [who were authorized to demand] that he should restore the hostages which he had [received] from the Aedui.

### 691. Supplementary Exercises.

NOTE: In the following sentences, restore to the direct form the passages in indirect discourse.

I. 1. Animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent. 2. Lēgātī ab Aeduīs veniēbant questum<sup>2</sup>: sēsē nē obsidibus<sup>4</sup> quidem datīs pācem redīmere potuisse. 3. Caesar honoris Divitiaci causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit. 4. Ad haec Q. Mārcius respondit: ab armīs discēdant,<sup>9</sup> Rōmam supplicēs proficiscantur.<sup>9</sup> 5. Aduātuci lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: nē sē armīs dēspoliāret; sibī omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs; ā quibus sē dēfendere trādītis armīs nōn possent.

II. 1. Ariovistus answered that the Aedui, inasmuch as they had been defeated, had become subject to him. 2. Caesar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus [who were commissioned to demand] that he should bring no more men<sup>10</sup> across the Rhine into Gaul. 3. Nor did they think that men of hostile disposition would refrain from injury.

<sup>1</sup> sc. esse.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 381.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of cause.

<sup>4</sup> See Lesson LXVIII., foot-note 8.

<sup>5</sup> bellum inferre with dative.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Lesson LIII., foot-note 7.

<sup>7</sup> "In war" = by means of war.

<sup>8</sup> Translate: it seems strange to me.

<sup>9</sup> The subjunctive is here in a primary tense, although the leading verb **respondit** is in a secondary tense; this frequently happens in indirect discourse.

<sup>10</sup> Trans.: not any (nē quam) multitude of men more (amplius).

## LESSON XC.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

692.

EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet,** *if that man wants anything of me, he ought to come to me.*  
 b. Ariovistus respondit: **sī quid ille sē velit,<sup>1</sup> illum ad sē venīre oportēre** (1, 34, 2), *Ariovistus replied that, if that man wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him.*
2. { a. **Sī quid petere vultis, ab armīs discēdite,** *if you wish to ask for anything, lay down your arms.*  
 b. Mārcius respondit: **sī quid petere velint,<sup>1</sup> ab armīs discēdant<sup>1</sup>** (Sall. Cat. 34, 1), *Marcus replied that, if they wished to ask for anything, they must lay down their arms.*
3. { a. **Sī quid mihi opus esset, ego vēnissem,** *if I were in need of anything, I should have come myself.*  
 b. Ariovistus respondit: **sī quid ipsī opus esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse** (1, 34, 2), *Ariovistus replied that, if he were in need of anything, he should have come himself.*
4. { a. **Id sī fiet, māgnō cum periculō erit,** *if this happens (shall happen), it will be attended with great danger.*  
 b. **Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō futūrum** (1, 10, 2), *he saw clearly that, if this should happen, it would be attended with great danger.*
5. { a. **Sī id ita fēceris, populō Rōmānō amīcitiā tēcum erit,** *if you do (shall have done) this, you will have the friendship of the Roman people.*  
 b. Ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: **sī id ita fēcisset, populō Rōmānō amīcitiā cum eō futūram** (1, 35, 1 and 4), *Caesar sent ambassadors to him, who were commissioned to say that, if he should do this, he would have the friendship of the Roman people.*

6. { a. **Voluptās quidem, sī ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēdat dīgnitātī**, *indeed, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.*
- b. **Voluptātem quidem, sī ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēssūram arbitror dīgnitātī** (Cic. *Fin.* 3, 1, 1), *indeed, I think that, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.*

693. NOTE: The foregoing examples involve no new principles; they merely illustrate the application of the principles of Indirect Discourse to Conditional Sentences.

## 694.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī iterum experīri vultis, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre. 2. Ariovistus respondit: sī iterum experīri velint,<sup>1</sup> sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre. 3. Nōlī proelium committere nisi meae cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae erunt. 4. Labiēnō erat praeceptum ā Caesare: nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent.<sup>2</sup> ( 5. Caesar profectus est in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsiliū cēpissent, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra venīrent. 6. Titūrius clāmītābat: Caesarem profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. ) 7. Aeduīs ego bellum nōn īferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit. 8. Ariovistus respondit: Aeduīs sē bellum inlātūrum nōn esse, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset. ( 9. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē agere cum eō; utī aut conloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. )

II. 1. If Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried their arms into<sup>3</sup> Italy. 2. It was evident that, if Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried<sup>4</sup> their arms into Italy. 3. Unless you

withdraw<sup>5</sup> your army from these regions, I shall regard you as (*prō*) an enemy. 4. Ariovistus answered that, unless Caesar should withdraw his army from these regions, he should regard him as an enemy. 5. If you wish to enjoy peace, it is unreasonable to object to the tribute. 6. Ariovistus answered that, if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unreasonable to object to the tribute. 7. If you want anything, return on the thirteenth of April.<sup>6</sup> 8. He told the ambassadors in reply,<sup>7</sup> to return on the thirteenth of April if they wanted anything.

## 695.

## Supplementary Exercises.

NOTE: In the following sentences, restore to the direct form the passages in indirect discourse.

I. 1. Caesar respondit: si iudicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam. 2. Ariovistus respondit: si discēssisset<sup>8</sup> Caesar, māgnō sē illum praemiō remunerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ējus labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum. 3. Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent adlāti, exīstimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse ut<sup>9</sup> oppidum āmitterētur.

II. 1. If the flight of the Gauls disquiets any, these can learn, if they take the trouble to inquire,<sup>10</sup> that Ariovistus conquered more by craft than by valor. 2. Caesar took them severely to task [saying that] if the flight of the Gauls disquieted any, these could learn, if they should take the trouble to inquire, that Ariovistus had conquered more by craft than by valor. 3. Most people think that Hamilcar, if he had lived longer, would have carried<sup>4</sup> his arms into Italy.

<sup>1</sup> cf. foot-note 9, preceding lesson.

<sup>2</sup> Note that, in accordance with the law of sequence of tenses, the future perfect *vīsaē erunt* (sent. 3) has become the pluperfect subjunctive *vīsaē essent* after the secondary tense *erat praecēptum*: II. 525, 2.

<sup>3</sup> *arma inferre* with dative.

<sup>4</sup> cf. *fuisse captūrōs*, sent. 6, preceding exercise.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 692, Ex. 4.

<sup>6</sup> *ad Idūs Aprīlīs* or *ad Id. Aprīl.*

See *Idūs* in the general vocab. Note that *Aprīlīs* is here an adjective in the accusative plural agreeing with *Idūs*.

<sup>7</sup> *Lēgātīs respondit*.

<sup>8</sup> cf. foot-note 2.

<sup>9</sup> *futūrum fuisse ut āmitterētur* is a periphrastic expression for the fut. pass. infin. of *āmittō*; translate: *a great many thought that the town would have been lost*.

<sup>10</sup> Translate: *if they shall inquire*.

## LESSON XCI.

NOTE: In this and the following lessons on formation, attention is confined to such modes of formation as are easily understood, and are copiously illustrated in the vocabulary of this book.

## FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES.

## I. NAMES OF AGENTS.

696.

## EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	NAMES OF AGENTS.
1. $\sqrt{\text{duc-}}$ , <i>lead</i> ,	+ -tōr- =	<b>ductōr-</b> , st. of	<b>ductor</b> , <i>leader</i> .
2. $\sqrt{\text{vic-}}$ , <i>conquer</i> ,	+ -tōr- =	<b>victōr-</b> , st. of	<b>victor</b> , <i>conqueror</i> .
3. $\text{ōrā-}$ (st. of $\text{ōrō}$ ), <i>speak</i> ,	} + -tōr- =	<b>ōrātōr-</b> , st. of	<b>ōrātor</b> , <i>speaker</i> .
4. $\text{imperā-}$ (st. of <b>imperō</b> ), <i>com-</i> <i>mand</i> ,			
	+ -tōr- =	<b>imperātōr-</b> , st. of	{ <b>imperātor</b> , <i>com-</i> <i>munder</i> .

697. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. denote the *agent* (doer) of the *action* expressed by the corresponding *root* or *verb stem* in column I. Thus **ductor** from  $\sqrt{\text{duc-}}$ , *lead*, means 'he who leads' or 'leader.' Hence these substantives are called *Names of Agents*. Note that these names of agents are formed by adding to *roots* (see Exs. 1 and 2) or to *verb stems* (see Exs. 3 and 4) the *suffix* -tōr-, nom. -tor. Frame a rule for the formation of Names of Agents.

698. Form, as in the foregoing examples, Names of Agents from the following —

1. ROOTS:  $\sqrt{\text{doc-}}$ , TEACH;  $\sqrt{\text{lēg-}}$ ,<sup>2</sup> *read*;  $\sqrt{\text{pīg-}}$ ,<sup>2</sup> *paint*;  $\sqrt{\text{sta-}}$ , STAY (= *make STAND*);  $\sqrt{\text{suād-}}$ ,<sup>3</sup> (*make SWEET*, and so) *advise*, *urge*.

2. VERB STEMS: **aprobā-**, *approve*; **dēprecā-**, *intercede*; **dictā-**, *dictate*; **explōrā-**, *explore*; **mercā-**, *trade*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **dē-√ser-**, *desert*; **im-√pol-**,<sup>4</sup> *impel*; **in-√ven-**, *COME UPON, discover*; **prae-√i-**,<sup>5</sup> *go BEFORE*; **prō-√da-**,<sup>6</sup> *give away, betray*.

## II. ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.

699.	EXAMPLES.			
I.	II.	III.	IV.	
ROOTS OR BASES TREATED AS ROOTS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.	
1. √ <b>dol-</b> , <i>TEAR, rend</i> ,	+ -ōr-	= <b>dolōr-</b> , st. of	<b>dolor</b> ,	<i>pain.</i>
2. √ <b>fur-</b> , <i>rage</i> ,	+ -ōr-	= <b>furōr-</b> , st. of	<b>furor</b> ,	<i>fury.</i>
3. Base <b>am-</b> (in <b>amō</b> ), <i>love</i> ,	} + -ōr-	= <b>amōr-</b> , st. of	<b>amor</b> ,	<i>love.</i>
4. Base <b>pud-</b> (in <b>pu-</b> <b>det</b> ), <i>shame</i> ,				
		+ -ōr-	= <b>pudōr-</b> , st. of	<b>pudor</b> , <i>modesty.</i>

**700. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts* denoting the *state* suggested by the corresponding roots or bases in column I. Thus **furor** from √**fur-**, *rage*, means 'a state of rage' or 'fury.' Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *bases treated as roots* the *suffix* -ōr-, nom. -or. Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting State.

**701. Form Abstracts denoting State from the following —**

1. ROOTS: √**ang-**, *squeeze*; √**lab-**, *lay hold of*; √**ters-**,<sup>7</sup> *tremble*; √**tim-**, *choke, be breathless*.
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: **rūm-**, *sound*; **clām-**, *call, call out*.

<sup>1</sup> Roots are denoted by the sign √. Thus √**duc-** is to be read 'root **duc-**.'

<sup>2</sup> -g- and -gu- become -c- before -t-.

<sup>3</sup> -dt- becomes -s-.

<sup>4</sup> -o- of the root is here weakened to -u-, and -t- of the suffix becomes -s-.

<sup>5</sup> **prae-i-** is contracted to **prae-**.

<sup>6</sup> -a- of the root is here weakened to -i-.

<sup>7</sup> -s- of the root becomes -r-.



LESSON XCII.

FORMATION : SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

III. ABSTRACTS DENOTING ACTION.

702.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIXES.	STEMS.	ABSTRACTS DENOTING ACTION.
1. √ <i>sta-</i> , <i>stand</i> ,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i> =	<i>statiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>statiō</i> , <i>standing</i> ; a <i>post</i> or <i>station</i> .
2. √ <i>gnā-</i> , <i>be born</i> ,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i> = <sup>1</sup> ( <i>g</i> ) <i>nātiōn-</i> ,	st. of	{ <i>nātiō</i> , <i>being born</i> ; a <i>race</i> or <i>nation</i> .
3. <i>ōrā-</i> (st. of <i>ōrō</i> ), <i>speak</i> ,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i> =	<i>ōrātiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>ōrātiō</i> , <i>speaking</i> ; an <i>address</i> .
4. <i>lēgā-</i> (st. of <i>lēgō</i> ), <i>de-</i> <i>pute</i> ,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i> =	<i>lēgātiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>lēgātiō</i> , <i>deputing</i> ; a <i>deputation</i> or <i>em-</i> <i>bassy</i> .
5. √ <i>ic-</i> , <i>hit</i> ,	+ <i>-tu-</i> =	<i>ictu-</i> , st. of	<i>ictus</i> , <i>hitting</i> ; a <i>blow</i> .
6. √ <i>or-</i> , <i>rise</i> ,	+ <i>-tu-</i> =	<i>ortu-</i> , st. of	<i>ortus</i> , <i>rising</i> ; <i>origin</i> .
7. <i>cōnā-</i> (st. of <i>cōnor</i> ), <i>en-</i> <i>deavor</i> ,	+ <i>-tu-</i> =	<i>cōnātu-</i> , st. of	{ <i>cōnātus</i> , <i>endeavor-</i> <i>ing</i> ; an <i>effort</i> or <i>undertaking</i> .
8. <i>equitā-</i> (st. of <i>equitō</i> ), <i>ride</i> ,	+ <i>-tu-</i> =	<i>equitātu-</i> , st. of	{ <i>equitātus</i> , <i>riding</i> ; <i>cavalry</i> .

703. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE : Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts* denoting the *action* suggested by the corresponding roots or verb stems in column I. Note further, however, that these abstracts may become *concrete* and assume other than their literal meanings. Thus *ōrātiō*, from the verb-stem *ōrā-*, *speak*, means not only 'speaking,' but 'that which is spoken' or 'an address.'

Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *verb stems* the *suffixes* **-tiōn-**, nom. **-tiō** (Exs. 1-4), and **-tu-**, nom. **-tus** (Exs. 5-8). Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting Action.

**704.** Form Abstracts in **-tiō** from the following—

1. ROOT: **√fac-**, DO, *make*.
2. BASE TREATED AS ROOT: **quaes-**, *inquire*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **cō-√gnā-**, *be born with*; **con-√ten-**, *stretch vigorously, struggle*; **con-√jug-**,<sup>2</sup> *YOKE together*; **oc-√cād-**,<sup>3</sup> *fall towards*; **re-√vert-**,<sup>4</sup> *turn back*; **ē-√rup-**, *break forth*; **pro-√fac-**,<sup>5</sup> *make FORTH or off*; **dē-√fend-**,<sup>3</sup> *thrust off*.
4. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: **dis-sent-**, *think differently*; **in-curr-**,<sup>6</sup> *rush against*.
5. VERB STEMS: **mūnī-** (st. of **mūniō**), *fortify*; **aestimā-** (st. of **aestimō**), *value*; **perturbā-** (st. of **perturbō**), *throw into confusion*; **cunctā-** (st. of **cunctor**), *delay*; **conjūrā-** (st. of **conjūrō**), *swear together*; **supplicā-** (st. of **supplicō**), *kneel*; **cohortā-** (st. of **cohortor**), *exhort*; **exercitā-**, (st. of **exercitō**), *exercise repeatedly*; **vēnā-** (st. of **vēnor**), *hunt*; **commūtā-** (st. of **commūtō**), *change completely*; **māchinā-** (st. of **māchinor**), *devise*.

**705.** Form Abstracts in **-tus** from the following—

1. ROOTS: **√vīgu-**,<sup>7</sup> *live*; **√frūgu-**,<sup>7</sup> *enjoy*; **√si-**, *put*; **√cād-**,<sup>3</sup> *fall*; **√por-**, *FARE, go through*; **√flūgu-**,<sup>7</sup> *flow*; **√col-**,<sup>8</sup> *till*; **√pat-**,<sup>9</sup> *spread*.
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: **quaes-**, *seek*; **sent-**,<sup>4</sup> *become aware*; **ūt-**,<sup>4</sup> *enjoy, use*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **ad-√i-**, *go to, approach*; **ad-√ven-**, *COME to*; **cōn-√spec-**, *SPY at a glance*; **amb-√i-**, *go about*; **con-√ven-**, *COME together*; **sūm-**<sup>10</sup> (for **sub-√em-**), *spend*; **circu-√i-**, *go round*; **oc-√cād-**,<sup>3</sup> *fall towards or down*.

4. VERB STEMS: **cruciā-** (st. of **cruciō**), *torture*; **magistrā-** (st. of **magistrō**), *direct, be master*; **commeā-** (st. of **commeō**), *go to and fro*; **vestī-** (st. of **vestiō**), *clothe*.

- <sup>1</sup> Initial **g-** is lost before **-n-**.  
<sup>2</sup> The abstract formed from **con-** **jug-** has **-n-** before **-g-** after the analogy of **conjungō**; see also foot-note 2, Lesson XCI.  
<sup>3</sup> See foot-note 3, Lesson XCI.  
<sup>4</sup> **-tt-** becomes **-s-**.  
<sup>5</sup> **-a-** of the root is here weakened to **-e-**.  
<sup>6</sup> One **-r-** disappears and **-t-** becomes **-s-**.  
<sup>7</sup> See foot-note 2, Lesson XCI.  
<sup>8</sup> **-o-** is weakened to **-u-**.  
<sup>9</sup> **-tt-** becomes **-ss-**.  
<sup>10</sup> **-p-** sometimes (as here) grows up between **-m-** and **-t-**.



## LESSON XCIII.

### FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

#### IV. SUBSTANTIVES DENOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.

706.

#### EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIXES.	STEMS.	SUBSTANTIVES DE- NOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.
1. √ <b>crī-</b> , <i>sift</i> , + <b>-min-</b>	=	<b>crīmin-</b> , st. of	{ <b>crīmen</b> , <i>that which sifts; a judicial decision.</i>
2. √ <b>ag-</b> , <i>lead</i> , + <b>-min-</b>	=	<b>agmin-</b> , st. of	
3. <b>impedī-</b> (st. of <b>im- pediō</b> ), <i>hinder</i> ,	} + <b>-mento-</b>	=	{ <b>impedīmento</b> , st. of <i>means of hin- dering; impedi- ment.</i>
4. √ <b>frag-</b> , <i>BREAK</i> ,		=	

**707. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the substantives in column IV. denote: (1) the *subject* of the action, viewed actively (see Ex. 1) or passively (see Ex. 2); (2) the *means* or *instrument* (see Ex. 3); (3) the *result* (see Ex. 4). Note that these substantives are formed by adding to *roots* or *verb stems* the *suffixes* **-min-**, nom. **-men**, and **-mento-**, nom. **-mentum**. Frame a rule for the formation of substantives denoting Subject, Means, Result.

**708. Form substantives in -men from the following —**

1. ROOTS: √**sē-**, *sow*; √**vī-**, *plait*; √**nū-**, *nod*; √**lūc-**,<sup>1</sup> *shine*; √**flūg-**,<sup>1</sup> *flow*.
2. VERB STEMS: **certā-**, *struggle*; **ōrnā-**, *embellish*.

**709. Form substantives in -mentum from the following —**

1. ROOTS: √**torqu-**,<sup>1</sup> *twist, hurl*; √**sarp-**,<sup>2</sup> *lop, prune*; √**mov-**,<sup>3</sup> *push*; √**jūg-**,<sup>1</sup> *YOKE*; √**frūg-**,<sup>1</sup> *enjoy*.
2. COMPOUND ENDING IN A ROOT: **dē-√trī-**, *rub away*.
3. VERB STEMS: **mūnī-**, *fortify*; **fundā-**, *BOTTOM, make secure*; **testā-**, *bear witness*.

#### V. NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVE AND DENOMINATIVE.

##### 710.

##### EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS, OR COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVES.
1. √ <b>od-</b> , <i>hate</i> ,	+ <b>-io-</b> =	<b>odio-</b> , st. of	{ <b>odium</b> , <i>hatred</i> ; a <i>grudge</i> .
2. <b>con-√loqu-</b> , <i>talk with</i> ,	{ + <b>-io-</b> =	<b>conloquio-</b> , st. of	{ <b>conloquium</b> , <i>talking</i> <i>together</i> ; a <i>confer-</i> <i>ence</i> .
3. <b>in-√cand-</b> , <sup>4</sup> <i>set fire to</i> ,	{ + <b>-io-</b> =	<b>incendio-</b> , st. of	{ <b>incendium</b> , <i>setting</i> <i>fire to</i> ; a <i>conflagra-</i> <i>tion</i> .

NOUN STEMS.	NEUTER ABSTRACTS: DENOMINATIVES.
4. arbitro- <sup>5</sup> (st. of arbiter), umpire, } + -io- = arbitrio-, st. of	{ arbitrium, being umpire; a decision (of the umpire).
5. artific- (st. of artifex), artificer, } + -io- = artificio-, st. of	{ artificium, artisan- ship; a trade.
6. exsul- (st. of ex- sul), exile, } + -io- = exsilio- <sup>6</sup> st. of	{ exsilium, being an exile; banishment.

**711. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the substantives in column IV. are *neuter abstracts* which may become *concrete* in meaning. Note that the neuter abstracts in Exs. 1-3 are from *roots* and are therefore called *Primitives*; whereas those in Exs. 4-6 are from *noun stems* and are therefore called *Denominatives*. Note, further, that the denominatives denote *office* (see Ex. 4), *employment* (see Ex. 5), *condition* (see Ex. 6). Note, finally, that both primitives and denominatives are formed by the *suffix -io-*, nom. **-ium**. Frame a rule for the formation of Primitive and Denominative Neuter Abstracts.

**712. Form Primitive Abstracts in -ium** from the following—

COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: prae-√sed-<sup>7</sup> SIT *before*; sub-√sed-<sup>7</sup> SIT *in support*; in-√gen-, *beget* 1X.

**713. Form Denominative Abstracts in -ium** from the following—

NOUN<sup>8</sup> STEMS: convivā-<sup>5</sup> (st. of convīva), *table companion*; indic- (st. of index), *informer*; jūdic- (st. of jūdex), *judge*; supplic- (st. of supplex), *suppliant*; benefico-<sup>5</sup> (st. of beneficus), *kind, obliging*; malefico-<sup>5</sup> (st. of maleficus), *mischievous*; sacrifico-<sup>5</sup> (st. of sacrificus), *sacrificial*; rēmig- (st. of rēmex), *rower*; aedific- (st. of \*aedifex<sup>9</sup>), *builder*.

<sup>1</sup> Medial **-c-** (or **-qu-**) and **-g-** (or **-gu-**) are dropped before many consonants (here before **-m-**).

<sup>2</sup> **-p-** here disappears before **-m-**.

<sup>3</sup> **-x-** becomes **-u-**, and the resulting diphthong **-ou-** becomes **-ō-**.

<sup>4</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson XCII.

<sup>5</sup> The final vowel of the stem disappears before the initial vowel of the suffix.

<sup>6</sup> **-u-** of the stem is weakened to **-i-**.

<sup>7</sup> **-e-** of the root is here weakened to **-i-**.

<sup>8</sup> The term 'noun' includes both 'substantive' and 'adjective.'

<sup>9</sup> The asterisk \* is used to mark a form which is not found in any classical writer, but which is assumed as affording a rational explanation of existing forms. In the present case, as **artifex** gave rise to **artificium** (see 710, Ex. 5), so it is assumed that **\*aedifex** gave rise to **aedificium**.



## LESSON XCIV.

### FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

#### VI. FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.

##### 714.

##### EXAMPLES.

I. ADJECTIVE STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.
1. <b>audāci-</b> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <b>audāx</b> ), <i>bold</i> ,	+ <b>-iā-</b>	= <b>audāciā-</b> , st. of	{ <b>audācia</b> , <i>boldness</i> .
2. <b>ignāvo-</b> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <b>ignāvus</b> ), <i>idle</i> ,	+ <b>-iā-</b>	= <b>ignāviā-</b> , st. of	{ <b>ignāvia</b> , <i>idleness</i> .
3. <b>trīsti-</b> (st. of <b>trīstis</b> ), <i>sad</i> ,	+ <b>-tiā-</b>	= <b>trīstitiā-</b> , st. of	{ <b>trīstitia</b> , <i>sadness</i> .
4. <b>jūsto-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>jūstus</b> ), <i>just</i> ,	+ <b>-tiā-</b>	= <b>jūstitiā-</b> , st. of	{ <b>jūstitia</b> , <i>justice</i> .
5. <b>brevi-</b> (st. of <b>brevis</b> ), <i>short</i> ,	+ <b>-tāt-</b>	= <b>brevitāt-</b> , st. of	{ <b>brevitās</b> , <i>shortness</i> .
6. <b>dīgno-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>dīgnus</b> ), <i>worthy</i> ,	+ <b>-tāt-</b>	= <b>dīgnitāt-</b> , st. of	{ <b>dīgnitās</b> , <i>worth</i> .
7. <b>forti-</b> (st. of <b>fortis</b> ), <i>brave</i> ,	+ <b>-tūdin-</b>	= <b>fortitūdin-</b> , st. of	{ <b>fortitūdō</b> , <i>bravery</i> .
8. <b>lāto-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>lātus</b> ), <i>broad</i> ,	+ <b>-tūdin-</b>	= <b>lātitūdin-</b> , st. of	{ <b>lātitūdō</b> , <i>breadth</i> .

**715. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the substantives in column IV. are *feminine abstracts denoting quality*, and that they are formed from *adjective stems* by the addition of the *suffixes*: -iā-, nom. -ia; -tiā-, nom. -tia; -tāt-, nom. -tās; -tūdin-, nom. -tūdō. Note that vowel stems *lose* their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of the suffix -iā- (see Exs. 1 and 2); and that the *final vowel* of -o- stems is weakened into -i- before the suffixes -tiā-, -tāt-, and -tūdin- (see Exs. 4, 6, 8). Frame a rule for the formation of Feminine Abstracts denoting Quality.

**716. Form Feminine Abstracts in -ia** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **adulēscēt-** (st. of **adulēscēns**), *young*; **dīligēt-** (st. of **dīligēns**), *attentive*; **grāto-** (st. of **grātus**), *pleasing*; **īnfāmi-** (st. of **īnfāmis**), *disreputable*; **inopi-** (st. of **inops**), *without resources*; **invido-** (st. of **invidus**), *envious*; **īnsciēt-** (st. of **īnsciēns**), *inexperienced*; **īrācundo-** (st. of **īrācundus**), *passionate*; **mīsericordi-** (st. of **mīsericors**), *tender-hearted*; **potēt-** (st. of **potēns**), *powerful*; **prūdēt-** (st. of **prūdēns**), *sagacious*; **sciēt-** (st. of **sciēns**), *knowing*; **superbo-** (st. of **superbus**), *proud*.

**717. Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in -ia** from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: **custōd-** (st. of **custōs**), *guard*; **mīlit-** (st. of **mīles**), *soldier*; **vīctōr-** (st. of **vīctor**), *victor*.

**718. Form Feminine Abstracts in -tia** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **amīco-** (st. of **amīcus**), *friendly*; **dūro-** (st. of **dūrus**), *hard*; **īnīmīco-** (st. of **īnīmīcus**), *unfriendly*; **laeto-** (st. of **laetus**), *joyful*; **puđīco-** (st. of **puđīcus**), *modest*.

**719. Form, in like manner, a Feminine Abstract in -tia** from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEM: **puero-** (st. of **puer**), *child*.

**720.** Form Feminine Abstracts in **-tās** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **aequo-** (st. of **aequus**), *even*; **alacri-** (st. of **alacer**), *eager*; **atrōci-** (st. of **atrōx**), *savage*; **celeri-** (st. of **celer**), *swift*; **crūdēli-** (st. of **crūdēlis**), *cruel*; **cupido-** (st. of **cupidus**), *desirous*; **familiāri-** (st. of **familiāris**), *intimate*; **hūmāno-** (st. of **hūmānus**), *refined*; **inīquo-** (st. of **inīquus**), *unjust*, **nōbili-** (st. of **nōbilis**), *noble*; **obsūro-** (st. of **obsūrus**), *obscure*; **opportūno-** (st. of **opportūnus**), *convenient*; **probo-** (st. of **probus**), *upright*; **vāno-** (st. of **vānus**), *empty*; **vēro-** (st. of **vērus**), *true*.

**721.** Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in **-tās** from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: **cīvi-** (st. of **cīvis**), *citizen*; **auctōr-**<sup>3</sup> (st. of **auctor**), *author*; **hērēd-**<sup>3</sup> (st. of **hērēs**), *heir*.

**722.** Form Feminine Abstracts in **-tūdō** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **alto-** (st. of **altus**), *high*; **longo-** (st. of **longus**), *long*; **māgno-** (st. of **māgnus**), *great*; **multo-** (st. of **multus**), *much*; **sōlo-** (st. of **sōlus**), *alone*; **cōnsuēto-**<sup>4</sup> (st. of **cōnsuētus**), *accustomed*.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

<sup>2</sup> Final **-o-** of the stem is here weakened to **-i-** before the suffix.

<sup>3</sup> The suffix here assumes **-i-** after the analogy of vowel stems, and becomes **-itāt-**, nom. **-itās**.

<sup>4</sup> The syllable **-ti-** in **\*cōnsuētītūdō** produced a stuttering sound; it therefore disappeared, and the form became **cōnsuētūdō**.



## LESSON XCV.

## FORMATION: ADJECTIVES.

## I. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BELONGING OR PERTAINING TO.

723.

EXAMPLES.

I. SUBSTANTIVE STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BE- LONGING OR PERTAINING TO.
1. <i>rēg-</i> (st. of <i>rēx</i> ), <i>king</i> ,	+ <i>-āli-</i>	= <i>rēgāli-</i> , st. of	{ <i>rēgālis</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to kings</i> , <i>regal</i> , <i>royal</i> .
2. <i>nāvi</i> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <i>nāvis</i> ), <i>ship</i> ,	+ <i>-āli-</i>	= <i>nāvāli-</i> , st. of	{ <i>nāvālis</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to ships</i> , <i>naval</i> .
3. <i>milit-</i> (st. of <i>mīles</i> ), <i>sol-</i> <i>dier</i> ,	+ <i>-āri</i> <sup>2</sup>	= <i>militāri-</i> , st. of	{ <i>militāris</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to</i> <i>soldiers</i> , <i>military</i> .
4. <i>auxilio</i> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <i>auxili-</i> <i>um</i> ), <i>help</i> ,	+ <i>-āri</i> <sup>2</sup>	= <i>auxiliāri-</i> , st. of	{ <i>auxiliāris</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to</i> <i>help</i> , <i>auxiliary</i> .
5. <i>cīvi</i> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <i>cīvis</i> ), <i>citi-</i> <i>zen</i> ,	+ <i>-īli-</i>	= <i>cīvīli-</i> , st. of	{ <i>cīvīlis</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to citi-</i> <i>zens</i> , <i>civil</i> .
6. <i>viro</i> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <i>vir</i> ), <i>man</i> ,	+ <i>-īli-</i>	= <i>virīli-</i> , st. of	{ <i>virīlis</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to men</i> , <i>manly</i> .
7. <i>legiōn-</i> (st. of <i>legiō</i> ), <i>le-</i> <i>gion</i> ,	+ <i>-ārio-</i>	= <i>legiōnārio-</i> , st. of	{ <i>legiōnārius</i> , <i>belong-</i> <i>ing</i> or <i>pertaining to</i> <i>legions</i> , <i>legionary</i> .
8. <i>ālā</i> <sup>1</sup> (st. of <i>āla</i> ), <i>wing</i> ,	+ <i>-ārio-</i>	= <i>ālārio-</i> , st. of	{ <i>ālārius</i> , <i>belonging</i> or <i>pertaining to the</i> <i>wing</i> .

724. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Adjectives in column IV. denote *belonging* or *pertaining to*, and that they are

formed from *substantive stems* by the addition of the *suffixes*: -**āli**-, nom. -**ālis**; -**āri**-, nom. -**āris**; -**īli**-, nom. -**īlis**; -**ārio**-, nom. -**ārius**. Note that vowel stems (see Exs. 2, 4, 5, 6, 8) *lose* their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of these suffixes. Frame a rule for the formation of Adjectives denoting Belonging or Pertaining to.

### 725. Form —

1. Adjectives in **-ālis** from the following Substantive Stems:
  - morti**- (st. of **mors**), *death*; **nātūrā**- (st. of **nātūra**), *nature*;
  - anno**- (st. of **annus**)<sup>1</sup>, *year*; **capit**- (st. of **caput**), *HEAD*;
  - libero**- (st. of **liber**), *freeman*; **quo**- (st. of some forms of **quī**), *WHAT*; **to**- (st. of **tum**), *THAT*.
2. Adjectives in **-āris**<sup>2</sup> from the following Substantive Stems:
  - cōsul**- (st. of **cōsul**), *consul*; **salūt**- (st. of **salūs**), *safety*,
  - populo**-, (st. of **populus**), *people*; **familiā**- (st. of **familia**), *household*.
3. Adjectives in **-īlis** from the following Substantive Stems:
  - puero**- (st. of **puer**), *child*; **servo**- (st. of **servus**), *slave*,
  - sen**- (st. of **senex**, gen. **senis**), *old person*; **aedi**-<sup>3</sup> (st. of **aedis** or **aedēs**), *building*.
4. Adjectives in **-ārius** from the following Substantive Stems:
  - frūmento**- (st. of **frūmentum**), *grain*; **agro**- (st. of **ager**), *land*;
  - sagittā**-<sup>4</sup> (st. of **sagitta**), *arrow*; **aes**-<sup>5</sup> (st. of **aes**), *money*;
  - sēmin**-<sup>6</sup> (st. of **sēmen**), *SEED*.

## II. ADJECTIVES DENOTING FULL OF.

### 726.

### EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
SUBSTANTIVE STEMS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	ADJECTIVES DENOTING FULL OF.
1. <b>anno</b> - <sup>1</sup> (st. of <b>annus</b> ), <i>year</i> ,	+ <b>-ōso</b> =	<b>annōso</b> -, st. of	{ <b>annōsus</b> , <i>full of years</i> .
2. <b>crīmin</b> - (st. of <b>crīmen</b> ), <i>re-</i>	+ <b>-ōso</b> =	<b>crīminōso</b> -, st. of	{ <b>crīminōsus</b> , <i>full of reproaches, reproachful</i> .
<i>proach</i> ,			
3. <b>sūmptu</b> - (st. of <b>sūmptus</b> ), <i>expense</i> ,	+ <b>-ōso</b> =	<b>sūmptuōso</b> -, st. of	{ <b>sūmptuōsus</b> , <i>full of expense, expensive</i> .
<i>expense</i> ,			

**727. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the Adjectives in column IV. denote *full of*, and that they are formed from *substantive stems* by the addition of the *suffix -ōso-*, nom. *-ōsus*. Note that the vowel stems regularly *lose their final vowel* before the initial vowel of the suffix (see Ex. 1), but that *-u-* stems *retain u* (see Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the formation of Adjectives denoting Full of.

**728. Form Adjectives in -ōsus from the following —**

**SUBSTANTIVE STEMS:** *aestu-* (st. of *aestus*), *heat*; *animo-* (st. of *animus*), *courage*; *cōpiā-* (st. of *cōpiae*), *wealth*; *frūctu-* (st. of *frūctus*), *fruit*; *perīculo-* (st. of *perīculum*), *peril*; *studio-* (st. of *studium*), *zeal*; *vitio-* (st. of *vitium*), *fault*.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

<sup>2</sup> Note that the suffix *-āli-* becomes *-āri-* when the stem contains the letter *l*.

<sup>3</sup> The masc. form of the adj. obtained from this stem is used subst., and means 'aedile' (superintendent of public works, etc.).

<sup>4</sup> The masc. form of the adj. obtained

from this stem is used subst., and means 'areher.'

<sup>5</sup> Medial *-s-* between two vowels often (as here) becomes *-r-*; the neuter form of the adj. obtained from *aes-* is used subst., and means 'treasury.'

<sup>6</sup> The neuter form of the adj. is used subst., and means 'nursery.'

—o—o—o—

## LESSON XCVI.

### FORMATION : VERBS : DENOMINATIVES.

**729. EXAMPLES.**

I.	CHARACTERISTIC FORMATIVE VOWELS.	III.	IV.
NOUN <sup>1</sup> STEMS.	VERB STEMS.	DENOMINATIVE VERBS.	
1. <i>fugā</i> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <i>fuga</i> ), <i>flight</i> ,	} + <i>-ā-</i> = <i>fugā-</i> , st. of		<i>fugō</i> , <i>put to flight</i> .
2. <i>firmo</i> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <i>firmus</i> ), <i>firm</i> ,	} + <i>-ā-</i> = <i>firmā-</i> , st. of		{ <i>firmō</i> , <i>make firm</i> , <i>strengthen</i> .
3. <i>levi</i> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <i>levis</i> ), <i>light</i> (not heavy),	} + <i>-ā-</i> = <i>levā-</i> , st. of		{ <i>levō</i> , <i>make LIGHT</i> , <i>lighten</i> .

I.	CHARACTERISTIC FORMATIVE VOWELS.	III.	IV.
NOUN <sup>1</sup> STEMS.		VERB STEMS.	DENOMINATIVE VERBS.
4. <b>nōmin-</b> (st. of <b>nōmen</b> ), <i>NAME</i> ,	+ <b>-ā-</b> =	<b>nōminā-</b> , st. of	{ <b>nōminō</b> , <i>call by NAME</i> , NAME.
5. <b>clāro-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>clārus</b> ), <i>bright</i> ,	+ <b>-ē-</b> =	<b>clārē-</b> , st. of	<b>clāreō</b> , <i>be bright</i> .
6. <b>flōs-</b> <sup>3</sup> (st. of <b>flōs</b> ), <i>flower</i> ,	+ <b>-ē-</b> =	<b>flōrē-</b> , st. of	<b>flōreō</b> , <i>be in flower</i> .
7. <b>fīni-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>fīnis</b> ), <i>end</i> ,	+ <b>-ī-</b> =	<b>fīnī-</b> , st. of	<b>fīniō</b> , <i>put an end to</i> .
8. <b>mōlli-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>mōllis</b> ), <i>soft</i> ,	+ <b>-ī-</b> =	<b>mōllī-</b> , st. of	{ <b>mōlliō</b> , <i>make soft</i> , <i>soften</i> .
9. <b>īnsāno-</b> <sup>2</sup> (st. of <b>īnsānus</b> ), <i>in-</i> <i>sane</i> ,	+ <b>-ī-</b> =	<b>īnsānī-</b> , st. of	<b>īnsāniō</b> , <i>be insane</i> .

**730. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:** Note that the *stems* of the *verbs* in column IV. are formed from the corresponding *noun stems* in column I. by the addition of the *characteristic vowels* of the *first* (see Exs. 1-4), *second* (see Exs. 5 and 6), and *fourth* (see Exs. 7-9) *conjugations*. Because these verbs are formed from *noun stems*, they are called *Denominatives*. Note that the *noun stems* which end in a *vowel* (see Exs. 1-3, 5, 7-9) *lose* this vowel before the characteristic vowels **-ā-**, **-ē-**, **-ī-**. Frame a rule for the formation of *Denominative Verbs*.

**731. Form Denominative Verbs of the First Conjugation from the following —**

NOUN<sup>1</sup> STEMS: **loco-** (st. of **locus**), *place*; **cūrā-** (st. of **cūra**), *care*; **nūntio-** (st. of **nūntius**), *messenger*; **pūgnā-** (st. of **pūgna**), *fight*; **honesto-** (st. of **honestus**), *honorable*; **interpret-**<sup>4</sup> (st. of **interpres**), *interpreter*; **labōs-**<sup>3</sup> (st. of **labor**), *labor*; **laud-** (st. of **laus**), *praise*; **memori-** (st. of **memor**), *mindful*; **proelio-**<sup>4</sup> (st. of **proelium**), *battle*; **rēgno-** (st. of **rēgnum**), *sovereignty*; **salūt-** (st. of **salūs**), *safety*; **celebri-** (st. of **celeber**), *frequented*; **sacro-** (st. of **sacer**), *sacred*; **damno-** (st. of **damnum**), *loss*; **equit-** (st. of **eques**), *horse-*

*man*; **glōriā**<sup>4</sup> (st. of *glōria*), *glory*; **hiem-** (st. of *hiems*), *winter*; **jūdic-** (st. of *jūdex*), *judge*; **laeto**<sup>4</sup> (st. of *laetus*), *joyful*; **lībero-** (st. of *līber*), *free*; **nūdo-** (st. of *nūdus*), *bare*; **novo-** (st. of *novus*), *NEW*; **integro-** (st. of *integer*), *whole*; **vulnes**<sup>3</sup> (st. of *vulnus*), *wound*.

**732.** Form Denominative Verbs of the Second Conjugation from the following —

NOUN<sup>1</sup> STEMS: **albo-** (st. of *albus*), *white*; **flāvo-** (st. of *flāvus*), *yellow*; **lūc-** (st. of *lūx*), *LIGHT*.

**733.** Form Denominative Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation from the following —

NOUN<sup>1</sup> STEMS: **lēni-** (st. of *lēnis*), *soft*; **saevo-** (st. of *saevus*), *fierce*; **siti-** (st. of *sitis*), *thirst*; **custōd-** (st. of *custōs*), *guard*.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 8, Lesson XCIII.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

<sup>3</sup> See foot-note 5, Lesson XCV.

<sup>4</sup> Make the verb deponent, *i.e.*, give it a passive form with active or reflexive meaning.

## ANECDOTES FROM CICERO.

NOTE: The following anecdotes are to be translated by the pupil and afterwards committed to memory. The point at which the several anecdotes may be taken up is indicated in a bracketed note prefixed to each; and the amount and kind of help afforded in the foot-notes is adapted to the needs of the pupil at the stage thus indicated.

## 734.

## Discourtesy Rebuked.

[To follow Lesson XXXI.]

Memoriae prōditum est, cum<sup>1</sup> Athēnīs<sup>2</sup> lūdīs<sup>3</sup> quīdam in theātrum <sup>advenire</sup> grandis nātū vēnisset,<sup>4</sup> māgnō cōnsēssū<sup>5</sup> locum nusquam eī<sup>6</sup> datum<sup>7</sup> ā suīs cīvibus. Cum autem ad Lacedaemoniōs accēssisset,<sup>8</sup> quī,<sup>9</sup> lēgātī cum essent,<sup>10</sup> certō in locō cōnsēderant, cōsurrēxisse<sup>11</sup> omnēs illī<sup>12</sup> dīcuntur et senem sēssum<sup>13</sup> recēpisse.<sup>14</sup> Quibus<sup>15</sup> cum ā cūctō cōnsēssū plausus esset<sup>16</sup> multiplex datus,<sup>16</sup> dīxisse ex iīs quendam<sup>17</sup> Athēniēnsīs scīre quae<sup>18</sup> rēcta essent,<sup>19</sup> sed facere<sup>20</sup> nōlle.<sup>21</sup>

—[Cic. Cat. Maj. XVIII.].

<sup>1</sup> when.

<sup>2</sup> A. & G. 258, c; H. 425, II.; G. 412.

<sup>3</sup> The reference is to the great Panathenaic festival celebrated once in four years at Athens in honor of Athena as protectress of the city, and participated in by the combined population of Attica.

<sup>4</sup> had come.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. of place where without prep.

<sup>6</sup> for him.

<sup>7</sup> sc. esse; datum esse is the perf. pass. infin. of dō, give; the subj. of the infin. (here locum) is in the accusative. Translate: that room was made (lit., room to have been made).

<sup>8</sup> he had come near.

<sup>9</sup> who, nom. pl. masc.

<sup>10</sup> they were.

<sup>11</sup> to have risen in a body.

<sup>12</sup> those (i.e., the Lacedaemonians), nom. pl. masc.

<sup>13</sup> to be seated.

<sup>14</sup> to have invited.

<sup>15</sup> to them (lit., to whom).

<sup>16</sup> had been given.

<sup>17</sup> [prōditum est] dīxisse ex iīs quendam, [the story adds] that one of the Lacedaemonians said (lit., one from them to have said).

<sup>18</sup> what, nom. neut. pl.

<sup>19</sup> was.

<sup>20</sup> Pres. infin. of faciō, do.

<sup>21</sup> Pres. infin. of nōlō, be unwilling. Translate: lacked the inclination.

### 735. Remarkable Instances of Mental Vigor in Extreme Old Age.

[To follow Lesson XXXV.]

1. Platō<sup>1</sup> ūnō et octōgēsīmō annō scrībēns est mortuus.<sup>2</sup>  
 2. Īsocratēs<sup>3</sup> eum<sup>4</sup> librum quī<sup>5</sup> Panathēnāicus<sup>6</sup> ĩnscribitur quartō et nōnāgēsīmō annō scrīpsisse sē<sup>7</sup> dīcit, vīxitque quīnquennium postēa.

3. Leontīnus<sup>8</sup> Gorgiās<sup>9</sup> centum et septem complēvit annōs, neque umquam ĩn suō studiō atque opere cēssāvit. Quī,<sup>10</sup> cum ex eō quaererētur<sup>11</sup> cūr tam diū vellet esse<sup>12</sup> in vītā: “Nihil habēō,”<sup>13</sup> ĩquit,<sup>14</sup> “quod accūsem<sup>13</sup> senectūtem.” Praeclārum respōnsum, et doctō homine<sup>15</sup> dīgnum!

—[Cic. *Cat. Maj. V.*].

<sup>1</sup> Platō, -ōnis, m., *Plato*, the celebrated Athenian philosopher; died 347 B.C.

<sup>2</sup> est mortuus, *died*.

<sup>3</sup> Īsocratēs, -is, m., *Isocrates*, a celebrated Athenian rhetorician and orator; died 338 B.C. On the composition and elaboration of the most celebrated of his orations, the “Panegyric,” he is said by some to have spent ten years, by others, fifteen.

<sup>4</sup> that, acc. sing. masc.

<sup>5</sup> which, nom. sing. masc.

<sup>6</sup> Panathēnāicus, -i, m., the *Panathenaic*, an oration pronounced by Isocrates at one of the Panathenaic festivals; see 734, foot-note 3.

<sup>7</sup> scrīpsisse sē, that he wrote (lit., himself to have written).

<sup>8</sup> Leontīnus, -a, -um, adj., of *Leontini* (a town in Sicily).

<sup>9</sup> Gorgiās, -ae, m., *Gorgias*, a celebrated rhetorician and orator of Leontini in Sicily; born about 480 B.C.

<sup>10</sup> He (lit., who).

<sup>11</sup> cum ex eō quaererētur, when he was asked (lit., when it was inquired from him).

<sup>12</sup> vellet esse, he wished to be.

<sup>13</sup> Nihil habēō quod accūsem, I have no fault to find with (lit., I have nothing which I may lay to the charge of).

<sup>14</sup> See Lesson LIII., foot-note 12.

<sup>15</sup> See Lesson XXXII., foot-note 3.

### 736. A Tree Known by Its Fruits.

[To follow Lesson XXXIX.]

Sophoclēs<sup>1</sup> ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit.<sup>2</sup> Quod<sup>3</sup> propter studium eum<sup>4</sup> rem neglegere familiārem vidērētur,<sup>4</sup> ā filiīs in iūdicium vocātus est, ut<sup>5</sup> eum<sup>6</sup> quasi dēsipientem ā rē familiārī removērent<sup>6</sup> iūdicēs. Tum senex dīcitur eam<sup>7</sup> fābulam quam<sup>8</sup> in manibus habēbat et proxi-

mē scripserat, Oedipum<sup>9</sup> Colōnēum,<sup>9</sup> recitāsse<sup>10</sup> jūdicibus, quaesisseque<sup>11</sup> num illud<sup>12</sup> carmen dēsipientis vidērētur.<sup>13</sup> Quō<sup>14</sup> recitātō, sententiis jūdicium est liberātus.

— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* VII.]

<sup>1</sup> **Sophoclēs, -is, m.**, *Sophocles*, the famous Attic tragic poet, born at the village of Colonus, near Athens, 495 B.C.; died 406 B.C.

<sup>2</sup> Perfect indicative of **faciō**, *make, compose*.

<sup>3</sup> *this* (lit., which), acc. neut. sing.

<sup>4</sup> **cum vidērētur**, *as he was thought*.

<sup>5</sup> *to the end that*.

<sup>6</sup> **cum removērent**, *might remove him*.

<sup>7</sup> **eam**, acc. sing. fem., *that*.

<sup>8</sup> **quam**, acc. sing. fem., *which*.

<sup>9</sup> **Oedipūs, -odis** and **-ī, m.**, *Oedipus*; **Colōnēs, -a, -um**, adj., *of Colonus*.

The "Oedipus of Colonus," which was the last and finest play of Sophocles, recalls the scenery and the religious associations of the poet's native village (cf. footnote 1). The passage said to have been recited on the occasion here referred to, contains a chorus descriptive of the beauties of Athens.

<sup>10</sup> *to have recited*.

<sup>11</sup> *to have asked*.

<sup>12</sup> **illud**, nom. neut. sing., *that*.

<sup>13</sup> *seemed* [to them].

<sup>14</sup> **Quō**, abl. neut. sing., *this* (lit., which).

## 737.

## Tit for Tat.

[To follow Lesson XLII.]

Nāsīca<sup>1</sup> cum ad<sup>2</sup> poētā Ennium<sup>3</sup> vēnisset,<sup>2</sup> cūque<sup>4</sup> ab ōstiō quaerentī Ennium ancilla dīxisset<sup>4</sup> domī nōn esse,<sup>5</sup> Nāsīca sēnsit illam<sup>6</sup> dominī jūssū dīxisse<sup>6</sup> et illum<sup>7</sup> intus esse.<sup>7</sup> Paucis post diēbus, cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius et eum<sup>8</sup> ā jānuā quaereret,<sup>8</sup> exclāmat Nāsīca sē<sup>9</sup> domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius: "Quid?<sup>10</sup> ego nōn cōgnōscō," inquit, "vōcem tuam?" Hīc Nāsīca: "Homō es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaerem,<sup>11</sup> ancillae tuae crēdidī tē<sup>9</sup> domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī<sup>12</sup>?"

— [Cic. *de Orat.* 2, LXVIII.]

<sup>1</sup> **Nāsīca, -ae, m.**, *Nasica* (Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica), a celebrated Roman jurist.

<sup>2</sup> **ad vēnisset**, *had come to* [call on].

<sup>3</sup> **Ennius, -ī, m.**, *Ennius* (Quintus), the father of Roman epic poetry; lived 239–169 B.C.

<sup>4</sup> **cū** (dat.) **dīxisset**, *had told him*.

<sup>5</sup> **domī esse**, *was* (lit., to be) *at home*.

<sup>6</sup> **illam dīxisse**, *that she had said* [so].

<sup>7</sup> **illum esse**, *that his friend was* (lit., him to be).

<sup>8</sup> **eum quaereret**, *inquired for him*.

<sup>9</sup> The subject of an infin. (here **esse**) is in the acc.

<sup>10</sup> *What?*

<sup>11</sup> *I inquired for*.

<sup>12</sup> **ipsī**, dat. sing., *self*.



## 738.

## The Soul Immortal.

[To follow Lesson XLVI.]

Apud Xenophōntem<sup>1</sup> moriēns Cŷrus<sup>2</sup> mājor haec dicit:  
 "Nōlīte arbitrārī,<sup>3</sup> ō meī cārissimī filiī, mē,<sup>4</sup> cum ā vōbīs  
 discēsserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore.<sup>5</sup> Nec enim, dum  
 eram vōbīsecum, animum meum vidēbātis, sed cum esse in  
 hōc corpore ex iīs rēbus quās<sup>6</sup> gerēbam intellegēbātis.  
 Eundem<sup>4</sup> igitur esse crēditōte, etiam sī nūllum vidēbitis.

— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* XXII.]

<sup>1</sup> The reference is to a passage in Xenophon's *Cyropaedia*, an historical romance founded on the career of Cyrus the elder.

<sup>2</sup> Cyrus the elder founded the Persian empire 559 B.C.; after a long and prosperous reign, he was killed in battle 529 B.C. Xenophon, however, in the passage here referred to, represents him as dying

quietly in bed with his children and friends about him.

<sup>3</sup> **Nōlīte arbitrārī**, do not suppose (lit., be unwilling to suppose).

<sup>4</sup> cf. 737, foot-note 9.

<sup>5</sup> **fore**, used as fut. infin. of **sum**; **mē fore**, that I shall be.

<sup>6</sup> **quās**, acc. pl. fem., which.

## 739.

## Dead Muscle.

[To follow Lesson L.]

Quae<sup>1</sup> vōx potest esse<sup>2</sup> contemptior quam Milōnis Crotōni-  
 ātae?<sup>3</sup> quī, cum jam senex esset<sup>4</sup> āthlētāsque sē exercentīs  
 in curriculō vidēret,<sup>5</sup> adspexisse<sup>6</sup> lacertōs suōs dicitur inlaci-  
 mānsque dīxisse:<sup>7</sup> "At hī quidem mortuī jam sunt." Nōn  
 vērō tam istī quam tū ipse, nūgātor! Neque enim ex tē  
 unquam es nōbilitātus, sed ex lateribus et lacertīs tuīs.

— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* IX.]

<sup>1</sup> **Quae**, interrog. pron., nom. sing. fem., what.

<sup>2</sup> See Lesson LIII., foot-note 5.

<sup>3</sup> **Milō**, -ōnis, *Milo*; **Crotōnīātēs**, -ae, m., *inhabitant of Crotona*. Milo was a famous athlete of Crotona, in

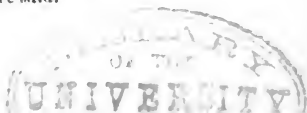
Italy; many stories of his extraordinary feats are told by the ancient writers.

<sup>4</sup> **he was**.

<sup>5</sup> **saw**.

<sup>6</sup> **to have looked at**.

<sup>7</sup> **to have said**.



## 740.

## Tertia's Pet Dog.

[To follow Lesson LIV.]

L. Paullus, cōsul iterum, cum ēi bellum ut<sup>1</sup> cum rēge Persē<sup>2</sup> gereret<sup>1</sup> obtigisset, ut eā ipsā diē domum<sup>3</sup> ad vesperum rediit,<sup>4</sup> filiōlam suam Tertiam,<sup>5</sup> quae tum erat admodum parva, ōsculāns<sup>6</sup> animum advertit trīsticulam. “Quid est,” inquit,<sup>7</sup> “mea Tertia? quid<sup>8</sup> trīstis es?” “Mī<sup>9</sup> pater,” inquit, “Persa<sup>10</sup> periit.”<sup>11</sup> Tum ille artius<sup>12</sup> puellam complexus:<sup>13</sup> “Accipiō,” inquit, “mea filia, ōmen.” Erat autem mortuus catellus eō nōmine.<sup>14</sup> — [Cic. *de Div.* 1, XLVI.]

<sup>1</sup> ut gereret, to conduct (lit., that he should conduct).

<sup>2</sup> See Persēs in general vocabulary; for abl. Persē, cf. A. & G. 37 (comētēs); II. 50 (pyritēs).

<sup>3</sup> Acc. of place to which without prep.

<sup>4</sup> See redeō in general vocabulary.

<sup>5</sup> The English form is the same as the Latin nom.

<sup>6</sup> See ōsculor in general vocab.; ōsculor has a pass. form with act. meaning.

<sup>7</sup> See Leſson LIII., foot-note 12.

<sup>8</sup> Adverbial accusative, why.

<sup>9</sup> See Lesson XX., foot-note 6.

<sup>10</sup> Name of a pet dog; also a possible form of the name Persēs.

<sup>11</sup> See pereō in general vocabulary.

<sup>12</sup> artius, adv., more closely, closer.

<sup>13</sup> See complector in general vocabulary; complector has a pass. form with active meaning.

<sup>14</sup> cf. Exs. in 322.

## 741. Roman Character in the Earlier Days of the Republic.

[To follow Lesson LIX.]

Curiō<sup>1</sup> ad focum<sup>2</sup> sedentī māgnū aurī pondus Samnītēs<sup>3</sup> cum attulissent,<sup>4</sup> repudiātī sunt. Nōn enim aurum habēre praeclārū sibi vidērī dīxit, sed eīs quī habērent aurum imperāre.

— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* XVI.]

<sup>1</sup> Manius Curius Dentātus, consul three times; he is often referred to in Cicero's writings as a noble example of the early Roman simplicity.

<sup>2</sup> focus, -ī, m., fire-place, hearth. The focus was a small platform of brick or stone raised a few inches above the ground; it stood in the atrium, which in primitive times served as sitting room, dining room, and kitchen.

<sup>3</sup> Samnītēs, -ium, m., the Samnites. The incident here narrated belongs to the period (about 273 B.C.) which followed the great wars of the Romans with the Samnites and Pyrrhus. Curius then retired to his farm in the Sabine country, and is said to have been found here by the Samnite ambassadors, sitting at his hearth and roasting turnips.

<sup>4</sup> See adferō in general vocabulary.

## 742.

## Brain Better than Brawn.

[To follow Lesson LXI.]

Olympiae<sup>1</sup> per stadium<sup>2</sup> ingressus esse<sup>3</sup> Milō<sup>4</sup> dēicitur eum umeris sustinēret bovem. Utrum<sup>5</sup> igitur hās corporis an<sup>5</sup> Pŷthagorae<sup>6</sup> tibi<sup>7</sup> mālīs<sup>7</sup> vīrīs<sup>8</sup> ingenīi darī?— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* X.]

<sup>1</sup> **Olympia**, -ae, F., *Olympia*, a small plain in Elis, celebrated as the scene of the Olympic games; these games were held at intervals of four years and attracted spectators and participants from all parts of the world inhabited or colonized by Greeks.

<sup>2</sup> **stadium**, -ii, n., *race-course*. The stadium was an oblong area having one end straight and the other semicircular, and having its sides parallel. Around this area rose the seats of the spectators. The stadium was especially designed for the foot-race. The course extended from the straight end (see A, Fig. 1) to a point near the centre of the semicircle at the opposite end (see B, Fig. 1), and was 606 $\frac{3}{4}$  feet long.

<sup>3</sup> See **ingredior** in general vocab.; **ingredior** has a pass. form with act. meaning.

<sup>4</sup> See 739, foot-note 3.

<sup>5</sup> See references in foot-note 1, Lesson XLI.

<sup>6</sup> **Pŷthagorās**, -ae, m., *Pythagoras*, a celebrated Greek philosopher who taught at Crotona in Italy. Three hundred of his disciples were formed into a brotherhood, partly philosophical, partly religious, and partly political, for the purpose of studying the doctrines of their master, and cultivating the observances which he enjoined. The contrast drawn in the text between Pythagoras and Milo is suggested by the fact that Milo was a member of this brotherhood.

<sup>7</sup> **mālīs**, second sing. pres. subj. of **mālō**, *prefer*; translate: *should you prefer?*

<sup>8</sup> See refs. in foot-note 10, Lesson XXXVI.

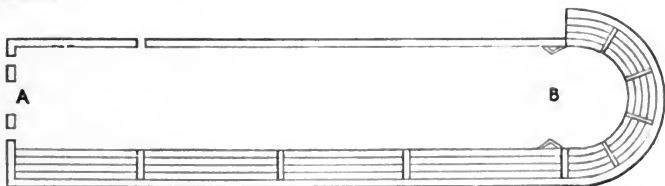


Fig. 1. — Ground-plan of a stadium at Cibra in Lycia.

## READING LESSONS.

## I.

**743. Division into Parties a Characteristic Feature of Gallic Society.**

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque,<sup>1</sup> sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt ; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī<sup>2</sup> summam auctōritātem eōrum jūdiciō<sup>3</sup> habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium<sup>4</sup> jūdiciūque<sup>4</sup> summa<sup>5</sup> omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat.<sup>6</sup> Idque ējus rēi causā<sup>7</sup> antīquitus institūtum<sup>8</sup> vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliū<sup>9</sup> egēret :<sup>10</sup> suōs enim<sup>11</sup> quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat,<sup>12</sup> ūllam inter suōs habet<sup>13</sup> auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā<sup>14</sup> tōtius Galliae ;<sup>15</sup> namque omnēs cīvitātēs in partēs dīvīsaē sunt duās.

**744. Classification of the Inhabitants of Gaul.**

In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō<sup>1</sup> atque honōre,<sup>1</sup> genera sunt duo ; nam plēbēs<sup>2</sup> paene servōrum habētur locō,<sup>3</sup> quae<sup>4</sup> nihil audet per sē, nullo adhibētur cōsiliō.<sup>5</sup> Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut injūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus : in<sup>6</sup> hōs eadem omnia sunt jūra quae domīs<sup>7</sup> in<sup>6</sup> servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus<sup>8</sup> alterum est Druidum,<sup>9</sup> alterum equitum.

**745. The Druids the Supreme Authority in Religious and Social Matters.**

Illī<sup>1</sup> rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad hōs māgnus adulescentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrat, māgnōque hī<sup>2</sup> sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrō-

versūs pūblicīs prīvātisque cōstituunt; et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, sī dē fīnibus contrōversia est, idem<sup>3</sup> dēcernunt: praemia poenāsque cōstituunt. Sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,<sup>4</sup> sacrificiīs interdēunt.<sup>5</sup> Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,<sup>5</sup> hī numerō<sup>6</sup> impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur; hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant; neque hīs petentibus jūs redditur neque honōs<sup>7</sup> ullus commūnicātur.

**746. The Government of the Druids; their Annual Meeting; the Origin of their System.**

Hīs autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō,<sup>1</sup> aut, sī quī<sup>2</sup> ex reliquīs<sup>3</sup> excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit; aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō<sup>4</sup> Druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs, dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnūtum,<sup>5</sup> quae regiō tōtīus Galliae<sup>6</sup> media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt, eōrumque dēcrētīs jūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna<sup>7</sup> in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur;<sup>8</sup> et nunc quī<sup>9</sup> diligentius<sup>10</sup> eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

**747. Immunities Enjoyed by the Druids; their Doctrines Orally Transmitted.**

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt,<sup>1</sup> neque tribūta unā cum reliquīs pendunt; militīae vacātiōnem omniumque rerum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs, et<sup>2</sup> suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt<sup>3</sup> et ā parentibus propīnquisque mittuntur.<sup>4</sup> Māgnū ibī<sup>5</sup> numerum versuum ediscere<sup>6</sup> dīcuntur:<sup>6</sup> itaque annōs nōnnullī vicēnōs<sup>7</sup> in disciplīnā<sup>8</sup> permanent. Neque fās<sup>9</sup> esse exīstimant ea litterīs

mandāre,<sup>10</sup> cum<sup>11</sup> in reliquīs ferē rēbus, publicīs prīvatīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.<sup>12</sup> Id<sup>13</sup> mihi<sup>14</sup> duābus dē causīs īstituisse videntur,<sup>14</sup> quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint,<sup>15</sup> neque eōs quī discunt litterīs<sup>16</sup> cōfīsō minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit<sup>15</sup> ut praesidiō<sup>17</sup> litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō<sup>18</sup> ac memoriā remittant.<sup>19</sup>

**748. Teachings of the Druids.**

In prīmīs<sup>1</sup> hōc volunt persuādēre,<sup>2</sup> nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs<sup>3</sup> post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs,<sup>3</sup> atque hōc<sup>4</sup> māximē ad virtūtem excitārī<sup>5</sup> putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum<sup>6</sup> māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

**749. The Knights or Warrior Class.**

Alterum genus est equitum.<sup>1</sup> Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod<sup>2</sup> bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī injūriās īferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent<sup>3</sup>), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque<sup>4</sup> est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita<sup>4</sup> plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.<sup>5</sup>

**750. Human Sacrifices Prevalent among the Gauls.**

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus,<sup>1</sup> atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus<sup>2</sup> morbīs quīque in proeliīs periculīsque versantur,<sup>3</sup> aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque<sup>4</sup> ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtantur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur,<sup>5</sup> nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen placārī arbitrantur, publicēque ējusdem generis habent īstitutā<sup>6</sup> sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simulāera habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus

complant; quibus succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsī<sup>7</sup> grātiōra diīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ējus generis cōpia dēfēcit,<sup>8</sup> etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

### 751. The Gods Worshipped by the Gauls.

Deūm māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūjus sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc<sup>1</sup> omnium inventōrem<sup>1</sup> artium ferunt, hunc viārum<sup>2</sup> atque itinerum<sup>2</sup> ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem<sup>3</sup> et Mārtem et Jovem<sup>4</sup> et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum<sup>5</sup> initia trādere, Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō<sup>6</sup> dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō<sup>6</sup> cēperint<sup>7</sup> plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs<sup>8</sup> cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet, neque saepe accidit<sup>9</sup> ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne<sup>10</sup> aut capta apud sē<sup>11</sup> occultāre aut posita tollere audēret;<sup>12</sup> gravissimum ēī rēi supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

### 752. Traditional Origin of the Gauls; their Mode of Designating Intervals of Time; the Relation of Children to Parents.

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte<sup>1</sup> prōgnātōs praedicant, idque<sup>2</sup> ab Druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam<sup>3</sup> spatia omnis temporis<sup>4</sup> nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium<sup>5</sup> finiunt<sup>6</sup>; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.<sup>7</sup> In reliquīs vītae īstitutīs hōc ferē<sup>8</sup> ab reliquīs differunt,<sup>9</sup> quod suōs liberōs,<sup>10</sup> nisi cum<sup>11</sup> adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire<sup>12</sup> nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerīlī aetāte<sup>13</sup> in pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

**753. Marriage Settlements among the Gauls; Subjection of Wives.**

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant.<sup>1</sup> Hūjus omnis pecūniae conjūctim<sup>2</sup> ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur: uter eōrum vītā<sup>3</sup> superārit,<sup>4</sup> ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcēssit,<sup>5</sup> ējus propīnquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs īn suspīciōnem vēnit,<sup>5</sup> dē uxōribus īn servīlem modum<sup>6</sup> quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,<sup>7</sup> īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt.

**754. Funeral Rites and Usages.**

Fūnera sunt prō cultū<sup>1</sup> Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs<sup>2</sup> cordī<sup>2</sup> fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īferunt, etiam animālia: āc paulō<sup>3</sup> suprā hanc memoriā<sup>4</sup> servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, jūstīs fūneribus<sup>5</sup> cōfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

**755. Free Discussion of Public Questions Forbidden by Law.**

Quae cīvitatēs commodius<sup>1</sup> suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur,<sup>2</sup> habent lēgibus sānctum,<sup>3</sup> sī quis<sup>4</sup> quid<sup>4</sup> dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,<sup>5</sup> utī ad magistrātum dēferat<sup>6</sup> nēve<sup>7</sup> cum quō<sup>4</sup> aliō commūnicet: quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere<sup>8</sup> cōgnitum est.<sup>9</sup> Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt<sup>10</sup> occultant; quaeque esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium<sup>11</sup> loquī nōn concēditur.



## II.

**756. The Worship of the Germans; their Out-of-Door Life.**

Germānī multum ab hāc<sup>1</sup> cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque Druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō cōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus juvantur, Sōlem et<sup>2</sup> Volcānum<sup>3</sup> et<sup>2</sup> Lūnam: reliquōs nē fāmā<sup>4</sup> quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus<sup>5</sup> atque īn studiīs rēi militāris<sup>6</sup> cōnsistit; ab parvulis<sup>7</sup> labōrī ac dūritiae student.

**757. Means of Subsistence; Annual Change of Abode.**

Agricultūrae nōn student; mājorque pars eorum victūs in lacte, cāseō,<sup>1</sup> carne<sup>1</sup> cōnsistit. Neque quisquam<sup>2</sup> agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs ac pīncipēs in annōs singulōs<sup>3</sup> gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī<sup>4</sup> attribuunt, atque annō<sup>5</sup> post aliō trānsire cōgunt.

**758. The Reasons Assigned for this Annual Change of Abode.**

Ējus rēi multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā<sup>1</sup> commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possēssiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs<sup>2</sup> aedificent; nē qua<sup>3</sup> oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.<sup>4</sup>

**759. Deserted Frontiers Deemed an Evidence of Military Greatness.**

Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vastātis finibus<sup>1</sup> sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc<sup>2</sup> proprium<sup>3</sup> virtū-

tis<sup>4</sup> exīstīmant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitīmōs cēdere neque quemquam<sup>5</sup> prope audēre cōsistere : simul hōc<sup>6</sup> sē fore<sup>7</sup> tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō.<sup>8</sup>

**760. Methods of Government in War and in Peace ;  
Predatory Warfare Deemed Honorable.**

Cum bellum cīvītās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī ēī bellō praesint<sup>1</sup> ut vītāe necisque habeant<sup>2</sup> potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis<sup>3</sup> magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum<sup>4</sup> atque pāgōrum<sup>4</sup> inter suōs jūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent<sup>5</sup> infāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cūjusque cīvītātis fīunt ; atque ea juventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fierī praedicant.

**761. Loyalty of the Germans to their Chiefs ; Hospitality to Strangers.**

Atque ubī quis<sup>1</sup> ex prīncipibus<sup>2</sup> in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī<sup>3</sup> sequī velint<sup>4</sup> profiteantur,<sup>5</sup> cōsurgunt īī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine conlaudantur ; quī<sup>3</sup> ex hīs<sup>6</sup> secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs<sup>7</sup> rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.<sup>8</sup> Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant ; quī<sup>3</sup> quācumque dē causā ad cōs vērunt, ab injūriā prohibent, sāctōs<sup>9</sup> habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES ON THE PRECEDING READING LESSONS.

**743.** <sup>1</sup> *pāgis* refers to the *districts*; *partibus* to the *parts* or *subdivisions* of the districts. — <sup>2</sup> *quī*, *those who*; cf. 393 and 394. — <sup>3</sup> *cōrum jūdicō*, *in their (i.e., the Gauls') judgment*. — <sup>4</sup> *arbitrium*, *decision* (of the arbitrator); *jūdicium*, *sentence* (of the judge). — <sup>5</sup> *summa redeat*, *the final appeal is to be made*. — <sup>6</sup> *redeat*: for mood, cf. 573, Ex. 1. — <sup>7</sup> Note the position of *causā*. — <sup>8</sup> *īnstitūtum*: sc. *esse*. — <sup>9</sup> *auxilii*: A. & G. 223; H. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem.2. — <sup>10</sup> *egēret*: for mood, cf. 528, Ex. 2; note that *egēret* takes its tense from *īnstitūtum* (*esse*), not from *vidētur*: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, IV.; G. 518, Exc. — <sup>11</sup> Note that *enim* is postpositive. — <sup>12</sup> *faciat*: for mood and tense, cf. 601, Ex. 1. — <sup>13</sup> *habet*: H. 511, 1, (1). — <sup>14</sup> *īn summā*, *in general*. — <sup>15</sup> *Galliae*: predicate possessive genitive limiting *ratō* and separated from it by *est*: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

**744.** <sup>1</sup> *numerō* and *honōre*: cf. 322, Ex. 6. — <sup>2</sup> *plēbēs*: archaic form of nominative = *plēbs*. — <sup>3</sup> *locō*: for absence of preposition, see A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2; G. 385, Rem. — <sup>4</sup> *quae*: *and they* (referring to the common people). — <sup>5</sup> *cōnsiliō*: dat., *they are admitted to no council*. — <sup>6</sup> *in*: *over*. — <sup>7</sup> sc. *sunt*; for case of *dominīs*, cf. Exs. in 449. — <sup>8</sup> Might the partitive genitive have been used in place of *dē . . . generibus*? See A. & G. 216, c; H. 397, n. 3; G. 371, Rem. 5. Why is it not used? — <sup>9</sup> *Druidum*: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

**745.** <sup>1</sup> *Illī*: refers to *Druidum* at the end of 744. — <sup>2</sup> *hī*: refers to the Druids. — <sup>3</sup> *īdem*: nom. pl. — <sup>4</sup> *dēcrētō nōn stetit*: *does not acquiesce in the decision*; note that *stetit* is construed with the ablative (*dēcrētō*); for tense of *stetit* (translated present), see A. & G. 279, b; H. 471, 5. — <sup>5</sup> *sacrificiis interdicunt* and *Quibus est interdictum*: with *interdicō*, the thing from which the person is excluded is expressed by the abl. of separation (see *sacrificiis*); the person on whom the prohibition is laid is expressed by the dat. (see *Quibus*). For the impersonal use of *interdicō* in the pass., cf. Exs. in 522. — <sup>6</sup> *numerō*: abl. of place where, without prep.

**746.** <sup>1</sup> *mortuō*: perf. part. of *morior*; *hōc mortuō*, *at his death*. — <sup>2</sup> *quī*: used subst. = *quīs*. — <sup>3</sup> *ex reliquis*: see refs. in 744, note 8. — <sup>4</sup> *suffrāgiō*: in the same construction as *armis*. — <sup>5</sup> *Carnūtum*:

southwest of Paris, between the Seine and Loire. — <sup>6</sup> **Galliae**: gen. after **media**; A. & G. 218, *a*; H. 399, 3; G. 373. — <sup>7</sup> **Disciplina**: *the Druidical system*. — <sup>8</sup> Note that Caesar says here: **disciplina trāns-lāta esse existimātur**, *the system is thought to have been transferred*; might he have said: **disciplinam trāns-lātā esse existimātur**, *it is thought that the system was transferred*? See A. & G. 330, *b*; H. 534, *n*. 1, (2); G. 528. — <sup>9</sup> **quī**: cf. 743, note 2. — <sup>10</sup> **diligentius cōgnōscere**: *to gain a more thorough acquaintance with, or a more accurate knowledge of*.

747. <sup>1</sup> **cōnsuērunt**: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2. — <sup>2</sup> **et**: *both*. — <sup>3</sup> **in disciplinam conveniunt**: *place themselves under instruction*; hence, *enter the order*. — <sup>4</sup> **mittuntur**: sc. **multi**. — <sup>5</sup> **ēdiscere**: *to learn by heart*; note the intensive force of the prep. — <sup>6</sup> Note that Caesar says: **ēdiscere dicuntur**; might he have said: **eōs ēdiscere dicitur**? cf. 746, note 8. — <sup>7</sup> **vicēnōs**: why not **vīginti**? — <sup>8</sup> **in disciplinā**: *under training*. — <sup>9</sup> **fās**, def. neut., *divine law*; hence, translated adjectively, *right, lawful, proper*. — <sup>10</sup> **litteris mandāre**: *to commit to writing*. — <sup>11</sup> **cum**: *although*. — <sup>12</sup> **ūtantur**: for mood, cf. 642, Ex. 3. — <sup>13</sup> **Id**: *this practice*. — <sup>14</sup> **videntur**: cf. note 6. — <sup>15</sup> Note that in **quod . . . velint** the writer is reporting the reason of the Druids; whereas, below, in **quod . . . accidit** he is assigning a reason of his own. For the difference of mood, see A. & G. 321 and *a*; H. 516, I. and II.; G. 540 and 541. — <sup>16</sup> **litteris**: abl. with **cōnfisōs**, *depending on*. — <sup>17</sup> **praesidiō**: *through dependence on*. — <sup>18</sup> **perdiscendō**: note the intensive force of the prep., and cf. note 5. — <sup>19</sup> **remittant**: translate *relax* with **diligentiam**, *enfeeble* with **memoriam**; for mood, cf. 556, Ex. 5.

748. <sup>1</sup> **In primis**: *among their foremost* [doctrines]; hence, *especially, particularly*. — <sup>2</sup> **persuādēre**: *to inculcate*. — <sup>3</sup> **ab aliis ad aliōs**: *from one body to another*. — <sup>4</sup> **hōe**: *by this belief*. — <sup>5</sup> **excitārī**: sc. **hominēs**. — <sup>6</sup> **terrārum**: *the earth* (as made up of various lands).

749. <sup>1</sup> **equitum**: cf. 744, note 9. — <sup>2</sup> **aliquid**: why not **aliquid**? See A. & G. 105, *d*, *n*.; H. 190, *n*. 1; G. 105, 1. — <sup>3</sup> **utī . . . inferrent** and **utī . . . prōpulsārent** are subst. clauses of result in apposition with **quod**; for the subjunctives, cf. Exs. in 556. — <sup>4</sup> **ut quisque amplissimus . . . ita plūrimōs**: *the more distinguished . . . the more numerous*. — <sup>5</sup> **nōvērunt**: *acknowledge, recognize*.

750. <sup>1</sup> **religiōnibus**: *superstition*. — <sup>2</sup> **graviōribus**: *of unusual severity*; cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 4. — <sup>3</sup> **versantur**: *are in the midst*

of, are encompassed by. — <sup>4</sup> **administrīs**: predicate abl. agreeing in case with **Druidibus**; translate: *they employ the Druids as agents.* — <sup>5</sup> **reddātur**: A. & G. 336 (last sentence); H. 524; G. 653. The person making the sacrifice thinks (direct discourse): **nisi vita reddētur, nōn potest nūmen plācārī.** — <sup>6</sup> **institūta**: predicate participle; translate: *they have sacrifices established* (not *they have established sacrifices*). See A. & G. 292, c; H. 388, 1, n.; G. 230. — <sup>7</sup> **sint comprehēnsi**: for mood, see refs. under note 5. — <sup>8</sup> **dēfēcit**: *fails*; for tense, see refs. on **stetit**, 745, note 4.

**751.** <sup>1</sup> **hunc** and **inventōrem**: for the two accs., cf. Exs. in 397. — <sup>2</sup> **iter** is simply a *road* leading to a place; **via** is the *usual road*, often a *paved street or highway*. **Viārum atque itinerum ducem**: *their guide in journeys.* — <sup>3</sup> **Apollinem**, etc.: sc. **colunt.** — <sup>4</sup> **Jovem**: see **Jūpiter** in general vocabulary. — <sup>5</sup> **operum atque artificiōrum**: *manufactures and industrial arts.* — <sup>6</sup> **proeliō** and **bellō**: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 11. — <sup>7</sup> **cēperint**: fut. perf. indic. — <sup>8</sup> **locīs**: A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2. — <sup>9</sup> **accidit**: is it in the present tense or the perfect? To determine this, observe the tense of the dependent subjunctive **audēret**: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, 1; G. 511, Rem. 2. — <sup>10</sup> **religiōne**: *sacredness* (of the offering). — <sup>11</sup> **apud sē**: *at his own house.* — <sup>12</sup> **audēret**: what is the construction of the clause **ut . . . audēret**? cf. 556, Ex. 5, and 561.

**752.** <sup>1</sup> **Dīte**: *i.e.*, the god of the under world; in other words, the Gauls believed that their ancestors sprang from the soil. — <sup>2</sup> **id**: *this tradition.* — <sup>3</sup> **Ob eam causam**: *i.e.*, on account of their descent from the god of the realms of darkness. — <sup>4</sup> **spatia omnis temporis**: *all their periods of time*; grammatically, however, **omnis** agrees with **temporis.** — <sup>5</sup> **noctium**: cf. the English expressions *fortnight* (fourteen nights) and *sennight* (seven nights). — <sup>6</sup> **finiunt**: *compute, reckon.* — <sup>7</sup> **ut noctem diēs subsequuntur**: according to the reckoning of the Gauls, therefore, the day began at sunset, and the celebration of all anniversaries was entered upon in the evening. Compare our Christmas *Eve.* — <sup>8</sup> **hōc ferē**: *chiefly in this.* — <sup>9</sup> **differunt**: *differ*; this meaning appears to be confined to the present system. — <sup>10</sup> **liberōs**: why not **puerōs**? See Lesson XVIII., foot-note 2. — <sup>11</sup> **nisi cum**: *until.* — <sup>12</sup> **ad sē adire**: *to appear before them.* — <sup>13</sup> **filium puerili aetate**: *a son who is a minor.*

**753.** <sup>1</sup> **quantās pecūniās . . . accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonis cum dōtibus commūnicant**: *they add to the dowries out of their own*

*resources as much money as they have received.* — <sup>2</sup> **conjūnetim ratiō habētur**: *a joint account is kept.* — <sup>3</sup> **vītā**: cf. Exs. in 228. — <sup>4</sup> **superārīt**: fut. perf. indic. — <sup>5</sup> **dēcēssit** and **vēnit**: for force of tense, cf. 750, note 8. — <sup>6</sup> **in servilem modum**: *as in the case of slaves (i.e., by torture).* — <sup>7</sup> **si compertum est**: *if guilt is proved*; cf. also note 5.

754. <sup>1</sup> **prō cultū**: *considering the [imperfect] civilization.* — <sup>2</sup> **vīvīs cordī**: **cordī esse alicui** = *to lie near one's heart, to be dear to one*; for the two datives, cf. Exs. in 452. — <sup>3</sup> **paulō**: cf. Exs. in 545. — <sup>4</sup> **suprā hanc memoriā**: *before our time.* — <sup>5</sup> **jūstis fūneribus**: *the funeral rites proper, i.e., the regular or established funeral rites.*

755. <sup>1</sup> **commodius**: *more judiciously (than the rest).* — <sup>2</sup> **existimantur**: cf. 746, note 8. — <sup>3</sup> **sānctum** is here a predicate participle belonging to the clause **utī . . . commūnicet**; cf. 750, note 6. — <sup>4</sup> **quis** and **quī** are indefinite after **sī** and **nē**. — <sup>5</sup> **accēperit**: perf. subj., not fut. perf. indic.; why? — <sup>6</sup> **dēferat**: cf. Exs. in 686. — <sup>7</sup> **nēve**: *and not*; **nēve** (not **neque**) is the regular continuative particle in negative imperative clauses. — <sup>8</sup> **capere**: *rashly enter upon.* — <sup>9</sup> **cōgnitum est**: *experience has shown*; what is the subject? — <sup>10</sup> **quae vīsa sunt**: *what they deem proper.* — <sup>11</sup> **per concilium**: *in public council.*

756. <sup>1</sup> **hāc**: i.e., *of the Gauls.* — <sup>2</sup> **et**: for the repetition of the conjunction, see A. & G. 208, *b* (last part); H. 554, 6 (last part); G. 483, 2. — <sup>3</sup> **Volcānum**: *Vulcan, the fire god*; hence, here, *fire.* — <sup>4</sup> **fā-mā**: note the position. — <sup>5</sup> **vēnātiōnibus**: plural used because of the repeated instances; translate by the singular. — <sup>6</sup> **in studiīs rēi militāris**: *in military pursuits.* — <sup>7</sup> **ab parvulis**: *from childhood.*

757. <sup>1</sup> For the omission of the conjunction **et** with **cāseō** and **carne**, see A. & G. 208, *b* (first sentence); H. 554, 6; G. 483, 2; cf. **Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam** in 756. — <sup>2</sup> Note that the clause in which **quisquam** appears is negative; see refs. in foot-note 5, Lesson LVII. — <sup>3</sup> **in annōs singulōs**: *every year.* — <sup>4</sup> **agri**: construe with **quantum**: A. & G. 216, *a*, 3; H. 397, 3; G. 371; **quantum . . . agri**, *as much land and in such a place as they think fit.* — <sup>5</sup> **annō post**: *the year after*; cf. 545, Ex. 3.

758. <sup>1</sup> **agricultūrā**: cf. 662, Ex. 4. — <sup>2</sup> **vītandōs**: *for the purpose of avoiding, etc.*; note that **vītandōs** belongs to **frīgora** as well as to **aestūs**, but that it agrees with the latter: A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286. — <sup>3</sup> **nē qua**: see 755, note 4; for **qua** instead of **quae**, see A. & G. 105, *d*; H. 190, 1; G. 105, 1. — <sup>4</sup> **videat**: cf. 642, Ex. 2.

**759.** <sup>1</sup> *vastātis finibus*: abl. abs., *by laying waste their frontiers*. — <sup>2</sup> *Hōc*: explained by *expulsōs . . . cōsistere*. — <sup>3</sup> *propriū*: a *special proof* (something peculiarly belonging to). — <sup>4</sup> *virtūtis*: for the gen. after *propriū* (where the dat. might be looked for), see: A. & G. 218, *d*; H. 391, II., 4, (2); G. 356, Rem. 1. — <sup>5</sup> *quemquam*: see **757**, note 2. — <sup>6</sup> *hōc*: abl. of cause. — <sup>7</sup> *fore*: used as fut. infin. of *sum*. — <sup>8</sup> *sublātō*: see *tollō* in general vocabulary.

**760.** <sup>1</sup> *praesint*: subj. of purpose. — <sup>2</sup> *habeant*: subj. of result. — <sup>3</sup> *commūnis*: *common to all, having general jurisdiction*. — <sup>4</sup> *regiōnum atque pāgōrum*: *provinces and districts*; *regiō*, a portion of country of indefinite extent; *pāgus*, a district having fixed boundaries. — <sup>5</sup> *habent*: *involve, are attended with*.

**761.** <sup>1</sup> *quis*: *ubi* (whenever) has here the force of *sī*; hence *quis* is indefinite, *anyone*. — <sup>2</sup> *ex principibus*: cf. **744**, note 8. — <sup>3</sup> *qui*: *those who*, cf. **743**, note 2. — <sup>4</sup> *velint*: for the mood, cf. **750**, note 7. — <sup>5</sup> *profiteantur*: cf. Exs. in **686**; translate: *and that those who wish to follow are to give in their names*. Restore to the direct form: *sē duccem . . . profiteantur*. — <sup>6</sup> *hīs*: refers to those who have expressed a willingness to follow the chief; on *ex hīs*, cf. note 2. — <sup>7</sup> *hīs*: dat. (not abl.); cf. Exs. in **620**. — <sup>8</sup> *omnium . . . dērogātur*: *all confidence is thereafter withdrawn from them*. — <sup>9</sup> *sāctus*, *sacred* in the sense of inviolable; *sacer*, *sacred* in the sense of consecrated to some divinity. Could *sacrōs*, then, be substituted for *sāctōs* in the present passage?

## ABBREVIATIONS.

- A. & G.**, Allen and Greenough's Gram.  
**abbr.**, abbreviation, abbreviated.  
**abl.**, ablative.  
**abl. pers.**, ablative of the person.  
**abs.**, absolute, absolutely.  
**acc.**, accusative.  
**acc. pers.**, accusative of the person.  
**acc. th.**, accusative of the thing.  
**act.**, active.  
**adj.**, adjective, adjectively.  
**adv.**, adverb, adverbially.  
**ant.**, antecedent.  
**app.**, apposition, appositive.  
**C.**, common (masculine or feminine).  
**cf.** (cōnfer), compare.  
**cogn.**, cognate with.  
**comp.**, comparative.  
**conj.**, conjunction.  
**conn.**, connected.  
**dat.**, dative.  
**dat. pers.**, dative of the person.  
**dat. ref.**, dative of reference.  
**dat. th.**, dative of the thing.  
**def.**, defective.  
**demonstr.**, demonstrative.  
**denom.**, denominative.  
**dim.**, diminutive.  
**disc.**, discourse.  
**distr.**, distributive.  
**e. g.** (exemplī grātīā), for example.  
**Ex.**, example.  
**exclam.**, exclamation.  
**F., fem.**, feminine.  
**fm.**, form.  
**fr.**, from.  
**fut.**, future.  
**G.**, Gildersleeve's Grammar.  
**gen.**, genitive.  
**gen. pers.**, genitive of the person.  
**gen. th.**, genitive of the thing.  
**ger.**, gerundive.  
**H.**, Harkness's Grammar.  
**hist.**, historical.  
**i. e.** (id est), that is.  
**imper.**, imperative.  
**impers.**, impersonal.  
**indecl.**, indeclinable.  
**indef.**, indefinite.  
**indic.**, indicative.  
**indir.**, indirect.  
**infin.**, infinitive.  
**intens.**, intensive.  
**interj.**, interjection.  
**interrog., inter.**, interrogative.  
**intr.**, intransitive.  
**irreg.**, irregular.  
**lit.**, literal, literally.  
**loc.**, locative.  
**M., masc.**, masculine.  
**mod.**, modern.  
**N.**, neuter.  
**n.**, note.  
**neg.**, negative.  
**num.**, numeral.  
**opp.**, opposed to.  
**opt.**, optative.  
**ord.**, ordinal.  
**orig.**, original, originally.  
**p.**, page.  
**p. a.**, participial adjective.  
**par.**, paragraph.  
**part.**, participle.  
**part. gen.**, partitive genitive.  
**pass.**, passive.  
**perf.**, perfect.  
**periphr.**, periphrastic.  
**pers.**, person, personal.  
**pl.**, plural.  
**poss.**, possessive.  
**pp.**, pages.  
**prep.**, preposition.  
**pres.**, present.  
**pron.**, pronoun, pronominal.  
**q. v.** (quod vidē), which see.  
**ref.**, reference.  
**reflex.**, reflexive, reflexively.  
**rel.**, relative.  
**Rem.**, remark.  
**sc.** (scilicet), supply, understand.  
**sent.**, sentence.  
**sing.**, singular.  
**st.**, stem.  
**subj.**, subjunctive.  
**subst.**, substantive, substantively.  
**suff.**, suffix.  
**sup.**, supine.  
**superl.**, superlative.  
**tr., trans.**, transitive.  
**Trans.**, translate.  
**usu.**, usually.  
**vb.**, verb.  
**vocab.**, vocabulary.  
**w.**, with.



# VOCABULARIES.



## I. LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE: The sign '√' signifies 'root'; thus √gen- is to be read 'root gen-.'

For the use of the asterisk (\*), see Lesson XCIII., foot-note 9.

The term 'base' is applied to stems or parts of stems treated as roots; see **clāmor**.

English words or parts of words that have been *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from the Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in *this type*; for examples, see: **causa, aeternus**. English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS; for examples, see: **frāter, pedes**.

Roots, stems, or complete words that enter into the formation of the words in this vocabulary, are given, together with their meanings, in brackets; the nominative or indicative form of each stem cited is given in parenthesis; the suffix is not given. For examples, see: **aditus, agmen, adjungō, amicitia**.

In the resolution of compounds given in brackets, the hyphen is appended to inseparable prefixes to distinguish them from the prepositions, which may stand alone. Thus **in-** is the inseparable negative prefix, cognate with English UN-; but **in** is the preposition, cognate with English IN. For examples, see: **impendēō, imperitus, redeō**.

In the principal parts of verbs, the perfect participle usually appears in the masculine form; but in verbs that are *invariably* intransitive the neuter form is given. For examples, see: **dūcō, veniō**.

The abbreviations used are explained on the preceding page.

### ā, ab, abs

**ā, ab, abs** (**ab** before vowels and some consonants, **ā** before consonants only, **abs** sometimes in the expression **abs tē**), prep. w. abl., *away from, from; by; in, on, at*: **ab sinistrā parte**, *on the left side*; **OF**: **ab aliquō quaerere**, *to inquire OF someone*; **TO**: **āversus ā**, *hostile to, opposed to, averse to*.

**ab-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [**ab**, *away*; **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead away, carry OFF*.

**ab-eō**, -ire, -īvi or -ī, -itum [**ab**, *away*; **eō**, *go*], *go away*.

**ab-solvō**, -ere, -vī, -ūtus [**ab**, *from*; **solvō**, *loose*], *absolve, acquit*.

### ac-cendō

**abstinentia**, -ae, f. [**abstinent-** (st. of **abstinēns**), *abstaining*], *self-restraint, abstinence*.

**abstineō**, -ere, -uī [**abs**, *OFF*; **teneō**, *hold*], *hold OFF, abstain*.

**ab-sum**, *abesse*, āfuī [**ab**, *away*; **sum**, *be*], *be away, be absent, be distant; be wanting; ā bellō abesse*, *to take no part in war*.

**ac**, see *atque*.

**ac-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [**ad**, *to*; **cēdō**, *go or come*], *go or come to, approach; be added; ac-cēdere ad*, *to come up to*.

**ac-cendō**, -ere, -cendi, -census [**ad**, *to*; **veand-**, *set fire*], *kindle; inflame, fire*.

**ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidī [ad, to; cadō, fall], happen, occur; (w. dat. pers.) happen to, befall.

**ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, to (one's self); capiō, take], accept, receive; receive (as by transmission from ancestors); experience; hear of, hear.

**ac-commodō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, to; commodō, make suitable], adjust.

**accūrātē**, adv. [abl. form of accūrātus, careful], carefully, elaborately.

**ac-currō**, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum [ad, to; currō, run], run to, hasten to.

**ac-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, to, against; causa, charge (through denom. vb. \*causō; cf. causor)], bring a charge against, call to account, take to task, accuse.

**Achillās**, -ae, m., *Achillas* (commander of the forces of Ptolemy Dionysus, king of Egypt).

**aciēs**, -ē and -ēī, f. [vac-, sharp], edge; line of battle, line, army (drawn up in battle array).

**ācriter**, adv. [ācri- (st. of ācer), sharp], sharply, with energy, vigorously, resolutely, valiantly.

**ad**, prep. w. acc. (opp. **ab**), (of motion towards) to, against; (of nearness) **AT**, close by; (w. num.) about; according to; (expressing purpose, especially with gerunds or gerundives) for; **ad hunc modum**, as follows; **ad Id. April.** = **ad Idūs Aprilis**, on the *Ides* (thirteenth) of *April*.

**ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ad, to; dūcō, lead], lead to, lead, bring to, bring; lead, prompt, move, incite, influence.

**ad-eō**, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -itus [ad, to; eō, go], go to, get **AT**, approach, come into the presence of, appear before; incur.

**ad-ferō**, adferre, attulī, adlātus (allātus) [ad, to; ferō, BEAR, BRING], bring to, bring, bring forward, advance.

**ad-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to; faciō, DO], DO (something) to, visit with; hence, (in good sense) bestow upon; (in bad sense) inflict upon; **adfectus morbis**, having diseases, laboring under diseases.

**ad-fīnis**, -e, adj. [ad, near to; fīnis, boundary], having adjacent boundaries, neighboring; related to; privy to, implicated in.

**ad-hibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad, to, towards; habeō, hold], hold towards, bring to; summon, invite, admit; apply; exercise.

**ad-hūc** (accent the final syllable), adv. [ad, to; hūc, hither], hitherto, up to this time.

**ad-imō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus [ad, to (one's self); emō, take], (take to one's self from another, and so) take away from, deprive of (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**aditus**, -ūs, m. [ad-vī-, go to], a going-to, approach, access; presence.

**ad-jungō**, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūctus [ad, to; jungo, join], join to, join, unite, add to.

**ad-juvō**, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtus [ad, to; juvō, give aid], give aid to, aid.

**ad-minister**, -trī, m. [ad, near to; minister, servant], (one who is at hand to serve, and so) assistant, minister, agent.

**ad-ministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, near to; ministrō, serve], (be at hand to serve, and so) assist; manage, execute, administer, conduct.

**ad-mīror**, -ārī, -ātus [ad, **AT**; mīror, wonder], wonder **AT**, admire.

**ad-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ad, to; mittō, let go], let go to, admit; allow, permit; commit, penetrate, perform.

**admodum**, adv. [ad, up to; modus, MEASURE, limit], (to a [great] measure, and so) excessively, extremely, quite.

**ad-olēscō**, -ere, -ēvī, -ultus [ad, to (maturity); olēscō, grow], grow or come to maturity, grow up.

**adrogantia**, -ae, f. [adrogant- (st. of adrogāns), *arrogant*], *arrogance, presumption*.

**ad-scendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [ad, to; scandō, climb], *climb to, climb, ascend*.

**ad-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [ad, up to; sequor, follow], *attain to, accomplish*.

**ad-siduus**, -a, -um, adj. [ad-*vsed-*, sit by], (sitting or staying by, and so) *constant, long-continued, incessant*.

**ad-sistō**, -ere, -stitī [ad, AT, by; sistō, place], *place one's self AT OR by, place one's self, STAND*.

**ad-speciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [ad, to, AT; speciō, look], *look AT or upon, look*.

**adsuēficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [adsuē- (st. in adsuēscō), *be accustomed*; faciō, make], *accustom, habituate, train*.

**ad-sum**, adesse, adfui [ad, AT, near; sum, be], *be AT hand, be there; be by to assist, stand by*.

**Aduātuci**, -ōrum, m., the *Aduātuci* (a German tribe in Belgic Gaul between the Meuse and the Scheldt).

**adolēscēns**, -entis, c. [p. a., used subst., of adolēscō (with change of o to u), *grow up*], *one not yet grown to maturity; young man or woman, youth*.

**adolēscēntia**, -ae, f. [adolēscēnt- (st. of adolēscēns), *young*], *youth, the time of youth*.

**ad-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [ad, to; veniō, come], *COME to, COME*.

**adventus**, -ūs, m. [ad-*vven-*, come to], *coming to, arrival*.

**adversus**, -a, -um [p. a. of ad-vertō, turn towards], 1. *turned towards, facing, opposite; unsuccessful, adverse*. 2. *adversus*, prep. w. acc., *towards*.

**ad-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus [ad, to; vertō, turn], *turn to; animum advertere, to perceive*.

**ad-vesperāscit**, -ere, -āvit, im-

pers. [ad, on, near; vesperāscit, evening is coming], *evening is coming on, it is getting to be evening*.

**aedificium**, -iī, n. [aedific- (st. of \*aedifex), *builder*; cf. artificium, fr. artifice, st. of artifex], *building*.

**aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedific- (st. of \*aedifex), *builder*], (act as a builder, and so) *construct a building; build*.

**aedilis**, -is, m. [aedi- (st. of aedis or aedēs), *building*], (adj. used subst., and so) *officer having to do with (public) buildings, superintendent of public works, aedile*.

**Aedui**, -ōrum, m., the *Aedui* (a tribe in Celtic Gaul between the Loire and the Saône); in sing., **Aeduus**, -ī, m., an *Aeduan*.

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, ill, diseased, feeble*.

**aegrē**, adv. [abl. fm. of aeger, q.v.], *with difficulty*.

**aemulus**, -a, -um, adj., *envious, jealous*.

**aequitās**, -ātis, f. [aequo- (st. of aequus), *even*], *evenness*; **animī aequitās**, *contented state of mind, content*.

**aequō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aequo- (st. of aequus), *level, equal*], *place on a level, put on equality, make equal, equalize*.

**aequor**, -oris, n. [base aequ- (in aequō and acquus), *level*], (*evenness*, and so) *surface; seu* (as presenting a level surface).

**acrarium**, -iī, n. [aes- (st. of aes; -s- becomes -r-), *money*], (adj. used subst., and so) *place for depositing money, treasury*.

**aes**, aeris, n. [cogn. w. Eng. ore], *copper, bronze; money; aes allēnum, another's money, i.e., debt*.

**aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer season*.

**aestimātiō**, -ōnis, f. [aestimā- (st. of aestimō), *value*], *valuation, appraisal, estimate*.

**aestimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *value, estimate, fix; consider, deem*.

**aestuōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [aestu- (st. of aestus), *heat*], *full of heat, burning hot*.

**aestus**, -ūs, M., *boiling, tossing*, and so (of fire, etc.) *heat*; (of the sea) *swell*; **maritimī aestūs**, *tides*.

**aetās**, -ātis, F. [= aevitās, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), *age*], *time of life, life, age*.

**aeternus**, -a, -um, adj. [= aeviternus, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), *eternity, age*], *eternal*.

**Africānus**, -ī, M. [Āfricā- (st. of Āfrica), *Africa*], (adj. used subst.) *conqueror of Africa, Africanus* (surname of Scipio the elder as conqueror of Hannibal at Zama 202 B.C.; also of Scipio the younger as destroyer of Carthage 146 B.C.).

**ager**, -grī, M. [cogn. w. Eng. ACRE], *land, soil; field; district*; in pl., *fields, country districts*.

**Agēsī-lāus**, -ī, M., *Agésilas* (king of the Spartans B.C. 398-361).

**ag-ger**, -eris, M. [ad, *to*; √ges- (-s becomes -r-), *carry*], (what is carried to, and so) *materials for constructing a mound* (as earth, stone, brushwood, etc.); *mound, embankment; rampart*.

**agmen**, -inis, N. [√ag-, *put in motion, lead*], (that which is led, and so) *train, army* (on the march); **novissimum agmen**, *rear*.

**agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus [√ag-, *put in motion*], *lead, drive; do*; (of courts, assizes, etc.) *hold*; **agere dē**, *to discuss, to talk over*; **agere cum**, *to treat or confer with*; (imper.) **agite**, *on!*

**agrārius**, -a, -um, adj. [agro- (st. of ager), *land*], *pertaining to land*.

**agrī cultūra** or **agricultūra**, -ae, F. [ager, *soil*; cultūra, *cultivation*], *cultivation of the soil, agriculture*.

**alacer**, -cris, -cre, adj., *eager*.

**alacritās**, -ātis, F. [alacri- (st. of alacer), *eager*], *eagerness*.

**ālārius**, -a, -um, adj. [ālā- (st. of āla), *wing*], *belonging to the wing*; subst., **ālārii**, -ōrum, M., *auxiliaries* (posted on the wings of the army).

**albeō**, -cēre [albo- (st. of albus), *white*], *be white*.

**Alexandrēa** (or **-ia**), -ae, F., *Alexandria* (capital of Egypt; founded by Alexander B.C. 331).

**Alexandrinī**, -ōrum, M., *inhabitants of Alexandria*; see *Alexandrēa*.

**algor**, -ōris, M., *cold*.

**aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [alio- (st. of alius), *other*], *belonging to another, another's, foreign; unfavorable*.

**aliō**, adv. [old case form of alius, *other*, used adv.], *to another place, elsewhere*.

**aliquandō**, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quandō, *when*], *at some time; at any time*.

**aliquantus**, -a, -um, adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quantus, *how much, what*], *somewhat*.

**aliquī**, -qua, -quod, indef. adj. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some, any*; quī, *which*], *some; any*.

**aliquis**, -quid, indef. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some, any*; quis, *who*], *some one, something; any one, anything*; occasionally adj., *some; any*.

**aliquot**, indecl. adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quot, *how many*], *several*.

**aliter**, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), *other*], *otherwise*.

**alius**, -a, -ud, adj. and subst. [cogn. with English ELSE], *other, another; alius . . . alius* [*one . . . one*], *another . . . another; one*

another; **ab aliīs ad aliōs**, from one [body] to another.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, m., the *Allobroges* (a tribe of Celtic Gauls between the Rhone and the Isère).

**alō**, -ere, aluī, altus [val, nourish], nurture, rear, bring up, support, maintain.

**alter**, -tera, -terum, adj. [comparative form of base al- seen in alius; hence alter refers to two objects, or groups of objects], OTHER (of two); **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the OTHER, each OTHER.

**altitūdō**, -inis, f. [alto- (st. of altus), high, deep], height; depth.

**altus**, -a, -um [p. a. of alō, nurture; cogn. w. English OLD], (made great by nurturing, and so) high, tall; deep.

**amāns**, -antis [p. a. of amō, love], loving, fond, friendly.

**ambactus**, -ī, m., vassal.

**Ambiānī**, -ōrum, m., the *Ambiani* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

**ambitus**, -ūs, m. [amb-ŷi-, go about], going about; corrupt canvassing for votes, and so bribery.

**amicē**, adv. [abl. form of amicus, friendly, kind], kindly, favorably.

**amicitia**, -ae, f. [amico- (st. of amicus), friendly], friendship, amity.

**amicus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. amō, love], friendly, favorably disposed; subst., friend.

**ā-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ab, from; mittō, let go], lose.

**amor**, -ōris, m. [base am- (in amō), love], love.

**amplificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amplifico- (st. of \*amplificus), making large], enlarge, increase, extend.

**amplus**, -a, -um, adj., large, ample; illustrious, glorious, distinguished, magnificent; n. comp. used adv., **amplius**, more.

**Amūlius**, -iī, m., *Amulius* (legendary king of Alba).

**an**, conj., or.

**an-ceps**, -cipitis, adj. [amb-, on

both sides, double; capit- (st. of caput), HEAD], (with head on both sides, double headed, and so) double; doubtful; treacherous.

**ancilla**, -ae, f., maid-servant, girl.

**ancora**, -ae, f., anchor.

**angor**, -ōris, m. [√ang-, squeeze], strangling; **anguish**.

**angulus**, -ī, m., angle, corner.

**angustiae**, -ārum, f. [angusto- (st. of angustus), strait, narrow], straits, difficulties, perplexities.

**anima**, -ae, f., air; breath; life; soul, spirit, mind.

**animadvertō**, -ere, -tī, -versus [animus, mind; advertō, turn to], turn the mind to, perceive, observe, notice, note; (w. in and acc.) inflict punishment ON.

**animal**, -ālis, n. [= animāle, n. adj. used subst., fr. animā- (st. of anima), breath, life], (that which has breath or life, and so) living creature, animal.

**animōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [animus- (st. of animus), courage], full of courage, spirited.

**animus**, -ī, m., soul, spirit; disembodied or departed spirit; mind; heart, feelings; disposition; courage.

**annālis**, -e, adj. [anno- (st. of annus), year], pertaining to the year.

**annōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [anno- (st. of annus), year], full of years.

**annus**, -ī, m., year; **in annōs singulōs**, each year, every year.

**annuus**, -a, -um, adj. [anno- (st. of annus), year], yearly, **annual**; translated adv., **annually**.

**ante**, prep. w. acc., before, in advance of; adv., before, earlier.

**anteā**, adv. [ante, before; acc. pl. n. ea† (orig. eā), these things], before.

**ante-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [ante, before; ferō, BEAR], BEAR before; prefer.

† This is sometimes explained as an abl.; but see CORR. AUSSPR. I. 769, II. 455.

**ante-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [ante, *before*; pōnō, *place*], *place before, prefer*.

**ante quam orantequam** [ante, *sooner*; quam, *than*], *before; until*.

**antiquitus**, adv. [antīquo- (st. of antīquus), *ancient*], *anciently, in former times, in early times*.

**antīquus**, -a, -um, adj. [=antīcus, fr. anti- (st. of ante), *before*], *ancient, of early date, early*.

**aperiō**, -īre, -eruī, -ertus, *open*.

**apertē**, adv. [abl. fm. of apertus, *open*], *openly, manifestly, obviously*.

**apertus**, -a, -um [p. a. of aperiō, *open*], *open, exposed; free from trees*.

**Apollō**, -inis, M., *Apollo* (son of Jupiter and Latona, and brother of Diana; god of the sun, and of divination, healing, archery, poetry, music, etc.).

**ap-pāreō**, -ēre, -pāruī [ad, *to, before*; pāreō, *be ready*], *appear; appāret, it is evident*.

**appellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accost, address, greet; entitle, call*.

**appetēns**, -entis [p. a. of appetō, *seek after*], *desirous; covetous*.

**ap-petō**, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [ad, *to, towards, after*; petō, *seek*], *seek after, strive to secure*.

**approbātor**, -ōris, M. [approbā- (st. of approbō), *approve*], *approver; aprobātor esse, to approve*.

**ap-propinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad, *to; propinquō, draw near*], *draw near to, approach*.

**Aprīlis**, -is, M. [= \*Aperīlis, adj. used subst., fr. aperi- (st. of aperiō), *open*], (the month which opens the ground, *i.e.*) *April*.

**Apsus**, -ī, M., *Apsus* (a river in southern Illyria).

**apud**, prep. w. acc., (in designations of place) *with, at, near, about, before*; (w. subst. referring to persons) *at the headquarters of, at the house of, in the works of, according to; in the estimation of, in the case of; among*.

**Āpūlia**, -ae, F., *Apulia* (province in southern Italy).

**aqua**, -ae, F., *water*.

**aquilō**, -ōnis, M. [aquilo- (st. of aquilus), *dark*], (the bringer of storms and darkness, and so) *north wind*; (used adj. w. ventus) *north*.

**Aquītānī**, -ōrum, M., *the Aquitani*; see Aquītānia.

**Aquītānia**, -ae, F., *Aquitania* (one of the three chief divisions of Transalpine Gaul, between the Garonne river and the Pyrenees mountains).

**āra**, -ae, F., *altar*; see Fig. 2.

**arbitrium**, -īī, N. [arbitro- (st. of arbitro), *witness, umpire*], *being umpire; decision (of the umpire)*.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus [arbitro- (st. of arbitro), *witness*], (be a witness or observer,

Altar, from a Pompeian painting.

**arbor**, -oris, F., *tree*.

**arceō**, -ēre, -uī [conn. w. arx, *stronghold*], *ward off*.

**arcēssō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [intens. fm. of accēdō, *come to*, but with causative meaning; ar = ad], (cause to come to, and so) *invite, summon*.

**Arethūsa**, -ae, F., *Arethusa* (celebrated fountain near Syracuse, Sicily).

**Ariovistus**, -ī, M., *Ariovistus* (king of a German tribe in the time of Caesar).

**arma**, -ōrum, N. [var., *fit*; cf. ars], (what is fitted to the body, and so) *arms*.

**armātūra**, -ae, F. [armā- (st. of armō), *equip, arm, equipment, armor*].

**Arpīnum**, -ī, N., *Arpinum* (town in Latium; birthplace of Cicero and Marius).

**arrogantia**, see adrogantia.

**ars, artis**, F. [var., *fit*; cf.



Fig. 2.

arma], (fitting, skill in fitting, and so) *skill, art; handicraft, occupation, profession.*

**artificium**, -iī, n. [artific- (st. of artifex), *artificer*], *artisanshīp; handicraft, trade*; in pl., *industrial arts.*

**Arvernī**, -ōrum, m., *the Arverni* (a powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul, south of the Aedui).

**arx**, **arcis**, f. [√arc-, *hold fast*], *stronghold, fortress, citadel.*

**ās**, **assis**, m., **as** (copper coin worth about four-fifths of a cent).

**a-scendō**, see *adscendō.*

**Asia**, -ae, f., *Asia* (the continent).

**asper**, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, rugged; harsh, rude, fierce.*

**a-spiciō**, see *adspiciō.*

**as-sequor**, see *adsequor.*

**assiduus**, see *adsiduus.*

**as-sistō**, see *adsistō.*

**assuēfaciō**, see *adsuēfaciō.*

**at**, conj., *but, on the other hand.*

**Athēnae**, -ārum, f., **Athens** (capital of Attica).

**Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj. [Athēnā- (st. of Athēnae), **Athens**], *Athenian*; used subst., *an Athenian.*

**āthlēta**, -ae, m. [borrowed fr. the Greek], *wrestler, athlete.*

**atque** (before vowels and consonants) or **ac** (before consonants only), conj. [ad, *in addition*; que, and], *and also, and.*

**Atrebatēs**, -um, m., *the Atrebatēs* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

**atrōcītās**, -ātis, f. [atrōci- (st. of atrōx), *fierce*], *ferocity, cruelty, severity.*

**atrōx**, -ōcis, adj. [apparently fr. ātro- (st. of āter), *dark*, but w. change of quantity], *dark, hideous, atrocious.*

**at-tendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [ad, *towards*; tendo, *stretch*], *stretch or direct towards; direct the attention to, consider.*

**attentē**, adv. [abl. fm. of attentus, *intent, attentive*], *attentively, earnestly.*

**Atticus**, -ī, m., **Atticus** (surname of Titus Pomponius, friend of Cicero; given to him on account of his long residence in Athens and his familiarity with Greek literature).

**at-tingō**, -ere, -tigī [ad, *to*; tangō, *touch*], *touch, come in contact with; reach, arrive AT.*

**at-tribuō**, -ere, -nī, -ūtus [ad, *to*; tribuō, *allot*], *allot to, assign.*

**auctor**, -ōris, m. [√aug-, *be strong, grow*], (he who makes strong or makes grow, and so) *author; adviser.*

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f. [auctōr- (st. of auctor), *author*], *authority, influence.*

**audācia**, -ae, f. [audāci- (st. of audāx), *bold*], *boldness, recklessness, audacity.*

**audācter**, adv. [audāci- (st. of audāx), *bold*], *boldly, with boldness.* Comp. **audācius**, *more boldly.*

**audāx**, -ācis, adj. [conn. w. audeō, *dare*], *daring, bold.*

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus [= \*avideō, fr. avido- (st. of avidus), *eager*], (be eager, and so) *dare, venture.*

**audiō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [conn. w. auris, *EAR*], *hear; listen.*

**au-ferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab, *from*; ferō, *BEAR*], *BEAR OR carry away, remove.*

**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus [√aug-, *be strong, grow*; cogn. w. Eng. *WAX*], (make grow, and so) *augment, increase.*

**augur**, -uris, c. [au- = avi- (st. of avis), *bird*], (one whose predictions are founded [in part] on the observation of birds, *i.e.*) *an augur.*

**aurum**, -ī, n. [√aus- (-s- becomes -r-), *shine*], (the shining metal, and so) *gold.*

**aut**, conj., *either, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

**autem**, conj. [conn. w. aut], *but, however; moreover, further.*

**Autrōnius**, -iī, m., **Publius Autronius Pactus** (one of Catiline's con-

federates in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

**auxiliāris**, -e, adj. [auxilio- (st. of auxiliūm), *help*], *belonging or pertaining to help, auxiliary*; subst., **auxiliārēs**, -ium, M., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries*.

**auxilium**, -i, N. [conn. w. augeō, *increase*], *help, aid, assistance*.

**āversus**, -a, -um [p. a. of āvertō, *turn from*], (turned from, and so) *averse, hostile*; **āversus ā**, *hostile to*.

**āvertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus [ā, *from*; vertō, *turn*], *turn from, turn aside*.

**Aviēnus**, -ī, M., *Gajus Avienus* (a military tribune under Caesar in the African war).

**āvocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ab, *from*, OFF; vocō, *call*], *call OFF, withdraw*.

**avus**, -ī, M., *grandfather*.

### B.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *rude, savage*; subst., *barbarian*.

**beātus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of beō, *make happy, bless*], *happy, blessed*.

**Belgae**, -ārum, M., *the Belgae* (inhabited northern Gaul between the rivers Seine and Marne and the Rhine).

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [bellico- (st. of bellicus), *pertaining to war*], *warlike*.

**bellum**, -ī, N. [conn. w. duo, TWO], *war*; **belli**, *in war*.

**bene**, adv. [for bone, abl. fm. of bonus, *good*], *well*.

**beneficium**, -iī, N. [benefico- (st. of beneficus), *kind, obliging*], *kindness, benefit, service, favor, generosity*.

**Bibrax**, -actis, F., *Bibrax* (a town of the Remi in Belgic Gaul).

**biduum**, -ī, N. [bi- (= dvi-), conn. w. duo, TWO; -duum, conn. w. diēs, *day*], *space of TWO days, TWO days*.

**binī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [= \*dvīnī, fr. st. of duo, TWO], *TWO and TWO, in groups of TWO, TWO from each*; (w. subst. pl. in fm., but sing. in meaning) TWO.

**bipartitō**, adv. [n. abl. of bipartitus, *divided into two parts*], *in TWO parts or divisions*.

**Biturigēs**, -um, M., *the Bituriges* (a tribe in Celtic Gaul, south of the Loire).

**Bōi** or **Bōji**, -ōrum, M., *the Boi* or *Boji* (a Celtic tribe in alliance with the Helvetians).

**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., *good, honorable*; n. pl. subst., **bona**, -ōrum, *goods, property, resources*. Comp., **mellior**, -ius, *better*. Superl., **optimus**, -a, -um, *best; excellent*.

**bōs**, bovis, C., *ox*.

**brevis**, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

**brevitās**, -ātis, F. [brevis- (st. of brevis), *short*], *shortness; diminutive stature*.

**breviter**, adv. [brevis- (st. of brevis), *short*], *briefly*.

**Britannia**, -ae, F., *Britain* (including England and Scotland).

**Brundisium**, -iī, N., *Brundisium* (a town of Calabria on the Adriatic, and the usual port of departure for Greece).

### C.

C. 1. abbr. of **Gājus**, **Gāi**, M., *Gajus* (a Roman praenōmen or first name). 2. abbr. for **centum**, *HUNDRED*.

**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsum [√cad-, *fall*], *fall*.

**caedēs**, -is, F. [√caed-, *cut, hew*], *cutting down, slaughter, massacre; assassination, murder*.

**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus [√caed-, *cut, hew*], *cut down, cut to pieces; slay, slaughter*.

**caelestis**, -e, adj. [conn. w. caelum, *heaven*], *pertaining to the heavens, celestial*; n. pl. subst., **caelestia**, -ium, *heavenly bodies, celestial phenomena*.



**caelum**, -ī, N., *sky, heaven*; pl. caeli, M., in verse only.

**Caepiō**, -ōnis, M., *Quintus Servilius Caepio* (as proconsul, fought unsuccessfully with the Cimbri 105 B.C.).

**Caesar**, -aris, M., *Gajus Julius Caesar* (the famous Roman general and statesman; lived 100-44 B.C.).

**calamitās**, -ātis, F., *disaster, calamity*.

**Campānia**, -ae, F., *Campania* (district on the south-west coast of Italy).

**capāx**, -ācis, adj. [√cap-, *take*], (able to take or hold much, and so) *capacious*; *capable*.

**capillus**, -ī, M. [dim. form fr. capit- (st. of caput), HEAD; lit., adj. (sc. crīnis, *hair*)], *hair of the head, hair*.

**capīō**, -ere, cēpī, captus [√cap-, *take*], *take, lay hold of*; *capture*; *win, allure, charm, enchain*; (w. cōnsilium) *form, adopt*.

**captivus**, -ī, M. [adj. used subst. fr. √cap-, *take*], *captive*.

**Capua**, -ae, F., *Capua* (chief city of Campania).

**caput**, -itis, N., HEAD; (w. numerals) *person, soul*; *capital crime, capital punishment, death*; *chief city*.

**capitālis**, -e, adj. [capit- (st. of caput), HEAD], *pertaining to the head or life, capital*.

**carcer**, -eris, M., *prison*.

**careō**, -ēre, -uī, *be without*.

**carīna**, -ae, F., *keel*.

**carmen**, -inis, N., *song, verse, strain*.

**Carnūtēs**, -um, M., *the Carnutes* (a tribe of Celtic Gaul on both sides of the Loire).

**carō**, *carnis*, F., *flesh, meat*.

**carpō**, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *pluck*; *pluck at, carp at, revile*.

**carrus**, -ī, M., *cart, wagon*.

**Carthāgō**, -inis, F., *Carthage* (city on the northern coast of Africa; destroyed by Scipio the younger 146 B.C.).

**Carthāginiēnsis**, -e, adj. [Carthāgin- (st. of Carthāgō), *Carthage*], *Carthaginian*; see Carthāgō.

**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

**cāseus**, -ī, M., *cheese*.

**Cassius**, -iī, M., *Lucius Cassius Longinus* (defeated and killed by the Tigurini 107 B.C.).

**castellum**, -ī, N. dim. [castro- (st. of castrum), *fortified place*], *stronghold*.

**Casticus**, -ī, M., *Casticus* (a Sequanian, son of Catamantaloedes).

**castra**, -ōrum, N., *camp*.

**cāsus**, -ūs, M. [√cād-, *fall*], *falling*; *chance*; *misfortune*; *unfortunate condition*.

**Catamantaloedēs**, -is, M., *Catamantaloedes* (ruler of the Sequani).

**catellus**, -ī, M. [dim. fr. catulo- (st. of catulus), *young dog*], *puppy*.

**Catīlina**, -ae, M., *Catiline* (notorious Roman conspirator; lived 108-62 B.C.).

**Catō**, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Porcius Cato* (called the elder, or the censor; lived 234-149 B.C.).

**causa**, -ae, F., *cause, reason*; *excuse, pretext*; *enterprise*; **causā** (following its genitive), *for the sake, for the purpose*.

**caueō**, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard*.

**cēdō**, -ere, cēssī, cēssus, *go*; *withdraw, retire, depart*; *grant, concede*.

**celebrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [\*celebro- (presumed original st. of celeser) *frequented*], (make frequented, and so) *throng, frequent*; *celebrate*.

**celer**, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*.

**celeritās**, -ātis, F. [celerī- (st. of celer), *swift*], *swiftness, speed, celerity*.

**celeriter**, adv. [celerī- (st. of celer), *swift*], *swiftly, quickly, speedily*.

**Celtae**, -ārum, M., *Celts or Kelts* (name applied by Caesar to the

Gauls who dwelt between the Seine and the Garonne).

**cēnsēō**, -ēre, -suī, -sus, *rate*; (of proceedings in the senate) *vote*, *decree*; *think*.

**cēnsor**, -ōris, M. [base cēns- (in cēnsēō), *rate*], (the rating officer, *i.e.*) *ensor* (one of two Roman magistrates whose duty it was: 1. to superintend the registration of the citizens and their property; 2. to exercise control over the conduct and morals of the citizens; 3. to superintend the administration of the finances of the state).

**cēnsus**, -ūs, M. [base cēns- (in cēnsēō), *rate*], *rating*, *registration*, *enumeration*, *census*.

**centum**, indecl. num. adj., a HUNDRED.

**centuria**, -ae, F. [conn. w. centum, HUNDRED], *century* (the century was one-sixtieth of a legion, and contained, in Caesar's time, about 100 men; see legiō).

**centuriō**, -ōnis, M. [centuriā- (st. of centuria), *century*], *centurion* (the commanding officer of a century; there were sixty centurions in a legion).

**Ceraunus** (**Ptolomaeus**), -ī, M., *Ptolemy Ceraunus* (murdered Seleucus and obtained possession of Macedonia 280 B.C.).

**cernō**, -ere, crēvī, certus [√cer-, *separate*], *separate*; *distinguish* (by the senses), *perceive*, *see*; *decide*.

**certāmen**, -inis, N. [certā- (st. of certō), *struggle*], (result of struggling, and so) *contest*.

**certē**, adv. [abl. fm. of certus, *certain*], *certainly*, *assuredly*, *at any rate*.

**certō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of cernō, *decide*, fr. certo- (st. of perf. part. certus)], *decide by contest*, *struggle*, *vie*.

**certus**, -a, -um [p. a. of cernō, *decide*], *decided*, *fixed*, *particular*; *certain*, *assured*, *undoubted*; *cer-*

*tiōrem facere*, *to inform*; *certior fieri*, *to be informed*.

**cervus**, -ī, M. [conn. w. cornū, HORN], (horned animal, and so) *stag*.

**cēssō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of cēdō, *go*, *retire*], *loiter*, *abate*, *cease*.

\***cēterus**, -a, -um, adj., usu. pl., *the OTHER*, *the remaining*, *the rest of*; subst., **cēteri**, -ōrum, *the rest*.

**Cicerō**, -ōnis, M., *Cicero* (the celebrated Roman orator; lived 106-43 B.C.).

**circiter**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [circo- (st. of circus), *circle*], *round about*, *about*.

**circuitus**, -ūs, M. [circu(m)-vī-, *go around*], *going around*, *circuit*.

**circum**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [acc. of circus, *circle*], *around*, *about*.

**circum-dō**, -are, -dedī, -dātus [circum, *around*; dō, *put*], *put around*, *surround*, *build around*, *enclose*.

**circum-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [circum, *around*; dūcō, *lead*], *lead around*.

**circum-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [circum, *around*; ferō, BEAR], *carry round*, *pass round*.

**circum-mūniō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum, *around*; mūniō, *wall*], *wall around*, *fortify*, *protect*.

**circum-stō**, -āre, -stetī [circum, *around*; stō, STAND], *stand around*, *surround*.

**circum-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [circum, *around*; veniō, COME], *surround*, *envelop*; *surround in a hostile manner*, *oppress*, *defraud*.

**citerior**, -ius, adj. [comp. of citer, *belonging to this side*], *HITHER*, *on this side*.

**citrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of citer, *belonging to this side*], *on this side of*.

**cīvills**, -e, adj. [cīvi- (st. of cīvis), *citizen*], *pertaining to citizens*, *civil*.

**cīvis**, -is, C., *citizen*, *fellow-citizen*.

**cívitās**, -ātis, f. [cīvi- (st. of cīvis), *citizen*], *citizenship*; *citizens*; *community*, *state*.

**clam**, adv., *secretly*, *stealthily*; prep. w. abl., *without the knowledge of*.

**clāmitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of clāmō, *call*], *cry out*, *call out*.

**clāmor**, -ōris, m. [base clāmō- (in clāmō), *call*], *calling*, *shout*.

**clāreō**, -ēre [clāro- (st. of clārus)], *bright*, *be bright*.

**clārus**, -a, -um, adj. [√clā-, *call*, *sound*, conn. w. clāmō, *call out*], *clear-sounding*; *bright*; *illustrious*, *renowned*, *held in honor*.

**clāssis**, -is, f., *fleet*.

**claudō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut*, *close*; *agmen claudere*, *to bring up the rear*.

**clēmēns**, -entis, adj., *mild*, *gentle*, *forbearing*, *merciful*, *clement*.

**cliēns**, -entis, m. [= cluēns, pres. part. of cluēō, *hear*, *obey*, used subst.], (one who hears or obeys, and so) *dependent*, *retainer*, *client*.

**Clōdius**, -ī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher* (opponent of Cicero, whose banishment he procured; killed by Milo 52 B.C.).

**Cn.** abbr. of **Gnaeus**, -ī, m., **Gnaeus** (a Roman praenōmen or first name).

**co-emō**, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus [co(m)-, *together*; emō, *buy*], *buy up*.

**co-eō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -itus [co(m)-, *together*; eō, *go*], *go together to form a whole*, *unite*, *combine*.

**coepi**, *coeptus*, def., *began*.

**co-erceō**, -ēre, -cuī, -citus [co(m)-, *completely*; arceō, *shut up*], *enclose*, *encompass*; *restrain*, *confine*.

**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co(m)-, *together*; agitō, *drive*], (drive a matter to and fro in the mind, and so) *weigh carefully*, *ponder*, *think*, *reflect*.

**cōgnātīō**, -ōnis, f. [co(m)-√gnā-,

*be born with*], *being born with*; *blood-relationship*; *kindred*, *family*.

**cō-gnōmen**, -inis, n. [co(m)-, *with*, i.e. *in addition to*; (g)nōmen, *NAME*], *family NAME*, *sur-name* (the third in order of the names of a Roman citizen, being preceded by the praenōmen, or name of the individual, and the nōmen, or name of the gens to which the individual belonged; e.g., *Mārcus* (praenōmen) *Tullius* (nōmen) *Cicerō* (cōgnōmen)).

**cō-gnōscō**, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m)-, *completely*, *thoroughly*; (g)nōscō, *become acquainted with*], *become thoroughly acquainted with*, *ascertain*, *learn*; *recognize*; in perf., *KNOW*; *diligentius cōgnō-scere*, *to gain a more thorough acquaintance with*, or *a more accurate KNOWLEDGE of*.

**cōgō**, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [co(m)-, *together*; agō, *drive*], *drive together*, *collect*; *compel*, *force*, *constrain*.

**cohors**, -rtis, f., *enclosure*; (body of men enclosed, and so) *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion; it was divided into three maniples and — as each manipule contained two centuries — into six centuries; the number of men in a cohort varied at different periods from 300 to 600, but in Caesar's time the cohort contained about 600 men).

**cohortātīō**, -ōnis, f. [cohortā- (st. of cohortor), *exhort*], *exhortation*, *encouragement*.

**co-hortor**, -ārī, -ātus [co(m)-, intens.]; *hortor*, *exhort*], *exhort*, *encourage*, *admonish*; **cohortāri** *inter sē*, *to exhort one another*.

**col-laūdō**, see conlaudō.

**collēga**, see conlēga.

**col-ligō**, see conligō.

**collis**, -is, m. *HILL*.

**col-locō**, see conlocō.

**colloquium**, see conloquium.

**col-loquor**, see conloquor.

**colluviō**, see conliviō.

**colō**, -ere, coluī, cultus [√col-,

till], till, cultivate; honor, reverence, worship.

**colōnus**, -ī, M. [conn. w. colō, till], tiller of the soil; colonist.

**color**, -ōris, M., color.

**com-būrō**, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus [com-, completely; \*būrō, burn], burn up, consume.

**comes**, -itis, C. [com-*vi*-, go with], (one who goes with, and so) comrade, companion.

**commeātus**, -ūs, M. [commeā- (st. of commeō), go to and fro], passing to and fro; train, convoy; supplies.

**com-memorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; memorō, call to mind], call to mind in detail, call to mind, mention, recount.

**com-mendō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; mandō, commit], commit without reservation, commit, intrust.

**com-meō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, habitually; meō, go, pass], go to and fro, go.

**com-minus**, adv. [com-, together; manus, hand], hand to hand, at close quarters.

**com-mittō**, -ere, mīsi, -missus [com-, together; mittō, send, make go], combine into a whole; (w. proelium) join, give, begin, engage in; commit, intrust.

**commodē**, adv. [abl. fm. of commodus, convenient], conveniently, easily; judiciously, skillfully.

**commodum**, -ī, N. [n. of adj. commodus, convenient, used subst.] convenience, advantage.

**com-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [com-, completely, thoroughly; moveō, move], set in violent motion, disturb, disquiet, alarm.

**communīcō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. communīnis, common], share, bestow: **communīcāre cum**, share with, impart to; join, unite, add: **cum dōtibz communīcāre**, to add to the dowries.

**com-mūnis**, -e, adj. [com-, mu-

tually; mūnis, under obligation. cf. immūnis], common, general.

**commūtātiō**, -ōnis, M. [commūtā- (st. of commūtō), change], change, alteration.

**com-mūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; mūtō, change], change completely, alter entirely, change, transform; exchange.

**com-parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely, and so carefully; parō, prepare], prepare carefully, gather, collect.

**com-parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; parō, make equal, exchange], compare.

**com-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [com-, together; pellō, drive], drive in a body.

**com-periō**, -īre, -peri, -pertus [com-*vper*-, penetrate completely. cf. experior], ascertain with certainty, ascertain, establish by proof, find out.

**com-plector**, -ī, -plexus [com-, together; plectō, braid], (braid together, and so) enfold, embrace, clasp; grapple.

**com-pleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-, completely; \*pleō, fill], fill completely, fill, complete.

**com-plūrēs**, -a (-ia), gen., -ium, adj. [com-, together; plūrēs, several], several.

**com-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [com-, together; pōnō, put], put together, adjust; compose, pacify, settle.

**com-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; portō, bring], bring together, collect.

**com-prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus [com-, completely; prehēndō, grasp], grasp completely or firmly; take, seize; arrest.

**cōnāta**, -ōrum, N. [n. pl. perf. part. of cōnor, endeavor, used subst.], endeavors, undertaking.

**cōnātus**, -ūs, M. [cōnā- (st. of cōnor), endeavor], endeavoring; effort, undertaking.

**con-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [com-, intens.; cēdō, go, give way], yield, submit to, *comply with one's request; grant, concede, permit.*

**con-cidō**, -ere, -cidī [com-, together, in a heap; cadō, fall], fall to the ground, fall.

**conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concilio- (st. of concilium), assembly], assemble, bring together; *reconcile; win, procure.*

**concilium**, -iī, N. [com-√cal-, call together], (calling together, and so) assembly, company; *council: per concilium, in public council.*

**con-currō**, -ere, -currī (-currī), -cursum [com-, together; currō, run], run together, rush together, hasten in a body, flock.

**con-demnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; damnō, condemn], condemn.

**condiciō**, -ōnis, F. [com-√dic-, say with, and so agree together], agreement, stipulation, condition, terms; *condition, lot.*

**con-dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; dōnō, give], give up; overlook.

**con-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [com-, together; dūcō, lead], lead or bring together; *collect.*

**cōn-ferō**, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus [com-, together; ferō, BEAR, BRING], bring together, collect; *compare; bring to BEAR, apply, bestow upon; sē cōnferre, to betake one's self.*

**cōn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com-, completely; faciō, DO], bring to completion, complete, finish, bring to an end, accomplish, carry out; (of a list or register) make out.

**cōn-fidō**, -ere, -fīsus [com-, completely; fidō, trust], trust fully, confide in, rely on, depend on.

**cōn-firmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; firmō, make firm], make firm, establish; *assure, reassure; assert.*

**cōn-fligō**, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus [com-, together; flīgō, strike], (strike together, and so) 1. tr., contrast, oppose; 2. intr., contend, fight.

**con-gredior**, -gredī, -gressus [com-, with; gradior, step, walk], meet with; engage, fight.

**con-iciō** (pronounced: concijciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [com-, together; jaciō, throw], throw together; throw, cast, hurl; drive; *in fugam conicere, to put to flight.*

**conjūctim**, adv. [acc. used adv., fr. com-√jug-, YOKE together, join], jointly, together.

**conjūctiō**, -ōnis, F. [com-√jug-, YOKE together], (YOKING together, and so) union, intimacy.

**con-jungō**, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūctus [com-, together; jungō, join], join, unite.

**con-junx**, -jugis, C. [com-, together; √jug-, YOKE], (YOKE-fellow, and so) spouse; wife.

**conjūratiō**, -ōnis, F. [conjūrā-, swear together], (swearing together, and so) conspiracy.

**con-jūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; jūrō, swear], swear together, conspire.

**con-laudō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; laudō, commend], commend highly, applaud.

**con-lēga**, -ae, M. [com-√lēg-, depute with], (fellow-deputy, and so) colleague, official associate.

**con-ligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; ligō, fasten], fasten together.

**con-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [com-, together; legō, gather], gather together, gather, collect.

**con-locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; locō, place], place together, place, station, establish, settle; give in marriage.

**conloquium**, -iī, N. [com-√loqu-, talk with], conversation, conference.

**con-loquor**, -ī, -cūtus [com-, with; loquor, talk], converse, confer, have a conference with.

**conluviō**, -ōnis, F. [com-*vluv*-, wash together], (collected washings, and so) *dregs, offscourings*; **turba et conluviō**, vile rabble.

**cōnor**, -āri, -ātus, endeavor, attempt, undertake.

**cōn-sanguinei**, -ōrum, M., adj. used subst. [com-, denoting connection; sanguineus, pertaining to blood], (those connected by blood, and so) *blood-relations, kinsmen*.

**cōn-sciscō**, -ere, -scivī or -sciī, -scitus [com-, together, in a body; sciscō, decree], decree in a body or in common; adjudge; inflict; **sibī mortem cōnsciscere**, to commit suicide.

**cōnscius**, -a, -um, adj. [com-*√sci*-, know with], knowing in conjunction with others; *conscious*.

**cōnscriptus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of cōnscrībō, enroll], enrolled: **patrēs cōnscriptī**, *conscript fathers* (a title used in formal addresses before the Roman senate. The term *cōnscriptī* was at first applied to the new senators enrolled from the ranks of the equites in the early days of the republic, and the original form of address was *patrēs et cōnscriptī*).

**cōn-secrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, wholly; sacrō, make sacred], *consecrate, dedicate*.

**cōnsēsus**, -ūs, M. [com-*sent*-, (base in sentiō), perceive or feel with or in common], (feeling in common, and so) *consent*.

**cōn-sentiō**, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [com-, together, in common; sentiō, feel], agree; *conspire*.

**cōn-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [com-, close upon; sequor, follow], follow close upon, follow after, follow, *ensue*.

**cōn-servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; servō, keep], maintain, preserve, save.

**cōnsēssus**, -ūs, M. [com-, together; *√sēd*-, sit], (sitting together, and so) *assembly*.

**cōn-sidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum

[com-, together; *sīdō*, sit], sit down together, settle, establish one's self; post one's self; encamp.

**cōn-silium**, -iī, N. [conn. w. cōn-sulō, deliberate], deliberation, counsel; plan, design, purpose, intention, scheme; measure, line of conduct, course, policy; advice; sagacity; *council*.

**cōn-sistō**, -ere, -stitī [com-, intens.; sistō, stand], come to a halt, stop, take a position; stand, maintain one's footing or position, make a stand; settle; (w. in and abl.) *consist in or of*.

**cōn-spectus**, -ūs, M. [com-*√spec*-, spy (all parts together, and so) at a glance], sight at a glance, sight; presence.

**cōn-spiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [com-, together (all parts being taken in at a glance); spiciō, look at], catch sight of, descry, see.

**cōn-spīcor**, -āri, -ātus [com-*√spec*-, through presumed noun stem], spy (all parts together, and so) at a glance], catch sight of, descry, see.

**cōn-stantia**, -ae, F. [cōn-*stant*-, (st. of p. a. cōn-stāus), standing firm], firmness, *constancy*.

**cōn-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [com-, together, and so firmly; statuō, set up], (set up firmly, and so) *station, post; establish, appoint; arrange, fix, settle upon, decide upon; decide, resolve; de controversiis cōnstituere*, to settle or decide disputes.

**cōn-stō**, -āre, -stitī [com-, with; stō, stand], stand with; be in agreement with; *impers.*, be settled, undisputed, generally understood, well known.

**cōn-suēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus [com-, intens.; suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed, accustom one's self; in perf., be accustomed.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, F. [cōn-suē(to)- (st. of cōnsuētus), accustomed], habit, manner, custom, usage, practice.

**cōnsul**, -is, M., *consul* (one of the two highest Roman magistrates chosen annually under the republic).

**cōnsulāris**, -e, adj. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *belonging or pertaining to a consul, consular*.

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, M. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *consulship*.

**cōnsulō**, -ere, -uī, -tus, *reflect, deliberate, take counsel*; (w. dat.) *take thought for, have regard for, have an eye to*; (w. acc.) *consult* (for advice).

**cōn-sūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [com-, *completely*; sūmō, *take*], *take up completely; consume*.

**cōn-surgō**, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum [com-, *together*; surgō, *rise*], *rise in a body, stand*.

**contāgiō**, -ōnis, F. [com-*vtāg-*, *touch together*], *contact*.

**contemptiō**, -ōnis, F. [com-*vtē-*, *cut up* (com is intens.)], (cutting treatment, and so) *contempt, scorn, defiance*.

**contemptus**, -a, -um (p. a. of contemnō, *despise*), *contemptible*.

**contemptus**, -ūs, M. [com-*vtē-*, *cut up* (com- is intens.)], (cutting treatment, and so) *contempt*.

**con-tendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus [com-, intens.; tendō, *stretch*], *stretch vigorously, strive; hasten; contend, struggle; vie; contend successfully, prevail*.

**contentiō**, -ōnis, F. [com-*vtē-*, *stretch vigorously, struggle*], *struggling, contention, dispute*.

**con-texō**, -ere, -xui, -xtus [com-, *together*; texō, *weave*], *weave, join, or put together, frame, construct*.

**continēns**, -entis [p. a. of contineō, *hold together*], *uninterrupted*.

**continenter**, adv. [continent- (st. of continēns), *uninterrupted*], *uninterruptedly, continuously*.

**contineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [com-, *together*; tencō, *hold*], *hold together, hold, keep; bound, confine; hem in, hold in check, restrain*.

**contingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tactus [com-, *completely, closely*; tangō, *touch*], *touch, be contiguous to*.

**continuus**, -a, -um, adj. [com-*vtē-*, *stretch together*], (stretching or hanging together, and so) *successive, continuous*.

**contrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *against*.

**contrōversia**, -ae, F. [contrō-*verso-* (st. of contrōversus), *opposite*], (opposition, and so) *dispute, controversy*.

**contumēlia**, -ae, F., *abuse, insult, indignity, reproach; per contumēliam, by injurious reports, through slanderous accusations; buffeting, violence*.

**con-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com-, *together*; veniō, *COME*], *COME together, assemble; convenit, it is agreed upon*.

**conventus**, -ūs, M. [com-*vtē-*, *COME together*], *meeting; court*.

**con-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus [com-, intens.; vertō, *turn*], *turn about, change the direction of, reverse; conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance against*.

**convivium**, -iī, N. [convivā- (st. of conviva), *table companion*], *eating together; banquet*.

**con-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, *together*; vocō, *call*], *call together, call, convoke, assemble*.

**cōpia**, -ae, F., *abundance, supply*; in pl., *supplies, stores, wealth, resources, numbers; troops, forces*.

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [cōpiā- (st. of cōpiate), *wealth*], *abounding in wealth, well supplied, rich*.

**cōpula**, -ae, F., *grapnel hook* (by which vessels were fastened together in battle).

**cor**, cordis, N., *HEART*.

**Corinthus**, -ī, F., *Corinth* (commercial city of Peloponnesus on the Isthmus of Corinth).

**cornū**, -ūs, N., *HORN*; (of an army) *vīng*.

**corpus**, -oris, N., *body*.

**cor-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [com-, *completely*; rumpō, *break*], *destroy*; (of an opportunity) *sacrifice*.

**cor-ruō**, -ere, -uī [com-, *together*; ruō, *fall*], *fall together, fall with a crash, tumble down, fall*.

**cottidiānus** or **cōtidiānus**, -a, -um, adj. [st. cottīdi- (in cottīdiē), *every day*], *belonging to every day, daily*.

**cottīdiē** or **cōtīdiē**, adv. [loc. fm. of quot. *HOW many*; loc. or abl. fm. of diēs, *day*], (on as many days as there are, and so) *daily*.

**Cotus**, -ī, M., **Cotus** (a prominent Aeduan).

**Crassus**, -ī, M., **Publius Licinius Crassus** (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*.

**crēbrō**, adv. [n. abl. of crēber, *frequent*], *often, frequently, many times*.

**crēdibilis**, -e, adj. [base crēd- (in crēdō), *believe*], *worthy of belief, credible*.

**crēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus (w. acc. and dat.) *intrust*; (w. dat. pers.) *trust, believe, put confidence in, take the advice of*; (w. acc. and inf., or abs.) *believe, suppose*.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consume by fire, burn*.

**creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make, choose, elect*.

**crēsco**, -ere, crēvī, crētus [vrē-, *make*; com. w. creō], (begiu to make itself, and so) *come forth, grow, increase, become great*.

**Crēta**, -ae, F., **Crete** (island in the Mediterranean).

**crīmen**, -inis, N. [vrī-, *sift*], (that which sifts, and so) *judicial decision; accusation, charge, reproach*.

**crīmiuōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [crīmin- (st. of crīmen), *reproach*], *reproachful*.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, M. [cruciā- (st. of cruciō), *torture*], *torture, torment*.

**crūdēlis**, -e, adj., *cruel*.

**crūdēlitās**, -ātis, F. [crūdēli- (st. of crūdēlis), *cruel*], *cruelty*.

**crūdēliter**, adv. [crūdēli- (st. of crūdēlis), *cruel*], *cruelly*.

**culpa**, -ae, F., *fault, blame*.

**cultus**, -ūs, M. [vcol-, *till*], *tilling, cultivation, labor; mode of life, condition as to civilization; civilization, culture*.

**cum**, prep. w. abl., *with*; cum is appended enclitically to the abl. of pers. and rel. prons.; as, **vōbiscum**, *with you*.

**cum**, conj. [for quom, acc. fm. of pron. st. quo-, *which*], *at which time, WHEN, WHENEVER; since, inasmuch as, as; though, although*.

**cumulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cumulo- (st. of cumulus), *heap*], *gather into a heap, augment (by piling up)*.

**cunctātiō**, -ōnis, F. [cunctā- (st. of cunctor), *delay*], *delaying, delay*.

**cūctus**, -a, -um, adj. [contracted fr. conjūctus, perf. part. of conjungō. *YOKE together*], (all united into one body, and so) *whole, entire, all*; n. pl. used subst., *all things, everything*.

**cupidē**, adv. [abl. fm. of cupidus, *desirous, eager*], *eagerly, ardently*.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, F. [cupido- (st. of cupidus), *desirous*], *desire, longing; passionate or covetous desire*.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. cupiō, *desire*], *desirous*.

**cupiō**, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -ītus, *desire; wish well to*.

**cūr**, adv. [= old fm. quōr (for \*quār), fr. quā rē, *because of which* or *what thing*], *WHY, WHEREFORE*. **cūra**, -ae, F., *anxiety, solicitude, care, concern*.

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūrā- (st. of cūra), *care*], *take care*.

**curriculum**, -ī, N. [base curr- (in currō), *run*], *running; course*.

**currus**, -ūs, M. [base curr- (iu currō), *run*], (that which runs, and so) *chariot, triumphal car*.



**eustōdia**, -ae, f. [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guardianship, protection*; in pl., *guards*.

**custōdiō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guard, watch over*.

**custōs**, -ōdis, c., *guard, guardian*.

## D.

**damnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damno- (st. of damnum), *loss*], *inflict loss upon, harm, damage; condemn*.

**dē**, prep. w. abl., (of place) *down from, from*; (of time) *in, during, about*: **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *in the THIRD WATCH*; (of the cause from which a thing proceeds) *for*: **quā dē causā**, *for which reason, so*; (of the subject of thought, discussion, etc.) *of, about, concerning, upon, over*; **merēri dē**, *to deserve at the hands of*; **contendere dē**, *to strive or contend for*.

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -buī, -bitus [dē, *from*; habeō, *have*], (have from another, and so) *owe, be under obligation, ought*.

**dē-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dē, *from*; cēdō, *go*], *withdraw, depart from, depart; die, decease*.

**decem**, indecl. num. adj., TEN.

**decem et novem** or **decem novem**, indecl. num. adj., NINETEEN.

**dē-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dē, *from, out*; cernō, *separate, sift*], (sift or separate, as the true from the false, the important from the unimportant, etc., and so) *decide*; (give official expression to one's decision, and so) *vote, decree; appoint*.

**dē-certō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *intens.*, and so *to the end, out*; certō, *fight*], *fight it out, fight, contend*.

**decet**, -ēre, -cuit, impers. [vdec-, *esteem*; conn. w. decus, *comeliness*, and dignus, *worthy*], *it is becoming, it is proper*.

**decima** for **decuma**, -ae, f. (usu. in pl.) [fem. of decimus, Tenth

(sc. pars, *part*)], *the* (tax levied on landholders in the Roman provinces).

**decimus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, TEN], Tenth.

**dē-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [dē, *giving a bad sense to the verb*; capiō, *take* (cf. the English 'take in')], *deceive*.

**dē-clinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *from*; \*clīnō, *bend*], *turn aside from, and so have recourse to*.

**dē-clivis**, -e, adj. [dē-clivo- (st. of clivus, *hill*)], *down hill*, *sloping*.

**dē-crētum**, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of dēcernō, *decide, decree*, used subst.], (what has been decided or decreed, and so) *official decision, decree, ordinance*.

**decus**, -oris, n. [vdec-, *esteem*; conn. w. decet, *it is becoming*, and dignus, *worthy*], *comeliness; ornament; honor; dignity of behavior*.

**dē-decus**, -oris, n. [dē, w. neg. force; decus, *honor*], *dishonor, disgrace, infamy; act of baseness, deed of infamy*.

**dē-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [dē, *from, away, up*; dō, *give*], *give up, surrender, devote*.

**dē-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [dē, *from, away*; dūcō, *lead*], *lead out, withdraw, carry off, bring down, bring away, recall*.

**dē-fatigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *intens.*, *utterly, out*; fatigō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust*.

**dē-fendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus [dē, *from, off*; \*fendō, *strike, thrust*], *ward off, repel; defend, protect*.

**dē-fēnsiō**, -ōnis, f. [dē-vfend-, *thrust off*], (thrusting off assailants, and so) *defence*.

**dē-fēnsor**, -ōris, m. [dē-vfend-, *thrust off*], (thruuster off of assailants, and so) *defender*.

**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [dē, *from*; ferō, *bring*], *bring from, and so report*.

**dē-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [dē, from, off; faciō, make], (make off, break loose from, and so) for sake, desert, abandon; fail, cease, be wanting.

**dē-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī [dē, from; fugiō, flee], flee from, avoid, shun.

**dē-iciō** (pronounced: dējiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [dē, down; jaciō, throw], throw down, cast down; unhorse; disappoint.

**dēin-ceps**, adv. [dein (abridged fm. of deinde), thereafter, next; vcap-, take], (taking place next, and so) in succession.

**dē-leō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [dē, from, out; \*leō, for which, linō, smear, blot], blot out, obliterate; destroy.

**dē-liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., well, thoroughly; \*liberō (cf. librō, balance)], weigh well, weigh, deliberate.

**dēlictum**, -ī, n. [u. perf. part. of dēlinquō, transgress, used subst.], transgression, offence.

**dē-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, out; legō, gather, pick], pick out, select, choose.

**dēmentia**, -ae, f. [dēmenti- (st. of dēmēns), out of one's senses, mad], madness, folly.

**dē-minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [dē, from, away; minuō, make less, lessen], lessen by taking away, diminish, take away.

**dē-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dē, down; mittō, cast], cast down.

**dēnum**, adv. [superl. fm. of dē, down, from], (downmost, farthest from, and so) at last, at length.

**dēnārius**, -iī, m. [masc. of adj. dēnārius, containing TEN (sc. nummus, coin)], (coin containing [originally] ten asses) *denarius* (a Roman silver coin equivalent in value to about 16 cents).

**dēnsus**, -a, -um, adj., dense.

**dē-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [dē, from, away; pellō, drive], drive away, avert.

**dē-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus

[dē, away, aside; pōnō, place, put], put or lay aside, drop.

**dē-populor**, -ārī, -ātus [dē, intens., utterly; populor, lay waste], lay waste utterly, lay waste, ravage.

**dēprecātor**, -ōris, m. [dēprecā- (st. of dēprecor), pray away, avert by prayer], (one who averts a threatened evil by entreaty, and so) intercessor.

**dē-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [dē, down; premō, press], press down, depress, sink.

**dē-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; rogō, (of a law) propose for enactment], (withdraw a proposal for enactment, and so) repeal (applied to part of a law); take away, withdraw, withhold.

**dē-scendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [dē, down; scandō, climb], climb down, descend; have recourse, resort.

**dē-sciscō**, -ere, -scīvī (-iī), -scītum [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; sciscō, approve, assent], (withhold assent, and so) withdraw, revolt.

**dē-serō**, -ere, -ruī, -rtus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; serō, join], desert, abandon.

**dēsertor**, -ōris, m. [dē-yser-, desert], deserter.

**dēsiderium**, -iī, n., longing, regret (for the absence of something needed).

**dēsīdia**, -ae, f. [dēsīd- (st. of \*dēses, gen. -idis), idle], idleness, inactivity.

**dēsīgnātus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of dēsīgnō, designate, elect], elected, elect (term applied to a person already elected to an office, but not yet inaugurated).

**dē-siliō**, -īre, -luī [dē, down; saliō, leap], leap down.

**dēsīpiēns**, -entis [p. a. of dēsīpiō, be childish], childish, in one's dotage.

**dē-sistō**, -ere, -stitī [dē, *from, off*; sistō, *stand*], *desist*; (w. abl.) *desist* (*from*), *abandon*.

**dē-spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *w. neg. force*; spērō, *hope*], *despair*.

**dē-spiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [dē, *down*; spiciō, *look*], *look down upon, despise*.

**dē-spoliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *intens.*; spoliō, *strip, rob*], *strip, rob, despoil*.

**dēstinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make fast*.

**dē-sum**, deesse, dēfui [dē, *from*; sum, *be*], *BE wanting, fail, desert, abandon*.

**dēsuper**, adv. [dē, *from*; super, *above*], *from above*.

**dē-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [dē, *from, off*; terreō, *frighten*], *frighten off, deter*.

**dē-trahō**, -ere, -traxī, -tractus [dē, *from, off*; trahō, *draw*], *with-draw, take away, seize, snatch*.

**dētrimentum**, -ī, n. [dē-ŷtrī-, *rub away*], (result of rubbing away, and so) *loss, damage, detriment*.

**deus**, -ī, m. [conn. w. diēs], *god, deity*.

**dē-voeō**, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [dē, *intens.*; voeō, *promise solemnly, vow*], *solemnly promise to sacrifice, devote, vow*.

**dexter**, (-tera) -tra, (-terum) -trum, adj., *right*.

**dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [as if fr. st. dico-, found only in compounds, as vērīdicus, *truth-telling*; conn. w. dicō], (orig.) *proclaim*; (usu.) *give up, devote, dedicate*.

**dicō**, -ere, dixī, dictus [vdic-, *point out, show*], *say, express, give expression to, tell, talk of, mention*; *call, name*; *jūs dicere, to administer justice*; *pauca dicere, to speak briefly*.

**dictātor**, -ōris, m. [dictā- (st. of dictō)], *prescribe, dictate*, *dictator*.

**dictum**, -ī, n. [perf. part. of dicō, *say*, used subst.], *what is said, saying; word of command, order*.

**diēs**, -ēī (-ēī, -ē), m. (sometimes f. in sing.) [conn. w. deus], *day; time*.

**dif-ferō**, differre, distulī, dīlātus [dis-, *in different directions*; ferō, *BEAR*], *carry in different directions; differ* (this meaning appears to be confined to the pres. system).

**dif-ficilis**, -e, adj. [dis-, *w. neg. force*; facilis, *easy*], *hard, difficult*.

**difficultās**, -ātis, f. [difficuli- (st. of difficul, old form of difficilis), *difficult*], *difficulty*.

**dignitās**, -ātis, f. [dīgno- (st. of dignus), *worthy*], *worth, dignity; standing, position*.

**dignus**, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*.

**diligēns**, -entis, adj. [p. a. of dīligō, *esteem*], (*esteeming, and so*) *devoted (to), attentive, diligent*.

**diligenter**, adv. [dīligent- (st. of dīligēns), *attentive*], *attentively; thoroughly; diligentius cōgnō-scere, to gain a more accurate knowledge of*.

**diligentia**, -ae, f. [dīligent- (st. of dīligēns), *attentive*], *carefulness, attentiveness, diligence*.

**dī-ligō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dis-, *apart*; legō, *choose*], (*show one's esteem for an object by choosing it in preference to others, and so*) *esteem highly, love*.

**dī-micō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis-, *implying two contestants, and so against*; micō, *dart to and fro*], (*dart to and fro against, and so*) *contend*.

**dīmidium**, -iī, n. [n. of adj. dīmidius, *half*, used subst.; fr. dis-, *in two* and medius, *middle*], *half*.

**dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dis-, *indifferent directions*; mittō, *send*], (*send in different directions, and so*) *dismiss, disband, break up, dissolve; forego, lose*.

**Diō** or **Diōn**, -ōnis, M., *Dion* (eminent Syracusan, brother-in-law of Dionysius I., and friend of Plato; assassinated B.C. 353).

**Dionysius**, -iī, M., *Dionysius* (1. the elder, tyrant of Syracuse B.C. 405-367; 2. the younger, tyrant of Syracuse B.C. 367-348).

**Dis**, -ītis, M. [conn. w. deus and diēs], *Dis* (the god of the under world), *Pluto*.

**dis-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dis-, apart; cēdō, go], *go apart, withdraw, depart, disperse*: **discēdere ab**, *desert, abandon*: **discēdere ab armīs**, *to lay down one's arms*.

**disciplīna**, -ae, F. [discipulo- (st. of discipulus), learner], *instruction, tuition*; *system* (e.g., the Druidical system), *doctrines, discipline*.

**discipulus**, -ī, M. [conn. w. discō, learn], *learner, pupil*.

**discō**, -ere, didici [inceptive fr. √dic-, point out, show], (begin to point out, and so) *learn*; *study, receive instruction*.

**dis-currō**, -ere, -currī or -currī, -cursum [dis-, in different directions; currō, run], *run in different directions, scatter, disperse*.

**dis-icīō** (pronounced: disjiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jēctus [dis-, asunder, in pieces; jaciō, throw], *lay in ruins, raze, destroy*.

**dis-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dis-, apart, at intervals; pōnō, place], *station at intervals*.

**dis-putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-, separately, in detail; putō, reckon], *reckon in detail or by items; examine, discuss*.

**dissēnsiō**, -ōnis, F. [dis-, apart, at variance; base sent- (in sentiō), perceive, feel], *disagreement, dissension, discord*.

**dis-serō**, -ere, -uī, disertus (adj.) [dis-, at intervals; serō, join, bind together], (arrange words in connected discourse, and so) 1. tr., *discuss*; 2. intr., *discourse, talk*.

**dis-tincō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [dis-, asunder; teneō, keep], *keep asunder, keep apart*.

**diū**, adv. [conn. w. diēs, day, time], *for a long time, long*. Comp.; **diūtius**, *for a longer time, longer; for too long a time, too long*.

**diversus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], *opposed*.

**Divicō**, -ōnis, M., *Divico* (a prominent Helvetian; defeated Lucius Cassius Longinus B.C. 107; was ambassador to Caesar B.C. 58).

**dividō**, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide, separate*.

**divīnus**, -a, -um, adj. [dīvo- (st. of dīvus), god], *pertaining to the gods, divine, sacred*.

**divīsus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of dividō, divide], *divided*.

**Divitiacus**, -ī, M., *Divitiacus* (1. chief of the Aeduans and brother of Dumnorix; 2. chief of the Suessiones).

**divitiae**, -ārum, F. [dīvit- (st. of dīves), rich], *riches, wealth*.

**dō**, dare, dedi, datus [√da-, give], *give, award, assign, afford, allow, grant*.

**doceō**, -ēre, -cuī, -ctus [√doc-, show, TEACH; conn. w. discō and dīcō], TEACH, *instruct, show, declare, tell, point out*.

**doctor**, -ōris, M. [√doc-, TEACH], TEACHER.

**doctus**, -a, -um [p. a. of doceō, TEACH], *learned*.

**doleō**, -ēre, -uī [conn. w. dolor, q. v.], *feel pain; grieve for, be afflicted at*.

**dolor**, -ōris, M. [√dol-, TEAR, split; conn. w. dolēō, feel pain], *pain; mortification*.

**dolus**, -ī, M., *deceit, treachery*.

**domesticus**, -a, -um [conn. w. domus, house, home], *domestic, native, private*.

**dominus**, -ī, M., *master, lord*.

**domus**, -ūs, F. [√dom-, build], (that which is built, and so) *house*,

home; family, household; **domi** (loc.), at home, in peace; **domō** (abl.), from home.

**dōs**, dōtis, f. [vdō-, give], dowry, marriage portion.

**Druidēs**, -um, m., **Druids** (priests of the Gauls).

**dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. v. dubins, doubtful], doubt; hesitate.

**dubius**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. duo, two], doubtful.

**ducentī**, -ae, -a [st. of duo, two; st. of centum, hundred], two hundred.

**dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead. bring, take, escort; **ōrdinē dūcere**, to command a century, to be a centurion; put off, delay; consider, hold, account, reckon, deem.

**ductor**, -ōris, m. [vduc-, lead], leader, commanding officer.

**dulcis**, -e, adj., sweet; **aqua dulcis**, fresh water.

**dum**, conj., while, as long as; provided, if only; until.

**dummodo**, conj. [dum, as long as, provided; modo, only], provided only, if only.

**Dumnacus**, -ī, m., **Dumnacus** (leader of the Andes, a tribe in Celtic Gaul, north of the Loire).

**Dumnorix**, -igis, m., **Dumnorix** (prominent Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus).

**duo**, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

**duodecim**, indecl. num. adj. [duo, two; decem, ten], twelve.

**duodecimus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth.

**duodēni**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [duo, two; dēni, ten apiece], twelve apiece.

**dūritia**, -ae, f. [dūro- (st. of dūrus), hard], hardness; rigorous mode of life; hardship.

**dux**, ducis, c. [vdue-, lead], leader, guide, conductor.

## E.

**ē**, see ex.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, m., **the Eburones** (tribe in Belgic Gaul).

**ē-discō**, -ere, -didicī [ex, thoroughly; discō, learn], learn by heart.

**ē-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [ex, forth; dō, give, put], put forth. bring forth, produce; publish; (of punishment) execute, inflict.

**ē-doceō**, -ēre, -cui, -ctus [ex, thoroughly; doceō, TEACH], TEACH thoroughly, inform in detail, train thoroughly in, set forth in detail.

**ē-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ex, forth, out; dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; (of swords) draw.

**ef-ferō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex, forth, out; ferō, BRING], BRING forth; bring out, publish.

**ef-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex, out, completely; faciō, make], work out, accomplish, bring to pass, cause, produce, make, render, form.

**ef-flāgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; flāgitō, demandurgently], demand with earnestness, importune for.

**ef-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī [ex, forth, away; fugiō, flee], escape.

**effugium**, -iī, n. [ex-*v*fug-, flee from, escape], flight; means of escape.

**egeō**, -ēre, eguī, lack, need, require.

**ego**, gen. meī, pers. pron., I; **mihi** (dat. of ref.) in MY eyes.

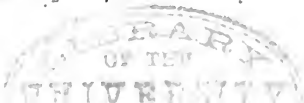
**ē-gredior**, -ī, -gressus [ex, forth; gradior, step, walk], go or come forth or out, withdraw.

**ē-gregius**, -a, -um, adj. [ē-greg(e) (abl. of greg, herd), out of the herd], (out of the common herd, and so) eminent, illustrious.

**ē-icō** (pronounced: ējiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [ex, forth; jaciō, cast], cast forth or out, drive out. expel; **sē ēicere in** (w. acc.), to make a raid on.

**ējus modi** or **ējusmodi** [is, that, such; modus, manner, kind] of such a kind, such.

**ēloquēns**, -entis [p. a. of ēloquor, speak out], eloquent.



**ē-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ex, forth, out; mittō, send, let go], send out, let loose.

**emō**, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [vem-, take], (orig. meaning, take; cf. adimō and sūmō), buy.

**Empedoclēs**, -is, M., *Empedocles* (natural philosopher of Agrigento in Sicily; flourished about the middle of the fifth century, B.C.).

**enim**, conj. [strengthened fm. of nam, for] (placed after the first word, or after two or more closely connected words), indeed, in fact, for.

**Ennius**, -ī, M., *Quintus Ennius* (the father of Roman epic poetry; lived 239-169 B.C.).

**ē-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, openly; nūntiō, declare], divulge, report.

**eō**, ire, īvī or īī, itum [vei-, ī-, or i-, go], go, depart; die.

**eō**, adv. [case fm. of pron. is, that], to that place, thither.

**eōdem**, adv. [case fm. of īdem, the same; cf. eō], to the same place.

**eques**, -itis, M. [equo- (st. of equus), horse], horseman; in pl., horsemen, horse; knight (the knights constituted an order in Rome intermediate in rank between the patricians and the plebeians).

**equester**, -tris, -tre, adj. [equit- (st. of equus), horseman], pertaining to cavalry, cavalry (adj.).

**equitātus**, -ūs, M. [equitā- (st. of equitō), ride], riding; cavalry.

**equitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [equit- (st. of equus), horseman], (be a horseman or act as a horseman, and so) ride.

**equus**, -ī, M., horse.

**ergā**, prep. w. acc., towards.

**ergō**, adv., therefore, then.

**ē-rigō**, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ex, from below, up; regō, make straight], erect, raise.

**ē-ripiō**, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus [ex, from, away; rapiō, seize], take

away by force, seize, wrest, deprive.

**errō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wander; err, be mistaken.

**ē-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ex, forth; rumpō, burst, break], break forth, make a sally.

**ēruptiō**, -ōnis, F. [ē-rupt-, break forth], (breaking forth, and so) sally, sortie.

**essedum**, -ī, N. [Celtic word], two-wheeled war chariot (used by the Gauls and Britons).

**et**, conj. (for distinction between et and other conjunctions meaning and, see 'and' in the English-Latin vocabulary), and;

**et . . . et**, both . . . and.

**etiam**, conj. [et, and; jam, now, furthermore], also, even.

**etiam sī or etiamsī**, conj. [etiam, even; sī, if], even if, even though, although.

**ē-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth; vocō, call], call forth, summon.

**ex or ē**, prep. w. abl. (for distinction between ex and other prepositions meaning from, see 'from' in the English-Latin vocabulary), out of, from; (by difference of idiom) on: **ex itinere**, on the march; (after a superl.) in; by reason of, because of, in conformity with.

**ex-agitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; agitō, drive violently], drive violently forth; harass, disquiet.

**exanimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-animo- (st. of exanimus), lifeless], (make lifeless, and so) deprive of life; in pass., perish.

**ex-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [ex, forth, out; cēdō, go], go forth, withdraw, depart.

**ex-cellō**, -ere, excelsus (adj.) [ex, from below, up; \*cellō, raise], 1. tr., raise up; 2. intr., rise; be prominent or distinguished, excel.

**ex-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex, from, out; capiō, take], take out; except; capture; intercept.

**ex-citō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; citō, call], call forth, stimulate, excite, rouse.

**ex-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out; clāmō, call], call out.

**ex-clūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sus [ex, out; clūdō, shut], shut out, exclude.

**ex-cruciō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; cruciō, torture], torture excessively, torture.

**ex-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, from; causa, charge (through \*causō; cf. causor)], release from a charge, excuse; sē excūsāre, to apologize.

**exemplūm**, -ī, n. [ex-vem-, take out], (what is taken out to serve as a sample, and so) copy, image; **example**, precedent; punishment inflicted by way of warning.

**ex-eō**, -īre, -iī (-īvī) -itus [ex, out; eō, go], go out, go away, go forth.

**ex-erceō**, -ēre, -cuī, -citus [ex, forth, on; arceō, drive], drive on, keep busy, exercise, train.

**exercitātiō**, -ōnis, f. [exercitā- (st. of exercitō), exercise frequently, practise], practice, experience.

**exercitus**, -ūs, m. [exercē- (st. of exerceō), train], (lit., training, and so, used concretely) a trained body of men, an army.

**ex-hauriō**, -īre, -hausī, -haustus [ex, out of, off; hauriō, draw, drain], drain off.

**eximius**, -a, -um, adj. [ex-vem-, take out], (taken out of the common herd, and so) exceptional, extraordinary, especial.

**ex-istimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out; aestimō, reckon or think], value, reckon; consider, think, deem.

**ex-optō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; optō, desire], desire earnestly, long for.

**expediō**, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus [ex-ped- (st. of pēs, foot), foot-free], (make foot-free, and so) UNFETTER, extricate, disentangle,

set free; (reflexively) take care of itself.

**expeditus**, -a, -um [p. a. of expediō, disentangle], unincumbered, free from obstructions.

**ex-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex, out; pellō, drive], drive out, expel, banish.

**ex-perior**, -irī, -pertus [ex-√per-, penetrate or test thoroughly. cf. comperiō], test thoroughly, try, make trial of, make trial, measure strength with.

**ex-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [ex, completely; \*pleō, FILL], FILL up, complete.

**explōrātor**, -ōris, m. [explōrā- (st. of explōrō), search out], searcher out, explorer; scout.

**ex-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [ex, forth; pōnō, put, set], set forth, explain, point out.

**ex-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, to the end; pūgnō, fight], (fight to the end, and so) take by assault.

**ex-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [ex, out, to the end; sequor, follow], follow to the end; execute, maintain.

**exsilium**, -iī, n. [exsul- (st. of exsul), exile], being an exile, banishment, exile.

**ex-spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; spectō, look], look for, look forward to, await, wait for; wait; wait to see.

**ex-stinguō**, -ere, -nixī, -netus [ex, completely; stinguō, quench], quench completely; extinguish; annihilate.

**ex-stō**, -āre [ex, out; stō, STAND], STAND out, be conspicuous; be extant.

**ex-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ex, from below, up; struō, build], heap up, raise, construct.

**ex-sul**, -is, c., **exile**.

**ex-sultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex, from below, up; saltō, leap, dance], leap up; revel, exult.

\***exterus**, -tera, -terum, adj. [comp. fm. fr. ex, out], on the

outer side, on the outside. Superl., **extrēmus**, -a, -um, last, remotest, extreme, farthest, (in agreement w. subst.) remotest part of.

**exterminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out of, beyond; terminus, boundary (through presumed adj. st.)], drive beyond the boundaries, banish.

**ex-timēscō**, -ere, -muī [ex, intens.; \*timēscō, fear], fear or dread greatly.

**ex-torqueō**, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus [ex, from; torqueō, wrest], wrest from, take away forcibly, extort.

**extrā** [abl. fem. of \*exterus, used adv.], adv. and prep. w. acc., beyond.

**extrēmus**, see \*exterus.

## F.

**fābula**, -ae [√fā-, say, tell], (what is told, and so) story; play.

**faciēs**, -ē, F. [√fac-, shine, appear; cf. fax, torch], appearance, face, visage, countenance.

**facile**, adv. [n. acc. of facilis, easy, used adv.], easily, readily. Comp., **facilius**, more easily, more readily.

**facills**, -e, adj. [√fac-, DO], (capable of being done, and so) easy.

**facilltās**, -ātis, F. [facili- (st. of facilis), easy], ease; affability, courtesy.

**facilius**, see facile.

**facinus**, -oris, N. [√fac-, DO], DEED, act; MISDEED, crime; mala facinora, acts of lawlessness.

**faciō**, -ere, fēcī, factus (for the pass., fiō, fierī, factus is used) [√fac-, DO, make], DO, make, prosecute, commit, perpetrate; cause, produce, bring to pass; grant, furnish, give; act, DO; render; **aliquem certiōrem facere**, to inform; **iter facere**, to march; **vim facere**, to resort to force; **facere nōn possum quīn**, I cannot help.

**factiō**, -ōnis, F. [√fac-, DO,

make], DOING, making; party spirit; **faction**, division, political party.

**factum**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of faciō, DO], DEED, act, proceeding, exploit.

**facultās**, -ātis, F. [faculi- (one fm. of the st. of facilis), ready, apt], readiness, aptitude, capability; opportunity; abundance.

**fallō**, -ere, fefellī, falsus [√fal-, make FALL, trip, deceive], deceive, disappoint.

**falsus**, -a, -um [p. a. of fallō, deceive], deceptive, false.

**falx**, falcis, F., hooked knife, pruning hook; hook (implement used in sieges for pulling down walls).

**fāma**, -ae, F. [√fā-, make known, say], (what is said, and so) common talk, report; good name, reputation.

**familia**, -ae, F. [famulo- (st. of famulus), servant], (collection of servants, and so) slaves of a household; **family** (descendants of a common ancestor); **ancestry**; **pater familiās** or **familiāe**, master of a house, head of a family.

**familiāris**, -e, adj. [familiā- (st. of familia), household], pertaining to a household or family; **rēs familiāris**, patrimony, property; intimate; subst., trusted friend.

**familiāritās**, -ātis, F. [familiāri- (st. of familiāris), intimate], intimacy.

**Fannius**, -iī, M., Gajus **Fannius Strabo** (son-in-law of Laelius, and one of the characters in Cicero's work on Friendship).

**fās**, N. def. [√fā-, make known, say; conn., therefore, with fāma], (the divine word or command, and so) divine law; translated adj., right, lawful, proper.

**faveō**, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, **favor**. **ferāx**, -ācis, adj. [√fer-, BEAR], (apt to bear, and so) productive, fertile.



**ferē**, adv., *nearly, almost, about, substantially, for the most part, almost all; chiefly; generally.*

**ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātus [pres., √fer-, BEAR; perf., √tol-, *lift, bear*; perf. part., √(t)lā-, *bear*], BEAR, carry, BRING, contribute; endure; regard, consider; fertur, *is said*; ferendus (gerundive), *sufferable.*

**ferreus**, -a, -um, adj. [ferro- (st. of ferrum), *iron*], of iron; iron-hearted, unfeeling.

**ferus**, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce.*

**fessus**, -a, -um, adj., *weary.*

**festinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [festīno- (st. of festīnus), *hasty*], hasten.

**fidēs**, -ēī, F. [√fid-, *trust*], *faith, trust, confidence; keeping, protection.*

**fidus**, -a, -um, adj. [√fid-, *trust*], *trusty, faithful.*

**figūra**, -ae, F. [√fig-, *shape*], *shape.*

**filia**, -ae, F. [fem. of filius, *son*], *daughter.*

**fillola**, -ae, F. [fem. of dim. filiulus, *little son*], *little daughter.*

**filius**, -iī, M., *son*; in pl., also *children.*

**finiō**, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -ītus [fini- (st. of finis), *end*], *put an end to, limit, fix, determine; compute, reckon.*

**finis**, -is, M. (sometimes F. in sing.), *limit, boundary, frontier; end*; in pl., *land included within boundaries, and so territories, territory, estates.*

**finitimus**, -a, -um, adj. [fini- (st. of finis), *limit*], *bordering on, adjacent, neighboring*; subst., **finitimi**, -ōrum, M., *neighbors, neighboring tribes.*

**fiō**, fierī (factus, see faciō), *become, be made, be done, be committed, be in progress, happen, take place; certior fieri, to be informed; fit, the result is.*

**firmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [firmo- (st. of firmus), *firm*], *make firm, strengthen.*

**firmus**, -a, -um, adj., *firm, strong, stable, steadfast.*

**flagitium**, -iī, N. [√flag-, *burn*], *shameful act (done in the heat of passion), disgraceful act.*

**flamma**, -ae, F. [for \*flagma, fr. √flag-, *burn*], *flame.*

**flāveō**, -ēre [flāvo- (st. of flāvus), *yellow*] *be yellow.*

**fleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *weep.*

**flōreō**, -ēre, -ruī [flōs- (st. of flōs), *flower* (-s- becomes -r- between two vowels)], *be in flower, blossom; flourish*; p. a. **flōrēns**, -entis, *flourishing.*

**flūctus**, -ūs, M. [√flūgu-, *flow*], *flowing; wave, billow.*

**flūmen**, -inis, N. [√flū(gu)-, *flow*], (that which flows, and so) *river.*

**fons**, fontis, M., *spring, fountain.*

**foris**, adv. [abl. pl. used adv.], *out of DOORS, abroad.*

**fors** (nom.), forte (abl.), F. (used in these two cases only) [√fer-, BEAR, BRING], (what brings itself, and so) *chance.*

**fortis**, -e, adj., *brave.*

**fortiter**, adv. [forti- (st. of fortis), *brave*], *bravely, courageously, with bravery, with courage, with fortitude.*

**fortitūdō**, -inis, F. [forti- (st. of fortis), *brave*], *courage, fortitude.*

**fortūna**, -ae, F. [conn. w. fors, *chance*], *fortune; good fortune, success; misfortune.*

**fortūnātus**, -a, -um [p. a. of fortunō, *make prosperous*], *fortunate.*

**fossa**, -ae, F. [fem. of perf. part. of fodīō, *dig*, used subst. (sc. terra)], *ditch, moat.*

**fragmentum**, -ī, N. [√frag-, BREAK], (result of breaking, and so) *fragment.*

**frangō**, -ere, frēgī, fractus [√frag-, BREAK], BREAK, *crush.*

**frāter**, -tris, M., BROTHER.

**frequēns**, -entis, adj., *crowded, in great numbers.*

**frīgus**, -oris, N., *cold, frost.*

**frōns**, frontis, F., BROW, *front*.

**Frontō**, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Cornelius Fronto* (celebrated orator, native of Cirta in Numidia, flourished in the second century A.D.).

**frūctuōsus**, -a, -um, adj., [frūctus (st. of frūctus), *fruit*], *fruitful*, *productive*.

**frūctus**, -ūs, M. [√frūgu-, *enjoy*], (enjoyment, and so) *fruit*, *produce*, *profit*, *income*.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj. [frūmento- (st. of frūmentum), *grain*], *pertaining to grain*; *rēs frūmentāria*, *provisions*.

**frūmentum**, -ī, N. [√frū(gu)-, *enjoy*], (means of enjoyment, and so) *grain* (usu. harvested); in pl., *grain* (especially, standing grain).

**fruor**, -ī, frūctus [√fru(gu)-, *enjoy*], *derive enjoyment from*, *enjoy*.

**frūstrā**, adv. [conn. w. *fraus*, *deceit*], *in vain*.

**fuga**, -ae, F. [√fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*], *flight*.

**fugiō**, -ere, fugī [√fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*; cognate w. Eng. BOW], *flee*.

**fugō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fugā- (st. of fuga), *flight*], *put to flight*.

**fugitivus**, -ī, M. [adj. used subst., fr. √fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*], *fugitive*, *deserter*.

**fūmus**, -ī, M., *smoke*.

**fundāmentum**, -ī, N. [fundā- (st. of fundō), BOTTOM, *make secure*], (means of making secure, and so) *foundation*.

**fundō**, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour*.

**fungor**, -ī, fūctus, *discharge*, *perform*.

**fūnis**, -is, M., *rope*.

**fūnus**, -eris, N. [said to be conn. w. fūmus, *smoke*, and having reference primarily to the burning of the body after death], *funeral*, *funeral rites*.

**fūr**, fūris, C. [conn. w. √fer-, BEAR], (one who carries off, and so) *thief*.

**furor**, -ōris, M. [√fur-, *rage*], *madness*, *insane folly*, *fury*.

**fūrtim**, adv. [acc. used adv.; conn. w. fūr, *thief*], *stealthily*.

**fūrtum**, -ī, N. [conn. w. fūr, *thief*], *theft*.

## G.

**Galba**, -ae, M., *Servius Sulpicius Galba* (one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul).



Fig. 3.  
Helmet of a  
Romansoldier,  
from the col-  
umn of Trajan.

**galea**, -ae, F., HELMET; see Fig. 3.

**Gallī**, -ōrum, M., the *Gauls* (inhabitants of Gaul; see Gallia).

**Gallia**, -ae, F., *Gaul* (Transalpine Gaul comprised substantially modern France, the Netherlands, and Switzerland; Cisalpine Gaul comprised the valley of the Po in northern Italy).

**Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*, of the *Gauls* (see Gallī and Gallia).

**Gallus**, -ī, M., *Gajus Sulpicius Gallus* (celebrated for his knowledge of Greek and astronomy; famous also as an orator; lived in the second century B.C.).

**Gallus**, -ī, M., a *Gaul* (see Gallia).

**gaudium**, -iī, N. [conn. w. gaudeō, *rejoice*], *joy*.

**Genāva**, -ae, F., *Geneva* (on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone).

**gener**, -erī, M., *son-in-law*.

**gēns**, gentis, F. [√gen-, *beget*, *give birth to*], *offspring*, *race*, *people*, *NATION*, *tribe*.

**genus**, -eris, N. [√gen-, *beget*, *give birth to*], *birth*; *stock*, *race*, *family*; KIND, *class*, *order*, *mode*.

**Gergovia**, -ae, F., *Gergovia* (town of the Arverni in Celtic Gaul).

**Germānī**, -ōrum, M., the *Germans*.

**gerō**, -ere, gessī, gestus [√ges-

(-s- becomes -r-); *carry*], *carry*, *conduct*, *manage*, *transact*, *perform*, *do*, *carry on*, *wage*; in pass., *be in progress*.

**gīgnō**, -ere, genuī, genitus [vgn- (reduplicated) and gen-, *beget*, *give birth to*], *bring forth*, *bear*.

**gladiātor**, -ōris, M. [gladiā- (st. of \*gladiō), *fight with the sword* (gladius)], (one who fights with the sword, and so) *gladiator*.

**gladius**, -iī, M., *sword* (straight and two-edged); see Fig. 4.



Fig. 4.

Sword of a Roman soldier, from the Museo Borbonico.

**glōria**, -ae, F., *glory*, *reown*.

**glōrior**, -ārī, -ātus [glōriā- (st. of glōria), *glory*], *glory*, *boast*; *idem glōriārī*, *to make the same boast*; *hōc glōriārī*, *to make this boast*.

**gradus**, -ūs, M., *step*; *stage*.

**Graccia**, -ae, F., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.

**grandis**, -e, adj., *full-grown*; *quidam grandis nātū*, *a [man] advanced in years*.

**grātia**, -ae, F. [grāto- (st. of grātus), *pleasing*, *grateful*], *favor*, *friendship*, *credit*, *influence*; *good will*, *gratitude*.

**grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus [\*grātulo- (st. of \*grātulus, perhaps dim. of grātus), *somewhat pleasing*], *manifest pleasure*, *wish joy*, *congratulate*.

**grātus**, -a, -um [p. a. fr. vgrā-, *hold dear*, *desire*], (held dear, desired, and so) *pleasant*, *agreeable*, *gratifying*, *acceptable*, *welcome*; *grateful*; *deserving of gratitude*.

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy*; *severe*, *hard*, *oppressive*, *unfortunate*; *gravior aetās*, *advanced age*.

**graviter**, adv. [gravi- (st. of gravis), *heavy*], *heavily*; *severely*, *harshly*.

**gubernātor**, -ōris, M. [gubernā- (st. of gubernō), *steer*], *steersman*,  *pilot*.

## H.

**habēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have*, *hold*, *keep*; (of confidence) *repose*; (of an address) *deliver*; *consider*, *esteem*, *regard*, *deem*; **grātiam habēre**, *to feel or cherish gratitude*; **habēre immūnitātem**, *to enjoy immunity*.

**haesitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [intens. of haerō, *stick fast*], *be at a loss*, *hesitate*.

**Hannibal**, -alis, M., *Hannibal* (leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war, B.C. 218-201).

**Hellēspontus**, -ī, M., *the Hellespont* (mod. Dardanelles, strait connecting the sea of Marmora and the Aegean sea).

**Helvētīi**, -ōrum, M., *the Helvetii* or *Helvetians* (a tribe in the eastern part of Celtic Gaul occupying that part of modern Switzerland which lies between lakes Geneva and Constance).

**hērēditās**, -ātis, F. [hērēd- (st. of hērēs), *heir*], *heirship*, *inheritance*.

**Hermēs** or **Herma**, -ae, M., *Hermes-pillar* (a four-cornered post or pedestal terminating in a carved head, often that of the god Hermes; these were frequently to be found in Athens in streets and public places, and before private houses); see Fig. 5.

**hiberna**, -ōrum, N. [n. pl. of hibernus, *pertaining to winter*, used subst.; sc. castra], *winter-quarters*.

**Hibērus**, -ī, M., *the Ebro* (a river in Spain).



Fig. 5.

Hermes-pillar, from the capitol at Rome.

**hic**, haec, hōc, demonstr. pron., (used adj.) *this*; (used subst.) *this man*, etc., *he*, etc. (emphatic); **hic . . . ille**: *the latter . . . the former*; of (pertaining to) *the latter . . . of (pertaining to) the former*.

**hic**, adv., *here*; *upon this*, *here-upon*.

**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [hiem- (st. of hiems), *winter*], *pass the winter*, *winter*.

**hiems** (**hiemps**), -emis, F., *winter*.

**Hilōtae**, -ārum, M., *Helots* (the servile class in Sparta).

**Hispānia**, -ae, F., *Spain*.

**historia**, -ae, F., *history*.

**hodiē**, adv. [abl. fm. of pron. st. hō-, *this*; abl. fm. of diēs, *day*], *to-day*; *at the present day*.

**hodiernus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. hodiē, *to-day*], *of this day*; **hodiernus diēs**, *this day*, *to-day*.

**homo**, -inis, C. [conn. w. humus, *ground*], (son of earth, and so) *human being*, *man*; *fellow*.

**honestō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [honesto- (st. of honestus), *honorable*], *clothe with honor*, *adorn*, *dignify*, *embellish*.

**honestus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. honōs, *honor*], *honorable*, *worthy of honor*.

**honōri-ficus**, -a, -um, adj. [honōs- (st. of honōs), *honor*; √fac-, *make*], (making honor, and so) *honorable*.

**honōs** or **honor**, -ōris, M., *honor*, *dignity*, *estimation*; **honōris causā**, *out of compliment to*, *out of respect to*.

**hōra**, -ae, F., **HOUR** (the Romans divided the interval between sunrise and sunset into twelve parts called hours; accordingly, their hour did not have a fixed value, but varied in length according to the season).

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, *encourage*, *urge*, *exhort*.

**hortus**, -ī, M. (conn. w. cohors, q. v.), (enclosure, and so) *GARDEN*.

**hospes**, -itis, C., **HOST**; *GUEST* (whether friend or stranger).

**hostis**, -is, C., *stranger*, *foreigner*; *enemy* (especially a *public enemy* in contrast to **inimicus**, a *private enemy*); in pl., *enemy*, a *hostile army*.

**hūc**, adv. [case fm. of pron. st. hō-, *this*, with demonstr. ending -c(e)], *to this place*, *to this point*, *hither*.

**hūmānitās**, -ātis, F. [hūmāno- (st. of hūmānus), *human*; *refined*], *humanity*; *refinement* (of manners, language, etc., resulting from a liberal education, and so) *accomplishments*.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. homo, *man*], *human*; *humane*; *refined*, *highly civilized*.

**humilis**, -e, adj. [humo- (st. of humus), *ground*], (pertaining to the ground, and so) *low*; *insignificant*, *weak*.

**humus**, -ī, F., *ground*.

## I.

**ibī**, adv. [pron. st. i- (of is), *that*, w. loc. suff.], *in that place*, *there*.

**ictus**, -ūs, M. [√ic-, *hit*], *hitting*; *blow*.

**idem**, eadem, idem [is, *that*; w. demonstr. suff.], *the same*; trans. adv., *also*, *likewise*, *again*.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*; *convenient*, *accessible*.

**Īdūs**, -uum, F., *the Ides* (one of the three points in the month from which the Romans reckoned; the Ides fell on the thirteenth except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the fifteenth).

**igitur**, conj. (usu. placed after the first word of the sent.), *then*, *therefore*, *accordingly*.

**ignāvīa**, -ae, F. [ignāvo- (st. of ignāvus), *idle*], *idleness*, *sloth*.

**ignis**, -is, M., *fire*.

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. ignārus, *ignorant*], *not* know, *be ignorant of*.

**i-gnōscō**, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum [i(n)-, *not*; (g)gnōscō, *take steps to know*], (*not* inquire into, and so) *overlook, pardon*.

**ille**, illa, illud, demonstr. pron., (used subst.) *he, she, it*; (used adj.) *that; the well known, that . . . of old, of yore; the following; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former; in pl., those, they; ille ferreus, so iron-hearted*.

**illō**, adv. [case fm. of ille, *that*], *to that place, thither*.

**imber**, -bris, m., *rain, rain-storm*.

**inmānis**, -e, adj., *monstrous, immense, huge*.

**im-mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; mātūrus, *ripe, seasonable*], *unseasonable, before one's time*.

**immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *upon*; mola, *sacrificial MEAL* (through presumed adj. st.)], (*sprinkle sacrificial meal on the victim to be sacrificed, and so*) *sacrifice, immolate*.

**im-mortālis**, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; mortālis, *mortal*], *immortal, undying, perpetual*; translated adv., *forever*.

**im-mūnis**, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; mūnis, *under obligation*; cf. commūnis], *exempt*.

**immūnitās**, -ātis, f. [immūni- (st. of immūnis), *exempt*], *exemption, immunity*.

**impedimentum**, -ī, n. [impedi- (st. of impediō), *hinder*], *hindrance, impediment*; in pl., *baggage*.

**impediō**, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -ītus [in-ped- (st. of pēs), *having the feet entangled*], (*cause one's feet to become entangled, and so*) *impede, hinder, interfere with, prevent*.

**im-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [in, *on, against*; pellō, *drive*], *drive on or against, urge on, impel*.

**im-pendeō**, -ēre [in, *over*; pendeō, *hang*], *hang over, impend, threaten*.

**imperātor**, -ōris, m. [imperā- (st. of imperō), *command*], *commander, general*.

**im-peritus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; peritus, *experienced*], *inexperienced, unpractised, unskilled*.

**imperium**, -iī, n. [conn. w. imperō, *command*], *order, command; power, direction, authority, control; persons in power; government*.

**im-perō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *with in, thoroughly*; parō, *prepare*], (*lit., prepare thoroughly, work over, and so*) *command, direct, govern; demand, make a requisition for*.

**im-petrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, (*by appeal*) *to*; patrō, *bring to pass*], *bring to pass by entreaty, obtain a request*.

**impetus**, -ūs, m. [in-*vet-*, *fly at, fall upon*], (*falling upon, and so*) *onset, attack*.

**im-pius**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; pius, *dutiful, reverent*], *undutiful, irreverent, impious, wicked*.

**im-plōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *to*; plōrō, *cry out*], *cry out to, call upon, ask beseechingly, entreat, implore*.

**im-pudens**, -entis, adj. [in-, *not*; pudēs, *modest*], *shameless*.

**impulsor**, -ōris, m. [in-*pol-*, *push on*], (*one who pushes on, and so*) *instigator, urger; impulsor esse, to urge*.

**in**, prep. w. acc. and abl. 1. w. acc.: *into, to, towards, for; in favor of; against, over*; 2. w. abl.: *in, on, in the midst of, amid, in the case of; in armīs, under arms; in lātītūdinem, in width; in cōspectum, in sight*.

**incendium**, -iī, n. [in-*vcand-*, *set fire to*], *setting fire to; fire, conflagration*.

**in-cendō**, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus [in, *to*; \*candō (*vcand-*), *set fire*], *set fire to, burn; fire, inflame*.

**inceptum**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of incipiō, *begin*], (that which has been begun, and so) *attempt*, UNdertaking.

**in-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus [in, UPON; cadō, *fall*], *fall UPON*; *happen, occur, arise*.

**in-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, UPON; capiō, *lay hold*], (lay hold upon, and so) *begin*.

**in-colō**, -ere, -uī [in, IN; colō, *dwell*], *inhabit*; *dwell*.

**incolumis**, -e, adj., UNinjured, UNharmed.

**incommodum**, -ī, N. [n. of adj. incommodus, *inconvenient*, used subst.], *inconvenience, disadvantage, injury, harm, disaster, defeat*.

**in-crēdibilis**, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; crēdibilis, *credible*], *incredible*.

**in-crepitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *to, against*; crepitō, *rattle much, make a loud noise*], *call out to*; *exclaim against, rebuke, chide*.

**incursiō**, -ōnis, F. [in-curr- (base in currō), *rush IN OR against*], *incursion, INroad*.

**in-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *against*; causa, *charge* (through presumed denom. vb. \*causō; cf. causor)], *bring a charge against, find fault with, complain of, blame, upbraid*.

**inde**, adv., *from that place, thence*; *next in order*.

**indiciū**, -iī, N. [indic- (st. of index), *he who or that which points out*], *pointing out, informing*; *information, testimony*.

**in-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *to-wards*; dicō, *make known, and so point*], *point out, disclose, reveal, betray*.

**indigeō**, -ēre, -uī [indigo- (st. of indigus), *IN want*], *be IN want of, need, stand IN need of*.

**indignē**, adv. [abl. form of indignus, UNworthy], UNworthily, UNdeservedly.

**in-dignus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; dignus, *worthy*], UNworthy.

**in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [in, INTO; dūcō, *lead*], *lead INTO*.

**indulgeō**, -ēre, -sī, -tus, *indulge*.

**induō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [indu, ON; vū-, *clothe*], *put ON*.

**industria**, -ae, F., *industry*.

**in-eō**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus [in, INTO; eō, *go*], *go INTO, enter*; *enter UPON OR INTO, begin, form*.

**inermis**, -e, adj. [in-, *without*; armo- (st. of arma, *arms*)], *without arms, UNarmed*.

**infāmia**, -ae, F. [infāmi- (st. of infāmis), *disreputable*], *disrepute, dishonor, disgrace, infamy*.

**in-fēlix**, -īcis, adj. [in-, *not*; fēlix, *happy*], UNhappy.

**inferior**, -ius, adj., comp. of inferus, q. v.

**in-ferō**, inferre, intulī, inlātus [in, prep., *against*; ferō, BEAR], (of war) *wage or carry ON against*, (of arms or standards) *carry INTO, carry against*; *inflict*; (w. in and acc.) *cast INTO*; **vim et manūs inferre**, *to lay violent hands upon*.

**inferus**, -a, -um, adj., *below*. Comp., **inferior**, -ius, *lower*. Superl., **infimus**, -a, -um, *lowest, lowest part of, at the bottom*.

**infestus**, -a, -um [p. a. of \*infendō, *strike or thrust against*; cf. dēfendō, *strike or thrust off*], (*dashed against, and so hostile, opposed*; **infestis signis consistere**, *to come to a halt and assume the defensive*).

**infimus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of inferus, q. v.

**in-firmus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; firmus, *firm*], *weak, feeble, infirm*.

**in-fluō**, -ere, -xī, -xum [in, INTO; fluō, *flow*], *flow INTO, flow*.

**ingenium**, -iī, N. [in-√gen-, *beget IN*], (what is born in one, and so) *disposition*; *mind*.

**ingēns**, -entis, adj. [in-, *out of, beyond*; genti- (st. of gēns) *KIND, class*], (*beyond its kind, and so great* (in an exaggerated degree), *huge*; *a great quantity of*).

**in-gredior**, -ī, -gressus [in, INTO; gradior, *step*], go INTO, enter; walk.

**in-iciō** (pronounced: injiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [in, INTO; jaciō, *throw*], throw INTO, infuse, impart.

**inimicitia**, -ae, F. [inimīco- (st. of inimicus), *hostile*, UNfriendly], *hostility*, *enmity*.

**in-imīcus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; amīcus, *friendly*], UNfriendly, *hostile*; subst., *personal enemy* (opp. hostis, *public enemy*), *enemy*.

**iniquitās**, -ātis, F. [inīquo- (st. of inīquus), UNjust], *injustice*.

**in-iquus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; aequus, *fair*], UNfair; UNreasonable.

**initium**, -iī, N. [in-ī-, go INTO, begin], *beginning*; *first principles*, *elements*.

**injūria**, -ae, F. [in-, not; jūs- (st. of jūs), *right* (-s becomes -r-)], (violation of right, and so) *injury*, *wrong*, UNjust *treatment*, *oppression*; **injūriā**, *wrongfully*, UNjustly, *without provocation*.

**in-lacrimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in, at; lacrimō, *shed TEARS*], *shed TEARS*, *weep*.

**in-liciō**, -ere, -lexī, -lectus [in, INTO; \*laciō, *lure*], *lure INTO*, *entice*, *decoy*, *seduce*.

**in-lustris**, -e, adj., *distinguished*, *illustrious*, *high*, *exalted*.

**in-nocēns**, -entis, adj. [in-, not; nocēns, *criminal*, *guilty*], *guiltless*, *innocent*; subst., *the innocent*.

**inopia**, -ae, F. [inopi- (st. of inops), *without resources*], *want*; *necessitous condition*.

**in primis**, **inprimis**, or **inprimis**, (among the first, and so) *especially*, *particularly*.

**inquam**, def., *I say*; **inquit**, *says he*; *said he*.

**insāniō**, -īre, -īvī and -iī, -ītum [insāno- (st. of insānus), *insane*], *be insane*.

**in-scientia**, -ae, F. [in-scient- (st. of insciēns), *inexperienced*], *inexperience*.

**in-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [in, ON; scribō, *write*], *inscribe*, *entitle*.

**in-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [in, close upon; sequor, *follow*], *follow close upon* or *after*, *pursue*.

**insigne**, -is, N. [n. of adj. insīgnis, *marked*], *distinguishing mark*, *badge*.

**insolenter**, adv. [insolent- (st. of insolēns), *insolent*], *insolently*.

**in-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [in, INTO; statuō, *place*], (place into, and so) *fix*, *establish*, *institute*.

**institūtum**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of instituō, *establish*], (what is established, and so) *institution*, *regulation*, *usage*.

**in-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [in, INTO; struō, *build*], *build INTO*; *draw up*, *arrange*.

**insula**, -ae, F., *island*.

**in-sum**, inesse, in-fuī [in, IN; sum, *be*], *be IN*, *belong to*.

**integer**, -gra, -grum, adj. [in-utag-, not touch], UNtouched, *whole*; **in integrum**, *to a former condition*.

**integrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [integrō- (st. of integer), *whole*], *make whole*, *renew*.

**intel-legō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter, *between*, INTO; legō, *see*], *see INTO*, UNDERstand, *know*; *perceive*, *be aware*.

**in-tempestus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; \*tempestus, *seasonable*], UNseasonable; **intempestā nocte**, *at an UNseasonable hour of the NIGHT*, *late at NIGHT*.

**inter**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. fu. of in, IN], *between*, *among*; **inter sē**, (according to the context) *among themselves*, *to one another*, *from one another*, *one another*, *with each other*, etc.

**inter-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [inter, *between*; cēdō, *go*], *go between*, *intervene*.

**inter-clūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sus [inter, *between*; clūdō, *shut*],

shut off (by interposing something), *shut out, cut off*.

**inter-dicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictus [inter, between; dicō, speak], *forbid, prohibit, exclude*.

**interdum**, adv. [inter, between; dum, while], *sometimes, occasionally*.

**interēā**, adv. [inter, among; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), these things. cf. antea w. foot-note], *meanwhile*.

**inter-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum [inter, among; eō, go, be lost], (be lost among other things, and so) *perish, become extinct*.

**inter-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [inter, among; faciō, put, make go, cause to be lost. cf. intereō], (cause to be lost among other things, and so) *dispatch, kill, put to death*.

**interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**inter-imō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus [inter, (out from) among; emō, take], (take an object out from its surroundings, and so) *kill*.

**interior**, -ius, adj. [comp. of \*interus], *inner; the interior of*.

**inter-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [inter, between, and so, in the midst; mittō, let go], (leave off in the midst, and so) *interrupt, intermit; let pass, suffer to elapse*.

**inter-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [inter, between; pōnō, place], *interpose*.

**interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus [interpret- (st. of interpres), *interpret-er*], *explain, expound, interpret*.

**inter-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter, between (the questioner and the person questioned); rogō, ask], *interrogate, question, ask*.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī [inter, between; sum, be], *be between, intervene; take part in, have to do with; attend to, superintend; impers., interest, it concerns, it interests, it is important*.

**intervallum**, -ī, n. [inter, between, and so within; vāllum,

rampart], (space within the rampart, i.e. between the rampart and the soldiers' tents, and so) *interval, distance*.

**in-tueor**, -ēri, -itus [in, at, ON; tueor, look], *look at, gaze ON*.

**intus**, adv. [in, IN], *within*.

**in-ūtilis**, -e, adj. [in-, not; ūtilis, useful], *useless, unprofitable; injurious*.

**in-vādō**, -ere, -vāsī [in, INTO; vādō, go], *go INTO, enter, invade, rush IN, fall upon, take possession*.

**in-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [in, UPON; veniō, COME], *COME UPON, find (by accident; cf. reperiō, which often means 'find by searching')*.

**inventor**, -ōris, m. [in-ven-, COME UPON, discover], *discoverer, inventor, contriver*.

**in-victus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; victus (perf. part. of vincō), conquered], *UNconquered; invincible*.

**in-vidēō**, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus [in, askance at; vidēō, look], *look askance at; envy*.

**invidia**, -ae, f. [invidio- (st. of invidus), *envious*], *envy; obloquy, odium, unpopularity*.

**in-vitūs**, -a, -um, adj., *UNwilling*.

**ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, demonstr. pron., *self, himself, herself, itself; mere, very, in person*.

**īra**, -ae, f., *anger, passion*.

**īrācundiā**, -ae, f. [īrācundo- (st. of īrācundus), *passionate*], *passion*.

**īrācundus**, -a, -um, adj. [īrā- (st. of \*īror), *be angry*], *passionate, choleric*.

**īrāscor**, -ī, īrātus [incept. fr. īrā- (st. of \*īror), *be angry*], *give way to passion, be angry; īrātus, -a, -um, p. a., angry, in anger*.

**ir-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in, INTO; rumpō, burst], *burst or rush INTO*.

**is**, ea, id, demonstr. pron., 1. adj., *this, that, such, of such a kind*; 2. subst., *this one, that one, he, she, it*; in pl., *these, those*,



they; eō . . . quō, by that . . . by which, the . . . the.

**iste**, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., THAT of yours, THAT; (with contemptuous implication) THAT, THAT one; **ista vēritās**, THE truth coming from you.

**ita**, adv., in such a way, so, THUS; **ita . . . ut**, so . . . as.

**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.

**itaque**, conj. [ita, so; -que, and], and so, THEREFORE.

**item**, adv. [conn. w. ita, so], likewise.

**iter**, itineris, n. [vī-, go], journey, march, marching, passage; way, road, route, line of march; **iter facere**, to march.

**iterum**, adv., again, a second time.

## J.

**jaceō**, -ēre, -cuī [intr. fm. conn. w. jaciō, throw], (be thrown, and so) lie, lie prostrate.

**jaciō**, -ere, jēcī, jactus, throw, cast.

**jam**, adv., now; already; at once, forthwith; even.

**jānuā**, -ae, f., street door, door.

**Juba**, -ae, m., *Juba* (king of Numidia and opponent of Caesar).

**jubeō**, -ēre, jūssī, jūssus, order.

**jūcundus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. juvō, help], (helpful, and so) pleasant, agreeable.

**jū-dex**, -icis, c. [jūs- (st. of jūs), what is binding; vdic-, point out], (one who points out what is binding, i.e. justice, and so) judge.

**jūdicium**, -iī, n. [jūdic- (st. of jūdex), judge], judgment, decision, sentence; in **jūdicium vocāre**, to summon before the court.

**jūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [jūdic- (st. of jūdex), judge], judge; pronounce, proclaim; consider, deem, think.

**jugum**, -ī, n. [vjug-, YOKE], YOKE; (mountain) ridge.

**Jūllānus**, -a, -um, adj. [Jūlio- (st. of Jūlius)], *Julian* (i.e., belonging to Julius Caesar).

**jūmentum**, -ī, n. [vjū(g)-, YOKE], (that which is yoked, and so) *beast of burden*.

**Jūppiter**, **Jovis**, m. [Jovi- (for Diovi-, st. of Diovis), god of heaven; pater, FATHER], *Jupiter* (supreme deity of the Romans).

**Jūra**, -ae, m., the *Jura mountains* (a chain extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and separating the Sequani from the Helvetii).

**jūs**, jūris, n. [vjū-, bind, conn. w. vjug-], (that which is binding, and so) right, justice; authority; one's rights, redress; in pl., rights, authority; **jūs dicere**, to pronounce judgment, to administer justice.

**jūsjūrandum**, jūrisjūrandī, n. [jūs, what is binding; gerundive of jūrō, swear], oath.

**jūssū**, m. (in abl. sing. only) [fr. same root as jubeō, order], at the bidding.

**jūstitia**, -ae, f. [jūsto- (st. of jūstus), just], justice.

**jūstus**, -a, -um, adj. [jūs- (st. of jūs), right], founded in right, just; regular, proper, due, usual.

**juventūs**, -ūtis, f. [juven- (st. of juvenis), young], YOUTH.

**juvō**, -āre, jūvī, jūtus, help, aid, assist, benefit.

## K.

**Karthāgō**, see Carthāgō.

## L.

**L**, abbr. of **Lūcius**, -iī, m., *Lucius* (Roman praenomen or first name).

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Titus Attius Labienus* (Caesar's chief lieutenant in the Gallic war, 58-50 B.C.).

**labor**, -ōris, m. [vlab-, lay hold of], (laying hold of, and so) labor, toil, exertion.

**lābor**, -ī, lāpsus [vlāb-, glide, full], glide, fall, sink; err.

**labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labōr- (st. of labor), labor], labor; struggle against odds.

**lac**, lactis, n., milk.

**Lacedaemōn**, -onis, F., *Lacedaemon* or *Sparta* (chief city of Laconia, in Peloponnesus).

**Lacedaemoniī**, -ōrum, M., *Lacedaemonians* (inhabitants of Lacedaemon, q. v.).

**lacertus**, -ī, M., *upper arm, arm*; in pl., also *muscle, brawn*.

**laccessō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *challenge, irritate, attack*.

**lacrima**, -ae, F., **TEAR**.

**lacus**, -ūs, M., *lake*.

**Laeca**, -ae, M., *Marcus Porcius Laeca* (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

**Laelius**, -iī, M., *Gajus Laelius* (friend of Scipio Africanus the younger, and principal character in Cicero's work on Friendship; flourished in the latter half of the second century B.C.).

**laetitia**, -ae, F. [*laeto* (st. of *lactus*), *joyful*], *joy*.

**laetor**, -ārī, -ātus [*laeto* (st. of *lactus*), *joyful*], *be joyful, rejoice; rejoice at*.

**lapis**, -idis, M., *stone*.

**largior**, -īrī, -ītus [*largo* (st. of *largus*), *abundant*], *bestow lavishly, be lavish of*.

**lātē**, adv. [*abl. fin. of lātus*, *wide*], *widely; quam lātissimē, as widely or extensively as possible*.

**Latīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *Latin* (pertaining to *Latium*, q. v.).

**lātītūdō**, -inis, F. [*lāto* (st. of *lātus*), *broad*], *breadth, extent*.

**Latium**, -iī, N., *Latium* (district in Italy containing the city Rome).

**Latovici**, -ōrum, M., *the Latovici* (German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii).

**latrō**, -ōnis, M., *robber*.

**latrōcinium**, -iī, N. [*comm. w. latrōcinor, rob on the highway*], *robbery*.

**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *broad, extensive*.

**latus**, -eris, N., *side, flank*.

**laudō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*laud* (st. of *laus*), *praise*], *commend, praise*.

**laus**, *laudis*, F., *praise, commendation; glory, distinction, renown*.

**lēctor**, -ōris, M. [*vlēg*, *read*], *reader*.

**lēgātīō**, -ōnis, F. [*lēgā* (st. of *lēgō*), *depute*], *deputing; deputation, embassy*.

**lēgātus**, -ī, M. [*perf. part. of lēgō, depute*], (one commissioned or deputed, and so) *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant* (the *lēgātī* were experienced officers commanding separate divisions of the army under the general direction of the commander-in-chief; often in special exigencies they exercised independent command).

**legiō**, -ōnis, F. [*vlēg*, *pick, gather*], (a levy, and so) *legion* (a full legion in Caesar's time contained about 6000 men; the legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries).

**legiōnārius**, -a, -um, adj. [*legiōn* (st. of *legiō*), *legion*], *pertaining to legions, legionary*.

**legō**, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus* [*vlēg*, *pick, gather*], *gather; select; read*.

**Lemannus**, -ī, M., (ancient name of) *Lake Geneva*.

**Lemnos** or **Lemnus**, -ī, F., *Lemnos* or *Lemnus* (island in the northern part of the Aegean sea).

**Lemovīcēs**, -um, M., *the Lemovices* (tribe in Celtic Gaul, west of the Arverni).

**lēniō**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus [*lēni* (st. of *lēnis*), *soft*], *make soft, soothe*.

**Lentulus**, -ī, M., *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Sura* (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

**lēō**, -ōnis, M., *lion*.

**Lepidus**, -ī, M., *Manius Aemilius Lepidus* (consul 66 B.C.).

**levīs**, -e, adj., *LIGHT, slight*.

**levō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*levi* (st. of *levis*), *LIGHT*], *LIGHTEN, relieve, release*.

**lĕx**, lĕgis, F., LAW.

**libenter**, adv. [libent- (st. of libĕns), *willing*], *willingly, cheerfully*.

**liber**, -brĭ, M., *book, treatise, work*.

**liber**, -era, -erum, adj., *free, unrestricted*.

**liberālis**, -e, adj. [libĕro- (st. of libĕr), *free*], *belonging to a freeman; liberal, lavish*.

**liberāliter**, adv. [libĕrāli- (st. of liberālis), *pertaining to a freeman*], (in a manner becoming a freeman, and so) *graciously, courteously*.

**libĕrĕ**, adv. [abl. fm. of libĕr, *free*], *freely, without constraint*.

**libĕrĭ**, -ōrum, M. [masc. pl. of adj. libĕr, *free*, used subst.], (the free members of the household in distinction from the slaves, and so) *children* (with reference to their parents; cf. puerĭ, *children* in general).

**libĕrō**, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātus [libĕro- (st. of libĕr), *free*], *set free, free, liberate, relieve, release*.

**libĕrtās**, -ātis, F. [libĕro- (st. of libĕr), *free*], *freedom, liberty*.

**libet**, -ĕre -buit or -bitum est (older forms, lubet, etc., vĭub, *desire*; cognate w. English LOVE), *it is pleasing or agreeable; mihi libet, I am disposed*.

**licet**, -ĕre, -cuit or -citur est [vĭic-, *leave free* (through presumed adj.)], *it is permitted, it is lawful, one is at liberty, it is possible*.

**Lingonĕs**, -um (acc. Lingonas), M., *the Lingones* (tribe in Celtic Gaul near the sources of the Marne and Meuse).

**lingua**, -ae, F., TONGUE; *language*.

**Liscus**, -ĭ, M., *Liscus* (prominent Aeduan of Caesar's time).

**Litaviccus**, -ĭ, M., *Litaviccus* (Aeduan of Caesar's time).

**littera**, -ae, F., *letter* (of the alphabet), *character*; in pl., *letter* (epistle), *dispatch, letters, dis-*

*patches; litteris mandāre, to commit to writing*.

**litus**, -oris, N., *shore* (of the sea; cf. rĭpa, *bank of a river*).

**locō**, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātus [loco- (st. of locus), *place*], *place*.

**locus**, -ĭ, M.; in pl., (usu.) **loca**, -ōrum, N., (sometimes) **loci**, -ōrum, M., *place, spot, site, position; room; rank*.

**longĕ**, adv. [abl. fm. of longus, LONG], *far; by far; for a LONG time, LONG*.

**longinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. longus], LONG, LONG-continued.

**longitūdō**, -inis, F. [longo- (st. of longus), LONG], LENGTH.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., LONG; **nāvis longa**, *ship of war*.

**loquor**, -ĭ, -cūtus [vĭloqu-, *sound, speak*], *speak*.

**lūcō**, -ĕre, lūxĭ [conn. w. lūx, LIGHT], *be LIGHT, shine*.

**lūdus**, -ĭ, M., *game*.

**lūgĕō**, -ĕre, lūxĭ, *mourn, lament*.

**lūmen**, -inis, N. [vĭlū(c)-, *shine*], (that which shines, and so) LIGHT.

**lūna**, -ae, F. [vĭlū(c)-, *shine*], *moon*.

**lūstrum**, -ĭ, N. [vĭlou-, *wash*], *purificatory sacrifice*.

**lūx**, lūcis, F. [vĭlūc-, *shine*], LIGHT.

**Lycus**, -ĭ, M., *Lycus* (an Athenian, father of Thrasybulus; lived in the fifth century B.C.).

## M.

**M.**, abbr. of **Mārcus**, -ĭ, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

**M'**, abbr. of **Mānlius**, -ĭĭ, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

**māchinātĭō**, -ōnis, F. [māchinā- (st. of māchinor), *devise*], (devising, and so) *mechanism; engine*.

**māchinor**, -ārĭ, -ātus [māchinā- (st. of māchina), *machine*], *invent, contrive, devise*.

**magis**, adv. [for \*magius, N. acc. sing. comp. of adj. used adv.], *more*.

**magister**, -trī, M. [√mag-, *be great, be powerful*, w. double comp. suff.: -is = -ius, and -ter], (he who is greater or more powerful, and so), *master*.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, M. [magistrā- (st. of \*magistrō), *be master*], (being master, and so) *office of a magistrate, magistracy; magistrature*.

**māgnificus**, -a, -um, adj. [māgno- (st. of māgnus), *great; vfac-, do*], (of great deeds, and so) *magnificent, glorious, splendid*.

**māgnitūdō**, -inis, F. [māgno- (st. of māgnus), *great*], *greatness, size, bulk, extent, magnitude*.

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj. [√mag-, *be great*], *great, large; māgnī* (gen. of value), *greatly, highly*. Comp., **mājor**, -us, *greater; older, elder*; pl. subst., **mājōrēs**, *ancestors*; **mājōrēs nātū**, *elders, old men*. Superl., **māximus**, -a, -um, *greatest; quam māximus* (with or without some form of possum), *greatest possible*.

**mājor**, -us, see māgnus.

**male**, adv. [abl. fm. of malus, *bad*], *badly, ill*.

**maleficium**, -iī, N. [malefico- (st. of maleficus), *mischievous*], *mischievous*.

**mālō**, mālī, mālūi [mage (=magis), *rather; volō, wish*], *wish rather, choose rather, prefer*.

**malus**, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil, mischievous, evil-minded; wretched, unfortunate*; subst., **malum**, -ī, N., *evil*. Comp., **pējor**, -us, *worse*. Superl., **pessimus**, -a, -um, *worst*.

**mandātum**, -ī, N. [u. perf. part. of mandō, *command*], *injunction, order, commission, message*.

**mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manu- (st. of manus), *hand; dō, give* (through presumed adj. st.)], (put into one's hands, and so) *commit, intrust; order, command*.

**māne**, adv., *early in the morning*.

**manēō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum

[√man-, *think*], (stand wrapt in thought, and so) *wait, remain, abide, continue; manēre in, to remain IN, to abide by*.

**manus**, -ūs, F., *hand; art; force, band; in manibus, IN preparation; vim et manūs inferre, to lay violent hands upon*.

**Mārcius**, -iī, M., *Quintus Marcus Rex* (consul 68 B.C.).

**mare**, -is, N., *sea; marī, on the sea, by sea*.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, adj. [mari- (st. of mare), *sea*], *belonging to the sea, maritime*.

**Mārs**, Mārtis, M., *Mars* (Mars was originally a Roman agricultural divinity, but early came to be identified with the Greek god Ares; hence he is generally viewed as the god of war).

**Massīva**, -ae, M., *Massiva* (grandson of the Numidian king Masinissa; assassinated at the instigation of Jugurtha B.C. 108).

**māter**, -tris, F. [√mā-, *form, fashion, make*], *MOTHER*.

**māteria**, -ae, F. [māter, *MOTHER*], (mother-stuff, and so) *materials; timber*.

**mātūrē**, adv. [abl. fm. of mātūrus, *ripe*], *seasonably; speedily*.

**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mātūro- (st. of mātūrus), *ripe*], *ripen; hasten*.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. māne, *early in the morning*], *ripe*.

**māximē**, adv. [abl. fm. of māximus, *greatest*], *especially, most of all, most*.

**māximus**, -a, -um, see māgnus.

**mediocris**, -e, adj. [conn. w. medius, *MIDDLE*], *MIDDling; slight*.

**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *MIDDLE*, *MIDDLE part of, in the MIDDLE*;

**per mediōs**, *through the MIDst of them*.

**mehercle** or **mehercule** [mē, acc. pers. pron. w. vowel shortened (sc. juvēs); **hercle** or **hercule**, voc. of Herculēs], (**Hercules**, [help] me! and so) *by Hercules!*

**melior**, -ius, see bonus.

**membrum**, -ī, n., *limb, member*.  
**memini**, def. (only in perf. system, w. meaning of pres.) [√men-, *think*; cf. mēns], *think of, remember, cherish the memory of; mention, make mention of*.

**memor**, -oris, adj. [√mor- (reduplicated), *tarry over, brood*; conn. w. mora, *delay*], *mindful, thoughtful, recalling*.

**memoria**, -ae, f. [memori- (st. of memor), *mindful*], *remembrance, memory; time; memoriae prōditum est, the story runs* (lit., it has been handed down to memory).

**memorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [memori- (st. of memor), *mindful*], (make mindful, call to mind, and so) *mention, recount*.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, m., *the Menapii* (tribe in the northern part of Belgic Gaul).

**mēns**, mentis, f. [√men-, *think*], MIND, *the intellectual faculties; disposition; opinion; purpose, intention*.

**mēnsis**, -is, m. [conn. w. mētiōr, *measure*], (measure of time, and so) MONTH.

**mentior**, -īrī, -ītus [menti- (st. of mēns), MIND (with special reference to the imagination)], (draw upon the imagination, invent, romance, and so) *lie, speak falsely*.

**mercātor**, -ōris, m. [mercā- (st. of mercor), *trade*], *trader, merchant*.

**mercātūra**, -ae, f. [mercā- (st. of mercor), *trade*], *trade, traffic, commerce*; in pl., *commercial transactions*.

**mercēs**, -ēdis, f. [conn. w. mercātor and mercātūra], *hire, pay*.

**Mercurius**, -īī, m. [conn. w. the foregoing words], *Mercury* (Roman god of commerce and gain; later identified with Greek god Hermes, and so viewed as herald and messenger of the gods, presider over roads, etc.).

**mereor**, -ērī, -itus, *deserve, merit*.

**Messālla**, -ae, m., *Messalla* (Messala).

**-met** (pron. suff. appended for emphasis to certain forms of the pers. and poss. prons.), *self*.

**mētiōr**, -īrī, mēnsus [conn. w. modus, MEASURE, and mēnsis, MONTH], *measure, estimate, judge*.

**metuō**, -ēre, -uī, -ūtus (once) [metu- (st. of metus), *fear*], *fear*.

**metus**, -ūs, m., *fear, apprehension*.

**meus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., MY; **meū interest**, *it interests ME, it is of importance to ME*.

**miles**, -itis, m., *soldier*.

**militāris**, -e, adj. [milit- (st. of mīles), *soldier*], *pertaining to soldiers, military; rēs militāris, the military art*.

**militia**, -ae, f. [milit- (st. of mīles), *soldier*], *warfare, military service; militiae, abroad, in the field*.

**mille**, in sing., indecl. adj., *thousand*; also in nom. and acc. sing. (w. part. gen.), subst., *thousand*: **mille passuum**, *a thousand paces, a mile*; in pl., **millia** (*millia*) (w. part. gen.), subst., *thousands*: **millia passuum** or **millia** (sc. passuum), *miles*.

**Miltiadēs**, -is, m., *Miltiades* (celebrated Athenian general; defeated the Persians in the battle of Marathon B.C. 490).

**mina**, -ae, f. [borrowed from the Greek], *mina* (sum of money equivalent to about \$18).

**Minerva**, -ae, f., *Minerva* (goddess of wisdom, of the arts and sciences, of spinning and weaving, etc.).

**minimus**, -a, -um, see parvus.

**minimē**, adv. [abl. fm. of minimus, *least*], *least, least of all*.

**minutor**, -ārī, -ātus [intens. of minor, *threaten*; formed as if the perf. part. were minitus], *threaten, menace*.

**minor**, -us, see parvus.

**minus**, adv. [acc. n. sing. of minor], *less; not; minus valēre, not to be strong enough, to be too weak.*

**minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [conn. w. minor, *less*], *lessen, diminish; check, prevent; (of disputes) settle.*

**mīrābilis**, -e [mīrā- (st. of mīror), *wonder at*], *to be wondered at, wonderful.*

**mīror**, -ārī, -ātus [mīro- (st. of mīrus), *wonderful*], *wonder at, admire, wonder.*

**mīrus**, -a, -um, adj. [√(s)mī-, SMILE], *wonderful, strange; mihī mīrum vidētur, I am at a loss to understand.*

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unfortunate.*

**misereor**, -ērī, -eritus or -ertus [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], (be wretched in another's behalf, and so) *feel pity, pity, have compassion.*

**miseret**, -ēre, -critum, impers. [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], *it distresses, it moves to pity; mē miseret, I pity, I am sorry for.*

**misericordia**, -ae, f. [miseri-cordi-, (st. of misericors), *tender-HEARTED*], *tender-HEARTEDNESS, compassion, pity.*

**miseri-cors**, -cordis, adj. [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*; cordi- (st. of cor), *HEART*], *tender-HEARTED, compassionate.*

**miseror**, -ārī, -ātus [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], *express pity for, lament, bewail.*

**Mithridātēs**, -is, m., *Mithridates* (king of Pontus and enemy of the Roman people; committed suicide 63 B.C.).

**mitis**, -e, adj., *mild.*

**mittō**, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send.*

**modestē**, adv. [abl. fm. of modestus, *temperate*], *temperately.*

**modestus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. modus, *MEASURE*], (measured, observant of due restraint, and so) *modest.*

**modicus**, -a, -um, adj. [modo-

(st. of modus), *MEASURE*], *moderate.*

**modo**, adv. [abl. of modus, *MEASURE*, w. final vowel shortened], (by measure, *i.e.* not exceeding, and so) *only, merely, but; if only; nōn modo . . . vērum etiam, not only . . . but also.*

**modus**, -ī, m. [√mod-, *MEASURE*], *MEASURE, quantity, amount; manner, way, sort; hūjusce modi, of this sort, the following, as follows; ējusmodi, of such a kind, such; ad hunc modum, as follows; in servilem modum, as in the case of slaves.*

**molestus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. mōlēs, *mass, burden*], *burdensome, troublesome, annoying.*

**moliō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -ītus [moli- (st. of mollis), *soft*], *soften.*

**mollis**, -e, adj., *soft, pliant, yielding; feeble.*

**mōmentum**, -ī, n. [√mov-, *push*], (result of pushing, and so) *movement; weight, importance, moment.*

**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [√mon-, *think, cause to think*], *remind, warn.*

**mōns**, montis, m., *mountain.*

**morbus**, -ī, m. [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morior and mors], *disease.*

**Morinī**, -ōrum, m., *the Morini* (tribe in Belgic Gaul near strait of Dover).

**morior**, morī (morīrī), mortuus [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morbus and mors], *die.*

**moror**, -ārī, -ātus [morā- (st. of mora), *delay*], *delay, remain, linger.*

**mors**, -tis, f. [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morior and morbus], *death.*

**mortālis**, -e, adj. [morti- (st. of mors), *death*], *pertaining to death, mortal*; subst., *human being, mortal, man.*

**mortuus**, -a, -um [p. a. of morior, *die*], *dead.*

**mōs**, mōris, m., *custom, wont, usage, practice*; in pl., *morals, character.*

**moveō**, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [√mov-, *push* (through presumed adj. st.)], *move*; *excite, cause; affect, disturb, trouble; influence.*

**muller**, -eris, F., *woman.*

**multiplex**, -icis, adj. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*; √plec-, FOLD], *manifold*; **plausus multiplex**, *repeated outbursts of applause.*

**multitūdō**, -inis, F. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*], *great number, multitude; the people, the public.*

**multō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [multā- (st. of multa), *penalty, fine*], *punish, fine*; **aliquem pecūniā multāre**, *to fine one in a sum of money.*

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; in pl., *many*; **multum** (used adv.), *much, widely*; **multō** (w. comp.), *much, far*; **multā nocte**, *late at NIGHT.* Trans. adv., *frequently.* Comp., **plūs**, plūris, *more*; pl., **plūrēs**, plūra, *more than one, and so several.* Superl., **plūrimus**, -a, -um, *most, very much, very many, most numerous*; **plūrimum posse**, *to be most or very powerful, to be very influential.*

**Mulvius**, -a, -um, adj., *Mulvian* (bridge across the Tiber).

**mundus**, -ī, M., *universe, world.*

**mūnimentum**, -ī, N. [mūni- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *means of defence, fortification, rampart.*

**mūnīō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [old fm., moeniō, fr. moeni- (st. of moeniā, *walls*)], *build a wall; make secure, fortify.*

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, F. [mūni- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *fortification.*

**mūnus**, -eris, N., *office, function, duty; burden; service; gift.*

**mūrus**, -ī, M., *wall.*

**mūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [for \*mōtō, intens. of moveō, *move*; fr. mōto-, st. of perf. part. mōtus], *change.*

**N.**

**nam**, conj. (stands at the beginning of the sentence), *for*; (in interrog. sentences expressing surprise or emotion) *but or pray.*

**namque**, conj. [nam, *for*; que, *and*; cf. etenim] (stronger than nam), *for indeed, for.*

**nāscor**, -ī, nātus [for \*gnāscor, inceptive fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *be born; arise.*

**nātālis**, -e, adj. [nāto- (st. of nātus), *born*], *pertaining to one's birth; diēs nātālis, birthday.*

**nātiō**, -ōnis, F. [for \*gnātiō, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *being born, birth; race; nation, people, tribe.*

**nātū** (in abl. only), M. [for \*gnātū, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *by birth; grandis nātū, advanced in years.*

**nātūra**, -ae, F. [for \*gnātūra, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *nature, character; nātūrā, by nature, naturally.*

**nātūrālis**, -e, adj. [nātūrā- (st. of nātūra), *nature*], *belonging to nature, natural.*

**nātus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of nāscor, *be born*], *born.*

**nāvālis**, -e, adj. [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*], *belonging or pertaining to ships, naval.*

**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*; √ag-, *drive* (through presumed adj. st.)], *sail.*

**nāvis**, -is, F., *ship; nāvis longa, ship-of-war, man-of-war; see Fig. 6.*

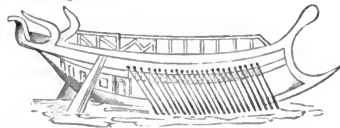


Fig. 6.

Nāvis longa, from a mosaic in a tomb near Puteoli.

**nē**, adv. (regular negative w. hort. and opt. subj.), *not*; (in final clauses) *that not, lest*; (w. verbs of fearing) *that or lest.*

**nē . . . quidem**, *not even* (w. emphatic word or words between nē and quidem).

**-ne**, enclitic interrog. particle; it simply inquires, without implying what answer is expected. cf. nōne and num.

Neāpolis, -is, F., *Naples* (NEW-  
ton).

nec, see neque.

necesse, n. adj. used in nom.  
and acc. sing., *necessary*.

neg-legō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus [nec,  
not; legō, gather, heed], *disregard*,  
*neglect*; *set at defiance*.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny*, *say*  
... *Not*.

negōtium, -ī, N. [nec, Not;  
ōtium, leisure], *business*, *affair*,  
*matter*, *enterprise*, *undertaking*.

nēmō (in place of gen. nēmīnis,  
nūllūs is used; in place of abl.  
nēmīne, nūllō, M. or nūllā, F. is  
used), c. [nē, Not, No; hemo  
(homo), man], *no one*, *nobody*.

neque or nec, conj. [nē (w.  
vowel shortened), not; -que, and],  
*and Not*, *Neither*, *Nor*; *neque* ...  
*neque* or *nec* ... *nec*, *Neither* ...  
*Nor*.

Nervī, -ōrum, M., *the Nervii*  
(tribe in Belgic Gaul between the  
Sambre and the Scheldt).

ne-sciō, -īre, -īvī or -īī [nē, Not;  
sciō, know], *Not know*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. [nē,  
not; uter, either], *Neither*; in  
pl., neutrī, *Neither party*.

nēve or neu, conj. [nē, Not;  
ve, or], *and Not*, *Nor*, *and*  
*that Not* (takes the place of  
neque in clauses expressing  
purpose, exhortation, and prohibi-  
tion).

nex, necis, F. [√nec-, *destroy*;  
conn. w. noceō and perniciēs],  
*death* (by violence).

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.

nihil, N., def. (also nihilum,  
-ī, N., and nil) [nē, Not; hīlum,  
*trifle*, *the least thing*], *nothing*;  
*nihil* (adv. acc.) *Not at all*; *nihil*  
*posse*, *to be without any effective*  
*strength*.

nīmīs, adv., *too*, *excessively*.

nīmīus, -a, -um, adj. [conn.  
w. foregoing], *too much*, *exces-  
sive*.

nisi, conj. [nē, Not; sī, if], *if*

*Not*, *unless*, *except*; *nihil nisi*,  
*Nothing but*; *nisi cum*, *until*.

nītor, -ī, nīsus or nīxus, *depend*,  
*rely*.

nōbilis, -e, adj. [√gnō-, KNOW],  
*capable or worthy of being KNOWN*;  
*famous*, *celebrated*, *renowned*;  
*high-born*, *noble*; subst., *noble-  
man*, *noble*.

nōbilitās, -ātis, F. [nōbili- (st.  
of nōbilis), well KNOWN], *fame*;  
*nobility*, *noble birth*, *rank*; *nobles*,  
*the nobility*.

nōbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nō-  
bili- (st. of nōbilis), famous],  
*make famous*.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [√noc-,  
*destroy*, *injure* (through presumed  
adj. st.); conn. w. nex and perni-  
ciēs], *injure*, *damage*, *inflict in-  
jury*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [conn.  
w. noctū, by NIGHT], *pertaining to*  
*the NIGHT*, *nocturnal*, *posted by*  
*NIGHT*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nē, Not;  
volō, wish], *be unwilling*, *decline*;  
*id nōlle*, *to object to this*.

nōmen, -inis, N. [√gnō-, KNOW],  
(means of knowing, and so)  
NAME; nōmine, *under the NAME*,  
*as, by way of*.

nōminātīm, adv. [nōminā- (st.  
of nōminō), NAME], *by NAME*, *in*  
*detail*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nōmin-  
(st. of nōmen), NAME], NAME,  
*call*.

nōn, adv. [old forms, noenum,  
noenu, fr. nē, Not, and ūnum,  
ONE], *Not*, *No*.

nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, ord.  
num. adj., *NINETIETH*.

nōndum, adv. [nōn, Not; dum,  
*yet*], *Not yet*.

nōnne [nōn, Not; -ne, interrog.  
particle], interrog. particle intro-  
ducing questions to which an  
affirmative answer is expected.

nōn nūllus or nōnnūllus, -a,  
-um, adj. [nōn, Not; nūllus, No],  
*some*; pl. subst., nōnnūllī, *some*.



**nōn nunquam** (nunquam) or **nōnnunquam** (numquam), adv. [nōn, *Not*; nunquam, *Never*], *sometimes*.

**nōnus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [conn. w. novem, *NINE*], *NINTH*.

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to Noricum* (a country lying between the Alps and the Danube) *Norican*.

**nōscō**, -ere, nōvī, nōtus [inceptive fr. vgnō-, *KNOW*], *become acquainted with*; *acknowledge*; in perf., *KNOW*.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [nōs, *we*], *our*.

**novem**, num. adj. indecl., *NINE*.

**novō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [novo- (st. of novus), *NEW*], *make NEW*, *reNEW*.

**novus**, -a, -um, adj., *NEW*, *strange*; superl., *novissimus*, *hindmost*, *rear*; *novissimum agmen*, *rear*; *ab novissimis*, *in the rear*.

**nox**, noctis, f. [vnoc-, *destroy*, *injure*; conn. w. nocēō], *NIGHT*; *multā nocte*, *late at NIGHT*.

**noxā**, -ae, f. [vnoc-, *destroy*, *injure*; conn. w. nocēō], *offence*, *crime*.

**nūbō**, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, (of a bride) *veil one's self* (for the bridegroom), and so *marry*; *nūptum* (sup.) *conlocāre*, *to give in marriage*.

**nūdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūdo- (st. of nūdus), *bare*], *strip*, *lay bare*.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, adj. [for \*nug-; cognate w. English *NAKED*], *bare*, *destitute*.

**nūgātor**, -ōris, m. [nūgā- (st. of nūgor), *trifle*], *trifler*.

**nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. [nē, *Not*; ūllus, *ANY*], *Not ANY*, *No*; *annihilatus*; subst., *NO ONE*.

**num**, interrog. particle introducing questions to which a neg. answer is expected; also (in dependent questions), *whether*.

**Numantia**, -ae, f., *Numantia*

(town in Spain on the upper Douro, destroyed by Scipio Africanus the younger 133 B.C.).

**nūmen**, -inis, n. [vñū-, *nod*], (that which is expressed by a nod, and so) *divine will* or *power*.

**numerus**, -i, m., *number*; *account*, *estimation*, *rank*.

**numquam**, see *nunquam*.

**nunc**, adv., *now*.

**nunquam** or **numquam**, adv. [nē, *Not*; unquam, *ever*], *Never*.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntio- (st. of nūntius), *messenger*], *announce*, *report*.

**nūntius**, -iī, m. [conn. w. novus, *NEW*], *messenger*; *message*, *NEWS*; *order*, *injunction*.

**nusquam**, adv. [nē, *Not*; usquam, *anywhere*], *nowhere*.

## O.

**ō**, interj., *O*, *Oh*.

**ob**, prep. w. acc., *in view of*, *on account of*, *for*.

**ob-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, ductus [ob, *towards*, *forward*; dūcō, *draw*], *draw forward*, *extend*.

**ob-iciō** (pronounced: objiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [ob, *before*, *against*; jaciō, *cast*], *cast before*; *set against*, *match*.

**oblitus**, -a, -um [p. a. of obli-visor, *forget*], *forgetful*.

**obliviscor**, -i, -lītus, *forget*, *turn one's thoughts from*.

**obscūrītās**, -ātis, f. [obscūro- (st. of obscūrus), *obscure*], *obscurity*.

**ob-secrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *towards*, *before*; sacrō, *declare sacred*], (appeal to one in the name of the gods, and so) *beseech*, *implore*.

**ob-servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *before*; servō, *keep*], *observe*, *mark*, *keep*; *respect*, *follow*, *comply with*.

**ob-ses**, -idis, c. [ob, *before*; vset-, *sit*], (one who sits or remains as a pledge, and so) *hostage*.

**ob-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssus [ob, *before*; sedeō, SIT], *besiege*.

**ob-stō**, -āre, -stītī [ob, *against*; stō, STAND], *stand against, oppose*.

**ob-struō**; -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ob, *against*; struō, *build*], *build against, barricade*.

**ob-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ob, *against*; teneō, *hold*], *lay hold of; hold; be in authority over; obtain*.

**ob-tingō**, -ere, -tigī [ob, *towards*; tangō, *touch*], *fall to one's lot*.

**ob-truncō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *implying attack*; truncō, *cut off*], *cut down, kill*.

**obviam**, adv. [ob, *towards, on*; via, WAY], *on the way, to meet*; **obviam ire** (w. dat.), *to go to meet, to resist*.

**occāsio**, -ōnis, F. [ob-√cād-, *fall towards*], (*falling towards one, and so*) *occasion, chance, opportunity*.

**occāsus**, -ūs, M. [ob-√cād-, *fall towards, sink down*], (*sinking, and so*) *setting*.

**oc-cidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, *against*; caedō, *cut*], *kill, slay*.

**occulō**, adv. [abl. fm. of occultus, *secret*], *secretly*.

**occulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of occultō, *cover up*, fr. occulto- (st. of perf. part.)], *conceal, secrete*.

**occultus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of occultō, *cover up*], *concealed, secret*; **in occultō**, *in secret*.

**occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-√cap-, *lay hold of* (through presumed adj. st.)], *take possession of, seize*; **occupy, employ**.

**oc-currō**, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī, rare), -cursum [ob, *towards*; currō, *run*], *run to meet; hasten to oppose; hasten (against the enemy) to the rescue (of one's friends)*.

**Ōceanus**, -ī, M., *ocean*.

**octingenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [octin-, conn. w. octō, EIGHT; -gintī, conn. w. centum, HUNDRED], *EIGHT HUNDRED*.

**octō**, indecl. num. adj., *EIGHT*. **octōgēsimus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., *EIGHTIETH*.

**octōgintā**, indecl. num. adj. [octō, EIGHT; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], *EIGHTY*.

**oculus**, -ī, M. [fr. √oc-, *see* (through presumed subst.)], *EYE*.

**ōdī**, ōsus, def. (pres. system wanting), *hate, cherish hatred*.

**odium**, -ī, N. [√od-, *hate*; conn. w. ōdī], *hated; grudge*.

**of-ferō**, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob, *towards*; ferō, BEAR], *present, offer*.

**officium**, -ī, N. [base op- (in opus), *work, service*; √fac-, DO], *service, office, duty; sense of duty; obedience, allegiance*.

**ōmen**, -īnis, N., *omen*.

**o-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ob, *before, aside*; mittō, *let go*], *let go; disregard*.

**omniō**, adv. [abl. fm. conn. w. omnis], *altogether, in all, only, but; in general*.

**omnis**, -e, adj., *all, every*.

**onus**, -eris, N., *burden, weight; ennuis*.

**opēs**, -um, F. (nom. sing. used only as name of goddess of Plenty), *means, resources, property, wealth, riches*; **opis** (gen. sing.), *aid, help, assistance*.

**opīniō**, -ōnis, F. [conn. w. opīnor, *be of opinion*], *opinion, views, belief, impression; expectation; suspicion*; **celerius opīniōne**, *more quickly than any one had supposed possible*.

**opitulus**, -ārī, -ātus [opi- (st. of opis), *aid*; √tol-, *bear* (through \*opitulus)], *bring aid, relieve*.

**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is proper, it is right, it behooves*.

**oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj. [oppido- (st. of oppidum), *town*], *belonging to the town*; subst., **oppidāni**, -ōrum, M., *inhabitants of the town, townspeople*.

**oppidum**, -ī, N., *town (viewed as stronghold)*.

**opportunitās**, -ātis, f. [opportūno- (st. of opportūnus), convenient], convenience, favorableness; *opportunity*.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., convenient, fit, *opportune*.

**op-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, against; premō, press], crush, overpower.

**op-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, against; pūgnō, fight], assault.

**optimus**, see bonus.

[Ops], opis, f., see opēs.

**opus**, -eris, n., work; *undertaking*; in pl., *manufactures*.

**opus**, n., used as nom. and acc. only [same as foregoing], need, necessity; translated adj., *necessary*.

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [ōrā-, speak], speaking, speech, language; *address*.

**ōrātor**, -ōris, m. [ōrā-, speak, plead], *speaker, orator*.

**orbis**, -is, m., circle, orb; *compact mass*.

**ōrdō**, -inis, m., row, rank; *company*.

**Orgetorix**, -igis, m., *Orgetorix* (prominent Helvetian of Caesar's time).

**orior**, -īrī, ortus, rise, spring up, take one's origin, begin; *descend*.

**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [ōrnā- (st. of ōrnō), embellish], (means of embellishing, and so) *mark of honor, distinction, ornament*.

**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, embellish, adorn, honor, distinguish.

**ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōs- (st. of ōs) (-s- becomes -r-), mouth], *entreat, beg, beseech*.

**ortus**, -ūs, m. [vor-, rise; conn. w. orior], rising; *origin*.

**ōsculor**, -ārī, -ātus [ōsculo- (st. of ōsculum), a kiss], *kiss*.

**os-tendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [\*obs=ob, towards; tendō, stretch], *point out, show; make known, declare, give to understand*.

**ōstium**, -iī, n. [conn. w. ōs, mouth], *entrance, door*.

**ōtium**, -iī, n., *leisure*.

P.

**P.**, abbr. of Pūblius, -iī, m. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

**paene**, adv., almost.

**paenitet**, -ēre, -uit, impers. [conn. w. poena, penalty], \**cause to repent; mē paenitet, I repent, I regret, I am dissatisfied*.

**pāgus**, -ī, m. [vpāg-, make fast], (place enclosed by fixed boundaries, and so) *district*.

**palam**, adv., *openly, publicly*.

**Palātium**, -iī, n., the *Palatine hill* (one of the seven hills on which Rome was built).

**palūs**, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

**pandō**, -ere, pandī, pāssus, *stretch out, expand*.

**pār**, paris, adj., equal; *match for; of equal rank or consideration*.

**parātus**, -a, -um [p. a. of parō, *prepare*], *prepared, ready; eager*.

**parcō**, -ere, pepercī (parsī), SPARE.

**parēns**, -entis, c. [part. of pariō, *bring forth*, used subst.], *parent*.

**pāreō**, -ēre, pārūī [intr. form conn. w. tr. parō, *make ready*], (be ready, and so) *appear*; (appear in response to orders, and so) *obey*.

**pariter**, adv. [pari- (st. of pār), equal], *equally; at the same time*.

**parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tr. fm. conn. w. intr. pāreō, *be ready*], *make ready, prepare; procure, acquire*.

**pars**, partis, f. [vpar-, assign, *make ready*; the same root is contained in parō and pāreō], (assignment, and so) *part, portion, share; side, direction, quarter*.

**parti-ceps**, -cipis, adj. [parti- (st. of pars), *part*; vcap-, take], *taking part, sharing; particeps esse, to come in for a share*.

**partior**, -īrī, -ītus [parti- (st. of pars), *part*], *part, divide, distribute*.

**parum**, adv. [acc. used adv.; parum (for \*sparum) is conn. w.

parcō (for \*sparcō), SPARE], *too little*.

**parvulus**, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. parvo- (st. of parvus), *small*], *very small, tiny*; **ab parvulis**, *from childhood*.

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj. [= \*paurus (cf. nervus = \*neurus); conn. w. paucī, FEW], *small, little, slight*. Comp., **minor**, -us, *less, smaller*; **minus**, used adv.: *less; not*; **minus valēre**, *not to be strong enough, to be too weak*. Superl., **minimus**, -a, -um, *very little, least*.

**passus**, -ūs, M. [√pat-, *spread, stretch*; conn. w. pateō], (stretching forth of the legs in walking, and so) *pace*; (as a measure of length) *five Roman feet* (a little less than five English feet).

**pateō**, -ēre, -uī [√pat-, *spread, stretch* (through presumed adj. st.)], *be open, lie open, extend*.

**pater**, -tris, M. [of uncertain origin], FATHER.

**pater familiās** or **paterfamiliās**, **patris familiās**, M. [pater, FATHER; familia, *household of slaves*], *master of a house, head of a household*.

**patera**, -ae, F. [conn. w. pateō, through √pat-, *spread*], *libation-saucer, sacrificial dish*; see Fig. 7.

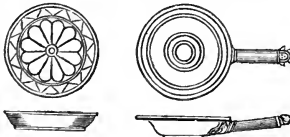


Fig. 7.

Front and side view of two paterae, one with handle, the other without. The illustrations are copies of bronze originals found at Pompeii.

**patienter**, adv. [patient- (st. of patiēns), *patient*], *patiently*.

**patior**, -ī, passus, *suffer; permit*.

**patria**, -ae, F. [fem. of patrius, *belonging to one's FATHERS*; sc. terra], *native country*.

**paucī**, -ae, -a, adj. (sing. very rare) [conn. w. parvus, *small*,

q. v.], FEW, *but FEW*; **pauca**, FEW *words, briefly*; **paucis**, in a FEW *words, briefly*.

**paulisper**, adv., *for a little while, for a short time*.

**paulus**, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. \*pauro- = parvo- (stem of parvus) *little, a little*; **paulō**, *by a little, a little*.

**Paullus**, -ī, M., 1. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae 216 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (son of preceding, defeated Perses, king of Macedon, at Pydna 168 B.C.).

**pāx**, pācis, F. [√pāc-, *bind fast*], (that which binds fast, and so) *peace*; **pāce tuā**, *with your permission*.

**peccō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make a mistake, transgress, sin*.

**pecūnia**, -ae, F. [conn. w. pecū, *cattle*], (as cattle constituted the earliest form of wealth, therefore) *wealth, riches; money, a sum of money*.

**pedes**, -itis, M. [ped- (st. of pēs), FOOT], FOOT-*soldier*.

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, adj. [pedit- (st. of pedes), FOOT-*soldier*], *pertaining to FOOT-soldiers*.

**peditātus**, -ūs, M. [peditā- (st. of peditō) *go on FOOT*], (orig., going on foot, and so, used concretely) FOOT-*soldiers, infantry*.

**pējor**, -us, comp. of malus, q. v. **pellis**, -is, F. [cognate w. English FELL], *skin; tent; sub pellibus, in camp*.

**pellō**, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *beat; drive, expel; rout*.

**pendō**, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh; pay*.

**pēnsus**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of pendō, *weigh*], *something weighed; weight, consideration, importance*; **pēnsī habēre**, *to consider of importance*.

**per**, prep. w. acc., *through; by, by means of, through the instrumentality of; per sē: of himself,*

herself, itself for themselves; through his, her, its or their own exertions.

**per-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per, completely; capiō, take], *perceive*, learn, understand; receive in one's own person, experience.

**per-discō**, -ere, -didici [per, thoroughly; discō, learn], learn thoroughly, commit to memory.

**per-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [per, through, away; dō, put], make way with, destroy, ruin. The forms of pereō supply the pass.

**per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [per, through; dūcō, lead], lead through, lead; carry, extend, conduct.

**peregrīnus**, -a, -um, adj. [peregrō (st. of adv. peregrē, abroad)], strange, foreign; subst., stranger, foreigner.

**per-eō**, -īre, -iī [per, through, away; eō, go, pass], *perish*, be destroyed; *perit*, is dead.

**per-facilis**, -e, adj. [per, very; facilis, easy], very easy; *perfacile est*, it is a very easy matter.

**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [per, through; ferō, BEAR], BEAR to the end, endure, submit to, sustain.

**per-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [per, through; faciō, DO], carry through or out, accomplish; finish, bring to completion.

**per-fruor**, -ī, -frūctus [per, thoroughly; fruor, enjoy], enjoy fully.

**perfuga**, -ae, m. [per-√fug-, flee through (the lines)], (one who flees through the lines, and so) deserter.

**pergō**, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus [per, through, on; regō, guide], 1. tr. proceed with; 2. intr. proceed.

**periclitor**, -ārī, -ātus [intens. verb; conn. w. periculum, trial], make trial of, try, test.

**periculōsus**, -a, -um [periculō (st. of periculum), peril], full of peril, dangerous, perilous.

**periculum**, -ī, n. [perī (st. of \*perior; cf. experior and peritus), try, test], trial; danger, peril, risk.

**perītus**, -a, -um [p. a. of \*perior (cf. experior), try, test], tried, experienced, skillful.

**per-mancō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -māsum [per, through; mancō, stay], stay through, remain, abide, continue; survive.

**per-misceō**, -ēre, -scūī, -mīstus or -mīxtus [per, thoroughly; misceō, MIX], disturb, throw into confusion.

**per-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [per, through; mittō, let go] (orig., let go through), intrude, commit.

**per-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [per, thoroughly; moveō, move], move deeply, influence, alarm.

**perniciēs**, gen. -iī, -iēs, or -iē, f. [per-√nec-, completely destroy], destruction, ruin.

**perniciōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [perniciō (st. of perniciēs), destruction], destructive, ruinous, pernicious.

**per-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [per, through; rumpō, break], break or rush through.

**per-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [per, persistently; sequor, follow], follow up; avenge.

**Persēs**, -ae, m., *Perses* (last king of Macedonia, defeated by Lucius Aemilius Paullus at Pydna 168 B.C.).

**per-solvō**, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus [per, completely; solvō, discharge], discharge fully, pay.

**per-speciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [per, through; speciō, look], examine; perceive, ascertain.

**per-suādeō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus [per, through, to the end; suādeō, urge], persuade, convince; inculcate.

**per-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [per, thoroughly; terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly; paralyze with fear.

**per-tineō**, -ēre, -uī [per, through, to the end; teneō (intr.), continue], *EXTEND*; *TEND*.

**perturbātiō**, -ōnis, F. [perturbā- (st. of perturbō), throw into confusion], *confusion, disquiet, perturbation*.

**per-turbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [per, greatly; turbō, disturb], throw into confusion, rout; disturb, disquiet, discompose, agitate.

**per-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [per, through, to the end; veniō, COME], arrive, COME; (of money) revert.

**pēs**, pedis, M. [√ped-, tread], FOOT.

**petō**, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītus [√pet-, fly at, fall], fall upon; make for, repair to; go to seek, go after, seek, ask for, beseech.

**pictor**, -ōris, M. [√pig-, paint], painter.

**pietās**, -ātis, F. [pio- (st. of pius), dutiful, reverential], dutiful or reverent conduct; (with reference to the gods) piety; (with reference to parents) filial respect.

**pigēt**, -ēre, -uit, -itum, it irks, it disgusts; *mē pigēt, I loathe, I am disgusted*.

**pilum**, -ī, N., heavy javelin.

**pingō**, -ere, pinxī, pictus [√pig-, paint], paint.

**Pisō**, -ōnis, M., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso* (lieutenant of Cassius 107 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius* (grandson of the preceding and father-in-law of Caesar).

**placeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus (p. a.) [conn. w. plācō, reconcile], be pleasing; impers., *placet, it pleases, it seems good, it is one's pleasure*.

**placidus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. placeō, be pleasing], calm, placid.

**plācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. placeō, be pleasing], reconcile; appease, propitiate.

**plānitīēs**, gen. -ae, F. [plāno- (st. of plānus), level], plain.

**plānus**, -a, -um, adj., level, FLAT, plane.

**plausus**, -ūs, M. [base plaud- (in plaudō), clap], (clapping, and so) applause.

**plēbēs**, F., archaic form of plēbs, q. v.

**plēbs**, -is, F. [conn. w. plēnus, FULL, through √plē-, FILL], the multitude, the common PEOPLE, commons, lower orders, POPULACE.

**plēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [√plē-, FILL], FULL.

**plērūmque**, see plērūsq̄ue.

**plērūsq̄ue**, -raque, -rūmque, adj. (usu. pl.) [conn. w. plēnus, FULL], very many, most, the greater part; adv., **plērūmque**, for the most part, commonly.

**plūrēs**, pl. of plūs, q. v.

**plūrimus**, -a, -um, superl. of multus, q. v.

**plūs**, plūris, comp. of multus, q. v.

**poena**, -ae, F., satisfaction; penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, to give satisfaction, and so to suffer punishment.

**Poenī**, -ōrum, M., inhabitants of Carthage, Carthaginians (see Carthāgō). The Carthaginians were descended from the Phoenicians; hence the name Poenī).

**poēta**, -ae, M. [borrowed from the Greek], poet.

**pol-liceor**, -ērī, -itus [por- (old prep.), to, towards; liceor, make an offer], promise (voluntarily).

**Pompējus**, **Pompēi**, M., Pompey (celebrated conqueror of the pirates of the Mediterranean and of Mithridates; defeated by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus 48 B.C.).

**Pompējus**, -a, -um, adj., of Pompey, Pompeian (see preceding).

**pondus**, -eris, N. [conn. w. pendō, weigh], weight.

**pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positus, place, deposit; (of a camp), pitch.

**pōns**, pontis, M., bridge.

**populāris**, -e, adj. [populo- (st. of populus), *people*], *belonging to the people, popular*.

**populor**, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate*.

**populus**, -ī, m. [conn. w. plēbs and plēnus], *people*.

**porta**, -ae, f. [vpor-, FARE, *go through*], *gate*.

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [portā- (st. of porta), *gate*], *carry*.

**portus**, -ūs, m. [vpor-, FARE, *go through*], *entrance; harbor, port*.

**poscō**, -ere, poposci, *ask urgently for, demand*.

**possessiō**, -ōnis, f. [por- (old prep.), *before*; vsed-, *sit*], (*sitting before, and so*) *possession, property*.

**pos-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssus [por- (old prep.), *before*; sedeō, *sit*], *hold, be master of, possess*.

**possum**, posse, potuī [potis, *able*; sum, *be*], *can, be able*; **plūrimum posse**, *to be the most powerful, to have the most power, to be very influential*; **nihil posse**, *to be without any effective strength*; **facere nōn possum quin**, *I cannot help*.

**post**, adv. and prep. w. acc., 1. adv.: *afterwards, later, after*; **annō post**, *the year after*. 2. prep. w. acc.: (of place) *behind, in the rear of, next to*; (of time) *after*.

**postea**, adv. [post, *after*; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), *these things*]; cf. **anteā**, *afterwards*.

\***posterus**, -era, -erum, adj. [posti- (st. of post), *after*], *coming after, following*; subst., **posterī**, -ōrum, m., *posterity*. Comp., **posterior**, -ius, *later*. Superl., **postrēmus**, -a, -um, *last*.

**postquam** or **postquam** [post, *later*; quam, *than*], *after, when*.

**postrēmus**, -a, -um, superl. of \***posterus**, q. v.

**postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. poscō], *press earnestly, demand, claim, request*.

**potēns**, -entis [p. a. of verb

conn. w. possum, *be able*], *powerful*.

**potentātus**, -ūs, m. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful* (through presumed verb stem)], *political power*.

**potentia**, -ae, f. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful*], *political power, influence*.

**potestās**, -ātis, f. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful*], *power; sovereignty, majesty; possibility*.

**potior**, -īrī, -ītus [poti- (st. of potis), *able*], *become master of, get possession of, obtain; reduce to subjection*.

**potius**, adv. [n. sing. comp. of potis, *able*], *rather*.

**praebeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [= prae-hibeō, fr. prae, *before*; habeō, *hold*], *offer, produce, furnish, give ground for*.

**prae-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [prae, *before*; cēdō, *go*], *go before, precede; surpass, excel*.

**praeceps**, -cipitis, adj. [prae, *before*; caput, *head*], *HEAD FOREMOST, HEADLONG; steep, precipitous*.

**prae-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [prae, *before*; capiō, *take*], *take beforehand; instruct, order, direct*.

**prae-clārus**, -a, -um, adj. [prae, *exceedingly*; clārus, *illustrious*], *very illustrious, illustrious, glorious*.

**praeāda**, -ae, f. [conn. w. prehendō, *seize*], *booty*.

**prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae, *before, and so* publicly; dicō, *declare*], *proclaim, declare, maintain, avow*.

**prae-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [prae, *before*; faciō, *make, put*], *appoint over, place in command*.

**prae-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [prae, *forward*; mittō, *send*], *send forward, send in advance*.

**praemium**, -iī, n. [= \*praclmīum, fr. prae-ven-, *take before* (others)], (what one receives more

than or in preference to others, and so) *reward*; *privilege*.

**praescriptum**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of praescribō, *prescribe*], *dictate, order*.

**praesidium**, -iī, N. [prae-*vsed*-, *sit before*], (sitting before for protection, and so) *defence, protection, aid, support*; *guard, garrison*.

**prae-stō**, -āre, -itī, -ātus (once), -itus (once) [prae, *before*; stō, *stand*], (intr. w. dat. pers.) *excel, surpass*; (impers.) *praestat, it is better*; (tr.) *perform*; *exhibit, display*.

**praestō**, adv. [superl. fm. conn. w. prae, *before*], (in the foremost place, and so) *at hand*.

**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui [prae, *before*; sum, *be*], *BE at the head of, have charge or command of, BE invested with, preside over*.

**praeter**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of prae, *before*], *beyond*; *besides*; *except*.

**praetereā**, adv. [praeter, *besides*; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), *these things*; cf. anteā], *besides, moreover, too*.

**praeter-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus [praeter, *beyond, by*; mittō, *let go*], *let pass, omit, leave*.

**praeteritus**, -a, -um [p. a. of praetercō, *go by*], *past*.

**praetor**, -ōris, M. [= \*praetor, fr. prae-*vi*-, *go before*], (one who goes before, and so) *leader*; *praetor* (Roman magistrate who administered justice).

**precēs**, -um, F. (usu. pl.), *entreaties, prayers*.

**prēndō** = **prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *grasp*.

**premō**, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press hard, beset, weigh down, burden, overpower, distress*.

**pretium**, -iī, N., *price*.

\***prex**, \***precis**, F., see precēs.

**prīdīē**, adv. [prī- = prae (loc.),

*before*; loc. or abl. form of diēs, *day*], *the day before*.

**primus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of prior, q. v.

**prin-ceps**, -cipis, adj. [prīmo- (st. of primus), *first*; *vcap*-, *take*], (taking the first place, and so) *foremost, chief*; subst., *foremost man, leader, head*.

**prīncipātus**, -ūs, M. [prīncip- (st. of prīnceps), *foremost* (through presumed verb st.), (being foremost, and so) *foremost place, supremacy, presidency*.

**prīncipium**, -iī, N. [prīncip- (st. of prīnceps), *foremost*], *beginning*.

**prior**, prius, adj. [comp. of st. conn. w. prae and prō], *former*. Superl., **prīmus**, -a, -um, *first, foremost*; (in agreement with subst., often) *first part of*; in **prīmīs**, *especially, particularly*; adv., **prīmum**, *first*.

**prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj. [prī- for priōs- (st. of prior), *former*], *belonging to former times, former, earlier, ancient, pristine*.

**prius quam** or **priusquam**, adv. [prius, *sooner*; quam, *than*], *before, until*.

**prīvātus**, -a, -um [p. a. of prīvō, *deprive*], *private*; subst., *private individual*.

**prō**, prep. w. abl., *in front of, before*; *in behalf of, for*; *in view of, considering*; *in the light of, as*; *in return for*.

**probitās**, -ātis, F. [probo- (st. of probus), *upright, good*], *uprightness, probity*.

**probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probo- (st. of probus), *good*], *esteem good, approve; recommend, make satisfactory or acceptable*.

**prō-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum [prō, *before*; cēdō, *go*], *go forward, advance, proceed*.

**Procillus**, -ī, M., *Gaius Valerius Procillus* (a Gaul much trusted by Caesar).

**prō-cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō,



in behalf of, FOR; cūrō, take care], attend to, look after, conduct, superintend.

**prō-currō**, -ere, -currī and -currī, -cursum [prō, FORWARD; currō, run], run FORWARD.

**prōditō**, -ōnis, F. [prō-ŵda, give up, betray], betrayal, treachery, treason.

**prōditor**, -ōris, M. [prō-ŵda, give up, betray], betrayer, traitor.

**prō-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [prō, FORTH; dō, give, put], give or put FORTH, make known, publish; give up, betray; hand down (as by tradition); **memoriae prōditum est**, the story runs (lit., it has been handed down to memory).

**proclior**, -ārī, -ātus [proelio-(st. of proelium), battle], engage in battle, fight.

**proclium**, -iī, N., battle, fighting.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, F. [prō (w. vowel shortened) -ŵfac, make off], (making off, and so) setting out, departure.

**profectō**, adv. [prō (w. vowel shortened), FOR; factō (abl. of factum), accomplished fact], assuredly.

**pro-ficiscor**, -ī, -fectus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, OFF; \*faciscor (inceptive of faciō), begin to make], (begin to make off, and so) set out, depart, proceed; **proficisci** in w. acc., set out for, depart to join.

**pro-fiteor**, -ērī, -fessus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, OPENLY; fateor, acknowledge], declare one's self, give in one's name, volunteer.

**pro-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH; fugiō, flee], flee FORTH, flee, run away.

**prō-gnātus**, -a, -um, adj. [prō, FORTH, FROM; (g)nātus, born, perf. part. of nāscor], born from, born, descended.

**pro-hibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, OFF; habeō, hold], keep off, exclude, cut

off, restrain, prevent, impede; prohibit; defend.

**prō-iciō** (pronounced: prō-jiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [prō, FORTH, OFF; jaciō, cast], cast off.

**prō-lātō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, FORWARD; \*lātō (intens. fr. st. of lātus, perf. part. of ferō), carry], (carry forward, and so) defer, postpone.

**prō-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō, FORWARD; moveō, move], move FORWARD.

**prope**, adv. and prep. w. acc., near.

**prōpēnsus**, -a, -um [p. a. of prōpendeō, hang FORWARD], inclined, disposed.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. prope, near], near; subst.: **propinquus**, -ī, M., relative, kinsman; **propinqua**, -ae, F., female relative, kinswoman.

**propior**, -ius, adj. [comp. of st. contained in prope, near], nearer. Superl., **proximus**, -a, -um, nearest, next, neighboring; **proximā nocte**, last NIGHT.

**prō-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [prō, FORTH; pōnō, put, set], set FORTH, display; make known, declare.

**proprius**, -a, -um, adj., one's own, peculiar to one's self, private, personal.

**propter**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of prope, near; cf. inter and praeter], close to; owing to, on account of.

**prō-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, in front; pūgnō, fight], rush out to fight, make a sortie.

**prō-pulsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, FORTH, OFF; pulsō, drive], ward off, repel, avert.

**prō-ripīō**, -ere, -uī [prō, FORTH; ripīō, seize, drag], drag FORTH; w. sē, rush forth.

**prō-vidēō**, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus [prō, FORWARD; vidēō, see], provide, have in view.

**prōvincia**, -ac, F., province.

**proximitās**, -ātis, f. [proximo- (st. of proximus), *next*], *nearness*; *relationship*.

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of propior, q. v.

**proximē**, adv. [abl. fm. of proximus, *nearest*], *last*.

**prūdentia**, -ae, f. [prūdent- (st. of prūdēns), *sagacious*], *sagacity*, *practical wisdom*, **prudence**, *skill*.

**Ptolomaeus**, see Ceraunus.

**pūblicē**, adv. [abl. fm. of pūblicus, *belonging to the state*], *in behalf of the state*, *from a public point of view*, *as a measure of state policy*.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [= \*populicus, fr. populo- (st. of populus), *people*], *belonging to the people or state*, **public**, *common*; **rēs pūblica**, *common weal*; *commonwealth*; **in pūblicō**, **in public**.

**puDET**, -ēre, puduit or puditum est, *it shames*; **mē pudet**, *I am ashamed*.

**pudicitia**, -ae, f. [pudīco- (st. of pudīcus), *modest*], *modesty*; *chastity*.

**pudor**, -ōris, m. [base pud- (in pudet), *shame*], *sense of shame*, *modesty*.

**puella**, -ae, f. [= \*puerula (-u disappeared and -r- was assimilated to -l-) dim. fr. puero- (st. of puer) *child*], *female child*, *girl*, *little girl*.

**puer**, -erī, m., *child*; *boy*.

**puerilis**, -e, adj. [puero- (st. of puer), *child*, *boy*], *boyish*, *youthful*.

**pueritia**, -ae, f. [puero- (st. of puer), *child*], *childhood*, *boyhood*.

**pūgna**, -ae, f., *fight*.

**pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugnā- (st. of pūgna), *fight*], *fight*.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful*; *honorable*, *glorious*.

**pulvis**, -eris, m., *dust*.

**pungō**, -ere, pupugī, punctus [vpug-, *thrust*], *prick*, *sting*; *disquiet*.

**pūniō**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus [old form, poeniō, fr. poenā- (st. of

poena), *punishment*], *inflict punishment on*, **punish**.

**puppis**, -is, f., *stern*.

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [= \*pūri-gō, fr. pūro- (st. of pūrus), *clean*]; *vag-*, *drive*, *make* (through presumed adj. st.), *make clean*, *cleanse*, **purge**; *free from suspicion*, *exculpate*.

**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [puto- (st. of putus), *cleansed*], *cleanse*; (of trees) *prune*; (of accounts) *clear up*, *settle*; *reckon*; *think*, *suppose*.

## Q.

**Q.**, abbr. of **Quīntus**, -ī, m., **Quintus** (Roman praenōmen or first name).

**quadrāgintā**, indecl. num. adj. [quadrā-, conn. w. quattuor, **FOUR**; -gin- represents (de)cent, **TEN**], **FORTY**.

**quadringentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [fr. st. of quadrinī, distr. num. adj., **FOUR**; -gentī, conn. w. centum, **HUNDRED**], **FOUR HUNDRED**.

**quaerō**, -ere, -sīvī or -siī, -sītus, *seek*, *search*, *strive to obtain*; *acquire*; *ask*, *ask for*; *seek to learn*, *inquire*, *make inquiry*, *inquire for*.

**quaestiō**, -ōnis, f. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *inquire*], *inquiring*; *investigation*; *examination by torture*.

**quaestus**, -ūs, m. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *acquire*], *acquiring*, *acquisition*; *gain*.

**quālis**, -e, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and quī], 1. interrog., *of what sort*; 2. rel., *of which sort*, *as*.

**quam**, interrog. and rel. adv., **HOW**; (used to strengthen superlatives) **quam māximus**, *as great as possible*, *the greatest possible*; **quam lātissimē**, *as extensively as possible*; (in comparisons) *as than*.

**quam ob rem** or **quamobrem**, interrog. and rel. adv., **WHEREFORE**, *for which* or *what reason*.

**quamquam**, conj. [quam, HOW; quam, HOW], (however, and so) *though, although; and yet.*

**quamvis**, adv. and conj. [quam, HOW, as; vīs (volō), *you wish*], as you WILL; HOWEVER, HOWEVER much, though, although, though ever so.

**quantus**, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and quī], 1. interrog., HOW great, HOW much; **quantī** (gen. of indef. value), for HOW much. 2. rel. (correlating with tantus) as; (w. tantus omitted) as much as; **quantō . . . tantō**, by HOW much . . . by so much, the . . . THE.

**quārē**, interrog. and rel. adv. [abl. of quae rēs], WHY, WHEREfore.

**quartus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], FOURTH.

**quasi**, adv. [quam, as; sī, if], as if.

**quaternī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], FOUR [from] each.

**quattuor**, indecl. num. adj., FOUR.

**quattuordecim**, indecl. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR; decem, TEN], FOURTEEN.

-que, conj., and.

**quem ad modum** or **quemadmodum**, interrog. and rel. adv., in WHAT or WHICH way.

**queror**, -ī, questus, complain.

**quī**, quae, quod, interrog., rel., and indef. pron., 1. interrog. (used adj.) WHICH, WHAT. 2. rel., WHO, WHICH, WHAT, THAT; (w. ant. omitted) HE WHO, THOSE WHO, ANY WHO, etc.; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) THIS, THESE, etc.; (= ut is, etc.) in order that HE, THAT HE, etc.; **quō . . . eō**, by WHAT . . . by that, the . . . the; **eō . . . quō**, by that . . . by which, the . . . the. 3. (after sī and nē), indef., ANY.

**quicumque**, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. [quī,

rel. pron.; -cumque, indef. suff.], WHOEVER, WHATEVER; ANY WHATEVER.

**quīdam**, quaedam, quoddam and (subst.) quiddam, indef. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; -dam, pron. suff.], a, a certain, some one.

**quidem**, adv., indeed; nē . . . quidem (with emphatic word or words between nē and quidem), Not even.

**quiescō**, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus (p. a.), become quiet, go to rest, refrain from action.

**quiētus**, -a, -um [p. a. of quiescō, be quiet], quiet, at rest.

**quīlibet**, quaelibet, quodlibet and (subst.) quidlibet, indef. rel. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; libet, it is pleasing], any you will, any WHATEVER.

**quīn**, conj. [quī, abl. fm. of rel. pron. quī; nē, Not], WHO . . . Not, that, but that, so that Not, from or without (w. part.).

**quīndecim**, indecl. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE; decem, TEN], FIFTEEN.

**quīnī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], FIVE apiece.

**quīnquāgintā**, indecl. num. adj. [quīnquā-, conn. w. quīnque, FIVE; -gīn- represents (de)cem, TEN], FIFTY.

**quīnque**, indecl. num. adj., FIVE.

**quīnquennium**, -iī, n. [quīnquenni- (st. of quīnquennis), of FIVE years], a period of FIVE years.

**quīntus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], FIFTH.

**Quirītēs**, -ium, m. [Curi- (st. of Curēs, town of the Sabines)], *Quirites* (i.e., inhabitants of Cures). After the union of the Sabines with the Romans, the name *Quirītēs* was applied to the combined people when acting in a civil capacity; the name *Rōmānī*, on the other hand, was applied to them when acting in a military capacity; *fellow citizens*.

**quis**, quid, interrog. and indef. pron., 1. interrog., WHO, WHAT; (occasionally used adj.) WHAT; neut. sing. acc. **quid** (used adv.), WHY. 2. (after *sī* and *nē*) indef., any one, any thing; (occasionally used adj.) any; *sī quid*, if anything, if at all.

**quispiam**, quaequam, quodpiam and (subst.) quidpiam or quipiam, indef. pron., any one, any.

**quisquam**, quicquam or quidquam (pl. and fem. sing. wanting), indef. pron. (used when a neg. is expressed or implied), any one, any thing.

**quisque**, quaeque, quodque and (subst.) quicque or quidque, indef. pron., every one, each one, every, each; **nōbilissimus quisque**, all the nobility; **antiquissimum quodque tempus**, priority (of occupation) in each instance.

**quivīs**, quaevis, quodvis and (subst.) quidvis, indef. pron. [*quī*, rel. pron.; *vīs* (volō), you wish], any you please, any whatever; any one you please, any one whatever.

**quō**, adv. [case fm. of pron. st. quo-], whither; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) thither, there.

**quō**, conj. [neut. abl. of rel. pron. quī] (= ut cō, usu. w. comp.), that thereby, in order that, that.

**quoad**, adv. [*quō* (w. vowel shortened), whither; ad, to], (how long, and so) as long as; until.

**quod**, conj. [neut. acc. of rel. pron. quī], because, that.

**quōminus**, conj. [*quō*, neut. abl. of rel. pron. quī; minus, less, not], that thereby the less, so that not, from (w. part.).

**quoniam**, conj. [quom = cum, since; jam, now], seeing that.

**quot**, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj., how many; as.

**quot annīs** or **quotannis**

[quot, HOW many, as many as; annīs, abl. pl. of annus, year], (on as many years as there are, and so) every year, annually.

**quotiēns**, adv. [quot, HOW many], HOW often, HOW many times; as often as.

## R.

**ratio**, -ōnis, F., account, computation; list, register; business matter, transaction; manner, way, method, procedure.

**ratis**, -is, F., float, raft.

**Raurici**, -ōrum, M., the Raurici (tribe in Celtic Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetians).

**recēns**, -entis, adj., recent.

**re-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re(d)-, again, back; capiō, take], take back; receive; **sē recipere**, to betake one's self, return, flee for refuge, recover; **sē inde recipere**, to come off.

**re-citō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, intensive; citō, recite], recite.

**re-cōgnōscō**, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [re(d)-, again; cōgnōscō, become acquainted with], recall to mind, review.

**recordor**, -ārī, -ātus [re(d)-, again; cord- (st. of cor), HEART (through presumed adj. st.)], (take to heart, and so) think over, reflect on, review, recall.

**rēctē**, adv. [abl. fm. of rēctus, RIGHT], RIGHTLY.

**rēctus**, -a, -um [p. a. of regō], RIGHT, fitting.

**re-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, against; causa, objection (through denom. vb. \*causō; cf. causor)], make objection against, refuse; **recūsāre dē**, to make objection to, to object to.

**red-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [red-, back; dō, give], give back, return, restore; accord, award, grant, pay.

**red-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum [red-, back; eō, go], go or come back, return; come for settlement, come in the last resort.

**red-igō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [red-, back; agō, drive, bring], bring back, reduce.

**red-imō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus [red-, back; emō, buy], buy back, redeem; contract for, farm; purchase, procure.

**red-integrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [red-, again; integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew.

**re-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [re(d)-, back; dūcō, lead], lead or bring back.

**re-ferciō**, -īre, -sī, -tus [re(d)-, intens.; farciō, stuff, cram], fill full, crowd.

**re-ferō**, -ferre, rettulī, relātus [re(d)-, back; ferō, BEAR], BEAR, carry or bring back, report; **referre ad senātum**, to lay a matter before the *senate*.

**rē fert** or **rēfert**, -ferre, -tulit, *it matters, it is of importance*.

**re-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī [re(d)-, back; fugiō, flee], fleeback, retreat.

**rēgālis**, -e, adj. [rēg- (st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal.

**regiō**, -ōnis, F. [vreg-, guide, direct], direction; boundary-line; territory, region; province, district.

**rēgius**, -a, -um, adj. [rēg- (st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal, regal.

**rēgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgno- (st. of rēgnum), sovereignty], exercise sovereignty, reign.

**rēgnum**, -ī, N. [vreg-, guide, direct], kingdom; sovereignty, royal power.

**regō**, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [vreg-, guide, direct], direct; rule, preside over.

**re-laxō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, loosens; laxō, loosen], relax, unbind.

**religiō**, -ōnis, F. [re(d)-vleg-, go over again, regard attentively], (regard for the gods, and so) religion; superstition, sacredness, sanctity; in pl., religious matters, religious rites, matters pertaining to the worship of the gods.

**re-liquō**, -ere, -līquī, -līctus [re(d)-, back, behind; liquō, leave], leave behind, leave.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, adj. [re-liqu-, leave behind], remaining, other, rest of; subst., the *rest*.

**re-maneō**, -ēre, -mānsī [re(d)-, back, behind; maneō, stay], stay behind, remain.

**remedium**, -ī, N., *remedy, means of defence*.

**Rēmī**, -ōrum, M., the *Remi* (tribe in Belgic Gaul on the Marne).

**rēmigium**, -ī, N. [rēmig- (st. of rēmex), rower], rowing; oars; rowers.

**re-miniscor**, -ī [re(d)-, again; \*miniscor, call to mind], recall to mind.

**re-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [re(d)-, back; mittō, send, let go], send or let go back; relax, enfeeble.

**re-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [re(d)-, back, away; moveō, move], remove, dismiss.

**re-mūneror**, -ārī, -ātus [re(d)-, back, in return; mūneror, bestow], recompense.

**Rēmūs**, -ī, M., one of the *Remi* (see Rēmī), a *Reman*.

**re-novō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, again; novō, make new], renew.

**re-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, back; nūntiō, bring word], bring back word, report.

**re-pellō**, -ere, reppulī, repulsus [re(d)-, back; pellō, drive], drive back.

**repente**, adv. [case fm. of repēns, sudden], suddenly.

**repentinus**, -a, -um [repent- (st. of repēns), sudden], sudden.

**re-periō**, -īre, repperī, repertus [re(d)-, again; pariō, procure], find, find out (by making inquiry) learn, ascertain, discover; invent, devise.

**re-petō**, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [re(d)-, again; petō, demand], demand back, demand; lay claim to.

**re-prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnus [re(d)-, *back*; *prehendō*, *grasp*, *hold*], *hold back*, *check*; *disapprove*, *reprehend*.

**re-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [re(d)-, *back*; *primō*, *press*], *check*, *restrain*, *repress*.

**repudiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [repudio- (st. of *repudium*)], *rejection*], *reject*.

**re-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re(d)-, *back*, *against*; *pūgnō*, *fight*], *oppose*, *resist*.

**re-quirō**, -ere, -sivī or -sī, -sītus [re(d)-, *again*; *quaerō*, *seek*], *seek after*, *ask for*, *be in want of*.

**rēs**, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F., *thing*, *affair*, *matter*, *subject*, *object*, *fact*, *circumstance*, *condition*, *movement*, *business*, *enterprise*, *it*; **rēs militāris**, *the military art*; **rēs frumentāria**, *corn*, *grain*, *provisions*; **rēs pūblica**: *common weal*, *public welfare*; *civil affairs*, *government*; *commonwealth*, *state*; **summa rēs pūblica**, *the highest interests of the commonwealth*; **tōta rēs pūblica**, *complete control of public affairs*; **rēs familiāris**, *private resources*, *patrimony*, *property*; **in turbidis rēbus**, *in distressed circumstances*; **rēs dē**, *proposition to*.

**re-sistō**, -ere, -stitī [re(d)-, *back*, *against*; *sistō*, *stand*], *resist*.

**re-spondeō**, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re(d)-, *in return*; *spondeō*, *promise*], (orig., present in return), *answer*, *make answer*, *say* or *tell in reply*.

**respōnsus**, -ī, N. [neut. perf. part. of *respondeō*], *answer*.

**re-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [re(d)-, *again*; *statuō*, *set up*], *restore*.

**re-tineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [re(d)-, *back*; *teneō*, *hold*], *hold fast*, *retain*, *detain*, *keep*.

**re-vellō**, -ere, -vellī, -volsus or -vulsus [re(d)-, *back*, *away*; *vellō*, *pluck*, *pull*], *pull away*, *tear away*.

**re-versiō**, -ōnis, F. [re(d)-*vert*], *turn back*], *return*.

**re-vertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus

[re(d)-, *back*; *vertō*, *turn*], *turn back*; *return*.

**re-vertor**, -ī, -versus [re(d)-, *back*; \**vertor*, *turn*], *turn back*; *return*.

**re-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, *back*; *vocō*, *call*], *recall*, *restore*.

**rēx**, *rēgis*, M. [vrēg-, *guide*, *direct*], *king*.

**Rhēnus**, -ī, M., *Rhine* (river separating Gaul from Germany).

**Rhodanus**, -ī, M., *Rhone* (river in Gaul).

**ripa**, -ae, F., *bank of a river*.

**rōbur**, -oris, N., *oak*.

**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*.

**Rōma**, -ae, F., *Rome* (city on the Tiber in Italy).

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [Rōmā- (st. of *Rōma*)], *Rome*], *belonging to Rome* (see *Rōma*), *Roman*; subst., **Rōmāna**, -ae, F., *Roman woman*.

**Rōmānī**, -ōrum, M., *Romans* (inhabitants of Rome; see *Rōma*).

**rota**, -ae, F., *wheel*.

**ruber**, -bra, -brum, adj. [vrub-, *REDden*], *RED*.

**Rūfus**, -ī, M., *Lucius Vibullius Rufus* (adherent of Pompey).

**ruīna**, -ae, F. [conn. w. *ruō*, *fall violently*], *downfall*, *crash*.

**rūmor**, -ōris, M., (orig., noise, murmur, and so) *hearsay*, *rumor*, *report*.

**rūpēs**, -is, F. [vrūp-, *break*], (broken, precipitous) *rock*.

**rūrsus**, adv. [= *revorsus*, perf. part. of *revertō*, *turn back*], *again*.

**rūs**, *rūris*, N., *the country* (opp. the city).

## S.

**Sabis**, -is, M., *the Sabis* (mod. Sambre, river in Belgic Gaul).

**Saburra**, -ae, M., *Saburra* (lieutenant of Juba, king of Numidia).

**sacrificium**, -iī, N. [*sacrifico* (st. of *sacrificus*)], *sacrificial*], *sacrifice*.

**sacrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sacro* (st. of *sacer*)], *sacred*], *declare sacred*.

**saepe**, adv. [neut. acc. of \*sae-  
pis, *crowded, frequent*; conn. w.  
saepe, *hedge*], *often*.

**saepe numerō** or **saepe nume-  
rō** [saepe, *often*; numerō, *in num-  
ber*], *oftentimes, again and again*.  
**saepe**, -is, F. [conn. w. saepe,  
q. v.], *hedge, fence*.

**saeviō**, -īre, -iī, -ītum [saevo-(st.  
of saevus), *fierce*], *be fierce, rage*.

**sagittārius**, -iī, M. [adj. used  
subst. fr. sagittā-(st. of sagitta),  
*arrow*], (one having to do with  
arrows, and so) *archer, bowman*.

**salūs**, -ūtis, F. [conn. w. salvus,  
*safe*], *safety*.

**salūtāris**, -e, adj. [salūt-(st. of  
salūs), *safety*], *pertaining to safety*,  
*salutary*.

**salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salūt-  
(st. of salūs), *safety*], *wish safety*  
*to, greet, pay one's respects to, sa-  
lute*.

**salvus**, -a, -um, adj. [vsal-(akin  
to vser- in servus), *protect, sup-  
port*], *sound, unimpaired, safe, un-  
harmed, preserved*.

**sancīō**, -īre, sanxī, sānctus  
(sancītus, once) [conn. w. sacer,  
*sacred*], *render sacred*; (of laws)  
*establish, ordain, enact*.

**sānctus**, -a, -um [p. a. of sanc-  
iō, q. v.], *sacred, inviolable*.

**sānē**, adv. [abl. fm. of sānus,  
*sound*], *indeed, by all means, for*  
*aught I care, if you will*.

**sanguis**, -inis, M., *blood* (flow-  
ing in the body).

**Santoni**, -ōrum, M., *the Santoni*  
(tribe in Celtic Gaul on the  
northern bank of the Garonne).

**sapiēns**, -entis, p. a. (of sapiō,  
*taste*; discern) *discerning, wise*.

**Sardinia**, -ae, F., **Sardinia** (island  
in the Mediterranean, west of  
Italy).

**Sardiniēnsis**, -e, adj. [Sardiniā-  
(st. of Sardinia), **Sardinia**], *of*  
**Sardinia**, **Sardinian** (see Sardinia).

**sarmenta**, -ōrum, N. (usu. pl.)  
[vsarp-, *lop, prune*], (what is  
lopped, and so) *light branches*.

**sarmentum**, see sarmenta.

**satis**, adv., *enough, sufficiently*;  
*very*.

**satis faciō** or **satisfaciō**, -ere,  
-fēcī, -factum [satis, *enough*; faciō,  
DO], *give satisfaction, make repar-  
ation*.

**saxum**, -ī, N., *stone* (large and  
rough).

**Scaevola**, -ae, M., **Quintus Mu-  
cius Scaevola** (augur and jurist of  
Cicero's time; he was a son-in-  
law of Laelius).

**scelerātus**, -a, -um [perf. part.  
of scelerō, *pollute*], *polluted*; *ac-  
cursed*.

**scelus**, -eris, N., *crime*.

**sciēntia**, -ae, F. [scient-(st. of  
sciēns), *knowing*], *knowledge*,  
*skill*.

**sciō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know*.

**Sciō**, -ōnis, M., 1. **Publius**  
**Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major**  
(conqueror of Hannibal at Zama  
202 B.C.). 2. **Publius Cornelius**  
**Scipio Africanus Minor** (destroyer  
of Carthage 146 B.C.).

**scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptus  
[vscrib-, *dig, GRAVE*], (cut with a  
pointed instrument, grave, and  
so) *write*.

**scūtum**, -ī, N. [vscl-, *cover*],

*an oblong shield*

(the scūtum of the

Roman legionaries

was made of wood

covered with leath-

er; it was semi-

cylindrical in shape,

and was 4½ ft. long

by 2½ ft. broad);

see Fig. 8.

**sē-cernō**, -ere,

-crēvī, -crētus [scl-],

*apart*; cernō, *sepa-*

*rate*], *set apart, sepa-*

*rate*.

**secundus**, -a, -um,

adj. [= \*sequendus,

gerundive of se-

quor, *follow*], (following, and so)

**second**; *favorable*.



**Fig. 8.**  
Shield (scūtum)  
of the Roman in-  
fantry soldier,  
from the column  
of Trajan. The  
decoration rep-  
resents a thun-  
derbolt.

**secundus**, -a, -um,  
adj. [= \*sequendus,  
gerundive of se-  
quor, *follow*], (following, and so)  
**second**; *favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*.  
 sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sēssum, SIT.  
 sēdēs, -is, F. [vsēd-, SIT; cf. se-  
 deō], SEAT: *habitation, abode*.

Segūsiāvī, -ōrum, M., *the Segusi-  
 avi* (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the  
 Rhone).

sē-jungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctus  
 [sē(d)-, *apart*; jungō, *join*], *dis-  
 join, separate, sever*.

Seleucus, -ī, M., *Seleucus* (one  
 of the ablest generals of Alexan-  
 der the Great; murdered by Ptol-  
 emy Ceraunus 280 B.C.).

sēmen, -inis, N. [vsē-, *sow*],  
 (that which is sown, and so)  
 SEED; *origin, source*.

sēmentis, -is, F. [sēmen, SEED],  
*sowing*.

sēminārium, -iī, N. [adj. used  
 subst., fr. sēmin- (st. of sēmen),  
 SEED], (having to do with seed,  
 and so) *nursery*.

semper, adv. [conn. w. Lat.  
 similis and English SAME], *al-  
 ways*.

Semprōnia, -ae, F., *Sempronia*  
 (wife of Decimus Junius Brutus;  
 Sempronia was implicated in  
 Catiline's conspiracy 63 B.C.).

senātor, -ōris, M. [conn. w.  
 senex and senātus], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, M. [conn. w.  
 senex, *elder*], *council of elders,  
 senate*.

senātūs cōnsultum or senā-  
 tūscōnsultum, -ī, N., *decree of the  
 senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, F. [senec- (st.  
 of senex), *old*], *old age*.

senex, senis, adj., *old, aged*;  
 subst., *old man or woman*.

senilis, -e, adj. [sen- (st. of  
 senex), *old person*], *belonging to  
 an old person, senile*.

Senonēs or Sēnōnēs, -um, M.,  
*the Senones* (tribe in Celtic Gaul  
 along the upper Seine).

sēnsus, -ūs, M. [base sent- (in  
 sentiō), *become aware through the  
 senses*], *sense-perception; sense*.

sententia, -ae, F. [conn. w. sen-

tiō, *think*], *opinion, view; vote*;  
 ad sententiam redire, *to come  
 back to the main question*; in eam  
 sententiam, *to this effect, of this  
 purport*.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *per-  
 ceive, be aware; think*.

septem, indecl. num. adj.,  
 SEVEN.

septentriō, -ōnis, M.; also pl.,  
 septentriōnēs, -um, M. [septem,  
 SEVEN; triōnēs, *ploughing oxen*],  
*the SEVEN prominent stars in the  
 constellation Ursa Major or the  
 Great Bear; the north*.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num.  
 adj. [septem, SEVEN], *SEVENTH*.

Sēquani, -ōrum, M., *the Sequani*  
 (tribe in Celtic Gaul enclosed by  
 the Saône, the Rhone, and Mt.  
 Jura); sing., Sēquanus, -ī, M., *a  
 Sequanian*.

sequor, -ī, secūtus [vssequ-, *fol-  
 low*], *follow, pursue*.

sermō, -ōnis, M. [vsēr-, *connect*],  
 (connected discourse, and so)  
*conversation, intercourse*.

servilis, -e, adj. [servo- (st. of  
 servus), *slave*], *pertaining to a  
 slave, servile*.

serviō, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itum  
 [servo- (st. of servus), *slave*], *be  
 a slave, serve, submit to*.

servitūs, -ūtis, F. [servo- (st. of  
 servus), *slave*], *slavery, servitude*;  
*serfdom, vassalage*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [servo-  
 (st. of servus), *protected*; see  
 servus], *protect, preserve; keep,  
 lay by*.

servus, -ī, M. [vsēr- (akin to  
 vsal- in salvus), *protect*], (a cap-  
 tive in war, not killed, but saved  
 alive, and so) *slave*.

Sēstius, -iī, M., *Publius Sestius*  
 (tribune of the people 57 B.C.,  
 and friend of Cicero).

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., *severe*.

sex, indecl. num. adj., SIX.

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj.  
 [sexā-, conn. w. sex, SIX; -gintā-  
 represents (de)cem, TEN], SIXTY.



**Sextius**, -iī, M., *Titus Sextius* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

**sex**tus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [SEX, SIX], SIXTH; **sex**tus decimus, SIXTEENTH.

**sī**, conj., *if*; **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī quī**, *if any* (see quis and quī).

**sic**, adv., *in such a way, so, in this way, thus*; *as follows*; *to such a degree*; **ut . . . sic**, *as . . . so, although . . . yet*.

**sicut** and **sicuti**, adv. [sic, so; ut or utī, as], *just as, as*.

**sīdus**, -eris, N., *group of stars, constellation*; *star*.

**significō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [signific- (st. of \*signifex), *sign-making*], *show by signs, show, make evident*.

**signum**, -ī, N., *sign, signal*; in

pl., *military standards*; **signa ferre**, *to advance against the enemy*; **conversa signa inferre**, *to face about and advance against the enemy*; **infestis signis cōsistere**, *to come to a halt and assume the defensive*; see Fig. 9.

**silva**, -ae, F., *wood, forest*.

**silvestris**, -e, adj. [conn. w. silva, *wood*], *overgrown with wood, wooded*.

**similis**, -e, adj. [cognate w. SAME], *like*.

**simul**, adv. [neut. fm. of similis, *like*], *at the same time*; **simul atque**, *as soon as*.

**simulācerum**, -ī, N. [simulā- (st. of simulō), *imitate*], *imuge*.

**simulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fr. st. of similis, *like*, seen in adv. simul], *imitate*; *pretend*.

**sīn**, conj. [sī, if; nē, not], *if however, but if*.

**sine**, prep. w. abl. [sī, if, in that case; nē, not], *without*.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., *one by one, single, individual, separate, several*; translated adv., *singly, individually*; **in annōs singulōs**, *each or every year*.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*.

**sī quidem** or **siquidem**, conj. [sī, if; quidem, indeed], *since indeed*.

**sitis**, -is, F., *thirst*.

**sitiō**, -īre, -ivī or -iī [siti- (st. of sitis), *thirst*], *thirst*.

**situs**, -ūs, M. [vsī-, put], (*putting or placing, and so*) *position, situation*.

**socer**, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.

**socius**, -iī, M. [adj. used subst., fr. vsoc-, follow; conn. w. sequor], *associate, confederate, ally*.

**Sōcraticus**, -a, -um, adj. [borrowed from the Greek], *belonging to Socrates* (celebrated Athenian philosopher; lived 468-399 B.C.); subst., *disciple of Socrates*.

**sodālis**, -is, C., *mate, comrade, intimate*.

**sōl**, sōlis, M., SUN.

**solēō**, -ēre, -itus, *be accustomed, be wont*.

**sōlitūdō**, -inis, F. [sōlo- (st. of sōlus), *alone*], *solitude*; *deserted place or tract, desert, wilderness*.

**sollicitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sollicito- (st. of sollicitus), *agitate*], *stir up, agitate, urge, stimulate, incite*; *approach with corrupt overtures, corruptly solicit*.

**Solōn** (Solō), -ōnis, M., *Solon* (famous Athenian law-giver; his public career belongs to the first half of the sixth century B.C.).

**solum**, -ī, N., *ground, soil*.

**sōlum**, adv. [neut. of sōlus, *alone*], *only*; **nōn sōlum**, *not only*.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, adj. *alone, only, sole*.

**somniaum**, -ī, M. [for \*sopnus, fr. vsop-, sleep], *sleep*.

**somniaum**, -iī, N. [adj. used subst., fr. somno- (st. of somnu-),



Fig. 9.

Military standards, from a medal. The middle figure represents the eagle, the standard of the legion; the two side figures represent the standards of cohorts.

*sleep*], (resulting from sleep, and so) *dream*.

**spatium**, -iī, N. [√spa-, SPAN, *stretch out*], *space*; *distance*; *time enough, time*; *interval, division, period*.

**speciēs**, gen. -ē, F. [√spec-, SPY], *seeing*; *appearance*; *show*.

**spectāculum**, -ī, N. [spectā- (st. of spectō), *look at*], *spectacle*, *sight*.

**spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of speciō, formed as if from a perf. part. \*spectus], *look at*; *face, extend*; *regard, heed*.

**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conu. w. spēs, *hope*], *hope, look for*.

**spēs**, gen. -ēī (-ēī), F., *hope*; *prospect*; *hopefulness*; **in spem venire**, *to cherish or entertain hope*.

**spīritus**, -ūs, M. [coun. w. spīrō, *breath*], *breath*.

**spolium**, -iī, N., usu. in pl. **spolia**, -ōrum, N., *spoils*.

**sponte**, abl. F. (only in gen. [spontis] and abl. sing.), *impulse*; *sponte* is regularly accompanied by a poss. pron.; as, **tuā sponte**, *of your own free will*.

**statim**, adv. [acc. fm. of st. statī, fr. √sta-, STAND], *on the spot, forthwith*.

**statiō**, -ōnis, F. [√sta-, STAND], *standing*; **station**, *post*; **in statione**, *on guard*.

**Stator**, -ōris, M. [√sta- (causative), *make stand*], *stayer, supporter* (epithet of Jupiter).

**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statu- (st. of status), *standing, position*], *put in position, set up, station*; *decide, determine, resolve*.

**statūra**, -ae, F. [√sta-, STAND], (standing, and so) *stature*.

**stipendium**, -iī, N. [= \*stipipendium, fr. stipī- (st. of \*stips), *contribution*; base pend- (in pendō), *pay*], (payment of a contribution, and so) *tribute, tribute money*.

**stirps**, -is, F., *stock, root*; *origin, source*.

**stō**, -āre, steti [√sta-, STAND], *stand*; *abide*; **dēcrētō stāre**, *acquiesce in a decision*.

**strepitus**, -ūs, M. [base strep- (in strepō), *make a noise*], *noise, din*.

**studeō**, -ēre, -uī, *be eager for, strive earnestly for, apply one's self to, devote special attention to, cultivate*; *exercise partiality*.

**studiōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [studio- (st. of studium), *zeal*], *full of zeal, zealous, earnest*; *eager* [for], *assiduous* [in], *fond* [of].

**studium**, -iī, N. [base stud- (in studeō), *be eager*], *eagerness, earnest desire, zeal, enthusiasm*; *devotion, attachment*; *pursuit*. In pl., *zealous efforts*; **studies**, *pursuits*.

**suāsor**, -ōris [√suād-, *make sweet, urge, advise*], (one who advises, and so) *adviser*; **suāsor esse**, *to advise*.

**sub**, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under*; **sub occāsum**, *towards the setting*.

**sub-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [sub, *from under*; dūcō, *draw*], *withdraw*.

**sub-eō**, -īre, -ivī or -iī, *subitus* [sub, *under*; eō, *go*], *go under, go close to, approach*; *come stealthily*; (w. acc.) *undergo, submit to*.

**sub-igō**, -ere, -cgī, -actus [sub, *under*; agō, *drive, force*], *constrain, impel, prompt*.

**subitō**, adv. [u. abl. of subitus, *sudden*], *suddenly*.

**subitus**, -a, -um [p. a. of subeō, *come stealthily*], *sudden*.

**sublātus**, -a, -um, perf. part., *raised* (see tollō).

**submōtus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of submoveō, *remove, drive back*], *driven back*; subst., **submōtī**, *those driven back*.

**sub-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus [sub, *close upon*; sequor, *follow*], *follow close upon, follow, succeed*.

**subsidiium**, -iī, N. [sub-√sed-, *SIT in support of*], (sitting in re-

serve for support, and so) *support, aid, relief.*

**sub-sistō**, -ere, -stitī [sub, under; sistō, STAND still], come to a halt, halt; maintain one's ground, withstand.

**sub-trahō**, -ere, -xī, -ctus [sub, from under; trahō, draw], withdraw, keep out of reach.

**sub-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [sub, under, to the support of; veniō, COME], COME to the support of.

**suc-cēdō**, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum [sub, under, close upon; cēdō, go], follow close upon, succeed.

**suc-cendo**, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus [sub, from below; \*cendō (√cand-), set fire], set fire to (from below).

**Suēbī**, -ōrum, M., the *Suebi* or *Swabians* (collective name of several German tribes; their king at the time of Caesar's first campaign in Gaul was Ariovistus).

**Suēbus**, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to the *Suebi*, *Swabian*.

**Suessiōnēs**, -um, M., the *Suessiones* (tribe in Belgic Gaul).

**suffrāgium**, -iī, N. [sub-√frāg-, BREAK somewhat or partially], (fragment used for voting, and so) voting tablet; vote, *suffrage*.

**sui**, gen. (nom. wanting), reflex pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; *inter sē*, see *inter*.

**Sūlla**, -ae, M., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla* (famous Roman dictator 82-79 B.C.).

**sum**, esse, fuī [sum, √s-, be; esse, ves-, be; fuī, √fu-, grow, become], BE (cognate w. √fu-), exist, prevail, consist, live, remain.

**summa**, -ae, F. [fem. of summus (sc. fēs), highest], the main thing, sum; supreme control of direction; in *summā*, IN general.

**summōtus**, see *subinōtus*.

**summus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of *superus*, q. v.

**sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub, from under, UP; emō, take], take UP, take; assume, arrogate; *sibi sūmere*, to take UPON one's self,

to assume; **supplicium** sūmere dē, to exact punishment from, to inflict punishment on.

**sūmptuōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptu- (st. of sūmptus), expense], expensive, costly.

**sūmptus**, -ūs, M. [sūm- for sub-√em-, take UP (for some purpose, and so) spend], expense; in pl., extravagance.

**superbia**, -ae, F. [superbo- (st. of superbus), proud], pride, arrogance.

**superior**, -ius, adj., comp. of *superus*, q. v.

**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [supero- (st. of superus), ABOVE] (be above, and so) be left OVER, remain, survive; surpass, exceed; beat, defeat, overcome, conquer, vanquish; *vītā superāre*, outlive.

**superstitiō**, -ōnis, F. [super-sta-, STAND OVER], (standing over as in wonder, awe, etc., and so) exaggerated fear of the gods, *superstition*.

**super-sum**, -esse, -fuī [super, OVER; sum, be], BE left, remain.

**superus**, -a, -um, adj. [com. w. sub, from under, UP], ABOVE. Comp., **superior**, -ius, higher, UPPER; (of time) preceding, former; **superiōre nocte**, NIGHT before last. Superl., **summus**, -a, -um, highest; greatest, chief; of the highest importance; **supreme**; extreme; **summus mōns**, the summit of the mountain; **summus cruciātus**, the severest punishment.

**sup-plex**, -icis, adj. [sub, under; √plec-, FOLD, bend], (kneeling, and so) *suppliant*; translated adv., in *supplication*.

**supplicatiō**, -ōnis, F. [supplicā- (st. of supplicō), kneel to, pray to], (kneeling to, praying to, and so) public *supplication*; thanksgiving.

**supplicium**, -iī, N. [supplic- (st. of supplex), *suppliant*], (humiliation, and so) punishment; in pl., sacrifice.

**sup-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub, from below, UP to; portō, convey], convey to a place, bring up.

**suprā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of superus, ABOVE], 1. adv., ABOVE; (of time) before, previously. 2. prep., before.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, F. [conn. w. suspicio, look askance at], suspicion; ground of suspicion; in suspiciōnem venire, to be attended with suspicion, to be open to suspicion.

**sus-tineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [\*subs, collateral fm. of sub, from below, UP; teneō, hold], support, sustain; perform, discharge; rein in, check; withstand.

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their; subst., suī, his men.

**Syracūsae**, -ārum, F., **Syracuse** (city on the eastern coast of Sicily).

### T.

**T.**, abbr. of **Titus**, -ī, M., **Titus**, (Roman praenōmen or first name).

**tābēscō**, -ere, tābūī [inceptive fr. tābē- (st. of tābēō), melt], begin to melt; pine away.

**tabula**, -ae, F., board, plank; writing tablet; **tabula picta**, painting.

**tabulātum**, -ī, N. [neut. of tabulātus, boarded], flooring, story.

**taceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, be silent; pass over in silence.

**taedet**, -ēre, -duit or (rarely) -sum est, it wearies; **mē taedet**, I am weary.

**talentum**, -ī, N., **talent** (sum of money equivalent in value to about \$1080).

**tālis**, -e, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quālis], of THAT kind, of such a kind, such.

**tam**, adv., so; **nōn tam**, Not so, Not so much.

**tamen**, adv., nevertheless, yet, still, however, notwithstanding.

**tametsī**, conj. [tamen, nevertheless; etsī, although], although.

**tandem**, adv., at length; (in exclam.) pray.

**tantulus**, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. tanto- (st. of tantus), so great], so small, so slight.

**tantummodo**, adv. [tantum, so much, so far, n. acc. of tantus; modo, only], only, merely.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quantus], so great, so much, so strong a, so important, such (= so great); so foul, so heinous, of such enormity; **quantus . . . tantus**, HOW much . . . so much, and so as much . . . as; **quantō . . . tantō**, by HOW much . . . by so much, the . . . THE; **est tantī**, it is worth while.

**tardō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardo- (st. of tardus), slow], make slow, retard, delay, hinder.

**tardus**, -a, -um, adj., slow, tardy.

**Tasgetius**, -ī, M., **Tasgetius** (chief of the Carnutes in the time of Caesar).

**taurus**, -ī, M. [for \*staurus; cognate w. English STEER], bull.

**Taurus**, -ī, M., **Taurus** (mountain range in Asia Minor).

**tectum**, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of tegō, cover], roof; dwelling.

**tegō**, -ere, tēxī, tectus [√teg-, cover; cognate w. English THATCH and DECK], cover.

**tēlum**, -ī, N., javelin; weapon.

**temerārius**, -a, -um, adj. [fr. st. contained in adv. temerē, rashly], headstrong, rash, indiscreet.

**temperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tempus, (lit.) portion], apportion duly; (conduct one's self with due proportion, and so) refrain, abstain; (w. dat.) restrain.

**tempestās**, -ātis, F. [conn. w. tempus, time], time; weather; storm.

**templum**, -ī, N. [prob. for \*temulum, dim. fr. √tem-, cut, through lost subst.], (orig. a space marked off by the augur's wand and consecrated, and so) a consecrated place; temple.

**tempus**, -oris, n. [√tem-, cut], (lit., a section or portion, and so) a period of time, season, time.

**tendō**, -ere, tetendī, tēnsus or tentus [√ten-, stretch], stretch, stretch out, extend.

**tenebrae**, -ārum, f., darkness.

**teneō**, -ēre, -uī [√ten-, stretch], hold fast, hold, keep; occupy; detain; (with quōminus) restrain, prevent; (culpā) tenēri, to be controlled by, to be under the dominion of, to be subject to, to be chargeable with; enchain, hold spell-bound, paralyze; (of wind) **adversum tenēre**, to blow in the face of.

**tentō** or **temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. fr. tento- (st. of perf. part. of tendō, stretch)], attempt, try to effect, test.

**tenus**, prep. w. abl. (follows its word) [√ten-, stretch], as far as.

**tergum**, -ī, n., back.

**ternī**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [tri- (st. of trēs) THREE], THREE and THREE, in groups of THREE, THREE from each, THREE apiece, THREE each.

**terra**, -ae, f. [for \*tersa, fr. √tors-, be dry; conn. w. Lat. torēō, parch, and cognate w. English THIRST], dry land, land, earth, ground; **terrā**, by land, on land; land, country; in pl., the earth (as made up of various lands).

**terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [for \*terseō, √ters-, tremble], frighten, terrify, alarm.

**terribilis**, -e, adj. [conn. w. terreō, frighten], frightful, terrible.

**terror**, -ōris, m. [for \*tersor, fr. √ters-, tremble], fright, alarm, terror.

**tertius**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [conn. w. trēs, THREE], THIRD.

**testāmentum**, -ī, n. [testā- (st. of testor), bear witness], (what is acknowledged before witnesses, and so) will.

**testis**, -is, c., witness.

**theātrum**, -ī, n. [borrowed from the Greek], theatre.

**Thēbae**, -ārum, f., Thebes (most important city of Boeotia).

**Thrasībūlus**, -ī, m., Thrasymbulus (distinguished Athenian general; freed Athens from the yoke of the thirty tyrants 403 B.C.).

**Thūys**, Thūyīnis, m., Thujys (prince in Paphlagonia).

**Tigurīnus pāgus**, -ī, m., Tigurine district (one of the four divisions of the Helvetian country; its inhabitants were called Tigurīnī).

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, fear.

**timor**, -ōris, m. [√tim-, choke, be breathless; conn. w. timeō], fear, alarm; cowardice.

**Titūrius**, -iī, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war).

**Titus**, -ī, m., Titus (Roman praenomen or first name).

**tolerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tollō (√tol-), raise], sustain.

**tollō**, -ere, (sustulī), (sublātus) [√tol-, lift, raise; perf. and perf. part. borrowed from sustollō], raise; remove, take away, break off; put an end to.

**Tolōsa**, -ae, f., Tolosa (mod. Toulouse, city in the Roman province of Gaul).

**tormentum**, -ī, n. [√tor(qu)-, twist, hurl], (means of hurling, and so) engine for hurling missiles; instrument of torture; torture.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire, complete, throughout.

**trā-dō**, -ere, -didī, -dītus [trā(us), over; dō, give], surrender, deliver; intrust, impart.

**trā-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [trā(us), across; dūcō, lead], lead, convey or conduct across.

**tragoedia**, -ae, f. [borrowed from the Greek], tragedy.

**trahō**, -ere, traxī, tractus, draw, drag.

**trā-iciō** (pronounced: trājiciō)

-ere, -jēcī, -jectus [trā(us), *across*; jaciō, *throw*], *throw across, convey over*.

**tranquillus**, -a, -um, adj., *tranquil, undisturbed*.

**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across*.

**trāns-eō**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus [trāns, *across*; eō, *go*], *go over or across, cross, pass over, pass; remove, migrate*.

**trāns-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [trāns, *over, across*; ferō, *BEAR*], *bring over, transfer, transplant*.

**trāns-figō**, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus [trāns, *through*; figō, *fix, thrust*], *pierce*.

**trāns-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trāns, *across*; portō, *convey*], *transport*.

**trānsversus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of trānsvertō, *turn across*], *transverse, cross*.

**trecentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [tri- (st. of trēs), *THREE*; st. of centum, *HUNDRED*], *THREE HUNDRED*.

**trepidō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trepidō- (st. of trepidus), *restless, alarmed*], *be in a state of trepidation or alarm*.

**trēs**, tria, num. adj., *THREE*.

**Trēveri**, -ōrum, m., *the Treveri* (tribe in Belgic Gaul in the lower valley of the Moselle).

**tribūnus**, -ī, m. [tribu- (st. of tribus), *tribe*], (orig., head of a tribe) *tribune*; **tribūnus militum**, *military tribune* (there were six tribunes attached to each legion, and they commanded in turn, each two months at a time; they seldom led troops in battle, but were employed for the most part in routine administrative duties).

**tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribu- (st. of tribus), *tribe*], (orig., assign to a tribe, and so) *assign, ascribe, award, allot, bestow, give, contribute, confer, render*.

**tribūtum**, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of tribuō, *contribute*, used subst.], *tribute, tribute money*.

• **triduum**, -ī, n. [tri-, conn. w.

trēs, *THREE*; -duum, conn. w. diēs, *day*], *space of THREE days*.

**trīgintā**, indecl. num. adj. [tri-, conn. w. trēs, *THREE*; -gin- represents (de)cem, *TEN*], *THIRTY*.

**trīni**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj, used with subst. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning [conn. w. trēs, *THREE*], *THREE*.

**tri-plex**, -icis, adj. [tri- (st. of trēs), *THREE*; √plec-, *FOLD*], *THREEFOLD, triple*.

**tristiculus**, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. trīsti- (st. of trīstis), *sorrowful*], *somewhat sorrowful*.

**trīstis**, -e, *sad, gloomy*.

**trīstītia**, -ae, f. [trīsti- (st. of trīstis), *sad*], *sadness*.

**trīumphus**, -ī, m., *triumph*.

**tū**, tuī, pers. pron., *THOU, you*.

**tuba**, -ae, f., *a straight trumpet*; see Fig. 10.



Fig. 10.

Tuba, from the arch of Titus.

**Tuberō**, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Tuberō* (one of Pompey's lieutenants).

**Tulingī**, -ōrum, m., *the Tulingi* (German tribe on the Rhine, north of the Helvetii).

**Tullius**, -iī, m., *Marcus Tullius Cicero* (the famous Roman orator).

**Tullus**, -ī, m., *Lucius Vocatius Tullus* (consul 66 B.C.).

**tum**, adv., *at THAT time, THEN*; **tum cum**, *at THE time WHEN, at THE moment WHEN*.

**tumulus**, -ī, m. [dim. fr. √tu-, *swell* (through \*tumus)], (orig., a little swelling, and so) *rising ground, earth-mound; pile, heap*.

**tumultus**, -ūs, m. [tumulo- (st. of tumulus), *swelling*], *tumult* (especially used of an outbreak in Italy or Gaul).

**turba**, -ae, f. [conn. w. turma, *throng*], *uproar; crowd, multitude*,

*mob*; **turba et conluviō**, *vile rabble*.

**turbidus**, -a, -um, adj. [turbā- (st. of turba), *uproar*], *disturbed*; *troubled, dangerous*.

**turma**, -ae, F. [conn. w. turba, *uproar*], *throng*; *squadron*.

**turpis**, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful, unbecoming, indecorous*.

**turris**, -is, F., *tower, turret*.

**tūtus**, -a, -um [p. a. of tueor, *protect*], (protected, and so) *safe, secure*.

**tuus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. [conn. w. tū, THOU], THY, *your*; **tuā rēfert**, *it concerns you, it is of importance to you*.

**tyrannus**, -ī, M. [borrowed from the Greek], *tyrant*.

## U.

**ubī**, adv. [= \*cubī = \*quobī, loc. fm. of pron. st. quo-], 1. (of place) *WHERE*; *WHEREVER*. 2. (of time) *WHEN*; **ubī primum**, *as soon as*.

**Ubī**, -ōrum, M., *the Ubii* (a German people on the right bank of the Rhine).

**ubivīs**, adv. [ubī, *WHERE*; vīs (volō), *you WILL*], *WHERE you WILL, in any place WHATEVER*.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (used where a negative is expressed or implied) [dim. fr. ūno- (st. of ūnus), ONE], (least one, and so) *ANY* at all, *ANY ONE*.

**ūlterior**, -ius, adj. [comp. of \*ūlter, *on the farther side*], *farther*. Superl., **ūltimus**, -a, -um, *farthest, remotest*.

**ūltimus**, -a, -um, superl. of ūlterior, q. v.

**ūltrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of \*ūlter, *on the farther side*], *beyond*.

**ūltrō**, adv. [case fm. of \*ūlter, *on the farther side*, used adv.], *to the farther side, beyond*; *without urging, of one's own motion, voluntarily, spontaneously*.

**Umbrēnus**, -ī, M., *Umbrenus*

(freedman implicated in Cati-line's conspiracy 63 B.C.).

**umerus**, -ī, M., *shoulder*.

**unquam**, see unquam.

**ūnā**, adv. [abl. fem. of ūnus, ONE], *in company, together, in common, at the same time*.

**ūndēvicēsīmus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ūndēvīgintī, ONE from TWENTY OR NINETEEN], *nineteenth*.

**undique**, adv., *on all sides, from all parts or quarters*.

**ūni-versus**, -a, -um, adj. [ūno- (st. of ūnus), ONE; versus, perf. part. of vertō, *turn*], (all combined in one, and so) *all together, all in a body*.

**unquam** or **unquam**, adv. (generally used where a neg. is expressed or implied; cf. quisquam), *ever, at any time*.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, num. adj., ONE; *a single, a*; *the same*; *alone, only, sole*. In pl., (usu.) *alone*; (with subst. pl. in form, but sing. in sense) ONE.

**urbānus**, -a, -um, adj. [urbi- (st. of urbs), *city*], *belonging to the city, in the city*.

**urbis**, -is, F., *city, town*.

**ūrus**, -ī, M., *the ure-ox*.

**ūsūra**, -ae, F. [base ūt- (in ūtor) *use*], *use, enjoyment*.

**ūsus**, -ūs, M. [base ūt- (in ūtor), *use*], *use*; *advantage*; *experience, skill, acquaintance*; *service*; *occasion, need, necessity*; **ex ūsū**, *expedient, advantageous*; **ex ūsū**, w. gen., *for the advantage*.

**ut** or **utī**, adv. and conj., *how*; *as, in proportion as*; **ut . . . sic**, *as . . . so, although . . . yet*; (w. perf. indic.) *as soon as, when*; (in final clauses) *in order that, that*; (after verbs of fearing) *that not*; (in clauses of result) *so that, that*.

**uter**, *utra, utrum*, interrog. and indef. rel. pron. [- \*cuter = \*quoter, comp. fm. of pron. st. quo-; cf. English *who* and *whether*],

1. interrog. **WHICH** (of two). 2. indef. rel., **WHICHEVER** (of two).

**uterque**, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. [uter; cf. quisque from quis], *each of two, both*.

**Utica**, -ae, F., **Utica** (city in northern Africa, north of Carthage).

**ūtilis**, -e, adj. [base ūt- (in ūtor), *use*], *useful*.

**ūtilitās**, -ātis, F. [ūtili- (st. of ūtilis), *useful*], *usefulness, serviceableness, utility*.

**utinam**, adv. [utī (w. vowel shortened), HOW; nam, *pray*], *O that! would that!*

**ūtor**, -ī, ūsus, *use, make use of, employ; enjoy*.

**utrum**, adv. [n. acc. of uter, *WHICH of two*], **WHETHER**.

**uxor**, -ōris, F., *wife*.

### V.

**vacātiō**, -ōnis, F. [vacā- (st. of vacō), *be free*], (being free, and so) *exemption*.

**vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be empty; be free from; (of lands) lie unoccupied*.

**vacuus**, -a, -um, adj. [base vac- (in vacō), *be empty*], *vacant, empty*.

**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, (fut. part.) valitūrus, *be strong (physically), be well; have power, be able; (in leave-taking) farewell; minus valēre, not to be strong enough, to be too weak*.

**Valerius**, see Procillus.

**vāllum**, -ī, N. [neut. of vāllus, *stake*, used in collective sense], (collection of stakes, and so) *wall, rampart* (of earth surmounted by a palisading of sharpened stakes).

**vānitās**, -ātis, F. [vāno- (st. of vānus), *empty*], *emptiness; vanity*.

**Vārus**, -ī, M., **Publius Attius Varus** (praetor in Africa and adherent of Pompey).

**vastō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastō-

(st. of vastus), *unoccupied, waste*], *lay waste*.

**vectigal**, -ālis, N. [neut. of vectigālis (w. final -e lost)], (payment for carriage, and so) *tax; revenue*.

**vectigālis**, -e, adj. [conn. w. vehō, *carry*], *pertaining to payment for carriage, pertaining to taxes or tribute; subject to tribute, tributary*.

**vehementer**, adv. [vehement- (st. of vehemēns), *violent, vehement*], *violently, impetuously; strongly, powerfully, greatly, exceedingly, severely*.

**vel**, conj. [prob. imperat. of volō, *wish, choose*], (take your choice, and so) *or, or if you please; vel . . . vel, either . . . or*.

**vēlōciter**, adv. [vēlōci- (st. of vēlōx), *swift*], *swiftly, quickly*.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, adj., *swift*.

**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, F. [vēnā- (st. of vēnor), *hunt*], *hunting*.

**vēn-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus (vēn-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, is used as the pass.) [vēnum (acc. of place to which), *sale*; dō, *put*], (expose for sale, and so) *sell*.

**Venetī**, -ōrum, M., **the Veneti** (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the coast).

**venīō**, -īre, venī, ventum [vven-, COME; **in spem venire**, *to cherish or entertain hope*].

**ventus**, -ī, M., **WIND**.

**verbum**, -ī, N. [vver-, *speak*], **WORD**; in pl., **WORDS, expressions**.

**Vercingetorix**, -igis, M., **Vercingetorix** (prominent leader of the Gauls in the time of Caesar).

**vērē**, adv. [abl. fm. of vērus, *true*], *truly, rightly*.

**vereor**, -ērī, -ītus [vver-, *be wary* (through presumed adj.)], *fear*.

**vergō**, -ere, *incline, slope, verge*.

**vergobretus**, -ī, M., **vergobretus, vergobret** (title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui).

**vēritās**, -ātis, F. [vēro- (st. of vērus), *true*], **TRUTH**.

**vērō**, adv. [n. abl. of vērus, *true*], *in truth, indeed, verily, pray; but*.



**versor**, -ārī, -ātus [intens., fr. verso- (st. of perf. part. of *vertō*, turn)], *busy one's self, occupy one's self, engage*; **versārī in**, *to be encompassed by, to expose one's self to*.

**versus**, -ūs, M. [√vert-, turn], (lit., a turning [of the plow], and so) *furrow*; *verse*.

**vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn*.

**vērūm**, adv. [n. acc. of *vērus*, true], (but in truth, and so) *but*; **vērūm etiam**, *but also*.

**vērus**, -a, -um, adj., *true*; subst., **vērūm**, -ī, N., *the truth*.

**veseor**, -ī, *take food, eat, subsist*.

**Vesontīō**, -ōnis, M., *Vesontio* (mod. Besançon, chief town of the Sequani in Celtic Gaul).

**vesper**, -erī and -eris, M., *evening*.

**vester**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vōs, you], *your* (pl.).

**vestigium**, -iī, N. [conn. w. *vestigō*, track, trace], *footstep, track*; *place, spot*; **in vestigiō**, *on the spot, forthwith*.

**vestiō**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus [vesti- (st. of *vestis*), clothing], *clothe*.

**vestitus**, -ūs, M. [vestī- (st. of *vestiō*), clothe], *clothing*.

**vetus**, -eris, adj., *old*; *of long standing*; **veteran**; *former*.

**vēxillum**, -ī, N., *red flag hoisted on the general's tent as a signal for battle*; see Fig. 11.

**via**, -ae, F. [√veh-, move, carry; conn. w. *vehō*, carry], *way, highway, road, street*; *journey, march*; *distance*; *method, way*.

**viātor**, -ōris, M. [viā- (st. of *viō*), travel], *traveller*.

**Vibullius**, see *Rūfus*.

**vicēni**, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [conn. w. *vīgintī*, TWENTY], *TWENTY each, TWENTY*.

**vicēsimus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [vīgintī, TWENTY], *TWENTI-*

*eth*; **vicēsimus sextus**, *TWENTY-SIXTH*.

**victima**, -ae, F. [√vig-, be strong, w. superl. suff. (the finest animals being selected for sacrifice)], *victim for sacrifice, sacrifice*.

**victor**, -ōris, M. [√vic-, conquer], *victor*; used adj., *victorious*.

**victōria**, -ae, F. [victōr- (st. of *victor*), *victor*], *victory*.

**victus**, -a, -um [perf. part. of *vincō*, *vanquish*], *vanquished*; subst. **victī**, -ōrum, M., *the vanquished*.

**victus**, -ūs, M. [√vīgu-, live], (living, and so) *sustenance, food, maintenance*; **cōnsuētūdō victūs**, *manner of living, mode of life*.

**vīcus**, -ī, M. [√vic-, settle; cf. the ending -wick in English geographical names; as, *Warwick, Berwick*], *village*.

**videō**, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus [√vid-, see (through presumed adj. st.)], *see*. In pass., *be seen*; *seem*; *seem good*.

**vigēō**, -ēre [√vig-, be strong (through presumed adj. st.)]; conn. w. *vigil, awake*], *be vigorous, thrice, be in force*.

**vigilia**, -ae, F. [vigili- (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], *wakefulness*; **WATCH** (the Romans divided the night, i.e. the interval from sunset to sunrise, into four equal parts called watches; hence the watch, like the hour, varied in length according to the season); in pl., *watchmen*.

**vigilō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vigili- (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], **WATCH**.

**vīgintī**, indecl. num. adj. [vī- (= dvī-), conn. w. *duo*, two; -gin- represents (de)ccm, TEN], *TWENTY*.

**vīgintī quattuor**, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FOUR*.

**vīgintī quinque**, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FIVE*.

**vīmen**, -inis, N. [√vī-, plait], (that which is plaited, and so) *withe, osier*.

**vincō**, -ere, vīcī, vīctus [√vic-, conquer], *vanquish, conquer*.



Fig. 11.  
Vexillum.

**vīnum**, -ī, N., *wine*.  
**violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. *vīs*, strength, violence], *injure, offer violence to*.

**vir**, virī, M., *man; husband*.

**virgō**, -inis, F., *virgin, maiden*.

**virgūla**, -ōrum, N. [virgulā- (st. of virgula), *twig*], *shrubbery, brushwood*.

**virilis**, -e, adj. [viro- (st. of vir), *man*], *pertaining to a man, manly*.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, F. [viro- (st. of vir), *man*], *manliness, and so valor, virtue; merit, ability, pre-eminence; military talent*.

**vīs**, vīs; pl. **vīrēs**, vīrium, F. *strength, power, might, vigor, force; violence; vim facere, to use force, to resort to force; vim et manūs inferre, to lay violent hands upon*.

**vita**, -ae, F. [vī(gu)-, *live*], *life*.

**vitiōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [vitio- (st. of vitium), *fault*], *full of faults, faulty, defective; corrupt, vicious*.

**vitium**, -iī, N. [vīl-, *plait*, (through presumed \*vitus)], (a twist, and so) *fault; vice*.

**vitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seek to escape, avoid*.

**vivō**, -ere, vīxī, (fut. part.) vīctūrus [vī(g)u-, *live*; cogn. w. Eng. QUICK], *live, be alive; vitam vivere, to pass one's life*.

**vivus**, -a, -um, adj. [vī(g)u-, *live*], *alive, living*.

**vix**, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, barely*.

**vocābulum**, -ī, N. [vocū- (st. of vocō), *call*], (that by which a thing is called, and so) *name, designation; word*.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vōc-, *speak, call* (through presumed adj. st.)], *call, summon, convene, invite; call, name*.

**Voleānus**, -ī, M., *Vulcan* (the fire god); *fire*.

**volō**, velle, volūi [vōl-, WILL],

*wish, desire; be WILLING; sibi velle, to mean; vellem possem, WOULD that I could!*

**voluntās**, -ātis, F. [volunt-, earlier form of volent- (st. of volēns, pres. part. of volō, WILL)], *WILLINGNESS, WILL, wish*.

**voluptās**, -ātis, F. [volupi- (st. seen in adv. volup, agreeably); cf. facultas and similitas from sts. faculi- and simili-], *pleasure; sensual gratification*.

**Volusēnus**, -ī, M., *Gajus Volusenus Quadratus* (military tribune in Caesar's army).

**voveō**, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow*.

**vōx**, vōcis, F. [vōc-, *speak, call*], *voice; speech, utterance, outcry; expressions*.

**vulgō**, adv. [abl. of vulgus, the multitude], *commonly, generally, universally*.

**vulgus**, -ī, N. (sometimes M.), *the multitude, the common people, the public*.

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vulnes- (st. of vulnus), *wound*; -s of the stem becomes -r-], *wound, inflict wounds*.

**vulnus**, -eris, N., *wound*.

**vultus**, -ūs, M. [vōl-, WILL], (manifestation of will through the countenance, and so) *countenance, visage, aspect*.

## X.

**X**, as an abbreviation, **decem, TEN**.

**Xeno-phōn**, -ōntis, M., *Xenophon* (Athenian historian and general, also disciple of Socrates; lived about 445-356 B.C.).

**Xerxēs**, -is, M., *Xerxes* (son of Darius Hystaspes and king of Persia; made an unsuccessful invasion of Greece; his land forces were defeated at Thermopylae and his fleet at Salamis 480 B.C.).

## II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — The numeral placed at the right of a verb designates the conjugation to which the verb belongs. The dash (—) is used to represent the leading word; thus (under 'able') 'be —' is to be read 'be able.'

**a**, usu. not translated; *ūnus*, -a, -um, adj.; *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.

**abandon**, *dēsistō*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).

**abide**, *stō*<sup>1</sup>.

**able**, **be** —: *possum*; (= be strong enough) *valeō*<sup>2</sup>.

**about**, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; w. numerals: *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *circiter*, adv.

**absent**, **be** —, *absūm*.

**absurd**, *īnscītus*, -a, -um, adj.

**abundance**, *cōpīa*, -ae, F.; *facultās*, -ātis, F.; **in** —, *abundē*, adv.

**abuse**, *abūtor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).

**acceptable**, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.; *acceptus*, -a, -um, p. a.; **a thing** —, *grātum*, n. adj. used subst.

**access**, *aditus*, -ūs, M.; **gain** —, *adeō*<sup>4</sup>.

**accomplish**, *cōficiō*<sup>3</sup>; *efficiō*<sup>3</sup>.

**accordingly**, *igitur*, conj. (usu. placed after the first word).

**according**, — **to**, sign of abl.; *ad*, prep. w. acc.

**account**, **on** — **of**: *propter*, prep. w. acc.; *ob*, prep. w. acc.; **call to** —, *accūsō*<sup>1</sup>.

**acquire**, *adipīscor*, -ī, *adeptus*.

**across**, *trāns*, prep. w. acc.

**act**, 1. subst., *factum*, -ī, N. 2. vb., *faciō*<sup>3</sup>.

**action**, *manus*, -ūs, F.

**Adamastus**, *Adamastus*, -ī, M.

**address**, *ōrātīō*, -ōnis, F.

**adequate**, **less** —, *minor*, -us, adj.

**adjacent**, *fīnitīmus*, -a, -um, adj.

**administer**, *administrō*<sup>1</sup>.

**admonish**, *moneō*<sup>2</sup>.

**admonition**, **to give this** — **above all others**, *id ūnum monēre* (w. acc. pers.).

**adopt**, *capīō*<sup>3</sup>; (= make use of) *ūtor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).

**advance**, *prōcēdō*<sup>3</sup>; (against the enemy) *signa ferō*; **send in** —, *praemittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**advantage**, *commodum*, -ī, N.

**advantageous**, *ūtilis*, -e, adj.

**adversary**, *adversārius*, -ī, M.

**adverse**, *adversus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**Aeduan**, *Aeduius*, -ī, M.

**Aeduans** or **Aedui**, *Aedui*, -ōrum, M.

**affair**, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

**affect**, *moveō*<sup>2</sup>.

**afford**, *dō*.

**after**, *post*, prep. w. acc.; *post*, adv.

**again**, *rūrsus*, adv.; (= the same) *īdem*, *eudem*, *īdem*, demonstr. pron.; — **and** —: *etiam atque etiam*; *saepenumērō*.

**against**, *contrā*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc.; (as translation of *ob*- or *in*-) sign of dat.

**age**, old —, *senectūs*, -ūtis, F.

**Agesilaus**, *Agēsīlāus*, -ī, M.

**ago**, long —, *jamprūdem*, adv.

**agreeable**, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.

**aid**, *auxīlium*, -ī, N.

**alarm**, 1. subst., *tīmor*, -ōris, M. 2. vb., *commoveō*<sup>2</sup>; *permoveō*<sup>2</sup>; **in** —, *commōtus*, -a, -um, perf. part.

**Alcibades**, *Alcibiādēs*, -īs, M.

**all**, (without exception) *omnis*, -e, adj.; (when the object is viewed as a whole) *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.; **at** —, *omnīnō*, adv.

**allegiance**, *offīcium*, -ī, N.

**Allobroges**, *Allobroyēs*, -um, M.

**allow**, *patior*.<sup>3</sup>  
**ally**, *socius*, -ī, M.  
**almost**, *paene*, adv.  
**also**, *etiam*, conj.; (= and) *et*, conj.; (= likewise) *item*, adv.; (= the same) *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.; **but** —: *sed etiam*; *et*.

**although**, *quamquam*, conj. (w. indic.); *cum*, conj. (w. subj.); *tametsi* (w. indic. and subj. like *sī*); sign of abl. abs.

**altogether**, (= enough) *satis*, adv.

**always**, *semper*, adv.

**amass**, *comparō*.<sup>1</sup>

**ambassador**, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

**amity**, *amicitia*, -ae, F.

**among**, *apud*, prep. w. acc.; *inter*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. v. abl.; — **themselves**, *inter sē*.

**ancestors**, *mājōrēs*, -um, M.

**anchor**, *ancora*, -ae, F.

**ancient**, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.

**and**, *et*, conj. (connects expressions that are viewed independently of each other); -*que*, conj. (connects closely); (= and also, and to, with emphasis on the second member) *atque* (before vowels or consonants), *ac* (before consonants only), conj.; — **not**, *neque*, *nec*, conj.

**anger**, *in* —, *irātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**angry**, *irātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**animal**, *animal*, -ālīs, N.

**announce**, *nūntiō*.<sup>1</sup>

**annoying**, *molestus*, -a, -um, adj.

**another**, *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, adj. and subst.; — (of two), *alter*, -era, -erum, adj. and subst.; **one** —, *alius* . . . *alius*; **at one** —, *inter sē*; **from one** —, *inter sē*; **at one time** . . . **at another**, *aliās* . . . *aliās*.

**answer**, 1. vb., *respondeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat. pers.). 2. subst., *respōsum*, -ī, N.; **make** —, *respondeō*.<sup>2</sup>

**anxiety**, *cūra*, -ae, F.

**any**, (in neg. and conditional sentences and interrog. sentences implying a neg.) *ūllus*, -a, -um, indef. adj.; (after *sī* or *nē*) *quī*, *qua*

or *quae*, *quod*, indef. adj.; (= some) *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquod*, indef. adj.; — **whatever**, *quīvis*, *quaevis*, *quodvis*, indef. adj.

**any body**, **any one**, (in neg. and conditional sentences and in interrog. sentences implying a negative) *quisquam*, indef. pron., also *ūllus* (used subst.); (after *sī* or *nē*) *quis*, indef. pron.

**any thing**, *quicquam* or *quidquam*; (after *sī* or *nē*) *quid*.

**apart**, **keep** —, *distineō*.<sup>2</sup>

**apiece**, sign of distr. num.; *in singulōs*.

**apply**, *adhibeō*.<sup>2</sup>

**appoint**, *creō*.<sup>1</sup>

**apprehension**, *metus*, -ūs, M.

**approach**, 1. subst., *adventus*, -ūs, M. 2. vb., *appropinquō*<sup>1</sup> (w. dat. or ad w. acc.).

**approve**, *probō*.<sup>1</sup>

**approver**, *approbātor*, -ōris, M.

**April**, of —, *Aprīlis*, -e, adj.

**Aquitania**, *Aquītānia*, -ae, F.

**Aquitanian**, *Aquītānus*, -a, -um, adj.

**Aquitanians**, *Aquītānī*, -ōrum, M.

**Arar**, *Arar*, -aris, M.

**archer**, *sagittārius*, -ī, M.

**Archias**, *Archīās*, -ae, M.

**ardently**, — **desire**, *exoptō*.<sup>1</sup>

**Ariovistus**, *Ariovistus*, -ī, M.

**arise**, *oriōr*<sup>4</sup> (w. some fms. of the 3d conjugation); (= arise together) *coōriōr*.<sup>4</sup>

**arm**, *armō*.<sup>1</sup>

**armor**, *armātūra*, -ae, F.

**arms**, *arma*, -ōrum, N.; **in** —, *armātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**army**, *exercitus*, -ūs, M. (generic term); *agmen*, -inis, N. (on the march); *aciēs*, gen. -ē and -ēī, F. (in order of battle).

**arouse**, *incitō*.<sup>1</sup>

**arrival**, *adventus*, -ūs, M.

**arrive**, *pervenīō*<sup>4</sup>; **to** — **at**, *pervenire ad*.

**arrogance**, *adrogantia*, -ae, F.

**art**, *ars*, *artis*, F.; (= work) *opus*, -eris, N.

**Arverni**, *Arvernī, -ōrum*, M.  
**as**, *ut* or *utī*, adv.; *quemadmodum*, adv.; (= that which) *id quod*; (= inasmuch as) *quoniam*, conj.; (= since) *cum* (w. subj.), conj.; **just** —, *sicut*, adv.; — **follows**, *sic*, adv.; — **soon** —, *ubi primum, simul atque*; — **not** (in clauses of result) *quī nōn* or *ut nōn*; — **usual**, *ex cōnsuetūdine*; so . . . **as**, *tam . . . quam*; **to regard** —, *habēre prō* (w. abl.); **to serve** —, *esse* w. dat.; — **to** (= concerning) *dē*.

**ascend**, *adscendō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**ascent**, *adscēnsus, -ūs*, M.  
**ascertain**, *cōgnōscō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**ashamed**, **I am** —, *mē pudet* (w. gen.).  
**aside**, **lay** or **put** —, *dēpōnō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**ask**, *rogō*<sup>1</sup> (w. two accs.); *quaerō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ex* or *ē, ab* or *ā, or dē*); **ask**, — **for**, *petō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab* or *ā*).

**assault**, 1. subst., *impetus, -ūs*, M. 2. vb., *oppugnō*<sup>1</sup>; **take by** —, *expugnō*.<sup>1</sup>

**assemble**, 1. tr., *convocō*.<sup>1</sup> 2. intr., *conveniō*.<sup>4</sup>

**assembly**, *conciliūm, -iī*, N.  
**assent**, **to** — **to**, *approbātor esse* (w. gen.).

**assert**, *dicō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**assign**, *attribuō*.<sup>3</sup>

**assistance**, *auxilium, -iī*, N.  
**associate**, *socius, -iī*, M.

**assume**, *sibi sūmō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**asunder**, **keep** —, *distineō*.<sup>2</sup>

**at**, (= in) *in*, prep. w. abl.; [arrive] **at**, *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= at the house of) *apud*, prep. w. acc.

**Athenian**, *Athēniēnsis, -e*, adj.; also used subst.

**Athens**, *Athēnae, -ārum*, F.  
**attach**, *adjungō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. and dat.).

**attachment**, *studium, -iī*, N.  
**attack**, 1. subst., *impetus, -ūs*, M.; *congressus, -ūs*, M. 2. vb., (= thrust at, rush at, aim at) *petō*<sup>3</sup>; (= provoke, challenge to

combat, irritate) *laccēsō*<sup>3</sup>; (— approach with hostile intention) *adeō*.<sup>4</sup>

**attempt**, *tentō*<sup>1</sup> or *temptō*<sup>1</sup>; *cōnor*.<sup>1</sup>

**attention**, **call one's** — **to** (= remind forcibly), *commonefaciō*.<sup>3</sup>

**audacity**, *audācia, -ae*, F.  
**augment**, *augeō*.<sup>2</sup>

**authority**, *auctōritās, -ātis*, F.; (= right) *jūs, jūris*, N.; **sovereign** —, *rēgnum*; **supreme** —, *imperium, -iī*, N.; **to be in** —

**over**, *obtīnere* (w. acc.).  
**Autronius**, *Autrōnius, -iī*, M.

**auxiliaries**, *auxilia, -ōrum*, N.; *ālārī, -ōrum*, M.

**avail**, *valeō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**avert**, *dēpellō*.<sup>3</sup>

**avoid**, *vītō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**await**, *exspectō*.<sup>1</sup>

**award**, *tribuō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**aware**, **be** — **of**, *sentīō*<sup>4</sup>; *sciō*.<sup>4</sup>

**away**, — **from**, *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only).

**Axona**, *Axona, -ae*, M.

## B.

**bad**, (morally) *improbus, -a, -um*, adj.

**back**, *re(d)-*.  
**badge**, *īnsigne, -is*, N.

**baggage**, *impedimenta, -ōrum*, N.  
**band**, *manus, -ūs*, F.

**banishment**, *exsilium, -iī*, N.  
**bank**, (of a river) *rīpa, -ae*, F.

**barbarian**, *barbarus, -i*, M.  
**barely**, *vix*, adv.

**bagcade**, *obstruō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.).  
**base**, *turpis, -e*, adj.

**battle**, *proelium, -iī*, N.; **carry on** —, *pugnō*.<sup>1</sup>

**be**, *sum*; — **in**, *īsum* (w. dat.); — **away**, *absum*.

**beak**, *rōstrum, -i*, N.  
**beat**, *pellō*.<sup>3</sup>

**beautiful**, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*, adj.

**beauty**, *forma, -ae*, F.  
**because**, *quod* (w. indic.); *cum* (w. subj.).

become, *fīō*; — firmly established, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -āvī.

becoming, it is —, *decet*,<sup>2</sup> impers.

beech, *fāgus*, -ī, F.

before, *ante*, prep. w. acc.; *antequam*, *priusquam*, conj.; (= preceding) *superior*, -ius, adj. comp.; (= already) *jam*, adv.; (= near) *apud*, prep. w. acc.; (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; — one's time, *immāturus*, -a, -um, adj.; on the day —, *prīdiē*, adv.; to lay the matter —, *referre ad* (w. acc.).

beg, *petō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *ab* or *ā* and abl. pers.).

began, *coepī*, def.

begin, (= make a beginning) *initium faciō*<sup>3</sup>; (= enter) *ineō*<sup>4</sup> (w. acc.); — at (= rise from) *orior*<sup>4</sup> (w. *ab* and abl.); to — battle, *proelium committere*.

beginning, *initium*, -ī, N.

behalf, in—of, *prō*, prep. w. abl.

behavior, (= thing) *rēs*, F.

behind, leave —, *relinquō*.<sup>3</sup>

Belgians, *Belgae*, -ārum, M.

believe, *crēdō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat. pers.); (= judge) *jūdicō*.<sup>1</sup>

Bellovaci, *Bellovacī*, -ōrum, M.  
belonging, — to the town, *oppidānus*, -a, -um, adj.

bench, *subsellium*, -ī, N.

benefit, *beneficium*, -ī, N.

beseech, *petō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab* or *ā*).

best, *optimus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *bonus*).

bestow, *dō*.

betake, to — one's self, *sē cōnferre*.

betoken, *dēsīgnō*.<sup>1</sup>

betray, (= surrender treacherously) *prōdō*<sup>3</sup>; (= point out) *indīcō*.<sup>1</sup>

better, it is —, *praestat*, impers.

between, *inter*, prep. w. acc.; (= in) *in*, prep. w. abl.

bewail, *miseror*.<sup>1</sup>

beyond, *extrā*, prep. w. acc.; *suprā*, prep. w. acc.

bidding, at the —, *jūssū* (in abl. only).

bitter, — experience, *acerbitās*, -ātis, F.

blockade, *obsideō*.<sup>2</sup>

blood, *sanguis*, -inis, M.

bloodshed, *clādēs*, -is, F.

boast, *glōrior*<sup>1</sup>; make a — of, *glōrior*<sup>1</sup> (w. abl.); to make the same —, *idem glōriārī*.

body, *corpus*, -oris, N.

boldly, *audācter*, adv.; more —, *audācius*, adv. comp.

boldness, *audācia*, -ae, F.; with —, *audācter*, adv.; with the greatest —, superl. of *audācter*.

book, *liber*, -brī, M.

booty, *praeda*, -ae, F.

bordering, — on, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um, adj.

born, be —, *nāscor*.<sup>3</sup>

both, (= each of two) *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*, pron.; both . . . and, *et . . . et*.

bound, *contineō*.<sup>2</sup>

boy, *puer*, -erī, M.

branches, light —, *virgulta*, -ōrum, N.

brave, *fortis*, -e, adj.

breadth, *lātītūdō*, -inis, F.

break, (= throw into disorder) *perturbō*<sup>1</sup>; — through, *perfrīngō*<sup>3</sup>; — through (= burst through) *perrumpō*<sup>3</sup>; — into, *irrupō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.).

bribe, *largior*.<sup>4</sup>

bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, M.

bring, *adferō*; (= lead to) *adducō*<sup>3</sup>; (= lead across) *trādūcō*<sup>3</sup>; — back, *redūcō*.<sup>3</sup>

Britain, *Britannia*, -ae, F.

Britons, *Britannī*, -ōrum, M.

broad, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

brother, *frāter*, -tris, M.

Brundisium, *Brundisium*, -ī, N.

Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, M.

build, *aedificō*<sup>1</sup>; — up, *exstruō*.<sup>3</sup>

building, *aedificium*, -ī, N.

bulk, great —, *māgnītūdō*, -inis, F.

burn, *exūrō*, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus; *cremō*,<sup>1</sup> *ignī cremō*.<sup>1</sup>

**burst**, — into vlew, *ērumpō*<sup>3</sup>;  
— through, *perrumpō*<sup>3</sup>.

**business**, *negōtium*, -ī, N.;  
(= care) *cūra*, -ae, F.

**but**, *sed*, conj.; (somewhat stronger than *sed*) *vērūm*; (introducing with emphasis a new thought, e.g. a supposed objection) *at*; (= indeed) *vērō*, adv.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.; (= in all, altogether) *omnīnō*, adv.; (= except) *praeter*, prep. w. acc.; (= only) *modo*, adv.; **nothing** —, *nihil nisi*; **no one** —, *nēmō nisi*; **but also** or **even**: *sed* or *vērūm etiam*; (correlating with *et*) *et*.

**butcher**, *jugulō*<sup>1</sup>.

**buy**, *emō*<sup>3</sup>; — **up**, *coēmō*<sup>3</sup>.

**by**, (denoting agency) *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only); (denoting means) sign of abl.; (= through) *per*, prep. w. acc.

## C.

**Caesar**, *Caesar*, -aris, M.

**Caeparius**, *Caepārius*, -ī, M.

**call**, (= name) *appellō*<sup>1</sup>; (= call together) *convocō*<sup>1</sup>; — **one's attention to** (= remind forcibly), *commonefaciō*<sup>3</sup>; — **to mind** (for the purpose of reflecting on), *recordor*<sup>1</sup> (usu. w. acc.); — **to account**, *accūsō*<sup>1</sup>.

**calm**, *tranquillus*, -a, -um, adj.

**camp**, *castra*, -ōrum, N.

**can**, *possum*; (= may) *licet*,<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. dat.).

**capital**, *capitālis*, -e, adj.

**capitol**, *capitōlium*, -ī, N.

**Cappadocian**, *Cappadox*, -ocis, M.

**captive**, *captivus*, -ī, M.

**Capua**, *Capua*, -ae, F.

**care**, *cūra*, -ae, F.; **take** —, *cūrō*<sup>1</sup>.

**carry**, *portō*<sup>1</sup>; — **on**, *gerō*<sup>3</sup>; — **off** (= lead away), *abdūcō*<sup>3</sup> *dēdūcō*<sup>3</sup>; — **on battle**, *pūgnō*<sup>1</sup>; **to — on war against**, *bellum inferre* (w. dat.); **to — one's arms into**, *arma inferre* (w. dat.).

**Carthage**, *Carthāgō*, -inis, F.  
**Carthaginians**, *Poenī*, -ōrum, M.  
**case**, in the — of, *in*, prep. w. abl.

**Cassandra**, *Cassandra*, -ae, F.

**Cassius**, *Cassius*, -ī, M.; **with** —, *Cassiānus*, -a, -um, adj.

**cast**, *mittō*<sup>3</sup>; — **down**, *dēmittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**Casticus**, *Casticus*, -ī, M.

**catch**, — **sight of**, *cōspiciō*<sup>3</sup>.

**Catiline**, *Catilīna*, -ae, M.

**Cato**, *Catō*, -ōnis, M.

**Caturiges**, *Caturigēs*, -um, M.

**cattle**, *pecus*, -oris, N.

**cause**, 1. subst., *causa*, -ae, F.  
2. vb., *faciō*<sup>3</sup>; *efficiō*<sup>3</sup>.

**cavalry**, 1. subst., *equitātus*, -ūs, M.; *equitēs*, -um, M. (pl. of *eques*, horseman). 2. adj., *equester*, -tris, -tre, adj.

**cease**, *dēsistō*<sup>3</sup>; *fīnem faciō*<sup>3</sup>.

**Celts** (Kelts), *Celtae*, -ārum, M.

**centurion**, *centuriō*, -ōnis, M.

**Ceraunus**, *Ceraunus*, -ī, M.

**certain**, **a** —, **a** — **man**, *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* and (subst.) *quiddam*.

**Cethegus**, *Cethēgus*, -ī, M.

**change**, — **the direction of**, *convertō*<sup>3</sup>.

**chariot-man** (i.e. one who fights from a chariot), *essedārius*, -ī, M.

**charioteer**, *aurīga*, -ae, M.

**cheap**, *vīlis*, -e, adj.

**cheese**, *cāseus*, -ī, M.

**cherish**, — **the memory of**, *meminī*, def.; — **hatred**, *ōdī*, def.

**chief**, 1. subst., *prīnceps*, -īpis, M. 2. adj., *māximus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *māgnus*).

**chiefly**, *plērumque*, adv.

**child**, *puer*, -erī, M.

**children** (in general) *puerī*, -ōrum, M.; (with reference to their parents) *liberī*, -ōrum, M.

**choose**, — **rather**, *mālō*.

**Cicero**, *Cicerō*, -ōnis, M.

**Cimbri**, *Cimbrī*, -ōrum, M.

**Cimon**, *Cimōn*, -ōnis, M.

**Cingetorix**, *Cingetorix*, -igis, M.

**circuit**, *circuitus*, -ūs, M.

circuitous, by a — path, *in circuitū*.

citizen, *civis*, -is, c.

city, *urbs*, -is, f.; in the — (= belonging to the city), *urbānus*, -a, -um, adj.

civil, *civīlis*, -e, adj.

claim, have a —, *oportet*,<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. acc. and infin.); lay — to, *repetō*.<sup>3</sup>

class, *genus*, -eris, n.

Claudius, *Claudius*, -ū, m.

clear, (= make vacant) *vacuē-faciō*<sup>3</sup>; make —, *explānō*<sup>1</sup>; it is altogether —, *satis cōstat*, impers.

climb, *adscendō*.<sup>3</sup>

Clodia, *Clōdia*, -ae, f.

close, at — quarters, *commī-nus*, adv.

clothe, *vestiō*.<sup>4</sup>

clothing, *vestitus*, -ūs, m.

coast, *ōra*, -ae, f.; sea —, *ōra maritima*.

cohort, *cohors*, -tis, f.

collect, *cōgō*<sup>3</sup>; *colligō*<sup>3</sup>; *com-parō*.<sup>1</sup>

come, *veniō*<sup>4</sup>; (= arrive) *per-veniō*<sup>4</sup>; — upon, *occurrō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.); — out, *ēgredior*<sup>3</sup>; — back, *redeō*<sup>4</sup>; to — off, *sē inde recipere*; to — up to, *accēdere ad* (w. acc.); to — up with, *venīre ad* (w. acc.).

command, 1. subst., *mandā-tum*, -ī, n.; (military) *imperium*, -ū, n. 2. vb., *imperō*<sup>1</sup>; be in — of, *praesum* (w. dat.); place in — of, *prae-ficiō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. pers. and dat. th.).

commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, m.

commend, (= praise) *laudō*.<sup>1</sup>

commit, (of an injury) *faciō*<sup>3</sup>; (of crime) *admittō*<sup>3</sup>; (= intrust): *permittō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. and dat.); *com-mendō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and dat.).

common, *commūnis*, -e, adj.

commonwealth, *rēs pūblica*, *rēi pūblica*, f.

community, *civitās*, -ātis, f.

company, *concilium*, -iī, n.

compare, *comparō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc., and dat. or *cum* w. abl.).

compassion, have — on, *mi-sereor*<sup>2</sup> (w. gen.).

compel, *cōgō*.<sup>3</sup>

comrade, comes, -itis, c.

concerns, it —, *interest*, impers.

concerning, *dē*, prep. w. abl.

condemn, *damnō*<sup>1</sup> (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *condemnō*<sup>1</sup> (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *multō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and abl.); to — to death, *capitis damnāre*.

condition, (= thing) *rēs*, f.

conduct, (= manage) *gerō*<sup>3</sup>; — across, *trādūcō*.<sup>3</sup>

confer, *agō*.<sup>3</sup>

conference, *conloquium*, -iī, n.; have a —, *conloquor*.<sup>3</sup>

confidence, *fidēs*, -ēi (-ēi, -ē), f.

confident, — expectation, *fī-dūcia*, -ae, f.

confines, *fīnēs*, -ium, m. (pl. of *fīnis*).

conflagration, *incendium*, -iī, n.

confusion, *tumultus*, -ūs, m.

conquer, *vincō*.<sup>3</sup>

conqueror, come off —, *superior discēdō*.<sup>3</sup>

conscious, *cōsciūs*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen. th.; w. or without dat. pers.).

conscript, *cōscrip-tus*, -a, -um, p. a.

consent, withhold — (= [be] unwilling), *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.

consider, (= hold, regard) *habēō*<sup>2</sup> (w. two accs. in act.); (= ponder) *reputō*.<sup>1</sup>

consign, *mandō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and dat.).

consist, — in, *sum* (w. *in* and abl.).

conspiracy, *conjūratiō*, -ōnis, f.

conspire, *cōsentiō*.<sup>4</sup>

constitution, *jūs*, *jūris*, n.

constrain, *cōgō*.<sup>3</sup>

consul, *cōsul*, -is, m.

consulship, in the — of, *cōsul* (abl. abs. w. name of pers.).

consult, *cōsulō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.); — for, — the interests of, *cōsulō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).

consume (by fire), *cremō*.<sup>1</sup>



**contempt**, *contemptus*, -ūs, M.  
**contend**, *contendō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *cum* and abl.); *certō*<sup>1</sup> (w. *cum* and ābl.).  
**contentedly**, *aequō animō*.  
**contention**, *contentiō*, -ōnis, F.  
**continue**, *maneo*<sup>2</sup>.  
**contradictory**, *contrārius*, -a, -um, adj.  
**contribute**, *cōnferō*.  
**control**, (supreme) *imperium*, -ī, N.  
**convene**, (= call) *vocō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**convey**, (in a body) *comportō*<sup>1</sup>; — **across**, *trādūcō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**convict**, *convincō*, -ere, -vīcī, -vīctus (w. gen. of the crime).  
**convince**, *persuādeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat. pers.).  
**Corinth**, *Corinthus*, -ī, F.  
**corner**, *angulus*, -ī, M.  
**Cotta**, *Cotta*, -ae, M.  
**council**, *concilium*, -iī, N.  
**country**, (= native country) *patria*, -ae, F.; (= land) *ager*, -grī, M.; (= territories) *fīnēs*, -ium, M. (pl. of *fīnis*); (opp. city) *rūs*, -rūris, N.; (= commonwealth) *rēs pūblica*, *rēi pūblīcae*; **native** —, *patria*, -ae, F.; — **districts**, *agrī*, -ōrum, M. (pl. of *ager*); **in the** —, *rūrī* (loc.).  
**countrymen**, *civēs*, -ium (pl. of *civis*); *civitas*, -atis, F.  
**courage**, *animus*, -ī, M.; **full of** —, *animōsus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**course**, (= plans, measures, proceedings) *cōsilia*, -ōrum, N. (pl. of *cōsiliū*); **shameless** —, *audācia*, -ae, F.  
**cover**, *tegō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**covetous**, *appetēns*, -entis, p. a. (w. gen.).  
**cowardice**, *timor*, -ōris, M.  
**craft**, *ratio*, -ōnis, F.  
**Crassus**, *Crassus*, -ī, M.  
**creature**, living —, *animal*, -ālīs, N.  
**Crete**, *Crēta*, -ae, F.  
**crew**, that —, *islī*, -ōrum, M.  
**crime**, *scelus* -eris, N.; (= daring, lawless crime) *facinus*, -oris, N.  
**criticize**, (adversely) *accūsō*<sup>1</sup>

**cross**, *trānsēō*<sup>4</sup>.  
**crown**, (as, with glory) *honōrō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**cruel**, *crūdēlis*, -e, adj.  
**crush**, (= break in pieces) *frangō*; (= overpower) *opprimō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**custody**, *custōdia*, -ae, F.  
**custom**, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.  
**cut**, — **off**, *excipiō*<sup>3</sup>; — **off**, (from supplies) *prohibeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc. and abl.).  
**Cyrus**, *Cȳrus*, -ī, M.

## D.

**daily**, *cotīdiānus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**damage**, *noceō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).  
**danger**, *perīculum*, -ī, N.  
**dangerous**, *perīcūlōsus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**dare**, *audeō*<sup>2</sup>.  
**dart**, *tēlum*, -ī, N.  
**daughter**, *fīlia*, -ae, F.  
**day**, *dies*, gen. -ēī (-ēī, -ē), M. (sometimes F. in sing.); **on the** — **before**, **on the preceding** —, *prīdiē*, adv.  
**dear**, *cārus*, -a, -um, adj.; **how** —, *quantū* (gen. of indef. value).  
**death**, *mors*, *mortis*, F.; (as a penalty for crime) *caput*, -ītis, N.; **put to** —, *neceō*<sup>1</sup>; **to condemn to** —, *capitis dānnāre*.  
**deceive**, *fallō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**decide**, *cōstituō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**Decii**, *Deciī*, -ōrum, M.  
**decision**, *iūdicium*, -iī, N.  
**declare**, *dēclārō*<sup>1</sup>; *prōnūntiō*<sup>1</sup>; (= set forth) *prōpōnō*<sup>3</sup>; (of war) *indīcō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**decline**, (= be unwilling) *nōlō*.  
**decree**, *cēseō*<sup>2</sup>.  
**deem**, *iūdicō*<sup>1</sup> (w. two accs. in act.).  
**deep**, *altus*, -a, -um, p. a.  
**deeply**, — **move**, *permōveō*<sup>2</sup>.  
**defeat**, 1. subst., *adversum proelium*. 2. vb., *superō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**defend**, *dēfendō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**defence**, *praesidium*, -iī, N.; **means of** —, *remedium*, -iī, N.  
**defiance**, set at —, *neglegō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**delay**, *moror*<sup>1</sup>.  
**deliberate**, *dēliberō*<sup>1</sup>

**deliver**, (of an address) *habēō*.<sup>2</sup>

**demand**, *poscō*<sup>3</sup>; (= claim, demand as a right) *postulō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, *ā*); (= command, order) *imperō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**Demaratus**, *Dēmarātus*, -ī, M.

**denarius**, *dēnārius*, -ī, M.

**dense**, *dēnsus*, -a, -um, adj.

**deny**, *negō*.<sup>1</sup>

**depart**, *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; *dēcēdō*<sup>3</sup>; *sēcēdō*<sup>3</sup>; (= set out) *proficiscor*<sup>3</sup>; — **to join**, *proficiscor*<sup>3</sup> in (w. acc.).

**departure**, *profectiō*, -ōnis, F.

**depredation**, *malefictium*, -ī, N.; *injūria*, -ae, F.

**deprive**, (= wrest from) *ēripio*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**descend**, (of birth) *orior*.<sup>4</sup>

**description**, (= kind) *genus*, -eris, N.

**desert**, (= be wanting, fail) *dēsum*.

**deserter**, *perfuga*, -ae, M.

**deserve**, *mereor*<sup>2</sup>; **to — well of**, *mereri dē*.

**design**, *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.

**desire**, 1. subst., *voluntās*, -ātis, F. 2. vb., (of voluntary desire, i.e. desire prompted by the will) *volō*; (of involuntary desire, i.e. natural inclination) *cupiō*<sup>3</sup>; — **ardently**, *exoptō*.<sup>1</sup>

**desirous**, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).

**desperately**, (= sharply, vigorously) *ācritēr*, adv.

**despise**, *dēspiciō*.<sup>3</sup>

**destitute**, *nūdus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. abl.).

**destroy**, (= annihilate) *dēleō*<sup>2</sup>; (= squander, ruin) *perdō*<sup>3</sup> (*percō* is used for the pass.); (= break through) *perfringō*<sup>3</sup>; (= cut down, e.g. a bridge) *interscindō*, -ere, -scidī, -scissus.

**destruction**, *perniciēs*, gen., -ī, -iēs or -iē, F.; (= downfall) *obitus*, -ūs, M.

**destructive**, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

**detail**, in —, *singulātīm*, adv.

**deter**, *dēterreō*<sup>2</sup>; **to — from**, *dētērrēre quōminus* (w. subj.).

**determine**, (= fix, establish) *cōstituō*.<sup>3</sup>

**devote**, — **one's self**, *serviō*<sup>4</sup> (w. dat.).

**devoted**, — **to**, *diligēns*, -entis, adj. (w. gen.).

**devotion**, *studium*, -ī, N.

**dictates**, *praescriptum*, -ī, N.

**die**, *morior*, *morī* (*moriri*), *mortuus*; *ēmorior*.

**differ**, *differō*, *differre* (the meaning *differ* appears to be confined to the pres. system); **to — from one another**, *inter sē differre*.

**difficult**, *difficilis*, -e, adj.

**difficulty**, **with —**, *aegrē* adv.; (= scarcely) *vix*; **with the utmost —**, *aegerrimē*, adv. (superl. of *aegrē*).

**difficulties**, *angustiae*, -ārum, F.

**digest**, *digerō*, -ere, -gessi, -gestus.

**dignity**, **priestly —**, *sacerdotium*, -ī, N.

**diligence**, *diligentia*, -ae, F.

**diminutive**, — **stature**, *brevitās*, -ātis, F.

**Dionysius**, *Dionysius*, -ī, M.

**direct**, (= order) *imperō*<sup>1</sup> (w. dat.).

**direction**, (= part) *pars*, *partis*, F.; (= supreme control) *imperium*, -ī, N.; **change the — of**, *convertō*.<sup>3</sup>

**disaffection**, *aliēnatiō*, -ōnis, F.

**disagreement**, *dissēnsiō*, -ōnis, F.

**disapprove**, *reprehendō*.<sup>3</sup>

**disaster**, *calamitās*, -ātis, F.

**discharge**, *fungor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).

**discipline**, *disciplīna*, -ae, F.

**discuss**, *disserō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *dē* and abl.); *agō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *dē* and abl. th., and *cum* w. abl. pers.).

**dish**, **sacrificial —**, *patera*, -ae, F.

**dismiss**, *dimitto*<sup>3</sup>; (= lay aside) *dēponō*.<sup>3</sup>

**dispatch**, *mittō*.<sup>3</sup>

**display**, *ostendō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**dispose**, — of (= sell), *vēndō*<sup>3</sup> (*vēneō* is used as the pass.).  
**disposed**, *cupīdus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.); **favorably** —, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.; **be not disposed**, *nōlō*.  
**disposition**, *animus*, -ī, M.; **favorable** —, *voluntās*, -ātis, F.  
**dispute**, *contrōversia*, -ae, F.  
**disquiet**, *perturbō*<sup>1</sup>; *commoveō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**disquieting**, *molestus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**disregard**, *neglegō*<sup>3</sup>; (= despise) *contemnō*, -ere, -temp̄si, -temptus.  
**dissatisfied**, **I am** —, *mē paenitet*, impers. (w. gen.).  
**dissension**, *dissēnsiō*, -ōnis, F.  
**distance**, *intervallum*, -ī, N.; **to a** —, *procul*, adv.; **at a** — **from**, *longē* ā.  
**distant**, **be** —, *absum*.  
**distress**, *premō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**distribute**, *distribūō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**district**, *pāgus*, -ī, M.; (= territory, domain), *ager*, -grī, M.; (= quarter, region) *regiō*, -ōnis, F.; **country** —s, *agrī*, -ōrum, M.  
**disturb**, *perturbō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**ditch**, *fossa*, -ae, F.  
**Divico**, *Divicō*, -ōnis, M.  
**divine**, *divīnus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**Divitiaeus**, *Divitiacus*, -ī, M.  
**divulge**, *ēnūtiō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**do**, *faciō*<sup>3</sup>; *agō*<sup>3</sup>; **have to** — **with**, *pertineō*<sup>2</sup> (w. *ad* and *acc.*); — **away with**, *tollō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**done**, **be** —, *fīō*.  
**doubt**, *dubitō*<sup>1</sup>; **there is no** —, *nōn est dubium* (w. *quān* and subj.).  
**doubtful**, *dubius*, -a, -um, adj.  
**doubtless**, *profectō*, adv.  
**down**, **cast** —, *dēmittō*<sup>3</sup>; **to lay** — **arms**, *ab armīs discēdere*.  
**drag**, *trahō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**draw**, (of a sword) *ēducō*<sup>3</sup>; (= draw apart) *distrahō*<sup>3</sup>; — **near**, *appropinquō*<sup>1</sup> (w. *dat.* or *ad w. acc.*); — **up**, *instruō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**dream**, I. subst., *somnium*, -ī, N.; vb., *somniō*.<sup>1</sup>

**drink**, *bibō*, -ere, *bibī*.  
**drive**, *agō*<sup>3</sup>; (= cast out) *ēiciō*<sup>3</sup>; (= drive in a body) *compellō*<sup>3</sup>; — **out**, *expellō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**drug**, *medicāmentum*, -ī, N.  
**Dumnorix**, *Dumnorix*, -igis, M.  
**dust**, *pulvis*, -eris, M.  
**duty**, *officium*, -ī, N.  
**dwell**, *incolō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**dwelling**, *tectum*, -ī, N.; — **place**, *domicilium*, -ī, N.

## E.

**each**, — **one**, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.) and *quicque* or *quidque* (subst.), indef. pron.; (of two) *uterque*, -traque, -trumque, pron.; **with** — **other**, *inter sē* (*sēsē*).  
**eager**, *alacer*, -cris, -cre, adj.  
**eagerly**, *intentus*, -a, -um, p. a. (in agreement w. subst.).  
**earlier**, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**early**, (= ancient) *antīquus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**earnest**, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).  
**earnestly**, **press** —, *postulō*<sup>1</sup> (w. *acc. th.* and *abl. pers. w. ab. ā*).  
**earth**, — **mound**, *tumulus*, -ī, M.  
**easily**, *facile*, adv.; (= at random) *temerē*, adv.; **very** — (after a neg.), *satis commodē*, adv.  
**east**, (= rising sun) *sōl oriēns*, *sōlis orientis*, M.  
**easy**, **very** —, *perfacilis*, -e, adj.  
**Ebro**, *Hibērus*, -ī, M.  
**effect**, **to** — **a purpose**, *rem efficere*, *rem obtinēre*.  
**effects**, **their** —, n. pl. of *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.  
**effectually**, *facile*, adv.  
**effort**, *opera*, -ae, F.; **to bestow** —, *operam dare* (w. *ut* and subj.).  
**eight**, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.  
**eighteenth**, *duodēvīcēsīmus*, -a, -um or *octāvus decīmus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.  
**eighty**, *octōgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

either . . . or, (when an alternative is offered) *vel . . . vel*; (when one excludes the other) *aut . . . aut*; **not . . . either . . . or**, *neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec*.  
**elect**, *dēsīgnātus*, -ī, masc. p. a.  
**embankment**, *agger*, -is, M.  
**embarked**, — **on**, *impositus*, -a, -um, perf. part. of *impōnō* (w. *in* and acc.).  
**embassy**, *lēgātīō*, -ōnis, F.  
**empty**, (= make vacant) *vacuēfaciō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**encamp**, *cōnsīdō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**end**, *fīnis*, -is, M. (sometimes F. in sing.).  
**endeavor**, *cōnor*<sup>1</sup>; **to — to force** (= to attempt by force), *per vim tentāre*.  
**endeavors**, *cōnāta*, -ōrum, N.  
**endure**, *ferō*; *patior*.<sup>3</sup>  
**enemy**, (personal) *inimīcus*, -ī, M.; (public) *hostis*, -is, C.; (= a hostile army) *hostēs*, -ium, pl. (usu., but also) *hostis*, -is, M., sing.  
**energy**, *vīs*, -is, F.; **with —**, *ācrīter*, adv.; **with the greatest —**, superl. of *ācrīter*.  
**engage**, **to — in battle**, *proelium committere*.  
**engagement**, (= battle) *proelium*, -i, N.; **to come to an —**, *proeliō decertāre*; **to open an —**, *proelium committere*.  
**engine**, *māchinātīō*, -ōnis, F.  
**enjoy**, *fruor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.); (= make use of) *ūtor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).  
**enmity**, *inimīcītia*, -ae, F.  
**enough**, *satis*, adv.; **well —**, *commodē*, adv.  
**ensue**, *sequor*.<sup>3</sup>  
**enterprise**, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; (= business) *negōtium*, -i, N.  
**entire**, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**entreat**, *orō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**entreaties**, *precēs*, -um, F. pl.  
**envoy**, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.  
**envy**, I. subst., *invidia*, -ae, F.  
 2. vb., *invidēō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).  
**Epaminondas**, *Epamīnōndās*, -ae, M.

**Eporedorix**, *Eporedorix*, -igis, M.  
**equal**, *pār*, *paris*, adj.; *aequus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= same) *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem*, demonstr. pron.  
**equally**, *juxtā*, adv.  
**equanimity**, *aequus animus*.  
**erect**, *ērigō*<sup>3</sup>; (of a tower) *excitō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**error**, *peccātum*, -ī, N.  
**escape**, *effugiō*<sup>3</sup>; (= flee) *fugīō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**especially**, *māximē*, adv.  
**establish**, *cōnfirmō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**established**, **become firmly —**, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -āvī.  
**esteem**, (= consider) *habēō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**eternal**, *aeternus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**even**, *etiā*, conj.; — **to**, *jam ad* (w. acc.); **but —**, *sed etiā*, *vērūm etiā*; **not —**, *nē . . . quīdem* (w. the emphatic word or words between *nē* and *quīdem*); — **though**, *etiāmsī* (w. indic. and subj., like *sī*; the indic. is more common).  
**ever**, *unquam* or *umquam*, adv.  
**every**, *omnis*, -e, adj.; —, —  
**one**, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.), and *quicque* or *quidque* (subst.), indef. pron.  
**every thing**, *omnia* (n. pl. of *omnis*, -e, adj.); *cūncta* (n. pl. of *cūnctus*, -a, -um, adj.).  
**evident**, **make —**, *sīgnificō*<sup>1</sup>; **it is —**, *appāret*.<sup>2</sup>  
**exceed**, *superō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**excel**, *praestō*<sup>1</sup> (w. dat.); *superō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.); *praecēdō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.).  
**except**, *praeter*, adv. and prep. w. acc.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.  
**excessive**, *nīmius*, -a, -um, adj.  
**exchange**, **to —**, *inter sē dare*.  
**exclaim**, *conclāmō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**exculpate**, *pūrgō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**execute**, *administrō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**exercise**, (= apply) *adhibeō*<sup>2</sup>; — **partiality**, *studeō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**exhort**, *cohortor*.<sup>1</sup>  
**exile**, *exsiliūm*, -i, N.  
**expectation**, *opīniō*, -ōnis, F.; **confident —**, *fīdūcia*, -ae, F.

**expel**, *expellō*<sup>3</sup>; (= drive) *pellō*<sup>3</sup>; (= cast out) *ēiciō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**expense**, *sūmptus*, -ūs, M.  
**experience**, 1. subst., *ūsus*, -ūs, M.; **bitter** —, *acerbitās*, -ātis, F.  
 2. vb. (= receive) *accipiō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**experienced**, *peritus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. gen.).  
**explain**, (= set forth) *expōnō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**explanation**, say by way of —, *explānō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**expression**, *rōx*, *rōcis*, F.  
**extend**, 1. intr., *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; (= lie open) *pateō*<sup>2</sup>; (= look) *spectō*<sup>1</sup>.  
 2. tr. (= construct) *perducō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**extensive**, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**extreme**, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl.).  
**eye**, *oculus*, -ī, M.  
**eyes**, in my —, *mihī* (dat. ref.).

F.

**Fabius**, *Fabius*, -ī, M.  
**face**, in the — of, *contrā*, prep. w. acc.  
**fact**, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; in point of —, *rē* (abl. of *rēs*).  
**Faesulae**, *Faesulae*, -ārum, F.  
**fall**, 1. intr., *dēsūm*. 2. tr. and intr., *dēficiō*<sup>3</sup>. 3. tr., *dēsērō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**faint-hearted** = of feeble courage; see **feeble and courage**.  
**faithful**, *fīdus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**fall**, (of javelin) *accidō*<sup>3</sup>; (= fall together, fall with a crash) *corruō*; — upon, (= chance upon) *incidō*<sup>3</sup> (w. in and acc.).  
**family**, (= stock, race) *genus*, -eris, N.  
**famous**, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.  
**fancy**, *arbitror*<sup>1</sup>.  
**Fannius**, *Fannius*, -ī, M.  
**far**, *longē*, adv.; by —, *longē*, adv.; too —, *longius*, adv. (comp. of *longē*).  
**farm**, *redimō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**farther**, *ūterior*, -ius, adj.  
**fast**, make —, *dēstinō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**father**, *pater*, -tris, M.; *genitor*, -ōris, M.

**father-in-law**, *socer*, -erī, M.  
**fault**, *culpa*, -ae, F.  
**favor**, *faveō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).  
**favorable**, (= good) *bonus*, -a, -um, adj.; — disposition, *voluntās*, -ātis, F.  
**favorableness**, *opportunitās*, -ātis, F.  
**favorably**, — disposed, *amīcus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**fear**, 1. subst., *metus*, -ūs, M.; *timor*, -ōris, M. 2. vb., *timeō*<sup>2</sup>; *metuō*<sup>3</sup>; *vereor*<sup>2</sup>; **paralyze with** —, *perterreō*<sup>2</sup>.  
**fearing** (pres. part.), *veritus*, -a, -um (perf. part. of *vereor*).  
**feeble**, *īfirmus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**fellow**, — citizen, *cīvis*, -is, c.  
**fertile**, *ferāx*, -ācis, adj.  
**few**, *pauci*, -ae, -a, adj.; a — words, *pauca*, -ōrum, N.  
**field**, *ager*, -grī, M.  
**fifteen**, *quīndecim*, indecl. num. adj.  
**fifty**, *quīnquāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.  
**fight**, 1. subst., *pūgna*, -ae, F. 2. vb., *pūgnō*<sup>1</sup>; *cōnfligō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**fighting**, *pūgna*, -ae, F.; (= battle) *proelium*, -ī, N.  
**figure**, (= body) *corpus*, -oris, N.  
**fill**, *compleō*<sup>2</sup>; (= fill full, crowd) *referciō*<sup>4</sup>.  
**find**, (by search or inquiry) *reperiō*<sup>4</sup>; — out, (= trace out) *investigō*<sup>4</sup>.  
**finish**, *cōnficiō*<sup>3</sup>.  
**fir**, *abiēs*, -etis, F.  
**fire**, *īgnis*, -is, M.  
**firmly**, become — established, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -ācī.  
**first**, *prīmus*, -a, -um, adj.; *prīnum*, adv.; for the — time, *prīnum*, adv.; at —, *prīmō*, adv.  
**five**, *quīnque*, indecl. num. adj.; in groups of —, *quīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.  
**five hundred**, *quīngentī*, -ae, -a, num. adj.  
**fix**, (= value, appraise) *aestimō*<sup>1</sup>.  
**flattery**, *adscūtūtiō*, -ōnis, F.  
**flee**, *fugiō*<sup>3</sup>; (= flee forth) *pro-*

*fugiō*<sup>3</sup>; (= flee back) *refugiō*<sup>3</sup>; to — for refuge, *sē recipere*.

**fleet**, *clāssis*, -is, F.

**flight**, *fuga*, -ae, F.

**float**, *ratis*, -is, F.

**flock**, *concurrō*<sup>3</sup>.

**flow**, (= flow into) *īnfluō*<sup>3</sup> (w. in and acc.).

**follow**, *sequor*<sup>3</sup>; (= follow close upon) *īnsequor*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.).

**following**, *\*posterus*, -era, -erum, adj.; (= that about to be mentioned) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.; (= of this sort) *hūjusce modī*.

**follows**, as —, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron.; *sīc*, adv.; **substantially** as —, *hūjusce modī*.

**folly**, (= infatuation, madness) *dēmentia*, -ae, F.; (= absence of reason) *āmentia*, -ae, F.; **insane** —, *furor*, -ōris, M.

**fond**, — of, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.); (= desirous of) *cupidus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).

**food**, *cibus*, -ī, M.

**foot**, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.

**foot-soldier**, *pedes*, -itis, M.

**for**, *nam*, conj. (begins the sentence or clause); *enī*, conj. (follows the first word or closely associated words); (= from) *dē*, prep. w. abl.: as, *quā dē causā*, **for what reason**; (= in behalf of) *prō*, prep. w. abl.; (= towards) *ergā*, prep. w. acc.; (= during) sign of acc. of duration of time; (= concerning) *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= into) *in*; prep. w. acc.: as, **to depart for**, *prōficiscī in*; (expressing purpose) *ad*, prep. w. acc. (of gerund or gerundive); (expressing adaptation w. *idōneus*) *ad*, prep. w. acc., also dat.; (= on account of) *ob*, prep. w. acc.

**forage**, *frūmentor*<sup>1</sup>.

**force**, (= strength, violence) *vīs*, *vīs*, F.; (= armed force, band) *manus*, -ūs, F.; (= a multitude) *multitūdō*, -inis, F.; **to endeavor to** —, *per vim tentāre*.

**forced**, (= the greatest possible) *quam māximus*, -a, -um, adj.

**forces**, *cōpia*, -arum, F.

**foremost**, *prīnceps*, -ipis, adj.;

— **man**, *prīnceps*, -ipis, M.; — **place**, *prīncipātus*, -ūs, M.; **to be** —, *plūrimum valēre*.

**foresee**, *praevideō*<sup>2</sup>.

**foreshadow**, *canō*, -ere, *cecini*.

**forest**, *silva*, -ae, F.

**forever**, *perpetuō*, adv.

**forget**, *oblīviscor*<sup>3</sup> (w. gen., or [w. neut. pron.] acc.).

**form**, *faciō*<sup>3</sup>; (of a design) *capiō*<sup>3</sup>; **to** — (= to collect themselves), *sē conligere*.

**former**, *vetus*, -eris, adj.; **the**

—, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.

**forsake**, (= withdraw from) *discēdō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *ab* and abl.); (= lay aside) *dēponō*<sup>3</sup>.

**forth**, **set** —, *prōpōnō*<sup>3</sup>.

**fortify**, *mūniō*<sup>4</sup>.

**fortunate**, *fortūnātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**fortune**, *fortūna*, -ae, F.

**forty**, *quadrāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

**forward**, **go** —, *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; **move** —, *prōmoveō*<sup>2</sup>.

**founded**, — **in right**, *jūstus*, -a, -um, adj.

**four**, *quattuor*, indecl. num. adj.; — **each**, *quaternī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

**fourteenth**, *quartus decimus*, -a, -um or *decimus et quartus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

**fourth**, *quartus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

**fraught**, — **with danger**, *periculōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

**free**, *liber*, -era, -erum, adj.; — **from**, *vacuus*, -a, -um (w. *ab* or *ā* and abl.); — **from suspicion**, *pūrgātus*, -a, -um, p. a.; — **town**, *mūnicipium*, -ī, N.; vb., *liberō*<sup>1</sup>.

**freedom**, *libertās*, -ātis, F.

**frequent**, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.

**friend**, *amīcus*, -ī, M.

**friendly**, *amīcus*, -a, -um, adj.

**friendship**, *amicitia*, -ae, F.; (= favor) *gratia*, -ae, F.

**from**, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= away from) *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only), *abs* (sometimes before *tē*), prep. w. abl.; (= out of) *ex*, *ē*, prep. w. abl.; (after verbs of hindering) *quōminus*, *nē*, (also, when there is a neg. expressed or implied w. the vb.) *quīn* (w. subj.).

**front**, **in — of**, *prō*, prep. w. abl.

**frost**, *frīgus*, -oris, N.

**fruit**, *fructus*, -ūs, M.

**full**, *plēnus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.); — **of courage**, *animōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

**Furius**, *Fūrius*, -ī, M.

**furnished**, — **with saddles**, *ephippiātus*, -a, -um, adj.

**further**, (= furthermore) *autem*, conj. (placed not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one or more words); (= oftener, more) *saepius*, adv.

**future**, *futūrus*, -a, -um, p. a.; **the —**, *futūra*, -ōrum, N.; **at some — time**, *aliquandō*, adv.

## G.

**Gabinus**, *Gabīnius*, -ī, M.

**gain**, — **access**, *adeō*.<sup>4</sup>

**Gajus**, *C.* (abbr. of *Gājus*, *Gāi*, M.).

**Galba**, *Galba*, -ae, M.

**Gallie**, *Gallicus*, -a, -um, adj.

**game**, *ferīna carō* (*ferīnus*, -a, -um, of wild animals; *carō*, *carnis*, F., flesh).

**garrison**, *praesidium*, -ī, N.

**gate**, *porta*, -ae, F.

**gather**, — **themselves**, *congregō*<sup>1</sup> (in pass.).

**Gaul**, *Gallia*, -ae, F.

**Gauls**, *Gallī*, -ōrum, M.; **of the —**, *Gallicus*, -a, -um, adj.

**gaze**, — **on**, *intueor*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc.).

**general**, *commūnis*, -e, adj.; (= military commander) *imperātor*, -ōris, M.; **in —**, *omnīnō*, adv.

**generally**, — **speaking**, *plērumque*, adv.; **it is — understood**, *cōnstat*, impers.

**generosity**, *beneficium*, -ī, N.

**Geneva**, *Genāva*, -ae, F.; **lake —**, *lacus Lemannus*, -ī, M.

**Germans**, *Germānī*, -ōrum, M.

**get**, — **together**, *cōnferō*.

**girl**, *puella*, -ae, F.

**give**, *dō*; (= deliver) *trādō*<sup>3</sup>; **to — battle**, *proelium committere*.

**glance**, — **at**, *adspiciō*.<sup>3</sup>

**glorious**, *praeclārus*, -a, -um, adj.

**glory**, *glōria*, -ae, F.

**go**, *eō*<sup>4</sup>; (= set out) *proficiscor*<sup>3</sup>; (= go apart) *sēcēdō*<sup>3</sup>; **go**, — **away**, *abeō*<sup>4</sup>; **go**, — **out**: *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; *ēgredior*<sup>3</sup>; — **away** (= go out), *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; — **forward**, *exeō*<sup>4</sup>; — **over**, *trānseō*.<sup>4</sup>

**god**, *deus*, -ī, M.

**good**, *bonus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **will**, *grātia*, -ae, F.; **it seems —**, *placet*,<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. dat.).

**govern**, *imperō*<sup>1</sup> (w. dat.).

**gradually**, *paulātīm*, adv.

**grain**, (= harvested grain), *frumentum*, -ī, N.; (= standing grain) *frumenta*, -ōrum, N.; *rēs frumentāria*.

**grandfather**, *avus*, -ī, M.

**grant**, *dō*.

**gratifying**, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.

**great**, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.;

**how —**, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.; **so —**, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.; **in — numbers** (= crowded), *frequēns*, -entis, adj.; **a — many**, *complūrēs*, -a (-īa), adj.

**greatest**, *māximus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *māgnus*); *summus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *superus*); — **possible**, *quam māximus* (w. or without the proper fm. of *possum*).

**grievous**, *gravis*, -e, adj.

**ground**, *humus*, -ī, F.; (= earth) *terra*, -ae, F.; **rising —**, *tumulus*, -ī, M.; — **of suspicion**, *suspiciō*, -ōnis, F.; **maintain one's —**, *subsistō*<sup>3</sup>; **to give — for**, *praebeō*.<sup>2</sup>

**groups, in** — of five, *quīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; **in** — of six, *sēnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

**guard**, *custōs*, -ōdis, C.; (= garrison) *praesidium*, -iī, N.; **be on one's** —, *caveō*.<sup>2</sup>

## H.

**habitation**, *sēdēs*, -is, F.

**Hamilcar**, *Hamīlcar*, -aris, M.

**hand**, *manus*, -ūs, F.; **at** —, *praestō*, adv.

**Hannibal**, *Hannībal*, -alis, M.

**happen**, *accidō*<sup>3</sup>; (= become, be done) *fīō*.

**happy**, *beātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**harass**, *premō*<sup>3</sup>; *exagūtō*.<sup>1</sup>

**haste**, **make** —, *contendō*.<sup>3</sup>

**hasten**, *mātūrō*<sup>1</sup>; *contendō*<sup>3</sup>; *properō*.<sup>1</sup>

**hate**, *ōdī*, def.

**hatred**, **cherish** —, *ōdī*, def.

**have**, *habēō*<sup>2</sup>; *sum* (w. dat. of possession); — **to do with**, *perlineō*<sup>2</sup> (w. ad and acc.).

**he**, (= that man) *ille*; (weaker than *ille*) *is*; (emphatic, = himself) *ipse*; (in indir. disc. referring to principal subject) *sē*; omitted when implied in the ending of the vb.

**head**, *caput*, -itis, N.; (= chief man) *prīnceps*, -ipis, M.

**headlong**, *praeceps*, -ipitis, adj.

**headstrong**, *temerārius*, -a, -um, adj.

**health**, *valētūdō*, -inis, F.

**hear**, *audiō*<sup>4</sup>; (= hear from a distance or hear distinctly) *exaudiō*<sup>4</sup>; (= receive by communication from others) *accipiō*.<sup>3</sup>

**heaven**, *caelum*, -ī, N.

**heavily**, *graviter*, adv.

**height**, *altitūdō*, -inis, F.

**heinous**, **so** —, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.

**help**, *auxilium*, -iī, N.; **I cannot** —, *facere nōn possum* (w. *quīn* and subj.).

**Helvetians**, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, M.

**Helvetii**, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, M.

**hem**, — **in**, *confinēō*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc.).

**hence**, *hinc*, adv.

**Hercules**, **by** —, *mehercule*.

**here**, **be** —, *adsum*.

**herself**, (reflex.) *sē*.

**hesitate**, *dubitō*.<sup>1</sup>

**Hesperia**, *Hesperia*, -ae, F.

**high**, *altus*, -a, -um, p. a.; (= great) *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.

**higher**, *superior*, -ius, adj. (comp. of *superus*).

**highest**, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.; (superl. of *superus*); **at the** — possible price, *quam plurimō*.

**highly**, *māgnī* (gen. of indef. value).

**hill**, *collis*, -is, M.

**himself**, (reflex.) *sē*; (emphatic) *ipse* (alone or in apposition w. the reflex. *sē*).

**hinder**, *impediō*.<sup>4</sup>

**hire**, *condūcō*.<sup>3</sup>

**his**, *ejus* (gen. of *is*); (referring to the subject) *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; — **own**, *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; omitted when the context shows who is meant.

**hither**, *citerior*, -ius, adj.

**hold**, *teneō*<sup>2</sup>; *obtineō*<sup>2</sup>; — **off**, *abstineō*<sup>2</sup>; (= regard, consider) *habēō*.<sup>2</sup>

**home**, *domus*, -ūs, F.; **at** —, *domī*; **from** —, *domō*.

**honor**, *honor*, -ōris, M.; **personal** —, *modestia*, -ae, F.

**honorable**, *honestus*, -a, -um, adj.

**hope**, *spēs*, -ēī (-ēī), F.

**horse**, *equus*, -ī, M.; (= horsemen) *equitēs*, -um, M.

**horseman**, *eques*, -itis, M.

**hostage**, *obses*, -idis, C.

**hostile**, *inimicus*, -a, -um, adj.

**hour**, *hōra*, -ae, F.

**house**, *domus*, -ūs, F.; **at the** — of, *apud*, prep. w. acc.

**how**, *quam*, adv.; — **great**, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **much**, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **dear**, *quantī* (gen. indef. value); — **long**: *quam diū*, adv.; (= how far) *quousque*, adv.

**however**, *quamvis*, adv.; (= nevertheless) *tamen*, conj.



**hundred**, *centum*, indecl. num. adj.; **two** —, *ducenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.; **three** —, *trecenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.; **six** —, *sescenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.

**hundredth**, *centēsimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

I.

**I**, *ego*, *meī*, pers. pron.

**iceius**, *Iceius*, -ī, M.

**idleness**, *ignāvia*, -ae, F.

**if**, *sī*; — **not**, *sī nōn*; — **not** (= unless) *nisi*; — **only**, *dum*, conj. (w. subj.).

**ignominiously**, *turpiter*, adv.

**ill**, *aeger*, -gra, -grum, adj.

**illustrious**, *clārus*, -a, -um, adj.; *amplius*, -a, -um, adj.

**imagine**, (= think) *existimō*.<sup>1</sup>

**immortal**, *immortālis*, -e, adj.

**impede**, *impediō*<sup>4</sup>; **to** — **the army's march**, *itinere exercitum prohibere*.

**implore**, *obsecrō*<sup>1</sup>; *implōrō*.<sup>1</sup>

**import**, *importō*<sup>1</sup>; *inferō*.

**importance, of the highest** —, *summus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *superus*); **it is of** — : *interest*, *impers*.

**important, it is** — : *interest*; *rēfert*, -ferre, -tulit.

**in**, *in*, prep. w. abl.; (after a superl.) sign of the gen.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc. : **in breadth**, *in width*, *in lātitudinem*; **in length**, *in longitūdinem*; **to be** —, *inesse* (w. dat.); **to vie** —, *certāre dē* (w. abl.); — **the rear**, *ā novissimō agmine*, *ab novissimīs*; — **my eyes**, *mihī* (dat. ref.); — **that he**, *quī* (= *cum is*) w. subj.

**inasmuch**, — **as**, *quoniam*, conj.; sign of abl. abs. denoting cause.

**incident**, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

**inclination, to restrain one's** — **to**, *sibi temperāre quīn* (w. subj.).

**increase**, *amplificō*<sup>1</sup>; *augeō*.<sup>2</sup>

**incur**, *adeō*<sup>4</sup> (w. acc.).

**indeed**, *quidem* (follows the word that it emphasizes), adv.; (introducing a corroborative or a parenthetical clause) *etenim*, conj.

**indignity**, *contumēlia*, -ae, F.

**indulge**, *indulgeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).

**industry**, *industria*, -ae, F.

**inexperience**, *īnscentia*, -ae, F.

**infamy**, *īnfāmia*, -ae, F.

**infantry**, *cōpiae pedestrēs* (*pedester*, -tris, -tre, adj.).

**inflict**, *sūmō*<sup>3</sup>; **to** — **punishment on**: *supplicium sūmere dē* (w. abl.); *vindicāre in* (w. acc.).

**influence**, *auctōritās*, -ātis, F.; (arising from good will) *grātia*, -ae, F.; **of great** —, *potēns*, -entis, adj.; **to have very little** —, *minimum posse*; **to have very great** —, *largiter posse*.

**inform**, *certiōrem faciō*<sup>3</sup>; **be informed**, *certior fīō*; **thoroughly** —, *ēdoceō*<sup>2</sup> (w. two accs. in act.).

**infuse**, *inferō* (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**inhabit**, *incolō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.).

**inhabitants**, (= people) *hominēs*, -um, M.

**injure**, *noceō*<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).

**injury**, *injūria*, -ae, F.; **without risk of** —, *sine fraude*.

**innocent**, *innocēns*, -entis, adj.

**inquire**, *querō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*).

**inquiry**, **make** —, *querō*.<sup>3</sup>

**insane**, — **folly**, *furor*, -ōris, M.

**institution**, *īstitutum*, -ī, N.

**instruction**, (= commission, injunction) *mandātum*, -ī, N.

**intellect**, *īngenium*, -ī, N.

**intelligence**, **receive** — **of**, *cōgnōscō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *dē* and abl.).

**intend**, *esse in animō* (w. dat. pers.).

**intention, it is one's** —, *alicui est in animō*.

**intercession, at the** — **of**, *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M. (abl. abs.).

**intercessor**, *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M.

**interval**, *intervallum*, -ī, N.;  
**place at intervals**, *dispōnō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**intervene**, *intercēdō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**intimacy**, *ūsus*, -ūs, M.  
**into**, *in*, prep. w. acc.  
**intrust**, *mandō*<sup>1</sup>; *trādō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**inured**, — **to**, *patiēns*, -entis, p.  
 a. (w. gen.).

**iron-hearted**, **so** —, *ille ferreus*  
 (-a, -um).

**issue**, **to bring to a successful**  
 —, *bene gerere*.

**it**, *is*, *ea*, *id*, pron.; omitted if  
 implied in the ending of the  
 verb or understood from the  
 context.

**Italy**, *Italia*, -ae, F.

**its**, (referring to the subject)  
*suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.

**itself**, (intens.) *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ip-  
 sum*, demonstr. pron.

### J.

**January**, **of** —, *Jānuārius*, -a,  
 -um, adj.

**join**, *jungō*. -ere, *jūnxī*, *jūnctus*;  
**to** — **battle**, *proelium committere*;  
**depart to** —, *proficiscor*<sup>3</sup> (w. *in*  
 and acc.).

**Juba**, *Juba*, -ae, M.

**judge**, *jūdex*, -icis, C.

**judgment**, **pass** — **upon**, *sen-  
 tiō*<sup>4</sup> (w. *dē* and abl.).

**jugerum**, *jugerum*, -ī, N.; in pl.,  
*jugera*, -um, N.

**Jugurtha**, *Jugurtha*, -ae, M.

**Julian**, *Jūliānus*, -a, -um, adj.

**Jupiter**, *Jūppiter*, *Jovis*, M.

**Jura**, *Jūra*, -ae, M.

**just**, *jūstus*, -a, -um, adj.

### K.

**Kalends**, *Kalendae*, -ārum, F.

**keep**, *teneō*<sup>2</sup>; (= keep togeth-  
 er, confine) *continēō*<sup>2</sup>; — **back**,  
*teneō*<sup>2</sup>; — **apart**, — **asunder**,  
*distincō*<sup>2</sup>; — **one's word**, *fidem*  
*servō*.<sup>1</sup>

**keeping**, *fidēs*, gen., -ēī (-ēī, -ē), F.

**kill**, *interficiō*<sup>3</sup>; (by cutting or  
 striking down) *occidō*.<sup>3</sup>

**kind**, (= sort) *genus*, -eris, N.

**king**, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.

**kingdom**, *rēgnum*, -ī, N.

**kinsmen**, *cōsanguineī*, -ōrum, M.

**knight**, *eques*, -itis, M.

**know**, *sciō*<sup>4</sup>; (= understand)  
*intelligō*<sup>3</sup>; **not** —: *ignōrō*<sup>1</sup>; *ne-  
 sciō*.<sup>4</sup>

**known**, *nōtus*, -a, -um, p. a.;  
*cōgnitus*, -a, -um, p. a.; **make** —,  
*ostendō*.<sup>3</sup>

### L.

**Labienus**, *Labīēnus*, -ī, M.

**Lacedaemon**, *Lacedaemōn*,  
 -ōnis, F.

**lack**, *egēō*<sup>2</sup> (w. gen. or abl.).

**Laeca**, *Laeca*, -ae, M.

**lake**, *lacus*, -ūs, M.

**land**, *ager*, -grī, M.; **by** —, *terrā*.

**language**, *lingua*, -ae, F.; (=   
 phraseology) *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, F.

**large**, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.;  
*amplius*, -a, -um, adj.; **so** —, *tan-  
 tus*, -a, -um, adj.

**last**, (= nearest, as in 'last  
 night') *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.;  
 (= remotest) *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.

**lasting**, *perpetuus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**latter**, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr.  
 pron.

**lavish**, *profūsus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**law**, *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.

**lawful**, **it is** —, *licet*,<sup>2</sup> impers.  
 (w. dat. pers.).

**lay**, — **claim to**, *repetō*<sup>3</sup>; **to**  
 — **down arms**, *ab armīs discēdere*;  
 — **waste**, *vastō*<sup>1</sup>; — **aside**, *dēpō-  
 nō*<sup>3</sup>; **to** — **the matter before**,  
*referre ad*.

**lead**, *dūcō*<sup>3</sup>; — **across**, *trādū-  
 cō*<sup>3</sup> (may take two accs.); —  
**out**, *ēdūcō*<sup>3</sup>; — **away**, *abdūcō*<sup>3</sup>;  
 — **against**, *addūcō*<sup>3</sup> (w. *ad* and  
 acc.).

**leader**, *dux*, *ducis*, C.; (= fore-  
 most man) *prīnceps*, -ipis, M.

**league**, **unite in a sworn** —,  
*conjūrō*.<sup>1</sup>

**learn**, *discō*<sup>3</sup>; (= become ac-  
 quainted with) *cōgnōscō*<sup>3</sup>; (=   
 find out by search or inquiry) *re-  
 periō*<sup>4</sup>; (by looking at, examin-  
 ing) *perspicīō*.<sup>3</sup>

**least**, — of all, *minimē*, adv.  
**leave**, *relinquō*<sup>3</sup>; — **behind**,  
*relinquō*<sup>3</sup>.

**left**, *sinister*, -tra, -trum, adj.;  
**on the** —, *sinister*; **be** —, *super-*  
*sum*.

**legion**, *legiō*, -ōnis, F.

**length**, in —, in *longitudinem*.

**less**, *minor*, -us, adj.; (adv.)  
*minus*.

**lest**, *nē* (w. subj.).

**let**, — **loose**, *emittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**letter**, *epistula*, -ae, F.

**level**, *coaequō*<sup>1</sup>.

**liberty**, **one is at** —, *licet*<sup>2</sup> (w.  
 dat. and inf. or *ut* w. subj.).

**lie**, — **prostrate**, *jaceō*<sup>2</sup>.

**lieutenant**, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

**life**, *vīta*, -ae, F.; (with ref. to its  
 several stages, as boyhood, youth,  
 etc.) *aetās*, -ātis, F.; (= [manner  
 of] living) *vīctus*, -ūs, M.

**light**, (subst.) *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.;  
 (adj.) *levis*, -e; **to make** — of,  
*parē pendere* (w. acc.).

**lightning**, **strike by** —, *dē cae-*  
*lō percutiō*, -ere, -cussī, -cussus.

**line**, (= line of battle) *aciēs*,  
 gen. -ē and -ēī, F.; — **of march**,  
*iter*, *itineris*, N.

**lip**, *labrum*, -ī, N.

**list**, *ratio*, -ōnis, F.

**listen**, *audiō*<sup>4</sup>.

**little**, *parvus*, -a, -um, adj.; **very**  
 —, *minimus*, -a, -um, adj.; *minimē*,  
 adv.; **a** — (= by a little) *paulō*.

**live**, *vivō*<sup>3</sup>.

**living**, — **creature**, *animal*,  
*-ālis*, N.

**long**, *longus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= for  
 a long time) *diū*, adv., *longē*,  
 adv.; **how** —, *quā diū*, adv.;  
 (= how far) *quousque*, adv.; —  
 ago, *jampridem*, adv.

**longer**, (= for a longer time)  
*diūtius*, adv., *longius*, adv.

**look**, (= look at) *aspiciō*<sup>3</sup>; —  
 for, *expectō*<sup>1</sup>.

**loose**, **let** —, *emittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**lose**, *amittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**loss**, *detrīmentum*, -ī, N.; **to**  
**risk the** — of, *amittere*.

**lot**, (= fortune) *fortūna*, -ae,  
 F.; (= condition) *condiciō*, -ōnis,  
 F.

**love**, 1. subst., *amor*, -ōris, M.  
 2. vb., *amō*<sup>1</sup>; (= esteem highly)  
*diligō*<sup>3</sup>.

**low**, *humilis*, -e, adj.

**lower**, *inferior*, -ius, adj.

**Lucius**, *Lūcius*, -ī, M., abbr. *L.*

**luxury**, *lururia*, -ae, F.

**Lycomedes**, *Lycomēdēs*, -īs, M.

**Lysander**, *Lysander*, -drī, M.

### M.

**made**, **be** —, *fīō*.

**magistracy**, *magistrātus*, -ūs, M.

**maiden**, *virgō*, -inis, F.

**main**, — **question**, *sententia*,  
 -ae, F.

**maintain**, (of one's rights) *ex-*  
*sequor*<sup>3</sup>; — **one's position**, *cān-*  
*sistō*<sup>3</sup>; — **one's ground**, (= withstand)  
*subsistō*<sup>3</sup>; **the fight**  
**was maintained**, *pūgnātum est*.

**majority**, *mājor pars*.

**make**, *faciō*<sup>3</sup>; (= render) *effi-*  
*ciō*<sup>3</sup>; (= choose, elect, appoint)  
*creō*<sup>1</sup>; (of a speech) *habeō*<sup>2</sup>; —  
**for**, *petō*<sup>3</sup>; — **out** (of a list)  
*conficiō*<sup>3</sup>.

**man**, (= human being, and so  
 including woman) *homo*, -inis, c.;  
 (= an adult male person; opp.  
 mulier, woman) *vir*, *virī*, M.; (= man  
 of noble qualities) *vir*, *virī*,  
 M.

**manage**, *administrō*<sup>1</sup>.

**Manilius**, *Mānilius*, -ī, M.

**maniple**, *manipulus*, -ī, M.

**Manlius**, *Manlius*, -ī, M.

**many**, *multī*, -ae, -a, adj.; **a**  
**great** —, **very** —, *complūrēs*, -a  
 (-ia), gen. -ium, adj.; **so** —, *tot*,  
 indecl. adj.; **so** — **things**, *ita*  
*multa*.

**Marcellus**, *Mārcellus*, -ī, M.

**march**, 1. subst., *iter*, *itineris*,  
 N.; **line of** —, *iter*, *itineris*, N. 2.  
 vb., *iter faciō*<sup>3</sup>.

**marches**, (= frontiers) *fīnēs*,  
 -ium, M.

**marching**, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

**Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.**, abbr. *M.*  
**maritime, maritimus, -a, -um,**  
 adj.

**Marius, Marius, -ī, M.**

**mark, — out, mētor.<sup>1</sup>**

**marriage, to give in —:** *nūptum* (sup.) *dare*; *conlocō*<sup>1</sup> (w. or without *nūptum*).

**marry, (of the woman) nūbō<sup>3</sup>;**  
 see also marriage.

**Marseilles, from —, Massiliē-**  
*sis, -e, adj.*

**marsh, palūs, -ūdis, F.**

**mass, — meeting, cōntiō, -ōnis,**  
 F.

**massacre, caedēs, -is, F.**

**Massiva, Massīva, -ae, M.**

**master, magister, -trī, M.;** *domi-*  
*nus, -ī, M.*

**match, to be a — for, pār**  
 (gen. *paris*) *esse*; — **against, obi-**  
*cio<sup>3</sup>* (w. acc. and dat.).

**matter, (= thing) rēs, gen. rēi**  
 (*rēi, rē*), F.

**matters, it —, interest, rē fert**  
 or *rēfert*; (subst.) *rēs, rērum, F.*

**me, to — (= in my estimation),**  
*apud mē.*

**mean, to —, sibi velle** (see *volō*).

**means, (= resources) facultā-**  
*tēs, -um, F.* (pl.); — **of defence,**  
*remedium, -ī, N.*; **by no —, mi-**  
*nimē, adv.*

**meantime, (of an event ex-**  
 tending through the interval) *in-*  
*terea, adv.*; (of an event occurring  
 within the interval) *interim, adv.*

**meanwhile, interim, adv.;** *in-*  
*terea, adv.* See also meantime.

**measure, (= thing) rēs, gen.**  
*rēi* (*rēi, rē*), F.

**Medea, Mēdēa, -ae, F.**

**meet, to —, (w. vbs. of motion)**  
*obviā, adv.*

**meeting, mass —, cōntiō, -ōnis, F.**

**memory, memoria, -ae, F.;**

**cherish the — of, meminī, def.**

**men, (w. poss. pron.) omitted:**  
 as, **our —, nostrī, -ōrum, M.**

**merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.**

**mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, de-**  
 monstr. pron.

**merely, solum, adv.**

**messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.**

**Messalla, Messālla, -ae, M.**

**mid, — summer, media aestās**  
 (*-ātis, F.*).

**middle, — of, medius, -a, -um,**  
 adj.

**midst, medius, -a, -um, adj.;**  
**through the — of them, per**  
*mediōs.*

**mile, mille passūs; mille pas-**  
*sum.*

**miles, mīlia (mīllia) passuum;**  
*mīlia* (sc. *passuum*).

**military, mīlītāris, -e, adj.;** —  
**tribune, tribūnus mīlītum.**

**milk, lac, lactis, N.**

**mind, animus, -ī, M.;** *ingenium,*  
*-ī, N.*; *mēns, mentis, F.*; (= pur-

pose, intention) *mēns, mentis, F.*;  
**call to —, recordor<sup>1</sup>** (usu. w.  
 acc.); **recall to —, reminiscor, -ī**

(w. gen.; also w. acc.). When  
*reminiscor* and *recordor* are dis-

tinguished, the former means  
 'recall to mind,' the latter 're-

fect on' or 'review.'

**mindful, memor, -oris, adj. (w.**  
 gen.).

**mischievous, maleficium, -ī, N.**

**misery, malum, -ī, N.**

**misfortune, fortuna, -ae, F.**  
 (the misfortune is here implied  
 in the context).

**miss, dēsiderō.<sup>1</sup>**

**mistakes, make —, peccō<sup>1</sup>;** **to**  
**make the same —, eadem peccāre.**

**mob, multitūdō, -inis, F.**

**mock, ēlūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus.**

**mode, cōnsuetūdō, -inis, F.;** (=   
 kind) *genus, -eris, N.*

**modestly, modestē, adv.**

**moment, (= time) tempus, -oris,**  
 N.; **at the — when, tum cum;**  
**for the —, jam, adv.**

**moon, luna, -ae, F.**

**Moor, Maurus, -ī, M.**

**Moorish, Maurus, -a, -um, adj.**

**morally, — bad, improbus, -a,**  
*-um, adj.*

**morals, mōrēs, -um, M. (pl.).**

**more, magis, adv.;** (of quan-

tity) *plūs*, comp. adj. used subst. (w. part. gen.); (frequently w. expressions of number) *amplius*, adv.

**Morini**, *Morinī, -ōrum*, M.

**mortification**, *dolor, -ōris*, M.

**most**, — **people**, *plērīque*, adj. used subst.

**mother**, *māter, -tris*, F.

**mound, earth** —, *tumulus, -ī*, M.

**mount**, *mōns, montis*, M.

**mountain**, *mōns, montis*, M.

**move**, *moveō*<sup>2</sup>; — **forward**, *prōmoveō*<sup>2</sup>; — **deeply**, *permoveō*<sup>2</sup>; **to** — **on**, *pergere hinc*.

**movement**, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi, rē*), F.

**much**, *multus, -a, -um*, adj.;

**very** —, *plūrimus, -a, -um*, adj.; (adv. = by much) *multō*; **how** —, *quantus, -a, -um*, adj.

**multitude**, *multitūdō, -inis*, F.

**music**, *mūsicē, -ēs*, F.

**my**, *meus, -a, -um*, poss. pron.; — **own**, *meus*; **it is** — **pleasure**, *mihī placet*; **for** — **part**, *equidem*, adv.

**myself**, oblique case of *ego*, *mēi*, pers. pron.

## N.

**name**, *nōmen, -inis*, N.

**named**, (= by name) *nōmine*.

**Nantuates**, *Nantuātēs, -um*, M.

**Naples**, *Neāpolis, -is*, F.

**naturally**, *nātūrā* (abl.).

**nature**, *nātūra, -ae*, F.

**near**, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

**nearest**, *proximus, -a, -um*, adj.

**nearly**, *ferē*, adv.

**necessary**, *opus, n.*, used as nom. and acc. only (w. dat. pers. and abl. th.).

**need**, *opus, n.* (see foregoing word); (vb.) *indigeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. gen. or abl.).

**neglect**, *neglegō*<sup>3</sup>.

**neighbors**, *fīnitimī, -ōrum*, M. (adj. used subst.).

**neighboring**, *fīnitimus, -a, -um*, adj.; (= nearest) *proximus, -a, -um*, adj.

**neither**, *neque, nec*, conj.; — **party**, *neutrī, -ōrum*, M.

**Nero**, *Nerō, -ōnis*, M.

**Nervii**, *Nervī, -ōrum*, M.

**never**, *nunquam* or *numquam*, adv.

**nevertheless**, *tamen*, conj.

**new**, *novus, -a, -um*, adj.

**next**, *proximus, -a, -um*, adj.

**night**, *nox, noctis*, F.

**night-fall**, (= first part of the night) *prīma nox* (gen. *noctis*, F.).

**ninth**, *nōnus, -a, -um*, ord. num. adj.

**no**, *nūllus, -a, -um*, adj.; (emphatic) *nēmō* (used adj.); (= not) *nōn*, adv.; — **one**: *nēmō* (see *nēmō* in Latin-English vocabulary); *nūllus, -ius* (adj. used subst.); — **one but**, *nēmō nisi*; **by** — **means**, *minimē*, adv. (superl.).

**nobility**, *nōbilitās, -ātis*, F.

**noble**, *nōbilis, -e*, adj.; subst., *nōbilis, -is*, M.

**nor**, *neque, nec*, conj.

**north**, *septentriō, -ōnis*, M.

**north-east**, see 'north' and 'east.'

**not**, *nōn*, adv.; *haul*, adv. (usu. w. adverbs; also w. *sciō*); (= less) *minus*, adv.; (in questions implying an affirmative answer) *nōnne*, interrog. particle; **and** —, *neque, nec*, conj.; **that** —, **not** (in final, hortatory, imperat., and optative clauses) *nē*; **that** — **any**, **that no** (in final and imperat. clauses), *nē quī, qua* or *quae, quod*, indef. adj.; **not . . . either . . . or**, *neque . . . neque*.

**note**, *animadvertō*<sup>3</sup>.

**nothing**, *nihil* or *nīl*, N., def.; *nūlla rēs*; — **but**, *nihil nisi*.

**now**, *nunc*, adv.; *jam*, adv.

**Numantia**, *Numantia, -ae*, F.

**number**, *numerus, -ī*, M.

**numbers, great** —, *māgnae cōpiae (-arum)*, F.; **in great** —, *frequēns, -entis*, adj.

**numerous**, *crēber, -bra, -brum*, adj.

**Numidians**, *Numidae, -arum*, M.

## O.

**O, oh, ō,** interj.

**obedience, yield** —, *pāreō, -ēre, -ū.*

**obey, pāreō**<sup>2</sup> (w. dat.).

**object', recūsō**<sup>1</sup>; **to — to, re-cūsāre dē** (w. abl.).

**ob'ject, rēs,** gen. *rēi* (*rēi, rē*), F.

**obscurity, obscuritās, -ātis,** F.

**observe, animadvertō**<sup>3</sup>.

**obtain, obtineō**<sup>2</sup> (w. acc.); (= prepare) *comparō*<sup>1</sup>; (= obtain possession of) *potior*<sup>4</sup> (w. abl.; also w. gen.); — **a request, impetrō**<sup>1</sup>.

**occur, accidō**<sup>3</sup>; *fīō*.

**Octodurus, Octōdūrus, -ī,** M.

**odds, struggle against** —, *lab-rōrō*<sup>1</sup>.

**Oedipus, Oedipūs, -odis** or *-ī,* M.

**of, sign of gen.;** (= about, concerning) *dē,* prep. w. abl.; (= from) *ab, ā, ex, ē, dē,* preps. w. abl.; **out** —, *ex, ē,* prep. w. abl.

**off, to come** —, *sē inde recipere*; **to come — conqueror, superior discēdere**; **carry** —, *abdūcō*<sup>3</sup>; **cut** —: *excipiō*<sup>3</sup>; (from supplies) *prohibeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc. and abl.); **ward — from, prōpulsō**<sup>1</sup> (w. *ab, ā* and abl.); **hold** —, *abstineō*<sup>2</sup>.

**offence, rēs,** gen. *rēi* (*rēi, rē*), F.

**offer, — resistance, resistō**<sup>3</sup>.

**office, (= duty, function) mū-nus, -eris,** N.

**often, saepe,** adv.

**oftentimes, saepenumērō,** adv.

**old, vetus, -eris,** adj.; — **man, senex, senis,** M.

**old age, senectūs, -ūtis,** F.

**on, in,** prep. w. abl.; (designating the point from which) *ab, ā, ex, ē,* preps. w. abl.; (= concerning) *dē,* prep. w. abl.; (= against) *in,* prep. w. acc.; (= from this place) *hinc,* adv.; **On!** *agite* (imperat.); (in expressions of time) sign of abl. of time.

**once, quondam,** adv.; **at** — (= at one time) *ūnō tempore.*

**one, ūnus, -a, -um,** num. adj.; (of two) *alter, -era, -erum*; (w. subst. pl. in form, but sing. in

meaning) *ūnī, -ae, -a* (pl. of *ūnus*); — **by** —, *singulī, -ae, -a,* distr. num. adj.; **this — thing, id ūnum**; **one . . . another, aliūs . . . aliūs**; **at one time . . . at another, aliās . . . aliās.**

**one's self, suī, sibi, sē** (*sēsē*), reflexive pron.; **devote** —, *serviō*<sup>4</sup> (w. dat.).

**only, (= altogether, in all) omnīnō,** adv.; **if** —, *dum,* conj. (w. subj.); **the — one, ūnus, -a, -um,** num. adj.; **not only . . . but also, et . . . et, nōn modo** or *nōn solum . . . sed etiam* or *vērūm etiam*; **and not only . . . but also, neque solum . . . sed etiam.**

**onset, impetus, -ūs,** M.

**open, laxō**<sup>1</sup>; **to — an engage-ment, proelium committere.**

**openly, apertē,** adv.

**opinion, sententia, -ae,** F.; *opī-niō, -ōnis,* F.

**opportune, opportūnus, -a, -um,** adj.

**opportunity, occāsio, -ōnis,** F.; *facultās, -ātis,* F.

**opposed, diversus, -a, -um,** adj.

**or, aut,** conj.; **either . . . or:** (when a choice is offered) *vel . . . vel*; (when one excludes the other) *aut . . . aut*; **not . . . either . . . or, neque . . . neque.**

**orator, orātor, -ōris,** M.

**order, 1. subst., imperium, -iī,** N. 2. vb., *jubeō* (w. infin.). 3. conj., **in — to: ut** (w. subj.); (w. comp.) *quō* (w. subj.).

**Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -īgis,** M.

**other, aliūs, -a, -ud,** adj. and subst.; **some . . . others, pars . . . aliī;** (= the rest of) *ceterī, -ae, -a,* adj. (usu. pl.); **with each —, inter sē;** **some . . . the others, alterī . . . alterī;** **others', aliēnus, -a, -um,** adj.

**ought, dēbeō**<sup>2</sup>; *oportet,*<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. acc. and infin. as subject; also w. subj. clause).

**our, — own, noster, -tra, -trum,** poss. pron.; — **men, — party, nostrī, -ōrum,** M.

**out**, — **of**, *ex*, *-ē*, prep. w. abl.  
**outcry**, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.  
**outstretch**, *pandō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**over**, see 'go' or 'step.'  
**overcome**, — **with terror**, *per-terreō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**overlook**, *condōnō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**overwhelm**, *opprimō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**owing**, — **to**, *propter*, prep. w. acc.  
**own**, **his** —, **their** —, *suus*, *-a*, *-um*, poss. pron.; **our** —, *noster*, *-tra*, *-trum*, poss. pron.; **my** —, *meus*, *-a*, *-um*, poss. pron.

## P.

**pace**, *passus*, *-ūs*, M.  
**pain**, *dolor*, *-ōris*, M.  
**pains**, *opera*, *-ae*, F.  
**panic**, there is a —, *trepidatur*.  
**paralyze**, — **with fear**, *per-terreō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**pardon**, *ignōscō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**parent**, *parēns*, *-entis*, C.  
**Parmenio**, *Parmeniō*, *-ōnis*, M.  
**part**, *pars*, *partis*, F.; **for my** —, *equidem*, adv.; **take** — **in**, *intersum* (w. dat.).  
**partiality**, exercise —, *studeō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**party**, *pars*, *partis*, F.; **our** —, *nostrī*, *-ōrum*, M.  
**pass**, *effluō*, *-ere*, *-xī*; — **judgment upon**, *sentiō*.<sup>4</sup> (w. *dē* and abl.); — **round**, *circumferō*; — **through**, *trānscō*.<sup>4</sup>  
**passage**, *iter*, *itineris*, N.  
**passion**, give way to —, *irā-scor*.<sup>3</sup>  
**passionate**, *irācundus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.  
**past**, the —, *praeterita*, *-ōrum*, N., p. a. used subst.  
**path**, by a circuitous —, *in circuitū*.  
**patience**, *patientia*, *-ae*, F.  
**patrimony**, *rēs familiāris*, adj.  
**patriotism**, *amor patriae*.  
**pay**, — **respects to**, *salūtō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**peace**, *pāx*, *pācis*, F.  
**Pelusium**, *Pēlūsium*, *-ī*, N.  
**penalty**, *poena*, *-ae*, F.; (= fine) *ūs*, *litis*, F.

**penetrate**, — **to**, *adeō*.<sup>4</sup> (w. *ad* and acc.).

**penetrating**, *ācer*, *-cris*, *-cre*, adj.

**people**, *populus*, *-ī*, M.; **com-  
mon** —, *plēbs*, *-is*, F.; **most** —, *plēriq̄ue*, M. pl. adj. used subst.

**perceive**, *animū advertō* or *animadvertō*.<sup>3</sup> (w. acc.); *perspicio*.<sup>3</sup>

**perform**, *praestō*.<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.).

**peril**, *periculum*, *-ī*, N.

**perilous**, *periculōsus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

**period**, *tempus*, *-oris*, N.

**permit**, *patior*.<sup>3</sup>

**permitted**, it is —, *licet*.<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. dat. pers.).

**pernicious**, *perniciōsus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

**persevere**, — **in**, *cōfirmō*.<sup>1</sup>

**personally**, **he**, **they**, etc. —, proper form of *ipse*.

**persons**, these same —, *īdem* (masc. pl.), demonstr. pron.

**persuade**, *persuādeō*.<sup>2</sup> (w. dat. pers.).

**Picene**, *Picēnus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

**pile**, *lignum*, *-ī*, N.

**pilot**, *gubernātor*, *-ōris*, M.

**Piso**, *Pisō*, *-ōnis*, M.

**pitch**, *pānō*.<sup>3</sup>

**pitiable**, *miser*, *-era*, *-erum*, adj.

**pity**, *misererō*.<sup>2</sup> (w. gen.).

**place**, 1. subst., *locus*, *-ī*, M.; in pl. (usually) *loca*, *-ōrum*, N.;

**in that** —, *ibī*, adv.; **to some** —, *aliquō*, adv.; **take** —, *fīō*. 2. vb.,

*pōnō*.<sup>3</sup>; *conlocō*.<sup>1</sup>

**plan**, *cōsiliūm*, *-ī*, N.

**pleasant**, *grātus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

**please**, *dēlectō*.<sup>1</sup>; (= wish, choose) *rolā*.

**pleasure**, it is one's —, *placet*.<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. dat. pers.).

**point**, to that —, *eō*, adv.; **in** — **of fact**, *rē*; **to make a** — **of**,

*dare operam ut* (w. subj.); — **out**, *expōnō*.<sup>3</sup>

**policy**, *cōsiliūm*, *-ī*, N.

**political**, — **power**, *potentiā*, *-ae*, F.

**Pompey**, *Pompējus*, *Pompēi*, M.

**Pontus**, *Pontus*, -ī, M.  
**poor**, *pauper*, -eris, adj.  
**popular**, (= acceptable) *acceptus*, -a, -um, p. a.  
**population**, *hominum numerus*, -ī, M.  
**position**, (= place) *locus*, -ī, M.;  
**take —, maintain one's —, consist** *istō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**possess**, *possideō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**possession**, *possessio*; -ōnis, F.;  
**obtain — of**, *potior*<sup>4</sup> (w. abl.; also w. gen.); **take — of, seize**, *occupō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.).  
**possible, possibly**, (w. superl.) *quam*, adv. (w. or without proper fm. of *possum*); **it is —, (= it is permitted)** *licet*,<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. dat. pers.).  
**post, constitute**<sup>3</sup>; **be posted**, *cōsistō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**posterity**, *posterī*, -ōrum, M. (adj. used subst.).  
**poverty**, *inopia*, -ae, F.  
**power**, *potestās*, -ātis, F.  
**powerful**, *potēns*, -entis, adj.; **to be very —, largiter posse**.  
**practice**, *cōsuētūdō*, -inis, F.; (= training) *exercitatio*, -ōnis, F.  
**praetor**, *praetor*, -ōris, M.  
**praise**, *laudō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**pray** (exclam.), *tandem*, adv.  
**precautions, take special —, magnopere praecaveō** (-ēre, -cāvī, -cautus).  
**preceding, superior**, -ius, adj. comp.; **on the — day**, *prīdiē*, adv.  
**prefer**, *antepōnō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. and dat.); (= wish rather) *mālō*.  
**preoccupation**, *cōgitatō*, -ōnis, F.  
**prepare**, *parō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**presence**, *praesentia*, -ae, F.  
**present**, *praesēns*, -entis, adj.; **the —, praesentia, -ium, neut. pl. adj. used subst.; **be —, adsum**.  
**preserve**, *cōservō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**preserved**, *salvus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**press, — earnestly, postulō**<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, -ū).**

**prevail, — upon, persuādeō**<sup>2</sup> (w. dat. pers.).  
**prevent, prohibeō**.<sup>2</sup>  
**price, at the highest possible —, quam plurimō**.  
**priestly, — dignity, sacerdotium**, -ī, N.  
**principle, recognized —, jūs, jūris**, N.  
**private, — citizen, prīvātus**, -ī, M. (p. a. used subst.); — **resources, rēs familiāris**.  
**Procillus, Procillus**, -ī, M.  
**proclaim, (= declare, pronounce) jūdicō**.<sup>1</sup>  
**produce, fructus**, -ūs, M.  
**progress, be in —, fīō**.  
**promise, polliceor**.<sup>2</sup>  
**proper, it is —, oportet**,<sup>2</sup> impers.  
**prophetess, prophet, vātēs, -is**, C.  
**prospect, spēs**, gen. *spēi* (ēi), F.  
**prosperous, florēns**, -entis, p. a.  
**prostrate, lie —, jaceō**.<sup>2</sup>  
**protect, mūniō**<sup>4</sup>; **circumnūniō**<sup>4</sup>; — **from, prohibeō**<sup>2</sup> (w. *ab* and abl.).  
**protection, praesidium**, -ī, N.  
**provide, prōvideō**.<sup>2</sup>  
**provided, dum, dummodo** (w. subj.).  
**province, prōvincia**, -ae, F.  
**provisions, rēs frūmentāria**.  
**provocation, without —, injūriā**.  
**public, pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj.; — **enemy, hostis**, -is, C.  
**punish, pūniō**.<sup>4</sup>  
**punishment, supplicium**, -ī, N.; (= expiation or penalty) *poena*, -ae, F.  
**pupil, discipulus**, -ī, M.  
**purificatory, — sacrifice, lūstrum**, -ī, N.  
**purpose, mēns, mentis**, F.; (= wish) *voluntās*, -ātis, F.; **for the — of, causā** (w. gen. preceding); (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.  
**pursue, sequor**.<sup>3</sup>  
**put, — aside, dēpōnō**<sup>3</sup>; — **to death, necō**<sup>1</sup>; — **to flight, in fugam coniciō**.<sup>3</sup>



## Q.

**quantity, a great** — of, *ingēns, -entis*, adj.

**quarter**, (= part, direction) *pars, partis*, F.

**quarters, winter** —, *hiberna, -ōrum*, N.; **at close** —, *comminus*, adv.

**quest, go in** — of, *petō*.<sup>3</sup>

**question, main** —, *sententia, -ae*, F.

**quickly**, *celeriter*, adv.

**quiet, be** —, *quiescō*.<sup>3</sup>

**quietly**, *modestē*, adv.

**quite**, *plānē*, adv.

## R.

**race, genus, -eris**, N.; (= people) *populus, -ī*, M.

**raid, to make a** — on, *sē ēicere* (w. *in* and acc.).

**raise**, *exstruō*.<sup>3</sup>

**rampart, vāllum, -ī**, N.

**rank, ordo, -inis**, M.; (= nobility) *nōbilitās, -ātis*, F.; **of high** —, *nōbilis, -e*, adj.

**rapidly**, *strēnuē*, adv.

**rate, at any** —, *certē*, adv.

**rather**, (w. an adj.) sign of comp.; **choose** —, *mālō*.

**reach, ēvādō, -ere, -sī, -sus** (w. *in* and acc.).

**readily**, *facile*, adv.

**rear, novissimum agmen, -inis**, N.; **in the** —: *ab novissimīs; ā novissimō agmine*.

**reason, causa, -ae**, F.; **for what** —, *quā dē causā*.

**recall, — to mind, reminiscor, -ī** (w. gen.; also w. acc.); (= withdraw) *dēducō*.<sup>3</sup>

**recalling**, (= mindful of) *memor, -oris*, adj. (w. gen.).

**receive, accipiō**.<sup>3</sup>; (= take) *capio*.<sup>3</sup>

**recent, recēns, -entis**, adj.

**recklessly, temerē**, adv.

**recklessness, audācia, -ae**, F.

**recognized, — principle, jūis, jūris**, N.

**recollection, animus, -ī**, M.

**recompense, remūneror**.<sup>1</sup>

**recount, memorō**.<sup>1</sup>; *commemorō*.<sup>1</sup>

**recourse, have** — to, *dēscendō*.<sup>3</sup> (w. *ad* and acc.); *dēclinō*.<sup>1</sup> (w. *ad* and acc.).

**recover, to** — (intr.), *sē recipere*; (from illness) *convalescō, -ere, -ū*.

**redoubt, castellum, -ī**, N.

**reduce, redigō**.<sup>3</sup>

**reēnforcement, subsidium, -ī**, N.

**reference, make** — to, *referō* (w. *ad* and acc.).

**reflect, — on, recordor**.<sup>1</sup> (usu. w. acc.).

**refrain, — from, temperō** (w. *ab* and abl.).

**refuge, to flee for** —, *sē recipere*.

**refuse, recūsō**.<sup>1</sup>; **to** — to: *recūsāre quōminus* or *quīn* (w. subj.); also *recūsāre* w. infin.; **to** — to pay, *recūsāre dē* (w. abl.).

**regard, (= consider) habeō**.<sup>2</sup>; (= respect, heed) *spectō*.<sup>1</sup>; **have** — for, *cōsulō*.<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).

**region, regiō, -ōnis**, F.

**regret, paenitet**.<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

**reject, repudiō**.<sup>1</sup>

**release, liberō**.<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and abl.).

**relief, subsidium, -ī**, N.

**relieve, (= succor) sublevō**.<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.); (= set free) *liberō*.<sup>1</sup>

**remain, manēō**.<sup>2</sup>; (= stay behind) *remaneō*.<sup>2</sup>; (= stay through) *permaneō*.<sup>2</sup>; (= be) *sum*.

**remaining, reliquus, -a, -um**, adj.

**Reman, Rēmus, -ī**, M.

**remarkable, (= great) māgnus, -a, -um**, adj.

**remember, meminī**, def. (w. gen.; also w. acc.); *memoriā teneō*.<sup>2</sup>

**remembrance, memoriā, -ae**, F.

**Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum**, M.

**remind, admoncō**.<sup>2</sup> (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.; also abl. th. w. *dē*).

**remiss, be** —, *dēsum*.

**remotest**, — part of, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.

**remove**, *removeō*<sup>2</sup>; (= move to a distance) *āmoveō*<sup>2</sup>; (= do away with, destroy) *tollō*<sup>3</sup>.

**render**, *efficiō*<sup>3</sup>; (= bring) *ferō*.

**renew**, *renovō*<sup>1</sup>.

**renown**, of the highest —, *clārissimus*, -a, -um, adj.

**reparation**, make —, *satisfaciō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).

**repel**, *dēfendō*<sup>3</sup>.

**repent**, *paenitet*,<sup>2</sup> impers. (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

**reply**, tell in —, *respondeō*<sup>2</sup>.

**report**, *nūntiō*<sup>1</sup>; (= divulge) *ēnūntiō*<sup>1</sup>; (= bring back word) *renūntiō*<sup>1</sup>.

**reprobate**, *improbus*, -a, -um, adj.

**reputation**, *opīniō*, -ōnis, F.

**request**, obtain a —, *impetrō*<sup>1</sup>.

**require**, *egeō*<sup>2</sup> (w. gen. or abl.).

**requisition**, make a — for, *imperō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and dat.).

**rescue**, *eripiō*<sup>3</sup>.

**resist**, *resistō*<sup>3</sup>.

**resistance**, offer —, *resistō*<sup>3</sup>.

**resolve**, *cōstituō*<sup>3</sup>.

**resources**, *opēs*, -um, F.; (= private resources) *rēs familiāris*.

**respect**, *spectō*<sup>1</sup>; *observō*<sup>1</sup>.

**respects**, pay — to, *salūtō*<sup>1</sup>.

**respond**, *respondeō*<sup>2</sup>.

**rest**, the — of, *reliquus*, -a, -um, adj.; the —: *reliqui*, -ōrum, masc. adj. used subst.; *ceteri*, -ōrum, masc. adj. used subst.; set at —, *compōnō*<sup>3</sup>; (vb.) *requiescō*, -ere, -ēvi, -ētus (adj.).

**restore**, *reddō*<sup>3</sup>; *restituō*<sup>3</sup>.

**restrain**, to — one's inclination, *sibi temperāre quīn* (w. subj.).

**result**, the — is, *fit* (*fīō*).

**results**, it —, *fit* (*fīō*).

**retain**, *retineō*<sup>2</sup>.

**retard**, *tardō*<sup>1</sup>.

**return**, 1. intr., *revertō*<sup>3</sup>; *revertor*<sup>3</sup>; *redeō*<sup>4</sup> 2. tr., *reddō*<sup>3</sup>.

**revenue**, *vectigal*, -ālis, N.

**review**, *recordor*<sup>1</sup> (usu. w. acc.); *recōgnōscō*<sup>3</sup>.

**revile**, *carpō*<sup>3</sup>.

**revolt**, — from, *dēsciscō*<sup>3</sup> (w. ab or ā and abl.).

**reward**, *praemium*, -ī, N.

**Rhine**, *Rhēnus*, -ī, M.

**Rhone**, *Rhodanus*, -ī, M.

**riches**, *divitiae*, -ārum, F.

**ridge**, *jugum*, -ī, N.

**right**, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, also -tera, -terum, adj.

**ripe**, *mātūrus*, -a, -um, adj.

**rise**, *orior*<sup>4</sup> (w. some fms. of the 3d conjugation).

**rising**, *ortus*, -ūs, M.; — ground, *tumulus*, -ī, M.

**risk**, *perīculum*, -ī, N.; — the loss of, *āmittō*<sup>3</sup>; without — of injury, *sine fraude*.

**river**, *flūmen*, -inis, N.

**road**, *iter*, *itineris*, N.; (= the travelled road) *via*, -ae, F.

**rob**, *exspoliō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc. and abl.).

**rock**, *rūpēs*, -is, F.

**Roman**, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, adj.

**Romans**, *Rōmānī*, -ōrum, M.

**Rome**, *Rōma*, -ae, F.

**room**, *locus*, -ī, M.

**rough**, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.

**round**, pass —, *circumferō*.

**rout**, (= drive before one's self) *prōpellō*, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; (= throw into confusion) *perturbō*<sup>1</sup>.

**route**, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

**royal**, *rēgius*, -a, -um, adj.

**rudded**, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.

**ruinous**, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

**rule**, *regō*<sup>3</sup>.

**rush**, make a —, *concurrō*<sup>3</sup>.

## S.

**Sabinus**, *Sabīnus*, -ī, M.

**sacrifice**, 1. subst., *supplicia*, -ōrum, N.; **purificatory** —, *lūstrum*, -ī, N. 2. vb., (of victims) *immolō*<sup>1</sup>; (= lose) *āmittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**sacrificial**, — dish, *patera*, -ae, F.

**sad**, *trīstis*, -e, adj.

**saddles**, furnished with —, *ephippiatus*, -a, -um, adj.

**sadly**, (= sad) *trīstis*, -e, adj.  
**safe**, *salvus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**safety**, *salūs*, -ūtis, F.  
**sail**, *nāvigō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**sailor**, *nauta*, -ae, M.  
**sake**, **for the — of**, *causā* (w. gen. preceding).  
**Sambre**, *Sabis*, -is, M. (acc. -im; abl. -i).  
**same**, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.; **these — persons**, *īdem* (pl. masc.); **at the — time**, *simul*, adv.  
**Santones**, *Santonēs*, -um, M.  
**sate**, *expleō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**satisfaction**, **give —**, *satisfaciō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).  
**satisfy**, *expleō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**savage**, *barbarus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**say**, *dīcō*<sup>3</sup>; **says he**, *īquit* (placed after one or more words of a direct quotation); — **not**, *negō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**Scipio**, *Scīpiō*, -ōnis, M.  
**sea**, *mare*, -is, N.; (w. ref. to the surface) *aequor*, -oris, N.; **by —**: *marī*; (adj.) *maritīmus*, -a, -um.  
**search**, *quaerō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**season**, **winter —**, *brūma*, -ae, F.  
**second**, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.; **a — time**, *īterum*, adv.  
**secondly**, *deinde*, adv.  
**secret**, **in —**, *occultō*, adv.  
**secure**, *mūniō*<sup>4</sup>; **make —**, *mūniō*<sup>4</sup>; **strive to —**, *appetō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**see**, *videō*<sup>2</sup>; *cernō*<sup>3</sup>; (= descry) *cōnspicīō*<sup>3</sup>; (= provide or see to) *prōvideō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**seek**, *petō*<sup>3</sup>; — **after**, *appetō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**seem**, *videor*.<sup>2</sup>  
**seems**, **it — good**, *placet*,<sup>2</sup> impers.  
**Seguslavi**, *Segūsīāvī*, -ōrum, M.  
**seize**, (= grasp firmly) *comprehendō*<sup>3</sup>; (= take away) *dētrahō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.); (= take possession of) *occupō*.<sup>1</sup>  
**select**, *dēligō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**Sena**, *Sēna*, -ae, F.  
**senate**, *senātus*, -ūs, M.

**senator**, *senātor*, -ōris, M.  
**send**, *mittō*<sup>3</sup>; — **forward**, — **in advance**, *praemittō*<sup>3</sup>; — **back**, *remittō*<sup>3</sup>; — **for**, *arcēssō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**separate**, *dividō*<sup>3</sup>; *sēcernō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**Sequani**, *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, M.  
**Sequanian**, *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**serve**, **to — as**, *esse* (w. dat.).  
**service**, *beneficiūm*, -ī, N.  
**services**, *opera*, -ae, F.  
**serviceable**, *ūlōneus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**Servius**, *Servius*, -ī, M.  
**set**, — **up**, *cōstituō*<sup>3</sup>; — **out**, *proficiscor*<sup>3</sup>; — **forth**, *prōpōnō*<sup>3</sup>; — **at rest**, *compōnō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**setting**, *occāsus*, -ūs, M.  
**settle**, (of disputes) *compōnō*.<sup>3</sup>  
**sever**, — **themselves**, pass. of *discernō*, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus.  
**several**, *complūrēs*, -a (-ia), gen. -ium, adj.  
**severe**, *gravis*, -e, adj.  
**severely**, *graviter*, adv.; *vehementer*, adv.  
**shake**, *concutiō*, -ere, -cussī, -cussus.  
**shameless**, — **course**, *audācia*, -ae, F.  
**shames**, **it —**, *puDET*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).  
**shape**, *figūra*, -ae, F.  
**shave**, *rādō*, -ere, -sī, -sus.  
**she**, *ea* (fem. of *is*); omitted when implied in the context.  
**shed**, *vīnea*, -ae, F.  
**shield**, *scūtum*, -ī, N.  
**ship**, *nāvis*, -is, F.; — **of war**, *nāvis longa*.  
**shipwreck**, *naufragium*, -ī, N.  
**shore**, (of the sea) *lītus*, -oris, N.  
**short**, *brevīs*, -e, adj.  
**shortest**, *proxīmus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**shouting**, *clāmor*, -ōris, M.  
**show**, *ostendū*<sup>3</sup>; *daccō*.<sup>2</sup>  
**shrink**, — **from**, *dēprecor*.<sup>1</sup>  
**shudder**, — **at**, *perhorrēscō*, -ere, -horruī.  
**shut**, — **up**, *clausus*, -a, -um, p. a.

sick, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*, adj.  
side, *latus*, -*eris*, N.; (= part)  
*pars*, *partis*, F.

sight, *cōspectus*, -*ūs*, M.; (= eyes) *oculī*, -*ōrum*, M.; catch —  
of, *cōspiciō*.<sup>3</sup>

signal, *sīgnum*, -*ī*, N.

Silanus, *Sīlānus*, -*ī*, M.

similar, *similis*, -*e*, adj.

since, *quoniam*, conj.; *cum*,  
conj. (w. subj.).

single, *singulī*, -*ae*, -*a*, distr.  
num. adj.; a —, *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um*,  
num. adj.

site, *locus*, -*ī*, M.

six, *sex*, indecl. num. adj.

sixty, *sexāgintā*, indecl. num.  
adj.

skilled, *perītus*, -*a*, -*um*, p. a.  
(w. gen.).

skillful, *perītus*, -*a*, -*um*, p. a.  
(w. gen.).

skin, *pellis*, -*is*, F.

slaughter, *caedēs*, -*is*, F.

slave, *servus*, -*ī*, M.

slavery, *servitūs*, -*ūtis*, F.

slaves, *familia*, -*ae*, F.; *servi-*  
*tium*, -*ī*, N. (in sing. or pl.).

slay, *occidō*.<sup>3</sup>

sleep, (= rest) *requiēscō*, -*ere*,  
-*ēvi*, -*ētus* (adj.).

slight, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.;  
*mediocris*, -*e*, adj.

sloping, *dēclivis*, -*e*, adj.

small, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (= low)  
*humilis*, -*e*, adj.

smaller, *minor*, -*us*, adj.

smoke, *fūmus*, -*ī*, M.

so, *sic*, adv.; *ita*, adv.; *tam*,  
adv.; and —, *itaque*, conj.; so  
... that, *sic* or *ita* ... *utī* or *ut*  
(w. subj.); so ... as, *tam* ...  
*quam*.

soil, *ager*, -*grī*, M.

soldier, *mīles*, -*itis*, M.; com-  
mon —, *mīles*, -*itis*, M.; foot —,  
*pedes*, -*itis*, M.

solicit, *postulō*.<sup>1</sup>

solicitude, kind —, *voluntās*,  
-*ūtis*, F.

solitude, *sōlitūdō*, -*inis*, F.

some, *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquid*,

indef. adj. pron.; — one, — thing,  
*aliquis*, *aliquid*, indef. pron.; some  
(pl.), *aliquī*, *quidam*; some ...  
others, *aliī* or *pars* ... *abī*; some  
... the others (the whole num-  
ber being made up of two parties),  
*alterī* ... *alterī*; to — place, *ali-*  
*quō*, adv.

son, *fīlius*, -*ī*, M.

son-in-law, *gener*, -*erī*, M.

soon, as — as, *simul atque*,  
*ubī primum*.

sooner, *celerius*, adv.; *mātū-*  
*rius*, adv.

sorry, I am —, *mē miseret*,<sup>2</sup>  
impers. (w. gen.).

sort, of such a —, *ejus modī*.

source, (= head) *caput*, -*itis*, N.

sovereign, — power, — au-  
thority, *rēgnum*, -*ī*, N.

space, *spatium*, -*ī*, N.

spare, 1. vb., *parcō*.<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).

2. adj., *exiguus*, -*a*, -*um*.

speak, *loquor*.<sup>3</sup>; *dicō*.<sup>3</sup>

speaking, generally —, *plē-*  
*rumque*, adv.

special, (= specially) *māgno-*  
*pere*, adv.

speed, *celeritās*, -*ātis*, F.

speedily, *celeriter*, adv.

speedy, *celer*, -*eris*, -*ere*, adj.

spend, — the winter, *hiemō*.<sup>1</sup>

spirit, *animus*, -*ī*, M.

spiritless, *iners*, -*ertis*, adj.

spring, *vēr*, *vērīs*, N.

Spurius, *Spurius*, -*ī*, M., abbr.  
*Sp.*

squander, *profundō*, -*ere*, -*fūdī*,  
-*fūsus*.

stable, *fīrmus*, -*a*, -*um*.

stage, *gradus*, -*ūs*, M.

stand, (= keep erect) *stō*.<sup>1</sup>;  
stand, make a —, *cōsistō*.<sup>3</sup>; —  
by, *adsum* (w. dat.).

standards, *sīgna*, -*ōrum*, N.

state, *civitās*, -*ātis*, F.; *rēs pū-*  
*blica*, *rēi pūblica*, F.

Statilius, *Statilius*, -*ī*, M.

station, *cōstituō*.<sup>3</sup>; *conlocō*.<sup>1</sup>

stature, *statūra*, -*ae*, F.; dimin-

utive —, *brevitās*, -*ātis*, F.

steadfastness, *cōstantia*, -*ae*, F.

stealthily, *fūrtim*, adv.  
 steep, (= high) *altus*, -a, -um,  
 p. a.  
 steer, *gubernō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 step, — over, *trānsgridior*, -ī,  
 -gressus (w. acc.).  
 stern, *puppis*, -is, F.  
 still, (= nevertheless) *tamen*,  
 conj.  
 stimulate, *excitō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 stone, *saxum*, -ī, N.  
 stores, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F.  
 storm, *tempestās*, -ātis, F.  
 story, *tabulātum*, -ī, N.  
 strange, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.;  
 (= new) *novus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 stratagem, *cōsiliūm*, -ī, N.  
 strengthen, *corrōborō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 stretch, *tendō*.<sup>3</sup>  
 strife, (of political parties)  
*studium*, -ī, N.  
 strike, (by lightning) *percutō*,  
 -ere, -cussī, -cussus.  
 strive, — to secure, *appetō*.<sup>3</sup>  
 strong, so — a, *tantus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.  
 struggle, 1. subst., *contentiō*,  
 -ōnis, F. 2. vb., — against odds,  
*labōrō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 subject, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*),  
 F.; (= tributary) *stīpendiārius*, -a,  
 -um, adj.  
 submit, *serviō*<sup>4</sup> (w. dat.); —  
 to: *patior*<sup>3</sup>; *subeō*<sup>4</sup> (w. acc.).  
 subsist, *vescor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.).  
 substantially, (= almost) *ferē*,  
 adv.; — as follows, *hūjusce*  
*modi*.  
 successful, *secundus*, -a, -um,  
 adj; bring to a — issue, *bene*  
*gerō*.<sup>3</sup>  
 succession, in —, *continuus*, -a,  
 -um, adj.  
 successive, *continuus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.  
 such, *tālis*, -e, adj.; *is*, *ea*, *id*,  
 demonstr. pron.; of — a sort,  
*ējus modi*; (= so great) *tantus*,  
 -a, -um, adj.  
 sudden, *repentīnus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.; *repente*,  
 adv.

Suebi, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, M.  
 Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs*, -um, M.  
 suffer, *patior*.<sup>3</sup>  
 sufferable, *ferendus*, -a, -um  
 (ger. of *ferō*).  
 sufficient, *satis* (w. part. gen.);  
 — time, *spatium*, -ī, N.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 (w. *ad* and acc., or w. dat.; also  
 w. rel. clause containing subj.).  
 Sulla, *Sūlla*, -ae, M.; of —, *Sūl-*  
*lānus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 sum, *summa*, -ae, F.  
 summer, *aestās*, -ātis, F.; mid  
 —, *media aestās*.  
 summit, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 summon, *ēvocō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.  
 sunrise, *ortus sōlis* (*ortus*, -ūs,  
 M.).  
 sunset, *sōlis occāsus*, -ūs, M.  
 supplication, in —, *supplex*,  
 -icis, adj.  
 supplies, *commēdatus*, -ūs, M.  
 supply, *cōpia*, -ae, F.  
 support, send to the — of,  
*submitto*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat. pers.); come  
 to the — of, *subveniō*<sup>4</sup> (w. dat.).  
 suppose, (ironical) *crēdō*<sup>3</sup>; (=   
 believe) *crēdō*<sup>3</sup>; (= think) *existi-*  
*mō*<sup>1</sup>; (= judge) *jūdicō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 supremacy, *prīncipātus*, -ūs, M.  
 supreme, — authority, *impe-*  
*riūm*, -ī, N.  
 surpass, *superō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 surrender, *trādō*<sup>3</sup>; *dēdō*.<sup>3</sup>  
 surround, *circumstō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 suspicion, (= opinion) *opīniō*,  
 -ōnis, F.; ground of —, *suspiciō*,  
 -ōnis, F.; free from —, *pūrgātus*,  
 -a, -um, p. a.  
 sustain, *sustīnēō*<sup>2</sup>; *tolerō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 Swabians, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, M.  
 sway, *imperium*, -ī, N.  
 swear, *jūrō*.<sup>1</sup>  
 swift, *celer*, -eris, -ere, adj.;  
*vīlōx*, -ōcis, adj.  
 swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, F.  
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, M.; *ferrum*,  
 -ī, N.  
 sworn, unite in a — league,  
*conjūrō*.<sup>1</sup>

## T.

**take**, *capio*<sup>3</sup>; (= lead out) *ēdūcō*<sup>3</sup>; — **from or away**, *adimō*<sup>3</sup> or *ēripio*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**talent**, *talentum*, -ī, N.

**talk**, — **of**, *dicō*<sup>3</sup>.

**Tarquini**, *Tarquiniū*, -ōrum, M.

**task**, **take to** —: *incūsō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.); *accūsō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.).

**teach**, *doceō*<sup>2</sup> (w. two accs.).

**teacher**, *magister*, -trī, M.; *praeceptor*, -ōris, M.

**tear**, *lacrima*, -ae, F.

**tell**, — **in reply**, *respondeō*<sup>2</sup>.

**tempest**, *tempestās*, -ātis, F.

**temple**, *templum*, -ī, N.

**ten**, *decem*, indecl. num. adj.; — **each**, *dēnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

**tenth**, *decimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

**territory**, *fīnēs*, -ium, M.

**terror**, **overcome with** —, *pertereō*<sup>2</sup>.

**Teucri**, *Teucrī*, -ōrum, M.

**than**, *quam*.

**thanks**, *grātia*, -arum, F.

**that**, *ille*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *ille*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= that of yours) *iste*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (stronger than *iste*) *iste tuus*; (contemptuous) *iste*, -a, -ud; — **one**, *ille*; (= who or which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; (in final clauses): *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (w. comp.) *quō* (w. subj.); — **not**, *nē* (w. subj.); (in clauses of result) *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (after neg. expressions or interrog. expressions implying a neg.) *quīn* (w. subj.); (after verbs of fearing) *nē* (w. subj.); **would** —, *utinam* (w. opt. subj.); **in** — **the**, *quī* (= *cum is*) w. subj.

**the . . . the**, *quō . . . eō*.

**Thebes**, *Thēbae*, -arum, F.

**their**, (referring to the subject) — **own**, *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; (= of them, of these) *eōrum*, *eārum* (gen. pl. of *is*); omitted

when readily understood from the context.

**them**, (pers. pron.) proper fm. of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

**themselves**, (reflex.) *suī*, *sibī*, *sē* or *sēsē*; (intens.) *ipsī*, -ae, -a.

**then**, (of time) *tum*, adv.; (= secondly) *deinde* (pronounced: de'inde), adv.; (of inference or transition) *igitur*, conj. (usu. follows the first word of the sent.).

**thence**, *inde*, adv.

**there**, *ibī*, adv.; (= thither) *eō* or *illō*, adv.

**therefore**, *quā rē*; *proinde* (pronounced: pro'inde), adv.

**these**, pl. of *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; (weaker) pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*; — **things**, *haec*; **these . . . those**, *hī . . . illī*.

**they**, (emphatic, = they themselves), *ipsī*.

**thing**, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; **this one** —, *id unum*.

**think**, *putō*<sup>1</sup>; (of a personal opinion) *opīnor*<sup>1</sup>; (= reckon, consider) *existimō*<sup>1</sup>; (= ponder, reflect on) *cogitō*<sup>1</sup>; (= feel, be sensible of) *sentiō*<sup>4</sup>; (= judge) *jūdicō*<sup>1</sup>; (of an official opinion, as of a senator) *censeō*<sup>2</sup>.

**third**, *tertius*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

**thirst**, *sitis*, -is, F.

**thirteenth**, (of a month) *Idūs*, -uum, F.

**thirty**, *trīgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

**this**, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *hic*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; — **man**, *hic*; — **one thing**, *id unum*.

**thither**, *eō*, adv.

**thoroughly**, — **inform**, — **train**, *ēdoceō*<sup>2</sup> (w. two accs.).

**those**, pl. of *ille*; (= those of yours) pl. of *iste*; (contemptuous) pl. of *iste*; (ant. of rel.) pl. of *is*; [those] **who**, *quī*; **these . . . those**, *hī . . . illī*.

**though**, *quamvis* (w. subj.); *licet* (w. subj.); **even** —, *etiānsi* (w. indic. and subj. like *sī*; the indic. is more common).

**thought, take** — **for**, *cōsulō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.).

**thousand**, *mīlle*, indecl. adj.; also *mīlle* (as nom. and acc. sing.), subst. (w. part. gen.); in pl., *mīlia* or *mīllia*, subst. (w. part. gen.).

**threaten**, *minitor*<sup>1</sup> (w. dat. pers. and abl. or acc. th.).

**three**, *trēs, tria*, num. adj.; (w. subst. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *trīnī, -ae, -a*.

**through**, *per*, prep. w. acc.

**throughout**, *tōtus, -a, -um*, adj.

**throw**, (= throw to, as of a javelin) *adiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectus*; — **away**, *ēmittō*<sup>3</sup>; — **away** (of on opportunity) *āmittō*<sup>3</sup>.

**thus**, *ita*, adv.

**tides**, *maritimī aestūs*.

**Tigurine**, *Tigurīnus, -a, -um*, adj.

**timber**, *māteria, -ae, F.*

**time**, *tempus, -oris, N.*; (= season) *tempestās, -ātis, F.*; **at any** —, **at some** —, *aliquandō*, adv.; **at the same** —, *simul*, adv.; **at that** —, *tum*, adv.; **up to this** —, *adhūc*, adv.; **at one time . . . at another**, *aliās . . . aliās*.

**tithes**, *decimae, -arum, F.*

**Titurius**, *Titūrius, -ī, M.*

**Titus**, *Titus, -ī, M.*, abbr. *T.*

**to**, sign of dat.; (w. expressions of motion) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc.; (expressing purpose) *ut* or (w. comp.) *quō* w. subj.

**together**, (= in company) *unā*, adv.; — **with**, *unā cum* (w. abl.); (= in succession) *continuus, -a, -um*, adj.; **come** —, *conveniō*<sup>4</sup>; **get** — (tr.), *cōferō*; **call** —, *convocō*<sup>1</sup>; **to join** — (tr.), *inter sē jungere*.

**toll**, *labor, -ōris, M.*

**too**, (before an adj.) sign of comp.; (= also) *etiā*; (= excessively) *nīmīs*, adv.

**topmost**, *summus, -a, -um*, adj.

**Torquatus**, *Torquātus, -ī, M.*

**total, sum** —, *summa omnium*.

**Toulouse**, *Tolōsa, -ae, F.*

**towards**, *ergā*, prep. w. acc.; (= into or against) *in*, prep. w. acc.; — **the setting**, *sub occāsum*.

**tower**, *turris, -is, F.*

**town**, *oppidum, -ī, N.*; **free** —, *municipium, -ī, N.*; **belonging to the** —, *oppidānus, -a, -um*, adj.

**trader**, *mercātor, -ōris, M.*

**train**, *exerceō*<sup>2</sup>.

**transport**, *trānsportō*<sup>1</sup>.

**treat**, *agō*<sup>3</sup>.

**Treveri**, *Trēverī, -ōrum, M.*

**trial**, *periculum, -ī, N.*; **with-** **out** —, *indemnātus, -a, -um*, adj.

**tribune**, *tribūnus, -ī, M.*

**tributary**, *vectigālis, -e, adj.*

**tribute**, *stipendium, -ī, N.*

**troops**, *cōpiae, -arum, F.*

**trouble**, *molestia, -ae, F.*

**Troy**, *Trōja, -ae, F.*

**true**, *vērus, -a, -um*, adj.

**truly**, *vērē*, adv.

**trumpet**, *tuba, -ae, F.*

**truth**, *vērītās, -ātis, F.*

**try**, *tentō*<sup>1</sup> or *temptō*<sup>1</sup>.

**tumult**, *tumultus, -ūs, M.*

**twelfth**, *duodecimus, -a, -um*, ord. num. adj.

**twelve**, *duodecim*, indecl. num. adj.

**twenty**, *vīgintī*, indecl. num. adj.; — **sixth**, *sextus et vicēsimus* or *vicēsimus sextus, -a, -um*, ord. num. adj.

**two**, *duo, duae, duo*, num. adj.; (w. subst. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *bīnī, -ae, -a*, distr. num. adj.; — **each**, — **and** —, *bīnī, -ae, -a*, distr. num. adj.

**tyrant**, *tyrannus, -ī, M.*

**U.**

**Ubi**, *Ubī, -ōrum, M.*

**unable, be** —, *nōn possum*.

**unacquainted**, — **with**, *ignārus, -a, -um* (w. gen.).

**under**, (w. vb. of rest) *sub*, prep. w. abl.; (w. vb. of motion)

*sub*, prep. w. acc.; — *arms*, in *armīs*.

**understand**, *intellegō*<sup>3</sup>

**understood**, it is generally —, *cōnstat*<sup>1</sup>

**undertake**, *suscipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; (= prepare) *parō*<sup>1</sup>

**undertaking**, (= work) *opus*, -eris, N.

**unfair**, *inīquus*, -a, -um, adj.

**unfavorable**, *aliēnus*, -a, -um, adj.

**unfortunate**, *miser*, -era, -erum, adj.

**unharmed**, *incolumis*, -e, adj.

**uninjured**, *incolumis*, -e, adj.

**uninterrupted**, *continuus*, -a, -um, adj.

**unite**, *conjungō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. and dat. or *cum* w. abl.).

**unjustly**, *injūstē*, adv.

**unless**, *nisi*, conj.

**unmoved**, *firmus*, -a, -um, adj.

**unparalleled**, *singulāris*, -e, adj.

**unreasonable**, *inīquus*, -a, -um, adj.

**unsuccessful**, *adversus*, -a, -um, p. a.

**until**, (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *dum*, *quoad*, conj.; (= before) *antequam*, *priusquam*, adv.

**unwilling**, *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.; **be** —, *nōlō*.

**up**, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.

**upbraid**, *incūsō*<sup>1</sup> (w. acc.).

**upon**, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.

**upper**, *superior*, -ius, adj.

**urge**, *hortor*<sup>1</sup>; — **to**, *hortor*<sup>1</sup> (w. *ut* and subj.); — **on**, *impellō*<sup>3</sup>

**use**, *utor*<sup>3</sup> (w. abl.); (= be wont) *soleō*<sup>2</sup>; **to** — **force**, *vim facere*.

**useful**, (= for use) *ūsū*.

**usual**, as —, *ex cōnsuetūdine*.

**Utica**, *Utica*, -ae, F.

**utmost**, sign of superl.

**utterly**, sign of superl.

## V.

**Vaga**, *Vaga*, -ae, F.

**vain**, in —, *nēquiquam*, adv.

**valor**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

**value**, *existimō*<sup>1</sup>

**vanity**, *vānitās*, -ātis, F.

**Venelli**, *Venellī*, -ōrum, M.

**Venetia**, *Venetia*, -ae, F.

**Veneti**, *Veneti*, -ōrum, M.

**venture**, *audeō*<sup>2</sup>

**Veragri**, *Veragrī*, -ōrum, M.

**Verbigene**, *Verbigēnus*, -a, -um, adj.

**verily**, *vērō*, adv.

**very**, sign of superl.; (= self) *ipse*, -a, -um, demonstr. pron.; — **easily**, (after a neg.) *satis commodē*; — **first**, *primus statim*.

**Vesontio**, *Vesontio*, -ōnis, M.

**veteran**, *mīles vetus*, (-eris, adj.).

**vice**, *vitium*, -ī, N.

**victor**, *vīctor*, -ōris, M.

**victory**, *vīctōria*, -ae, F.

**vie**, *certō*<sup>1</sup>

**view**, in — **of**, *prae*, prep. w. abl.; **have in** —, *prōvideō*<sup>2</sup>; **burst into** —, *ērumpō*<sup>3</sup>

**vigor**, *vīs*, *vīs*, F.

**village**, *vīcus*, -ī, M.

**violence**, *vīs*, *vīs*, F.

**violent**, *saevus*, -a, -um, adj.

**virtue**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

**visit**, — **with**, *adfīciō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. and abl.).

**Volusenus**, *Volusēnus*, -ī, M.

**vote**, 1. vb., *dēcernō*<sup>3</sup> 2. subst., *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.

**voyage**, **make a** —, *nāvīgō*<sup>1</sup>

## W.

**wage**, — **against**, *īnferō* (w. acc. and dat.).

**wagon**, *carrus*, -ī, M.

**wait**, — **for**, *expectō*<sup>1</sup>

**wall**, (generic term) *mūrus*, -ī, M.; (= rampart about a camp) *vāllum*, -ī, N.

**want**, (= wish) *volō*.

**wanting**, **be** —, *dēsūm*.

**war**, *bellum*, -ī, N.; **ship of** —, *nāvis longa*; **to make** — **on**, *bellum facere* (w. dat.).

**ward**, — **off from**, *prōpulsō*<sup>1</sup> (w. *ab* or *ā* and abl.).



**warlike**, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um, adj.  
**warn**, *moneō*.<sup>2</sup>

**waste**, *lay* —, *vastō*.<sup>1</sup>

**watchmen**, *vigiliae*, -ārum, F.

**water**, *aqua*, -ae, F.

**way**, *give* — to passion, *irāscor*<sup>3</sup>; **be on one's** —, *pergō*<sup>3</sup>; **in what** —, *quem ad modum*.

**we**, *nōs*, *nostrī* and *nostrūm*, pers. pron.

**wealth**, *divitiae*, -ārum, F.

**weary**, *fessus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. abl.); **I am** —, *mē taedet*,<sup>2</sup> impers., w. gen.

**weep**, *fleō*.<sup>2</sup>

**welfare**, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

**well**, *bene*, adv.; — **enough**, *commodē*, adv.

**what**, (interrog.) *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (adj.) and *quid* (subst.); (= of what sort) *quātis*, -e, interrog. and rel. adj.; (= that which) *id quod*.

**whatever**, *any* —, *quīvīs*, *quaevis*, *quodvis* and (subst.) *quidvis*, indef. pron.

**when**, *ubi*, *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ut* (w. indic., usu. the perf. or hist. pres.); *cum*.

**whenever**, *cum* (w. indic.).

**where**, *ubi*, interrog. and rel. adv.

**wherefore**, *quam ob rem*.

**whether**, *num*, interrog. particle; -*ne*, interrog. particle.

**which**, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. and interrog. pron.

**while**, *dum*, conj.

**who**, *quī* (M.), *quae* (F.), rel. pron.; *quis*, interrog. pron.

**whoever**, *whatever*, *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, indef. rel. pron.; — **you please**, *quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet*, and (subst.) *quilibet*, indef. pron.

**whole**, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= all joined or massed together) *cūctus*, -a, -um, adj.

**why**, *cūr*, adv.; (= for what reason) *quā dē causā*; *quid* (n. acc. used adv.).

**wide**, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

**widely**, *lātē*, adv.; **more** —, *lātius*, adv.

**width**, *lātitudō*, -inis, F.

**wife**, *conjux*, -jugis, F.

**wild**, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.

**will**, *good* —, *grātia*, -ae, F.

**willing**, **be not** —, *nōlō*.

**wine**, *vīnum*, -ī, N.

**wing**, (of an army) *cornū*, -ūs, N.

**winter**, *hiems* (*hiemps*), -emis, F.; — **quarters**, *hiberna*, -ōrum, N.; **spend the** —, *hiemō*.<sup>1</sup>

**wish**, *volō*; *cupiō*<sup>3</sup>; — **well to**, *cupiō*<sup>3</sup> (w. dat.); — **rather**, *mālō*.

**with**, *cum*, prep. w. abl. (w. the abl. of pers. and rel. prons., *cum* is appended; as, *tēcum*, *quibuscum*); (in an expression of manner in which the subst. is limited by an adj.) sign of the abl.; — **each other**, *inter sē* (*sēsē*); **have to do** —, *pertineō*<sup>2</sup> (w. *ad* and acc.).

**withdraw**, 1. intr., *discēdō*<sup>3</sup>; *dēcēdō*<sup>3</sup>; *excēdō*<sup>3</sup>; (less often) *concēdō*<sup>3</sup>. 2. tr., *subducō*<sup>3</sup>; (= lead out) *ēducō*<sup>3</sup>.

**withhold**, — **consent**, (= [be] unwilling), *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.

**within**, sign of abl. of time within which.

**without**, *sine*, prep. w. abl.; (w. participial noun after neg. expressions) *quān* (w. subj.); — **trial**, *indemnātus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **provocation**, *injūriā* (abl. of manner).

**withstand**, *sustineō*<sup>2</sup> (w. acc.).

**witness**, (= eye witness) *arbitr*, -trī, M.; (one who attests) *testis*, -is, C.

**woman**, *mulier*, -eris, F.

**wonder**, — **at**, *mīror*.<sup>1</sup>

**wonderful**, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= to be wondered at) *mīrābilis*, -e, adj.

**wont**, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.

**wood**, *silva*, -ae, F.

**word**, **to keep one's** —, *fidem servāre*.

**words**, **a few** —, *paucā*, -ōrum, neut. pl. adj. used subst.

**work**, *opus*, -*eris*, N.

**worst**, *pessimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

**worthy**, *dignus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj. (w. abl.; also w. rel. clause w. subj.).

**would**, — **that**, *utinam* (w. opt. subj.).

**wound**, *vulnerō*.<sup>1</sup>

**wrest**, *ēripīō*<sup>3</sup> (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

**wretched**, *miser*, -*era*, -*erum*, adj.

**write**, *scribō*.<sup>3</sup>

**wrong**, *injūria*, -*ae*, F.

### X.

**Xenophon**, *Xenophōn*, -*ōntis*, M.

### Y.

**year**, *annus*, -*ī*, M.; **the** — **after**, *annō post*.

**yet**, (= nevertheless) *tamen*, conj.; **and** —, *quamquam*, conj.;

**not** —, *nōndum*, adv.

**yield**, — **obedience**, *pāreō*.<sup>2</sup>

**yoke**, *jugum*, -*ī*, N.

**yonder**, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.

**you**, (sing.) *tū*, *tuī*; (pl.) *vōs*, gen. *vestri* and *vestrūm*, pers. pron.; **to** —, (= thither where you are) *istūc* (accent the last syllable), adv.

**your**, (sing.) *tuus*, -*a*, -*um*; (pl.) *vester*, -*tra*, -*trum*, poss. pron.; (contemptuous) *iste*, *ista*, *istud*.

**yours**, **that of** —, *iste tuus*.

**yourself**, *tuī*, *tibi*, *tē*, pers. pron. used reflex.

**yourselves**, *vōs* (pl. of *tū* used reflex.).

**youth**, *adulēscētia*, -*ae*, F.; (= young person) *adulēscēns*, -*entis*, C.

### Z.

**Zama**, **the people of** —, *Zamēnsēs*, -*ium*, M.

**zeal**, *studium*, -*ī*, N.





14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

200ct'61KL  
REC'D LD

JUN 20 1962

MAR 13 1985

REC CIRC MAR 18 1985

LD 21A-50m-12,'60  
(B6221s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

10 40720  
GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000782240

